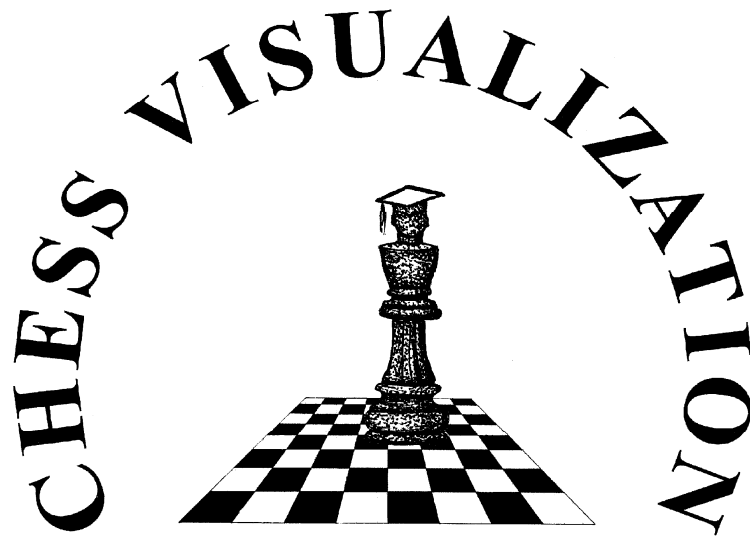




BOOK 1

GENERAL TACTICS

Ian Anderson

Foreword by FIDE Master Paul Whitehead

CHESSE VISUALIZATION COURSE

BOOK 1: GENERAL TACTICS

© Copyright 2007-2011 by Gelvert Publishing LLC

All rights reserved. No part of this work may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording, or by any information storage or retrieval system, except for brief passages used in a review.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2007927520.

ISBN 978-0-9795940-2-1
ISBN 0-9795940-2-2

Published by:

Gelvert Publishing LLC
PO Box 116
Statesboro, GA 30459

Cover design by Georgia Pearson.

Edited by Ginny Kanter (gkanter@cstone.net).

Chess fonts designed by Eric Bentzen (bentzen@enpassant.dk);
see the Chess Alpha fonts at www.enpassant.dk. Used with permission.

Most of the analysis in this book was checked using Crafty, a chess analysis program written by Dr. Robert Hyatt, available either in ChessBase 7.0 (www.chessbase.com or www.chessbaseusa.com) or as a freeware package downloadable at ftp.cis.uab.edu/pub/hyatt.

Please visit our website at www.chessvisualization.com to purchase additional copies of this book or to see other *Chess Visualization Course* products and services.

Warning: Keep this book away from small children.

Printed in the United States of America

ABC

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PLY TABLE	4
FOREWORD	7
INTRODUCTION.....	9
SECTION 1. SERIES OF EXCHANGES ON A SINGLE SQUARE	13
Chapter 1. Even Exchanges	15
Chapter 2. Exchanges Involving an Extra Attacker	21
Chapter 3. Exchanges Involving Pieces of Different Value	27
Chapter 4. Exchanges After Penetration.....	35
Chapter 5. Exchanges Involving a Passed Pawn	41
SECTION 2. BEFORE AND AFTER.....	51
Chapter 6. Preparatory Build-Up.....	53
Chapter 7. After Effects.....	63
Chapter 8. Exchanging to a Won Ending	73
Chapter 9. Before and After	83
SECTION 3. TWO SECTORS OF THE BOARD.....	91
Chapter 10. Two Sectors of the Board (White To Play)	93
Chapter 11. Two Sectors of the Board (Black To Play).....	103
Chapter 12. Multiple Imbalances	113
Chapter 13. Expanding the Position	123
SECTION 4. QUEENS UNDER ATTACK.....	133
Chapter 14. First Player To Attack the Queen.....	135
Chapter 15. Second Player To Attack the Queen	145
Chapter 16. Desperado Queens	153
Chapter 17. Double Desperados	161
Chapter 18. Pins to the Queen	167
SECTION 5. RABID PIECES AND PAWNS.....	175
Chapter 19. Rabid Knights	177
Chapter 20. Rabid Bishops	187
Chapter 21. Rabid Pawns	197
Chapter 22. Rabid Passed Pawns.....	205
SECTION 6. THREE SECTORS OF THE BOARD	215
Chapter 23. Three Sectors of the Board (White To Play)	217
Chapter 24. Three Sectors of the Board (Black To Play).....	227
Chapter 25. Seeing Farther	235
Chapter 26. Longer Variations	245
ANSWER KEY	257
APPENDIX 1. INDEX OF ECO CODES	323
ORDER FORM.....	325

PLY TABLE

The following table is to be used in conjunction with the ply depth barriers discussed on page 11. The first column shows the chapter titles; the last column shows the total number of exercises contained within each chapter. The top row indicates the lengths of the variations of the exercises, ranging from four to twelve half-moves (ply). A half-move is one move made by either White or Black; a variation that is eight half-moves long (or “eight ply”) contains four moves by White and four moves by Black. The table also shows how many exercises at each length are contained within each chapter. Of the twenty exercises in Chapter 1, for example, two exercises are four half-moves long, eight are six half-moves long, another eight are eight half-moves long, and the last two are ten half-moves long.

LENGTH (HALF-MOVES):	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12+	TOTAL
SECTION 1. SERIES OF EXCHANGES ON A SINGLE SQUARE										
1. EVEN EXCHANGES	2	-	8	-	8	-	2	-	-	20
2. AN EXTRA ATTACKER	-	4	-	12	-	4	-	-	-	20
3. PIECES OF DIFFERENT VALUE	2	12	12	2	-	-	-	-	-	28
4. AFTER PENETRATION	-	8	4	4	4	-	-	-	-	20
5. INVOLVING A PASSED PAWN	12	12	7	1	-	-	-	-	-	32
SECTION 2. SERIES OF EXCHANGES – BEFORE AND AFTER										
6. PREPARATORY BUILD-UP	-	-	-	8	4	8	2	4	10	36
7. AFTER EFFECTS	-	2	-	6	4	16	2	2	4	36
8. EXCHANGING TO A WON ENDING	-	-	-	4	-	4	-	4	24	36
9. BEFORE AND AFTER	-	-	-	-	-	10	-	10	4	24
SECTION 3. TWO SECTORS OF THE BOARD										
10. TWO SECTORS (WHITE)	-	4	4	12	4	6	2	4	-	36
11. TWO SECTORS (BLACK)	-	8	-	8	8	6	2	4	-	36
12. MULTIPLE IMBALANCES	-	8	2	8	8	8	2	-	-	36
13. EXPANDING THE POSITION	-	-	-	8	-	14	2	8	-	32
SECTION 4. QUEENS UNDER ATTACK										
14. FIRST PLAYER TO ATTACK	-	4	2	12	2	6	1	5	-	32
15. SECOND PLAYER TO ATTACK	-	2	2	10	2	6	2	4	-	28
16. DESPERADO QUEENS	-	4	6	8	4	4	-	2	-	28
17. DOUBLE DESPERADOS	-	4	2	6	2	4	-	2	-	20
18. PINS TO THE QUEEN	-	8	-	6	2	8	2	2	-	28
SECTION 5. RABID PIECES AND PAWNS										
19. RABID KNIGHTS	-	-	2	4	10	6	8	6	-	36
20. RABID BISHOPS	-	2	4	10	4	6	2	4	-	32
21. RABID PAWNS	-	-	4	8	6	6	2	2	-	28
22. RABID PASSED PAWNS	-	2	6	6	4	12	4	2	-	36
SECTION 6. THREE SECTORS OF THE BOARD										
23. THREE SECTORS (WHITE)	-	4	-	8	6	10	3	5	-	36
24. THREE SECTORS (BLACK)	-	4	-	11	1	6	3	3	-	28
25. SEEING FARTHER	-	-	-	3	-	6	1	10	12	32
26. LONGER VARIATIONS	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	44	44
TOTALS FOR EACH PLY:										
	16	92	65	165	83	156	42	83	98	800

DEDICATION

*To all of the chess players in the world
who want to improve their visualization skills.*

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

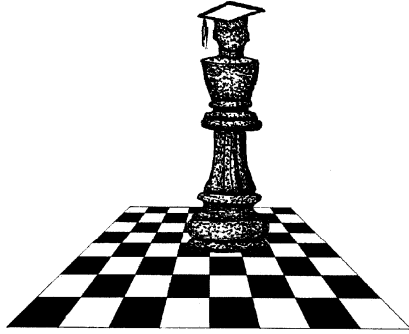
*This book would never have seen the Light of Day without
the constant support and invaluable assistance of Nevid Ruchkov.*

I'd like to thank those who have been involved in this project since the early days – Steve Graziano, Peter Hopkins, Ed Lilly, Rob Masri, Dennis Okola, Dave Parrish, Richard Ronan, Kaitie Simms, Jason Varsoke, and Derek Womble. You guys are the greatest!

Thanks also to everyone at the local clubs for your encouragement and/or feedback during this project – Alan, Albert, Eugene, Luther, Mark, Micah, Promotto, Randy, Sam, Tex, Tim, Woody, and anyone else who I might have missed – Thanks!!!

Thanks also to Georgia Pearson for her inspired cover design; Ginny Kanter for editing the main body of the book; Denis Goewert for compilation and layout; Randy Lewis for his assistance with equipment; Rob Masri for his experienced counsel; Ed Pearson for his insights and guidance; Earlene Coles for her graphics support; and Eric Bentzen for permission to use his chess fonts.

CHESS VISUALIZATION
COURSE



FOREWORD

When I made the leap to master I studied the classic chess books: *My 60 Memorable Games* by Bobby Fischer, *The Art of the Middlegame* by Paul Keres and Alexander Kotov, *Tal-Botvinnik 1960* by Mikhail Tal, *Think Like a Grandmaster* by Kotov ... and many others. Only *Think Like a Grandmaster* gave some ideas of how to study chess and improve, however.

Of course I played over all the games of the world champions, game collections of the great players and studied the latest master games in the *Chess Informant*.

I played in many tournaments, which also raised the level of my game.

All of this study and play was invaluable, but I believe the most important course of training I undertook was self-motivated (no one had advised me) and difficult: I tried to simulate tournament conditions with studies and problems from books and magazines.

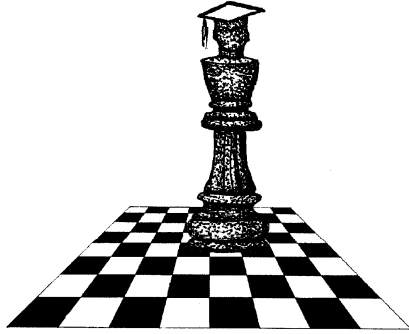
I set a clock to time myself, filled notebooks with variations, tried to visualize the final positions – Who was ahead materially? Could I work out the win? Find the checkmate?

The questions I had asked myself – How can one learn to calculate? How can one see three (or more) moves ahead? – were answered by studying this way, and I became a stronger player.

Ian Anderson has made an important contribution to chess literature with his *Chess Visualization Course*, as the exercises in his book will train the “muscles” of calculation and visualization, vital (necessary!) prerequisites in making the leap to chess mastery.

Paul Whitehead
FIDE Master and USCF Life Master

CHESS VISUALIZATION
COURSE



INTRODUCTION

This book provides a practical and systematic approach to improving one's chess visualization skills. It contains 800 practical training exercises taken from real games, many played by international masters and grandmasters in tournaments located throughout the world. The positions in this book will stretch your vision from one to two to three sectors of the board using variations that run from four to thirty-nine half-moves deep!

The exercises are arranged in twenty-six chapters, each of which illustrates a particular theme. Each chapter contains on average more than thirty exercises, which provides extensive coverage of each theme presented.

The exercises within each chapter are arranged by the length of the variation that you are asked to visualize. Most of the exercises contain a series of captures or other moves that radically alter the initial position. It's your task to keep track of which pieces are on the board, the positions they occupy, and the effect that they have in the position.

DESCRIPTION OF THE SECTIONS AND CHAPTERS

The following describes the thematic development of the sections and chapters in the book.

SECTION 1 contains five chapters featuring a series of exchanges that takes place on a single square called the "hot spot." This section introduces the basic skills of counting attackers and defenders on a given square, keeping track of the material balance during a series of exchanges, and visualizing the resulting position. Chapter 1 features exchanges involving the same number and types of pieces. Chapter 2 features exchanges where one side has an extra attacker. Chapter 3 features exchanges involving pieces of different value, such as a Rook for two minor pieces or a Queen for two Rooks. Chapter 4 features exercises in which the penetration of a piece deep into enemy territory sets off a series of exchanges. Chapter 5 features a series of exchanges that involves a passed pawn.

SECTION 2 continues the theme of a series of exchanges, but in these four chapters we look at what can happen either before or after the exchanges. Chapter 6 contains exercises that feature a preparatory build-up of the position prior to a series of exchanges. Chapter 7 features exercises in which series of exchanges sets up a tactical device, such as a Knight fork or Rook skewer. Chapter 8 features exercises in which a series of exchanges leads to a won ending. Chapter 9 combines all of these themes and features exercises in which a preparatory build-up is followed by a series of exchanges that either sets up to a tactical opportunity or leads to a won ending.

SECTION 3 contains exercises in which the play typically covers two sectors of the board. Chapter 10 contains exercises in which it is White to play; in Chapter 11 it is Black to play. Chapter 12 features exercises in which an uneven set of exchanges occurs in a position where the original material balance is already uneven. Chapter 13 contains exercises in which a player's position expands as his pieces systematically move up the board in an orchestrated manner.

SECTION 4 features exercises in which each player's Queen is attacked by a piece of lesser value. In Chapter 14 the first player to attack the Queen gains an advantage; in Chapter 15, the second player gains an advantage. Chapter 16 features Queen desperados in which an attacked Queen voluntarily captures a protected enemy piece of lesser value. Chapter 17 features double desperados in which both Queens are under attack and capture an enemy piece of lesser value. Chapter 18 features exercises in which a Queen is captured by a piece of lesser value due to the breaking of a pin to the Queen.

SECTION 5 features exercises involving a rabid piece or pawn, that is, a piece or pawn that captures or threatens to capture an enemy piece or pawn on three or more moves in succession. Chapter 19 features rabid Knights, Chapter 20 features rabid Bishops, and Chapter 21 features rabid pawns. Chapter 22 features rabid pawns that capture an enemy piece on the back rank, while simultaneously promoting. Most of the exercises in this section feature two-way action in which each player is playing in his opponent's half of the board.

SECTION 6 contains exercises in which the play covers three sectors or more of the board. In Chapter 23, it is White to play; in Chapter 24, it is Black to play. Chapter 25 contains exercises in which a player sees farther than his opponent by visualizing a strong move or idea that occurs after a series of more mundane moves. Chapter 26 features exercises with longer variations that run from twelve to nineteen half-moves and cover three or more sectors of the board.

Thus there is a logical development of the six sections in that they progress from a series of exchanges on a single square, to play that covers two sectors of the board (including positions in which each player is playing on his opponent's half of the board), to play that covers three or more sectors of the board.

HOW TO USE THIS BOOK

Each exercise consists of a diagrammed position followed by a series of moves that you are asked to visualize. Using the diagrammed position as a starting point, mentally play through the moves given, keeping track of which pieces are on the board, the positions they occupy, and the material balance. Visualize the final position, then answer the questions provided. It is White to move in all exercises except those in Chapters 11 and 24.

To determine the depth and clarity of your vision for the various types of positions given, write your answers down, either to the right of the initial diagram or on a separate sheet of paper. Also indicate how clearly you can visualize the final position by using a simple numeric code. Write down a "1" if you can clearly visualize all of the details of the final position, a "2" if you can visualize most of the details of the final position, and a "3" if you can't visualize the changes in the final position at all.

Many of the exercises ask you to determine the material balance at the end of the moves given. The material balance is the difference between the White and Black pieces remaining on the board. For example, if White ends up with a Rook and two pawns to Black's Bishop and three pawns, then the material balance is a Rook for Bishop and pawn. This can be abbreviated as "R/BP".

Thus your answer will typically consist of two parts: a numeric code indicating how clearly you can visualize the final position and an indication of the material balance in the final position.

Since the chapters and sections are interrelated and follow a logical development, it's probably best to begin with Section 1 and work through the chapters of the book in the sequence presented. Yet the curious can also jump ahead and look at any of the exercises or chapters in any order that's appealing. If you want to learn more about desperado Queens or double desperados, then turn to Chapter 16 or 17. To learn more about rabid pieces and pawns and two-way action, see Section 5.

PLY DEPTH BARRIERS

Once you have gone through a number of exercises in this book, you will probably notice that there is some depth at which you are unable to clearly visualize certain variations all the way through to the final position. Perhaps you can clearly visualize variations that are five or six ply deep, but have difficulty clearly visualizing variations that are seven half-moves deep. We call this ceiling the *ply depth barrier*. It is the depth at which your vision breaks down and you can no longer clearly visualize the final position.

There are three ways to deal with a depth barrier – *brute force*, *consolidation*, and *stretching*.

The *brute force* method consists in attempting to visualize variations that are the same length as your depth barrier. If your depth barrier is seven half-moves, then go through all of the seven-ply exercises in the book and attempt to visualize the final position clearly.

Consolidation consists in attempting to visualize variations that are slightly shorter than your depth barrier. The principle here is that if you cannot fully visualize the seven-ply exercises, for example, then it's possible that the five- and six-ply exercises are not quite crystal clear either. Therefore, if your barrier is at seven half-moves, make sure that you can visualize all of the five- and six-ply exercises clearly and confidently.

Stretching consists in attempting to visualize variations that are slightly longer than your depth barrier. If your depth barrier is seven ply, try to visualize the eight- and nine-ply exercises. After working on these exercises for a while, you may find that the seven-ply exercises seem easier by comparison.

To find the exercises you need, see the ply table provided after the table of contents. It shows how many exercises at each ply are in the book and the chapters where they can be found.

A more traditional manner can also be used to solve the exercises. Simply cover up the moves with a piece of paper or file card and try to find the best moves. If you use this method, note that it is White to move in all exercises except those in Chapters 11 and 24.

It was my desire to create a book that would provide the average club player with an opportunity to work on his chess visualization skills using graduated exercises involving interesting themes that have not received in-depth coverage in the chess literature. If this ***Chess Visualization Course*** helps even a single reader visualize variations quicker, deeper, more clearly or more easily, then this effort will have been worthwhile.

Charlottesville, VA
April 23, 2007

SECTION 1. SERIES OF EXCHANGES ON A SINGLE SQUARE

This section contains exercises in which a series of exchanges takes place on a single square (the so-called “hot spot”). It includes the following chapters:

CHAPTER 1. EVEN EXCHANGES

CHAPTER 2. EXCHANGES INVOLVING AN EXTRA ATTACKER

CHAPTER 3. EXCHANGES INVOLVING PIECES OF DIFFERENT VALUE

CHAPTER 4. EXCHANGES AFTER PENETRATION

CHAPTER 5. EXCHANGES INVOLVING A PASSED PAWN

CHAPTER 1, EVEN EXCHANGES, contains exercises in which the number of attackers and defenders on the hot spot is equal. In addition, the value of the pieces involved in the exchanges is the same. Thus both the quantity and quality of the pieces is the same.

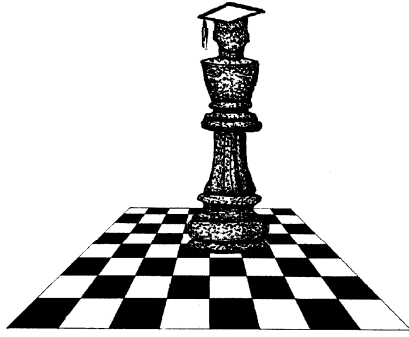
CHAPTER 2, EXCHANGES INVOLVING AN EXTRA ATTACKER, contains exercises in which the number of attackers is greater than the number of defenders, resulting in a win of material for the stronger side. As in the previous chapter, the value of the pieces involved in the exchanges is identical, but the number of pieces is different, ensuring that the stronger sides win material.

CHAPTER 3, EXCHANGES INVOLVING PIECES OF DIFFERENT VALUE, contains exercises in which the value of the pieces involved in the exchanges is different.

CHAPTER 4, EXCHANGES AFTER PENETRATION, contains exercises in which the series of exchanges follows not a capture, as in the previous three chapters, but the penetration of a piece deep into enemy territory. Such penetration typically creates a dangerous threat that forces the defender to initiate the exchanges.

CHAPTER 5, EXCHANGES INVOLVING A PASSED PAWN, contains exercises in which a series of exchanges involves the promotion of a passed pawn.

**CHESS VISUALIZATION
COURSE**



CHAPTER 1. EVEN EXCHANGES

This chapter features the easiest type of exchanges to visualize -- those that occur on a single square (we call it the “hot spot”) and involve an even number of pieces of the same value. The main characteristic of such positions is that the material balance remains the same after the exchanges take place.

Such exchanges may be desirable for several reasons, such as to enter a drawn ending, to keep the opponent from gaining an advantage (see exercises 17, 18, and 19), or to create a favorable ending. The side that initiates the exchanges typically has a material or positional advantage (or both) that becomes more pronounced as additional pieces come off the board.

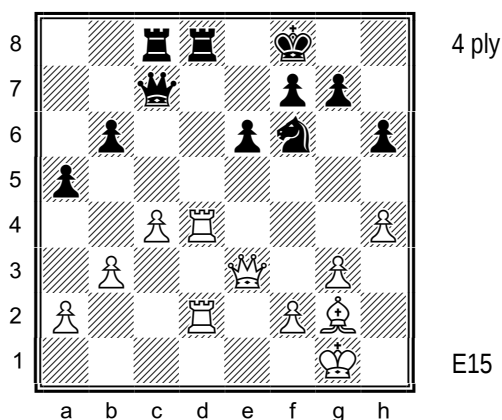
Typical endgame advantages include the following:

- ✧ Having an extra pawn – see exercises 2, 3, and 7;
- ✧ Having a passed pawn – see exercises 3, 6, and 9;
- ✧ Having a queenside pawn majority – see exercises 1 and 13;
- ✧ Having the better pawn structure – see exercises 4 and 7;
- ✧ Being able to exploit weak enemy pawns – see exercises 18 and 20;
- ✧ Having a more active King – see exercises 9 and 18; and
- ✧ Having the better minor piece – see exercise 12.

The defender is usually forced to go along with the exchanges in order to prevent the loss of material. A general guideline in such circumstances is to re-capture with the cheapest piece available, yet special circumstances are sometimes present in the position that prevent this – see exercises 3 and 10.

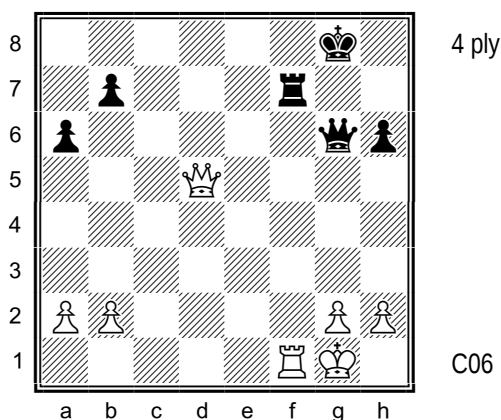
This chapter contains twenty exercises ranging in depth from four to ten half-moves, as seen in the following table:

Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13⁺	TOTAL
Exercises:	2	-	8	-	8	-	2	-	-	-	20

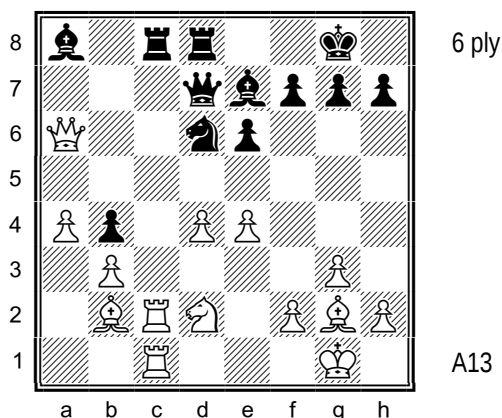


1. The count¹ on d8 is 2-2. White has a mobile queenside pawn majority. Visualize the position after the moves 26 Rxd8+ Rxd8 27 Rxd8+ Qxd8. What is the material balance?

¹ The count is the number of pieces attacking and defending a given square. Here the count is 2-2 because White has two pieces attacking d8 and Black has two pieces defending d8.

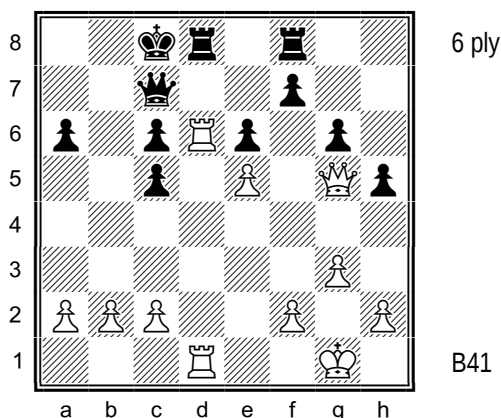


2. White is up a pawn. The count on f7 is 2-2. Visualize the position after the moves 34 Qxf7+ Qxf7 35 Rxf7 Kxf7. What is the material balance?



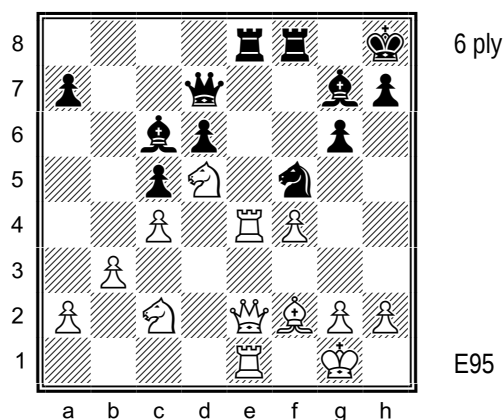
3. White is up two pawns and has an outside passed pawn. The count on c8 is 3-3. Visualize the position after the moves 28 Rxc8 Rxc8¹ 29 Rxc8+ Qxc8 30 Qxc8+ Nxc8. What is the material balance?

¹ 28...Nxc8 drops the Bishop on a8.

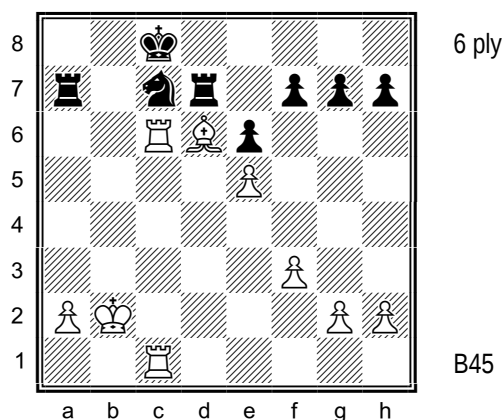


4. White has the better pawn structure. The count on d8 is 3-3. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Rxd8+¹ Rxd8 24 Rxd8+ Qxd8 25 Qxd8+ Kxd8. What is the material balance?

¹ 23 Qxd8+ is also possible, since after 23...Rxd8 24 Rxd8+ Black must play 24...Qxd8, as White is up a Rook after 24...Kb7 25 Rad7.

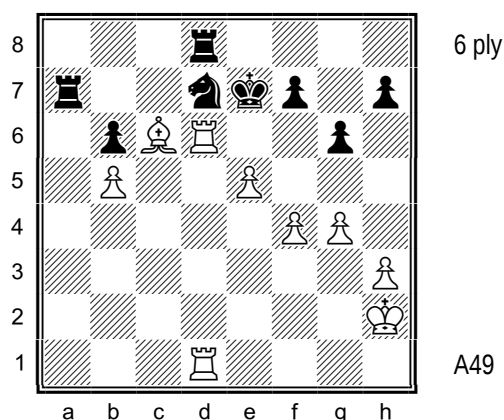


5. White is up a pawn. The count on e8 is 3-3. Visualize the position after the moves 26 Rxe8 Rxe8 27 Qxe8+ Qxe8 28 Rxe8+ Bxe8. What is the material balance?



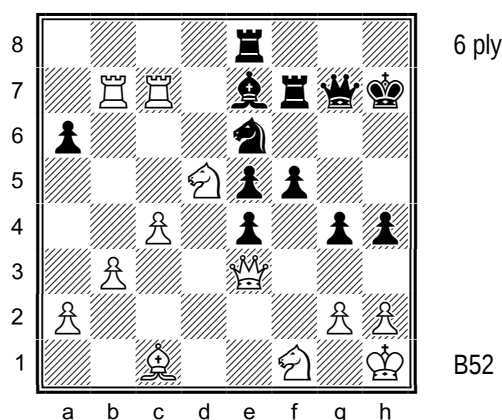
6. White is up a pawn and has an outside passed pawn. The count on c7 is 3-3. Visualize the position after the moves 32 Bxc7¹ Rdx7 33 Rxc7+ Rxc7 34 Rxc7+ Kxc7. What is the material balance?

¹ 32 Rxc7 is also possible.



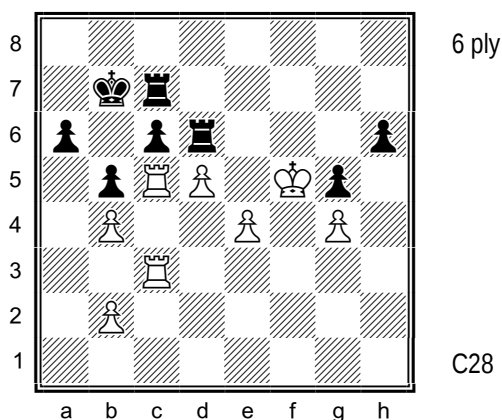
7. White has an extra pawn and the better pawn structure. The count on d7 is 3-3. Visualize the position after the moves 38 Rxd7+¹ Rxd7 39 Rxd7+ Rxd7 40 Bxd7 Kxd7. What is the material balance?

¹ White can also improve play his position with either 38 Kg3 or 38 f5 first, since Black's pieces are all tied up.

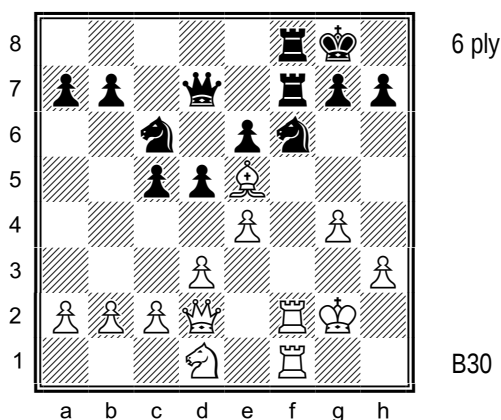


8. White is up a piece for a pawn, but his Rc7 is under attack. The count on e7 is 3-3. Visualize the position after the moves 41 Rxe7¹ Rxe7 42 Rxe7 Rxe7 43 Nxe7 Qxe7. What is the material balance?

¹ White could try to improve his position with 41 Rd7, intending 42 Ba3, when Black's only recourse is to try to repeat the position with 41...Nf8 42 Rdc7 Ne6, which forces White to take on e7 before playing Ba3.

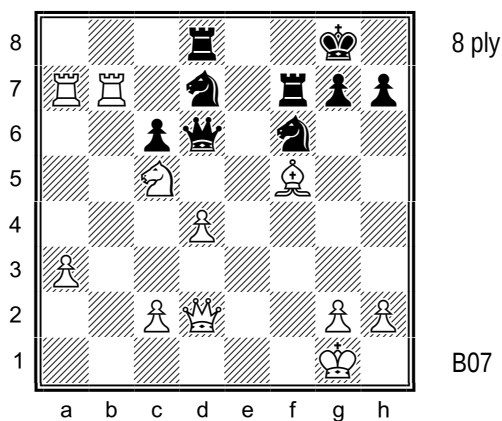


9. The count on c6 is 3-3. White's passed d-pawn and active King guarantee him the better ending. Visualize the position after the moves 42 Rxc6 Rxc6 43 Rxc6 Rxc6 44 dxc6+ Kxc6. What is the material balance?



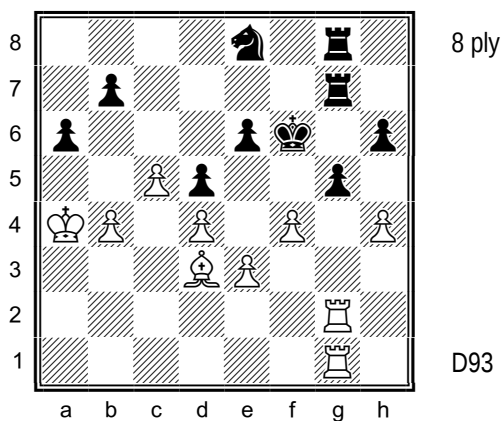
10. The count on f6 is 3-3. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Bxf6 Rxf6¹ 26 Rxf6 Rxf6 27 Rxf6 gxf6. What is the material balance?

¹ 25...gxf6 allows 26 Qh6.



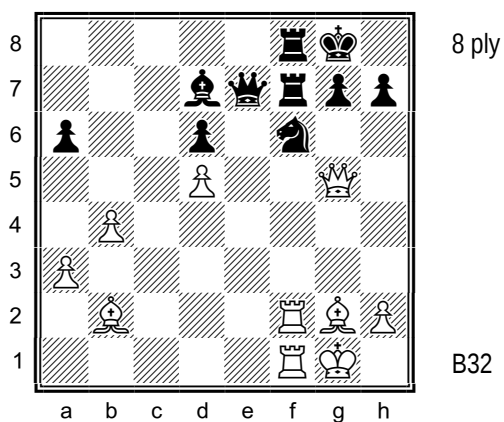
11. White is up two pawns. The count on d7 is 4-4. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Nxd7¹ Nxd7 26 Rxd7 Rxd7 27 Rxd7 Rxd7 28 Bxd7 Qxd7. What is the material balance?

¹ Simplest is best. White could win the exchange with 25 Be6, but Black would get some counterplay with 25...Nxc5 26 Bxf7+ Kf8 27 Rc7 Na6 28 Rb7 Nc5.

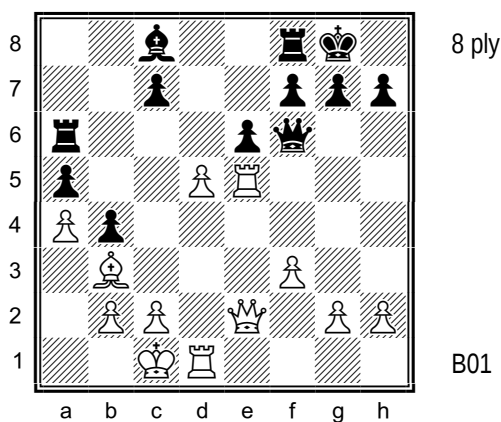


12. The count on g5 is 4-4. Visualize the position after the moves 37 fxg5+ hxg5 38 hxg5+¹ Rxd7 39 Rxd7 Rxd7 40 Rxd7 Kxd7. What is the material balance?

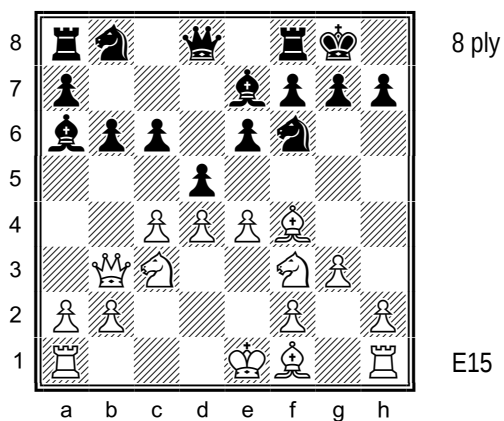
¹ 38 Rxd7 is also possible.



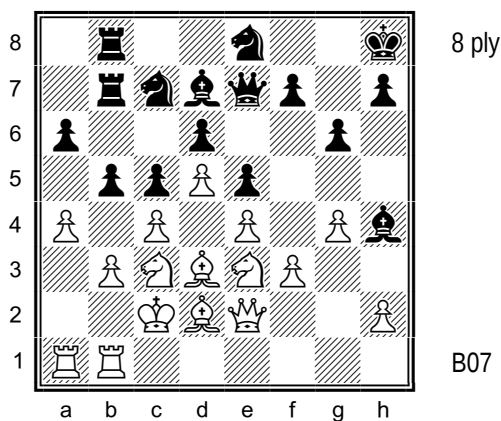
13. The count on f6 is 4-4. Visualize the position after the moves 26 Bxf6 Rxf6 27 Rxf6 Rxf6 28 Rxf6 Qxf6 29 Qxf6 gxf6. What is the material balance?



14. The count on e6 is 4-4. Visualize the position after the moves 23 dxe6 Bxe6 24 Bxe6 Rxe6 25 Rxe6 Qxe6 26 Qxe6 fxe6. What is the material balance?

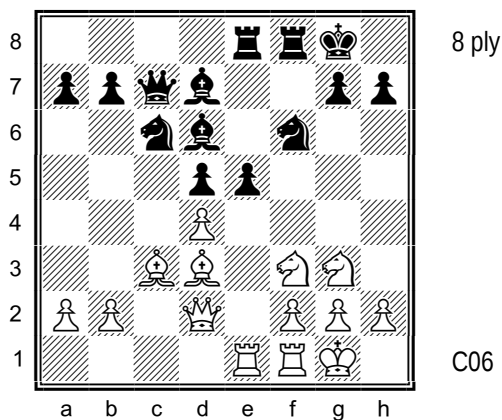


15. The count on d5 is 4-4. Visualize the position after the moves 9 cxd5 cxd5 10 exd5 Nxd5¹ 11 Nxd5 Qxd5² 12 Qxd5 exd5. What is the material balance?

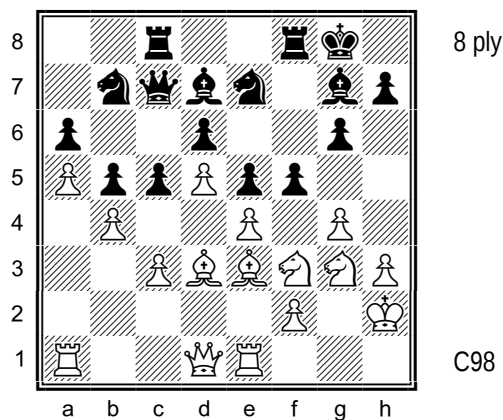


16. The count on b5 is 5-5. Visualize the position after the moves 24 axb5 axb5 25 cxb5 Nxb5 26 Nxb5 Bxb5 27 Bxb5 Rxb5. What is the material balance?

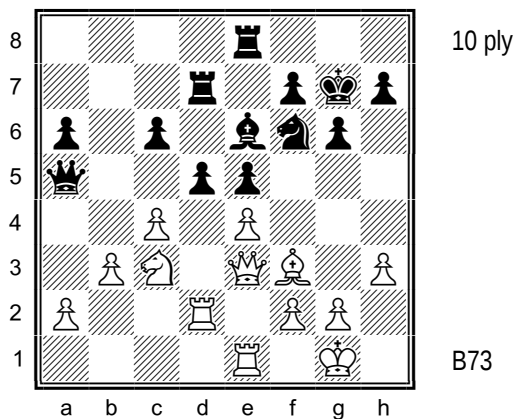
¹ Black's Knight is passive after 10...exd5. ² White has the better Queen after 11...exd5.



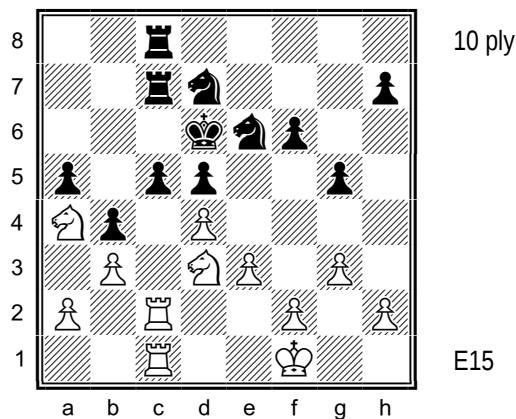
17. The count on e5 is 4-4. Black is threatening to play ...e4. Visualize the position after the moves 17 dxe5 Nxe5 18 Nxe5 Bxe5 19 Rxe5 Rxe5 20 Bxe5 Qxe5. What is the material balance?



18. The count on f5 is 4-4. Black is threatening to play ...f4. Visualize the position after the moves 25 gxf5 gxf5 26 Nxf5 Nxf5 27 exf5 Bxf5 28 Bxf5 Rxf5. What is the material balance?



19. The count on d5 is 5-5. Black is threatening to play...d4. Visualize the position after the moves 23 exd5 cxd5 24 Bxd5 Bxd5 25 Nxd5 Nxd5 26 cxd5 Rxd5 27 Rxd5 Qxd5. What is the material balance?



20. The count on c5 is 5-5. Visualize the position after the moves 33 dxc5+ Nxc5 34 Ndxc5 Nxc5 35 Nxc5 Rxc5 36 Rxc5 Rxc5 37 Rxc5 Kxc5. What is the material balance?

CHAPTER 2. EXCHANGES INVOLVING AN EXTRA ATTACKER

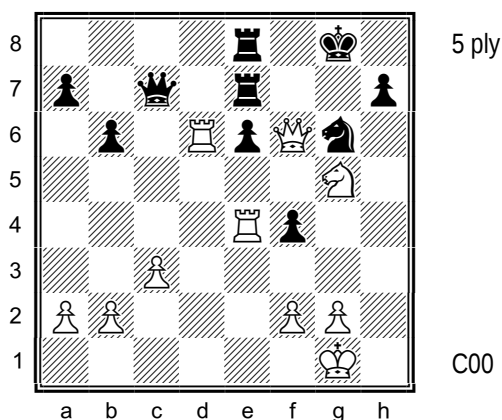
This chapter features exercises in which one side (White) has an extra attacker on the hot spot. As in the previous chapter, the value of the attackers and defenders is the same; the only difference here is that White has an extra attacker. With an extra attacker and pieces of the same value, the stronger side will always win material. How much depends on the situation:

- ✧ If White has an extra piece attacking an enemy piece not defended by pawns, then White will win a piece – see exercises 23, 24, 35, and 36;
- ✧ If White has an extra piece attacking a piece that is defended by a pawn, then White will win a pawn – see exercises 22, 28 and 29; and
- ✧ If White has an extra piece attacking a pawn that is defended only by pieces, then White will win a pawn – see exercises 21, 25, 26, 27, and 37.

Including an extra pair of pawns in the series of exchanges doesn't change anything – see exercises 31, 32, 33, 34, 39, and 40.

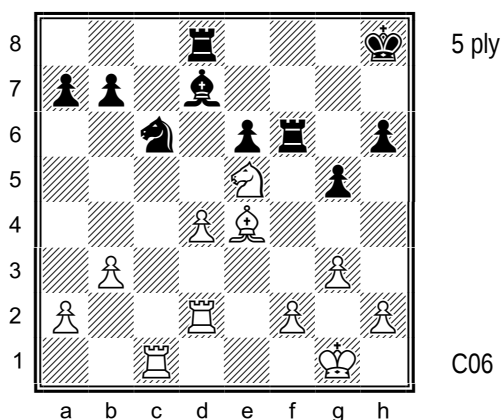
This chapter contains twenty exercises ranging in depth from five to nine half-moves, as seen in the following table:

Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13 ⁺	TOTAL
Exercises:	-	4	-	12	-	4	-	-	-	-	20



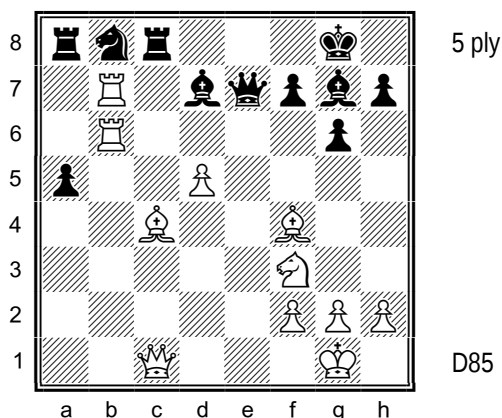
21. White's Rook on d6 is under attack, but White has a favorable count on e6 (4-2). Visualize the position after the moves 38 Rdx6¹ Rxe6 39 Rxe6² Rxe6 40 Qxe6+. What is the material balance?

¹ This pins Black's Re7 and threatens 39 Nf7 and 40 Nh6, mate. ² 39...Rf8 gives White a choice between 40 Qd4 and 40 Rc6 with 41 Qe6+.



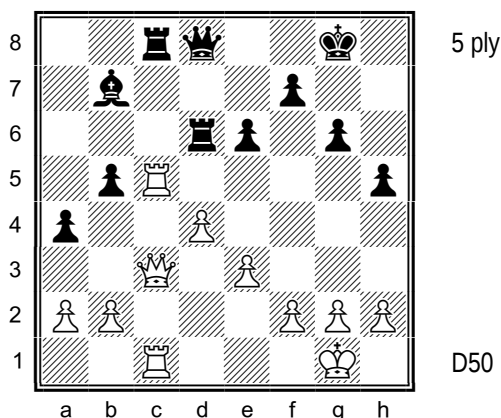
22. White is up a pawn. The count on c6 is 3-2. Visualize the position after the moves 27 Bxc6¹ Bxc6² 28 Nxc6 bxc6 29 Rxc6. What is the material balance?

¹ 27 Nxc6 and 27 Nxd7 are also possible. ² 27...bxc6 28 Nxc6 gives White a strong Knight versus Black's bad Bishop if Black doesn't transpose back to the game with 28...Bxc6 29 Rxc6.



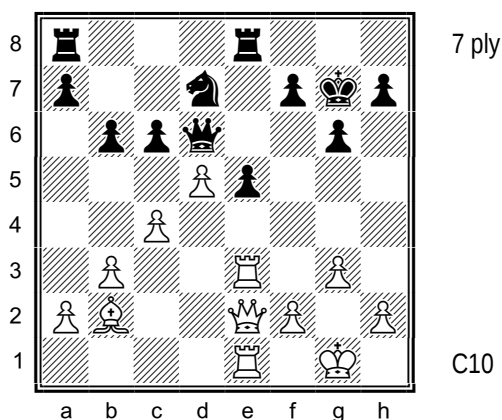
23. The count on b8 is 3-2. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Rxb8¹ Raxb8² 23 Rxb8 Rxb8 24 Bxb8. What is the material balance?

¹ Taking with the cheapest piece (22 Bxb8) doesn't threaten anything, so Black is not forced to exchange pieces. ² 22...Qe8 23 Rxa8 Rxa8 24 Qb1 also leads to exchanges, for example, 24...a4 25 Rb8 Rxb8 26 Qxb8 Qxb8 27 Bxb8 a3 28 Be5.



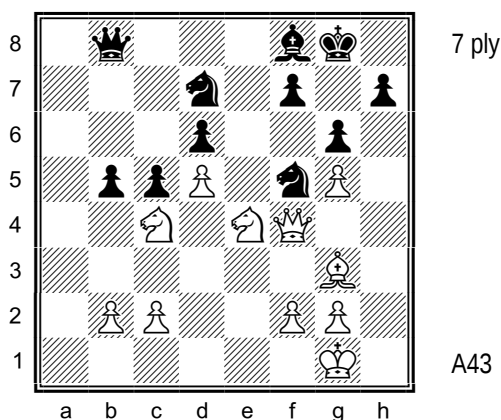
24. White is down a piece for a pawn, but has a 3-2 advantage on c8. Visualize the position after the moves 29 Rxc8 Bxc8 30 Qxc8 Qxc8¹ 31 Rxc8+. What is the material balance?

¹ After 30...Kg7 White can either take on d8 with the better Rook ending or play 31 Qb7, threatening both 32 Qxb5 and 32 Rc7, and if 31...Rb6 then 32 Qe4, intending to gang up on the b-pawn with 33 Rc5 and 34 Qd3.



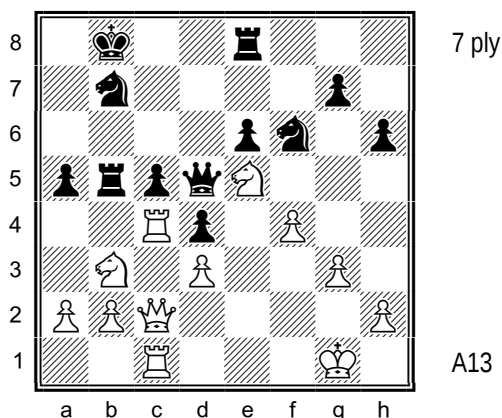
25. The count on e5 is 4-3. Visualize the position after the moves 27 Rxe5¹ Rxe5² 28 Bxe5+ Nxe5 29 Qxe5+ Qxe5 30 Rxe5. What is the material balance?

¹ White's threat is 28 Re6+. White can also play 27 Bxe5 or even 27 f4 f6 before exchanging on e5.
² 27...Nxe5 transposes.



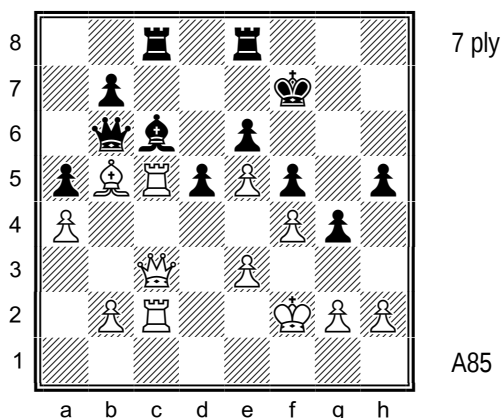
26. White's Knight on c4 is under attack, but White has an extra attacker on d6. Visualize the position after the moves 33 Ncxd6 Nxd6¹ 34 Nxd6 Bxd6 35 Qxd6 Qxd6² 36 Bxd6. What is the material balance?

¹ 33...Bxd6 34 Nxd6 transposes, while moving the Nf5 allows 35 Qxf7. ² 35...Qc8 can be met by 36 Qc6.



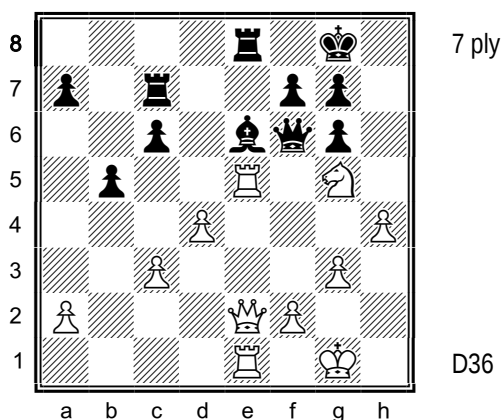
27. The count on c5 is 4-3. Visualize the position after the moves 28 Nxc5 Nxc5¹ 29 Rxc5 Rxc5² 30 Qxc5 Qxc5 31 Rxc5. What is the material balance?

¹ 28...Nd6 loses a Rook to 29 Na6+ Ka7 30 Nc7, with either 31 Nxd5 or 31 Nxb5+. If Black prevents this with 28...Rb6, then 29 Nb3 attacks Black's d-pawn.
² 29...Qb7 can be met by 30 Nc6+ Ka8 31 Qa4.



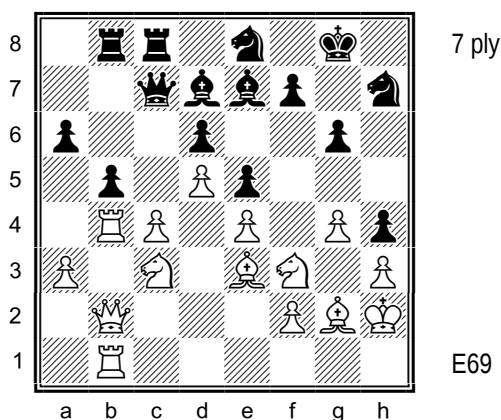
28. The count on c6 is 4-3. Visualize the position after the moves 30 Bxc6 Rxc6¹ 31 Rxc6 bxc6² 32 Qxc6 Qxc6 33 Rxc6. What is the material balance?

¹ 30...bxc6 allows 31 Qxa5. ² Black can also play 31...Qxc6, intending to meet 32 Qb3 Qd7 33 Rc5 with 33...d4, for example, 34 Rxa5 dxe3+ with either 35 Qxe3 Rc8 or 35 Kxe3 Rd8.



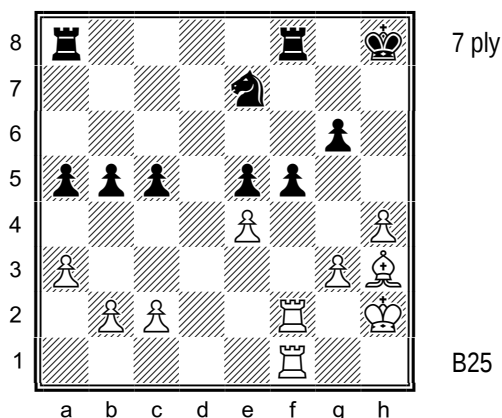
29. The count on e6 is 4-3. Visualize the position after the moves 27 Nxe6 Rxe6¹ 28 Rxe6 Qxe6 29 Qxe6 fxe6 30 Rxe6. What is the material balance?

¹ 27...fxe6 28 Rxe6 transposes.



30. The count on b5 is 5-3. Visualize the position after the moves 28 cxb5 axb5¹ 29 Nxb5 Bxb5 30 Rxb5 Rxb5² 31 Qxb5. What is the material balance?

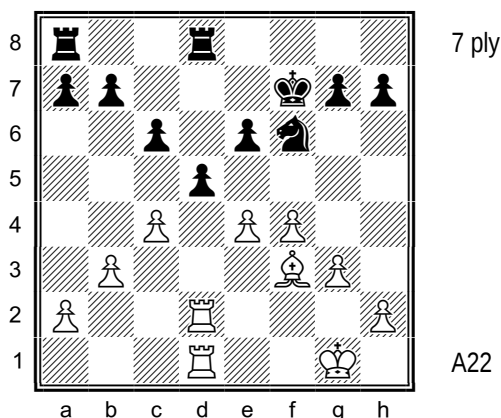
¹ Black can win a piece for two pawns with 28...Qxc3 29 Qxc3 Rxc3 30 bxa6, but White has compensation, for example, 30...Ra8 31 Rb8 Rxa6 32 R1b7 Nf8 33 Rxe8 Bxe8 34 Rxe7 with 35 Nxb4. ² 30...Ra8 loses material to 31 Rb7 Qd8 32 Bb6.



31. The count on f5 is 4-3. Visualize the position after the moves 31 exf5¹ gxf5 32 Bxf5 Nxf5² 33 Rxf5 Rxf5 34 Rxf5. What is the material balance?

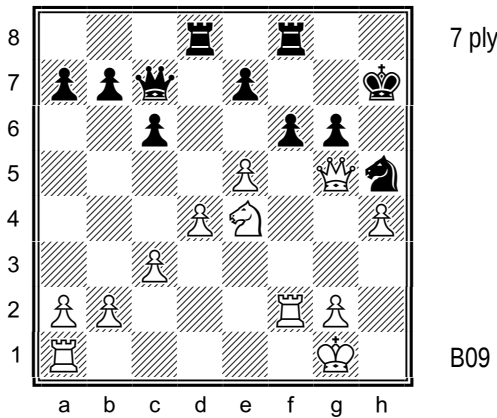
¹ This move gives White connected passed pawns on the queenside and a strategically won ending.

² Otherwise Be4 will force a pair of Rooks off the board, e.g., 32...b4 33 axb4 axb4 34 Be4.



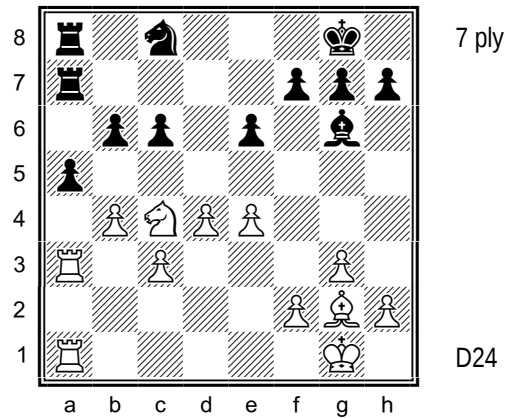
32. The count on d5 is 5-4. Visualize the position after the moves 32 cxd5 cxd5 33 exd5 Nxd5¹ 34 Bxd5 exd5² 35 Rxd5. What is the material balance?

¹ If 33...exd5, then White can either transpose with 34 Bxd5 or add more pressure with 34 g4. ² White gains control of the d-file regardless of how Black recaptures.



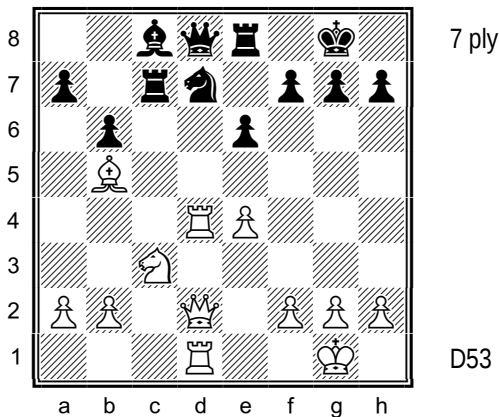
33. White is up a pawn. The count on f6 is 4-3. Visualize the position after the moves 24 exf6 exf6¹ 25 Nxf6+² Nxf6 26 Rxf6 Rxf6³ 27 Qxf6. What is the material balance?

¹ 24...e6 allows 25 Qe5, with threats of 26 g4 or 26 Ng5+ with 27 Nxe6. ² The double attack on h5 and h7 forces Black to take on f6. ³ 26...Qg7 allows White to double his Rooks on the f-file with 27 Raf1.



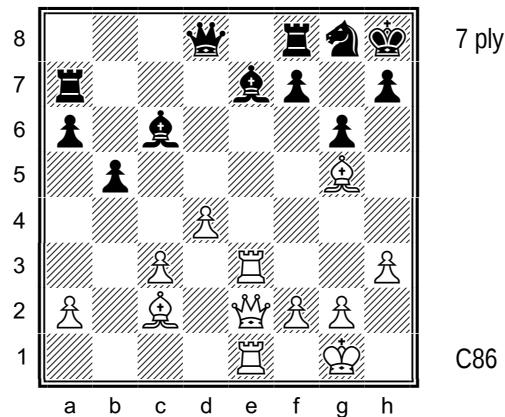
34. The count on a5 is 4-3. Visualize the position after the moves 25 bxa5 bxa5¹ 26 Rxa5 Rxa5² 27 Rxa5 Rxa5 28 Nxa5. What is the material balance?

¹ Black can play 25...b5, as long as he answers 26 Nb6 with 26...Rb8, since 26...Nxb6 loses to 27 axb6 Rxa3 28 Rxa3 Rxa3 b7. ² Other moves allow White to play e5, attacking Black's pawn on c6.



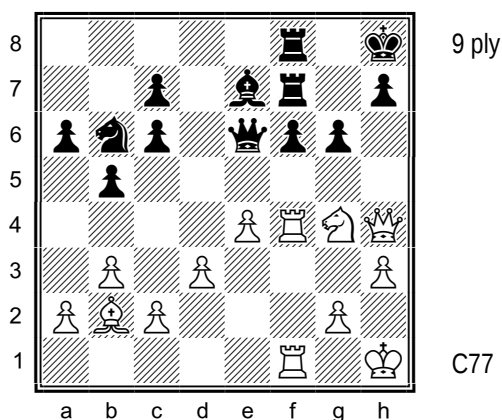
35. The count on d7 is 4-3. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Bxd7 Bxd7 20 Rxd7 Rxd7¹ 21 Qxd7 Qxd7² 22 Rxd7. What is the material balance?

¹ 20...Qc8 loses to 21 Rd8. ² 21...Qb8 and 21...Qa8 avoid the exchange of Queens, but gives Black passive pieces.



36. The count on e7 is 4-3. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Bxe7 Nxe7 25 Rxe7 Rxe7¹ 26 Qxe7 Qxe7² 27 Rxe7. What is the material balance?

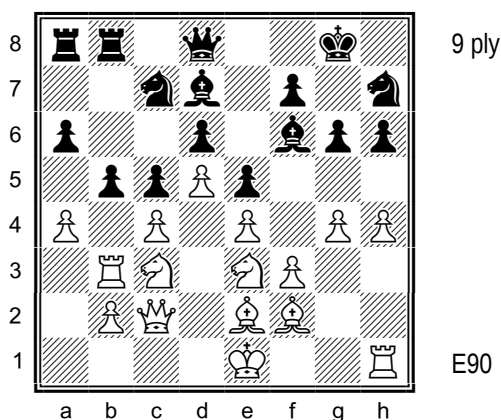
¹ 25...Ra8 lets White expand with either 26 Qe5+ or 26 Bb3. ² Avoiding the exchange of Queens dooms Black to passivity, for example, 26...Qc8 27 Qf6+ Kg8 28 Bb3 with 29 Re7.



37. The count on f6 is 5-4. Visualize the position after the moves 26 Nxf6 Bxf6 27 Rxf6¹ Rxf6 28 Rxf6 Rxf6 29 Qxf6+² Qxf6 30 Bxf6+. What is the material balance?

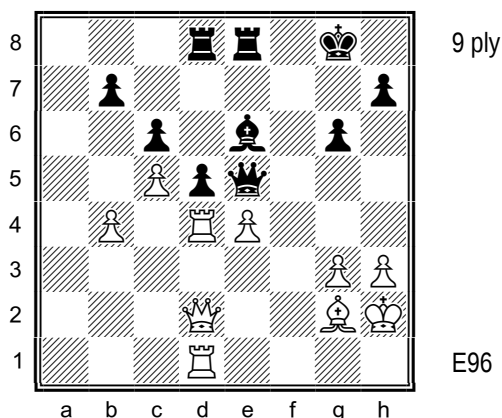
¹ White wants to keep his Bishop on b2 in order to threaten a discovered check on the long diagonal.

² The double attack on Black's King and Queen forces Black to trade Queens.



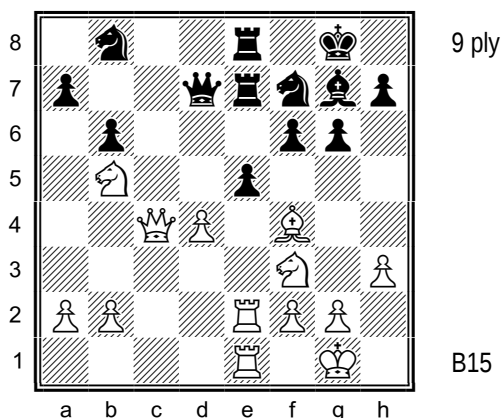
38. The count on b5 is 5-4. Visualize the position after the moves 25 cxb5 axb5 26 Nxb5¹ Nxb5² 27 Bxb5³ Bxb5 28 Rxb5 Rxb5 29 axb5. What is the material balance?

¹ 26 axb5 wins a pawn. ² 26...Rxa4 gives Black at least equality, for example 27 Nxc7 Qxc7 is fine for Black, as is 27 Nxd6 Rxb3 28 Qxb3 Ra1+ 29 Nd1 Ba4. ³ Now White's a-pawn is always defended.



39. The count on d5 is 5-4. Visualize the position after the moves 41 exd5 Bxd5¹ 42 Bxd5+ cxd5 43 Rxd5² Rxd5 44 Qxd5+ Qxd5 45 Rxd5. What is the material balance?

¹ 41...cxd5 transposes. ² The double attack on e5 and d8 (3-1 on d8) forces Black's reply.



40. The count on e5 is 5-4. Visualize the position after the moves 22 dxe5 fxe5¹ 23 Nxe5² Bxe5 24 Rxe5 Rxe5³ 25 Rxe5 Rxe5⁴ 26 Bxe5. What is the material balance?

¹ The only way to take on e5. ² The dual threat of 24 Nxd7 and Nxf7 forces Black's next move. ³ 24...Nc6 25 Rxe7 is not much better. ⁴ 25...Rc8 can be met by 26 Qe6, for example, a) 26...Qd8 27 Nxa7; b) 26...a6 27 Nc3, intending Ne4-f6; and c) 26...Rc2 loses the Nb8 to 27 Qe8+ Qxe8 28 Rxe8+.

CHAPTER 3. EXCHANGES INVOLVING PIECES OF DIFFERENT VALUE

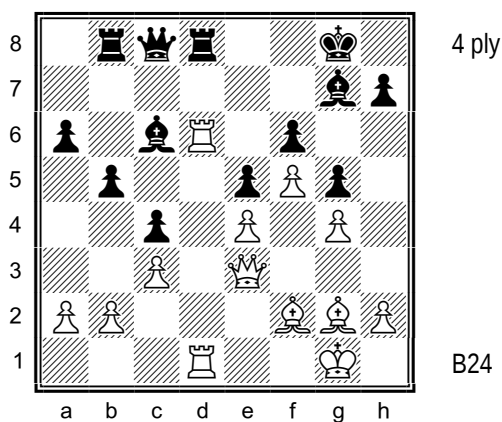
This chapter features exercises in which a series of exchanges takes place on a single square, but here the value of the pieces involved in the exchanges of different. Typical scenarios include the following:

- ✧ Black is defending with his Queen, but White's Queen is not involved in the attack – see exercises 41, 42, 59, 60, 61, 62, and 63;
- ✧ White is attacking with his Queen, but Black's Queen is not involved in the defense – see exercises 52, 53, and 54;
- ✧ White is leading with his Queen, but one of Black's defenders is also a Queen – see exercises 49, 50, 51, 55, 56, and 64; and
- ✧ Black is defending a minor piece with other minor pieces, while White is attacking with a Rook – see exercises 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, and 57.

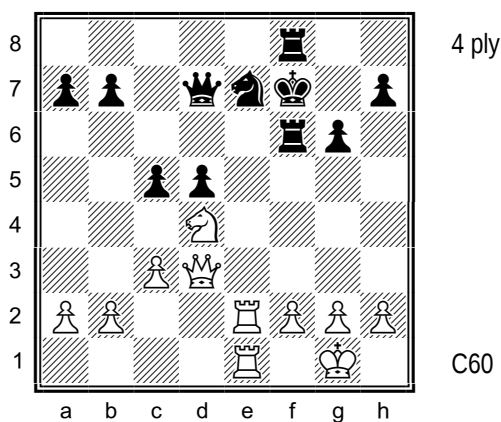
One interesting sidelight occurs when the defender is unable to recapture with the cheapest piece available, as in exercises 65, 66, and 67. In the chapter, we also see instances where White prefers to capture with a Rook instead of a Bishop, keeping the Bishop on the board – see exercises 60 and 67. See exercise 57 for an illustration of Black’s resources against this idea.

This chapter contains twenty-eight exercises ranging in depth from four to seven half-moves, as seen in the following table:

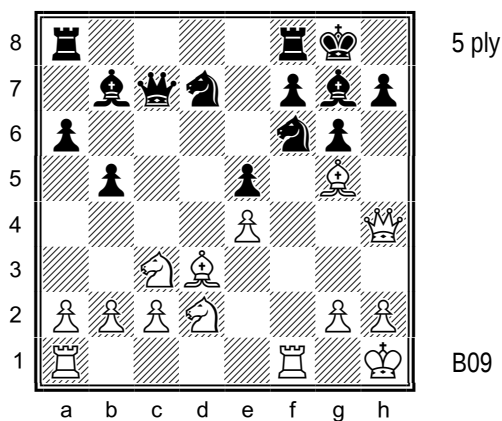
Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13⁺	TOTAL 28
Exercises:	2	12	12	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	



41. The count on d8 is 2-2, but Black's first defender is his Queen. Visualize the position after the moves 27 Rxd8+ Qxd8 28 Rxd8+ Rxd8. What is the material balance?

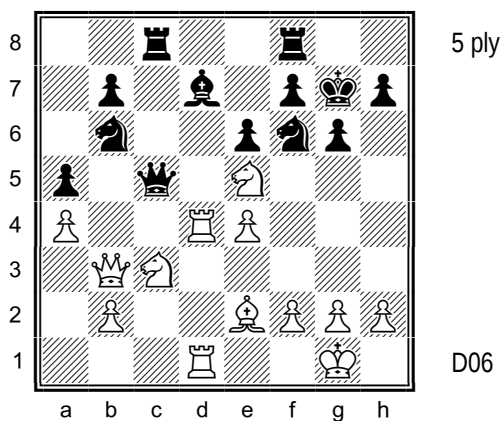


42. The count on e7 is 2-2, but Black is defending with his Queen. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxe7+ Qxe7 22 Rxe7+ Kxe7. What is the material balance?

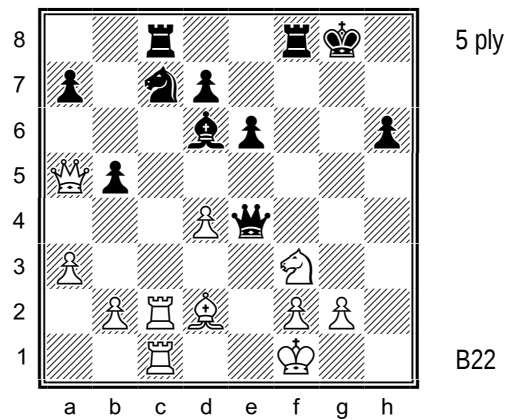
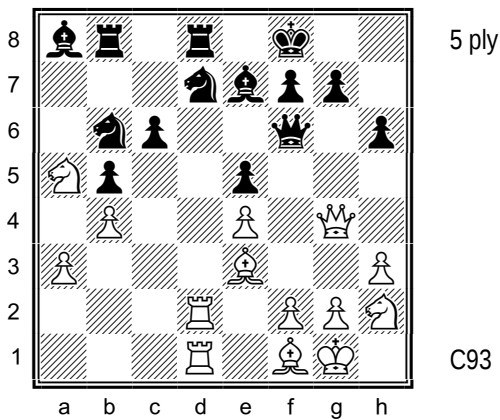


43. White is up a pawn. The count on f6 is 3-2. Black is defending with two minor pieces, while White's second attacker is his Rook. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxf6¹ Nxf6 18 Rxf6 Bxf6 19 Qxf6. What is the material balance?

¹ 17 Rxf6 is not as good, even though White is up a pawn after 17...h6 18 Rf3 hxg5 19 Qxg5.

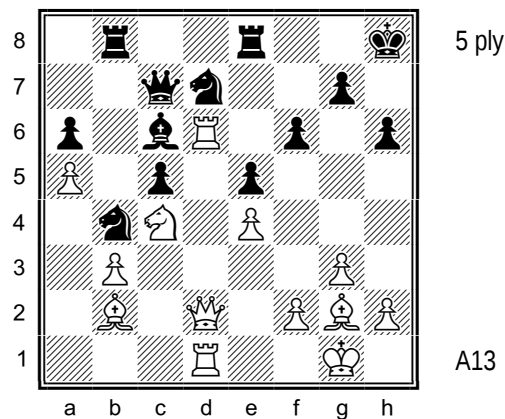
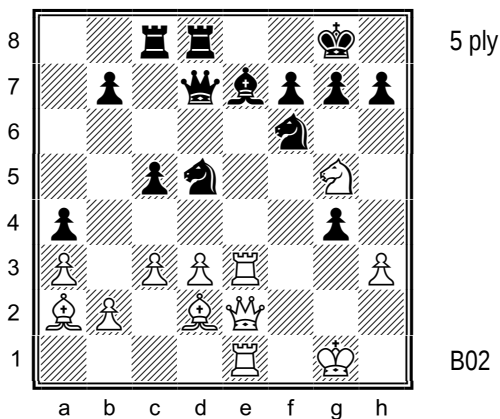


44. The count on d7 is 3-2. Black is defending with two minor pieces, while White's second attacker is his Rook. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Nxd7 Nfxd7 23 Rxd7 Nxd7 24 Rxd7. What is the material balance?



45. The count on d7 is 3-2. White is leading with his Rooks, while Black is defending with a minor piece. Visualize the position after the moves 31 Rxd7 Nxd7 32 Rxd7 Rxd7 33 Qxd7. What is the material balance?

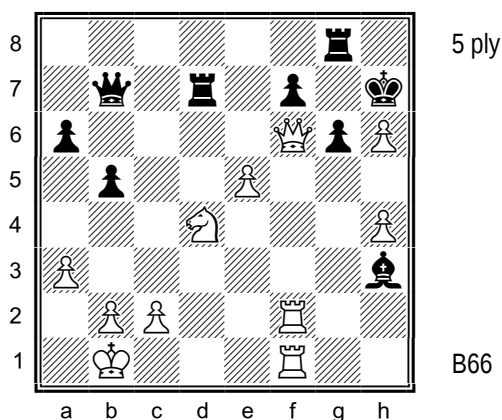
46. The count on c7 is 3-2. White is leading with his Rooks, while Black is defending with a minor piece. Visualize the position after the moves 29 Rxc7 Rxc7 30 Rxc7 Bxc7 31 Qxc7. What is the material balance?



47. White is down two pawns. The count on e7 is 3-2. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Rxe7¹ Qxe7² 26 Qxe7 Nxe7 27 Rxe7. What is the material balance?

48. The count on d7 is 3-2. Black is defending with a minor piece, while White is leading with a Rook. Visualize the position after the moves 31 Rxd7 Bxd7 32 Qxd7 Qxd7 33 Rxd7. What is the material balance?

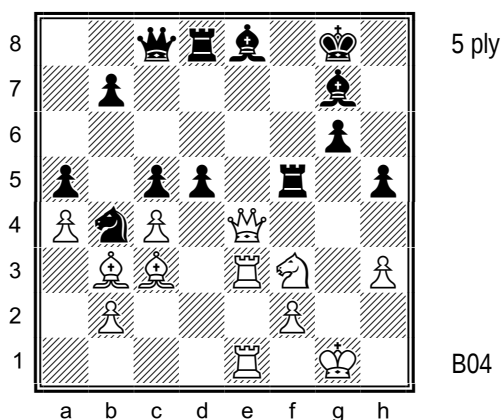
¹ 25 Nxf7 wins a pawn and gives Black ways to go wrong, e.g., 25...Kxf7 26 Rxe7+ Qxe7 27 Qxe7 wins Black's Queen, as does 25...Nxe3 26 Ne5+. Black's best reply is simply 25...Re8 26 Ne5, when White is up a pawn. ² 25...Nxe7 26 Qxe7 Qxe7 transposes, although Black can also play 26...c4.



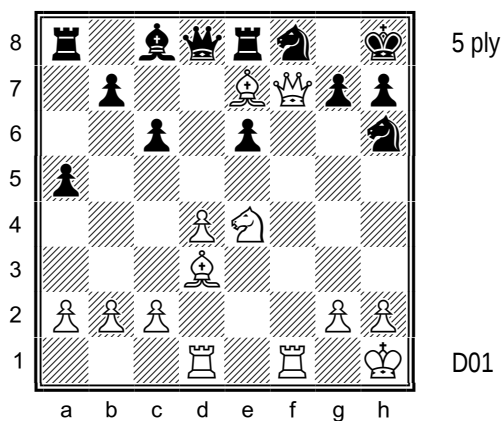
49. White is up two pawns, but two of his pieces are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 33 Qxf7+ Rxf7¹ 34 Rxf7+ Qxf7² 35 Rxf7+. What is the material balance?

¹ 33...Kh8 allows White to protect all of his pieces with 34 Qf6+ Kh7 35 e6 Re7 (35...Bxf1 allows 36 exd7, with the dual threat of 37 d8 and 37 Qxf1) 36 Rg1, when 36...Kxh6 loses a Rook to 37 Nf5+.

² White is up two pawns after 34...Kxh6 Rxb7 Bxf1 and will win Black's a-pawn.

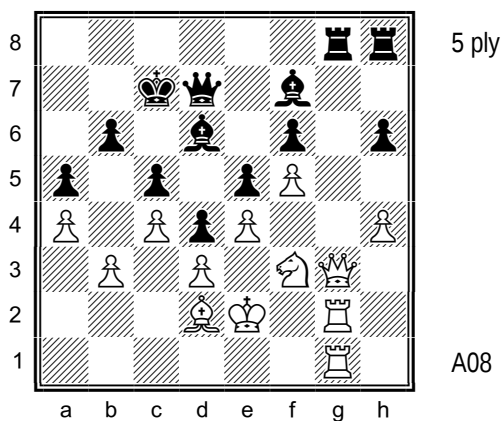


50. Black is up a pawn. The count on e8 is 3-2, but White is leading with his Queen. Can White take on e8? Visualize the position after the moves 28 Qxe8+ Rxe8 29 Rxe8+ Qxe8 30 Rxe8+. What is the material balance?



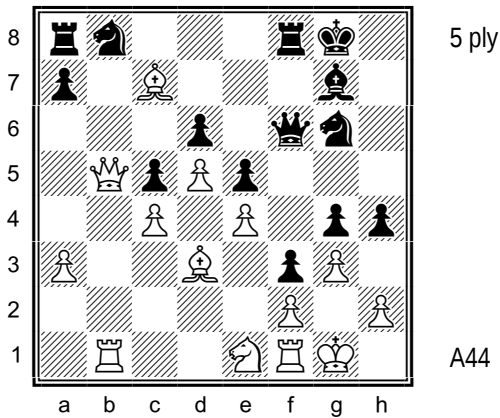
51. Both Queens are under attack. The count on f8 is 3-2, but White is leading with his Queen. Can White take on f8? Visualize the position after the moves 18 Qxf8+¹ Rxf8 19 Rxf8+² Qxf8 20 Bxf8. What is the material balance?

¹ Material is even after 18 Bxd8 Nxf7, for example, 19 Bxa5 Rxa5 20 Rxf7 Rxa2. ² Material is even after 19 Bxd8 Rxd8.

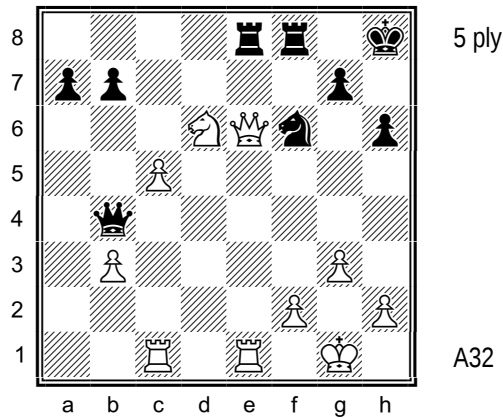


52. The count on g8 is 3-2, but White is leading with his Queen. Can White take on g8? Visualize the position after the moves 50 Qxg8 Rxd8¹ 51 Rxd8 Bxd8 52 Rxd8. What is the material balance?

¹ 50...Bxd8 51 Rxd8 transposes.

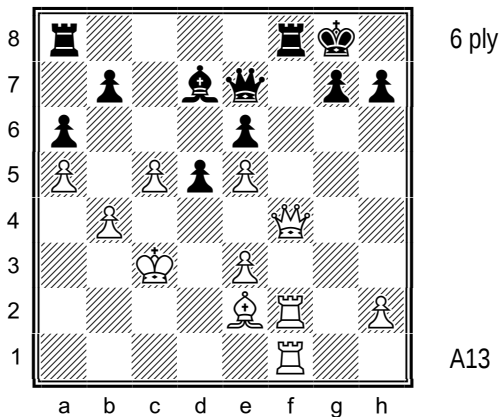


53. White has an extra attacker on b8, but his second attacker is his Queen. Can White take on b8? Visualize the position after the moves 22 Bxb8 Raxb8 23 Qxb8 Rxb8 24 Rxb8+. What is the material balance?

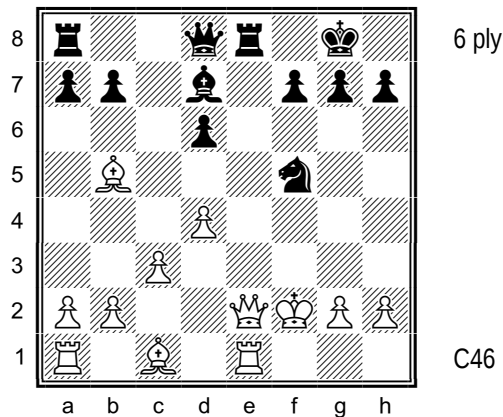


54. White is up a pawn. The count on e8 is 3-2, but White's second attacker is his Queen. Visualize the position after the moves 26 Nxe8 Rxe8¹ 27 Qxe8+² Nxe8 28 Rxe8+. What is the material balance?

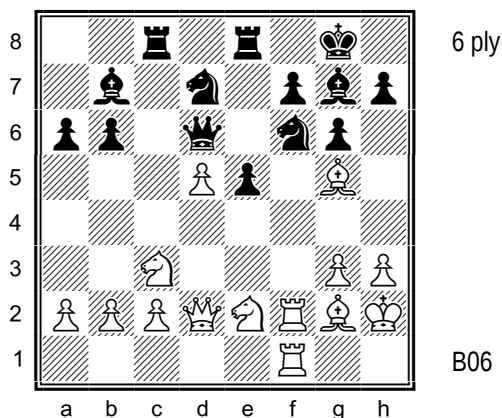
¹ 26...Nxe8 leaves Black down the exchange and a pawn. ² 27 Qc4 (or 27 Qf7) loses a piece to 27...Rxe1.



55. The count on f8 is 3-3. White is leading with his Queen, but Black's Queen is also involved in the defense. Visualize the position after the moves 43 Qxf8+ Rxf8 44 Rxf8+ Qxf8 45 Rxf8+ Kxf8. What is the material balance?

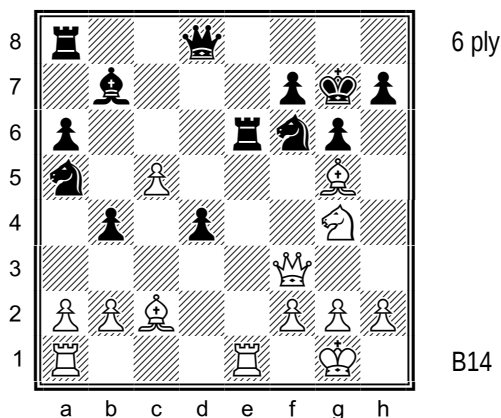


56. The count on e8 is 3-3. White is leading with his Queen, but Black's Queen is also involved in the defense. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Qxe8+ Bxe8 20 Rxe8+ Qxe8 21 Bxe8 Rxe8. What is the material balance?



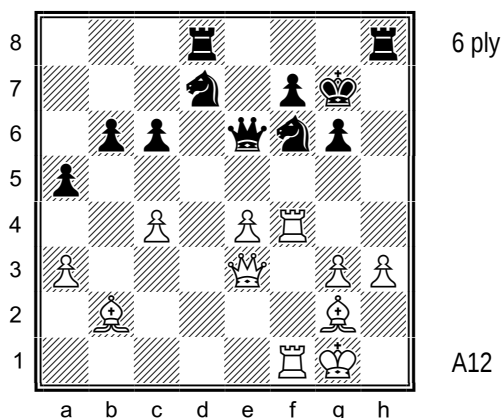
57. The count on f6 is 3-3. Black is defending with minor pieces, while White's second attacker is a Rook. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Bxf6¹ Nxf6 20 Rxf6 Qxf6² 21 Rxf6 Bxf6. What is the material balance?

¹ 19 Rxf6 Bxf6 20 Ne4 is met by 20...Bxg5, when Black up a piece after 21 Nxd6 Bxd2 22 Nxc8 Rxc8.
² White is up a piece after 20...Bxf6 21 Ne4 Qf8 22 Nxf6+ Kg7 23 Nxe8+ Qxe8.



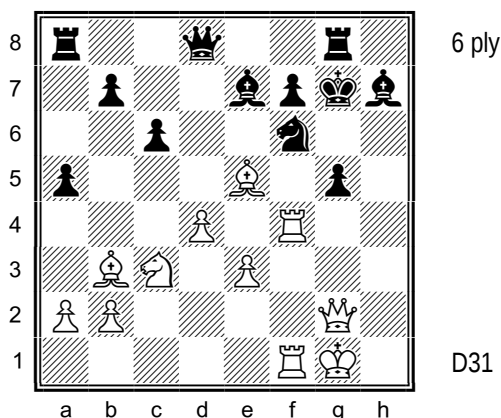
58. The count on f6 is 3-3, but White's Queen is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Bxf6+¹ Rxf6 22 Qxf6+ Qxf6² 23 Nxf6 Kxf6. What is the material balance?

¹ Other alternatives are 21 Qxf6+ or 21 Rxe6 Bxf3 22 Bxf6+ Qxf6 23 Rxf6 Bxg4 24 Rf4 Be6 25 Rxd4, when White is up the exchange and a pawn.
² 22... Kg8 loses to 23 Nh6+ Kf8 24 Qxf7, mate or 24 Qh8, mate.



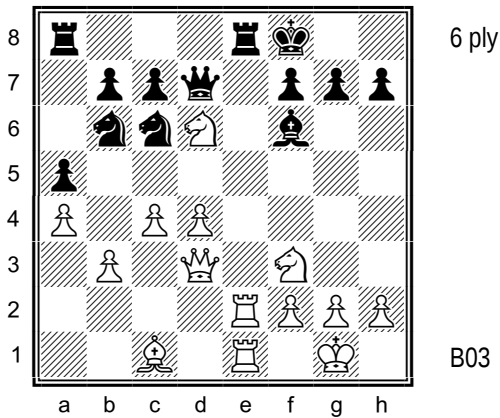
59. The count on f6 is 3-3, but two of Black's defenders are his Queen and King. Visualize the position after the moves 29 Rxf6 Nxf6 30 Bxf6+¹ Qxf6² 31 Rxf6 Kxf6. What is the material balance?

¹ 30 Rxf6 is also good.
² 30...Kh7 can be met by 31 Qg5, when White's main threaten is 32 Qh4+ and 33 Qxh8, mate.



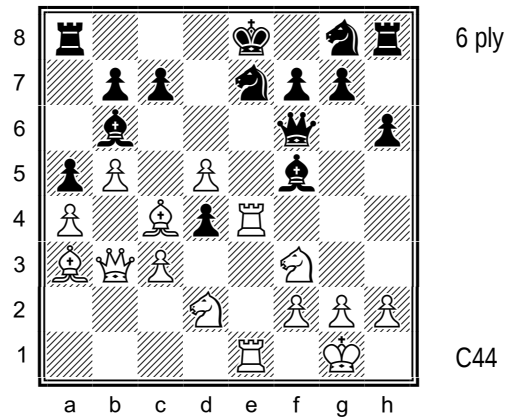
60. The count on f6 is 3-3, but two of Black's defenders are his Queen and King. Visualize the position after the moves 28 Rxf6¹ Bxf6 29 Rxf6 Qxf6² 30 Bxf6+ Kxf6. What is the material balance?

¹ 28 Bxf6 is also good, but 28 Qxg5 loses the Queen to 28...Kh8.
² 29...Qb6 30 Rxf7+ leads to mate: a) 30...Kh6 31 Qh3+ Kg6 31 Qh7, mate or b) 30...Kg6 31 Qe4+ Kh5 32 Rh7, mate.



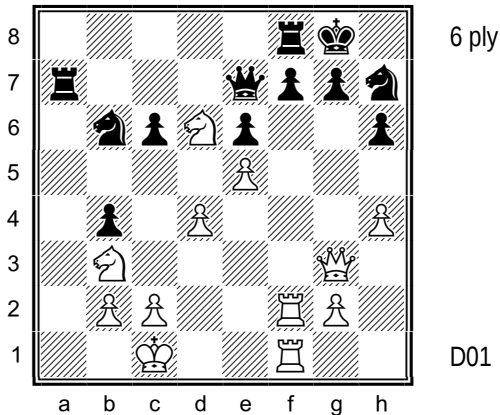
61. The count on e8 is 3-3, but two of Black's defenders are his Queen and King. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Rxe8+ Rxe8 19 Rxe8+ Qxe8 20 Nxe8 Kxe8¹. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here.



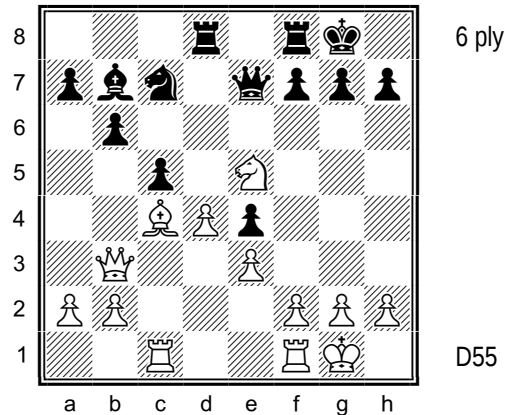
62. The count on e7 is 3-3, but two of Black's defenders are his Queen and King. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Rxe7+¹ Nxe7 18 Bxe7 Qxe7² 19 Rxe7+ Kxe7. What is the material balance?

¹ 17 Bxe7 is also good. ² 18...Qg6 allows 19 Qa3, threatening 20 Bf8+ and 21 Qe7+. Note that 20...Kd7 is met by 21 Ne5+, winning Black's Queen.



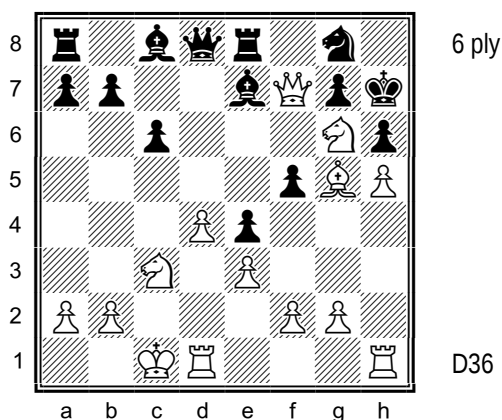
63. The count on f7 is 3-4, but one of Black's first defenders is his Queen. Visualize the position after the moves 27 Rxf7¹ Rxf7 28 Rxf7 Qxf7 29 Nxf7 Rxf7. What is the material balance?

¹ The threat of 28 Qg7 mate and 28 Rxe7 forces Black to take on f7.



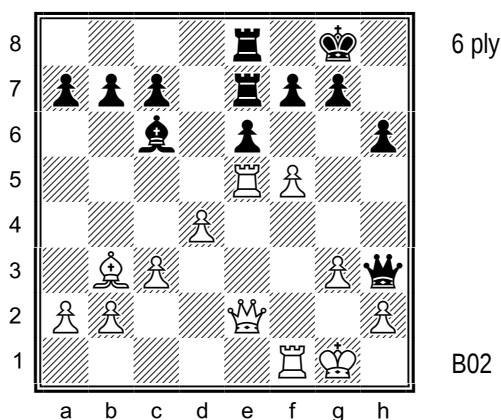
64. The count on f7 is 3-3, but Black is defending with his Rook, Queen and King, while White is attacking with his minor pieces. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nxf7 Rxf7¹ 17 Bxf7+ Qxf7² 18 Qxf7+ Kxf7. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a couple of pawns after 16...Rb8 17 Nd6+ Kh8 18 dxc5. ² Otherwise White is up the exchange and a pawn.



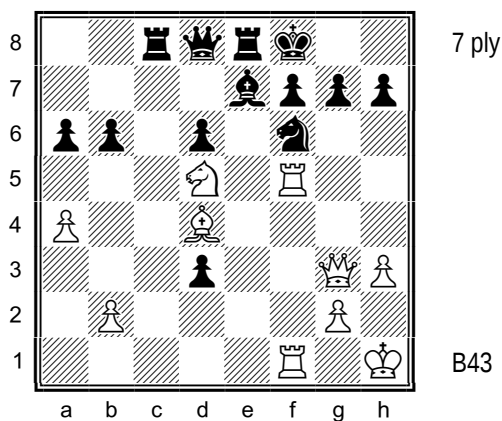
65. The count on e7 is 3-3, but Black can't recapture with his cheapest piece. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Nxe7 Rxe7¹ 19 Bxe7 Qxe7 20 Qxe7 Nxe7. What is the material balance?

¹ 18...Nxe7 loses a piece to 19 Bf6 Rg8 20 Bxe7.



66. The count on e6 is 4-4, but Black can't recapture with his cheapest piece. Visualize the position after the moves 23 fxe6 Rxe6¹ 24 Bxe6 Rxe6 25 Rxe6 fxe6². What is the material balance?

¹ Taking with the pawn allows 24 Rh5, winning Black's Queen. ² 25...Qxe6 just trades off Black's active Queen on h3.

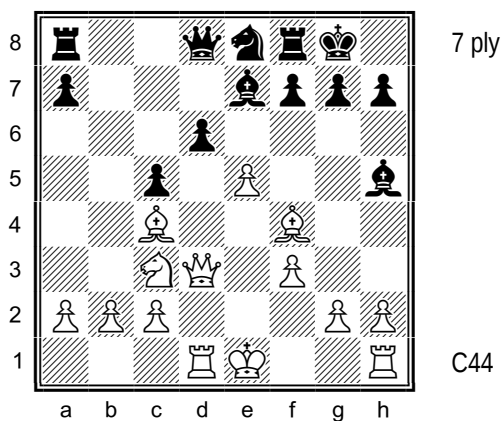


67. White is down three pawns. The count on f6 is 4-3. Visualize the position after the moves 26 Nxf6 Bxf6¹ 27 Rxf6² gxf6 28 Bxf6³ Qxf6⁴ 29 Rxf6. What is the material balance?

¹ 26...gxf6 allows 27 Be3 and 28 Bh6, mate.

² White's threat is 28 Rxf7+. Also playable is 27 Bxf6 gxf6 28 Rxf6. ³ White's threat is 28 Qg7, mate.

⁴ Black can defend with 28...Re7, for example, 29 Bxe7 Qxe7 30 Qxd3, when material is even after either 31 Qxa6 or 31 Qxh7.



68. White is up a pawn. The count on d6 is 4-3. Visualize the position after the moves 15 exd6 Nxd6¹ 16 Bxd6 Qxd6 17 Qxd6 Bxd6 18 Rxd6. What is the material balance?

¹ Black prefers to get rid of White's pawn while he can. After 15...Bf6 16 d7 Nc7 17 Qf5 Bg6 18 Qxc5, White is up three pawns and has pressure on c7. Note that the immediate 16 Qf5 Bg6 17 Qxc5 is less good because of 17...Rc8.

CHAPTER 4. EXCHANGES AFTER PENETRATION

This chapter features exercises in which a series of exchanges follows the penetration of a piece or pawn deep into the enemy position. Such penetration typically creates a threat that forces the defender to remove the intruder from the board, which often sets off a series of exchanges.

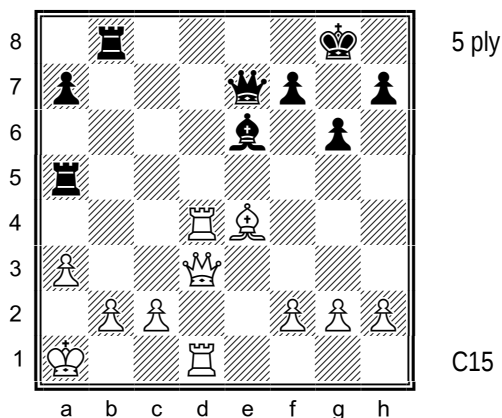
Typical ways that such penetration can be used to gain an advantage include the following:

- ✧ Forcing exchanges to gain a better ending – see exercises 69, 70, and 71;
- ✧ Penetrating to create threats that win material – see exercises 73, 74, and 75;
- ✧ Taking advantage of Black's Queen as a defender – see exercises 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 82, and 85; and
- ✧ Using a pawn to advantage – see exercises 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, and 88.

There are two noteworthy sub-themes seen in this chapter. First, White can often lead with his Queen without incurring a disadvantage – see exercises 70, 71, 72, and 81, and second, it's important to understand the reason why Black is forced to capture White's penetrating piece, as explained in the footnotes to exercises 69, 70, 71, 74, 75, 85, and 88.

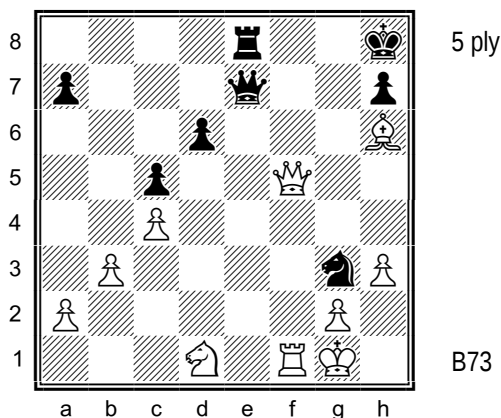
This chapter contains twenty exercises ranging in depth from five to eight half-moves, as seen in the following table:

Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13⁺	TOTAL
Exercises:	-	8	4	4	4	-	-	-	-	-	



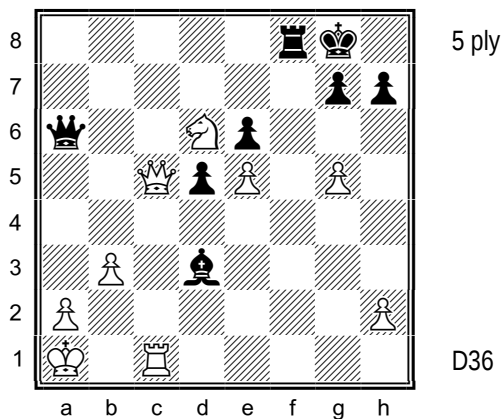
69. White is up two pawns. The count will be 2-2 after White occupies d8. Visualize the position after the moves 26 Rd8+¹ Rxd8 27 Qxd8+ Qxd8 28 Rxd8+. What is the material balance?

¹ The attack on Black's undefended pieces (both here and on the next move) forces Black to recapture on d8.



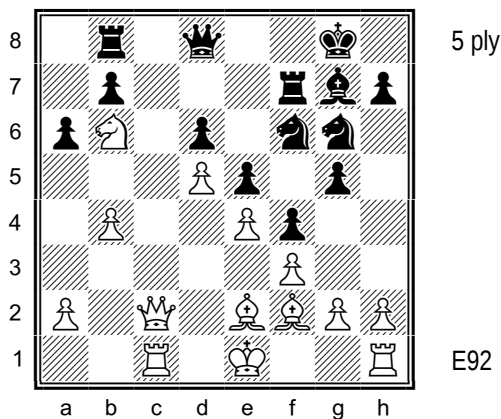
70. White is up a piece, but two of his pieces are under attack and he's leading with his Queen. Can White play 35 Qf8? Visualize the position after the moves 35 Qf8+¹ Rxf8 36 Rxf8+ Qxf8 37 Bxf8. What is the material balance?

¹ The threat of mate forces Black to take on f8, both here and on the next move.

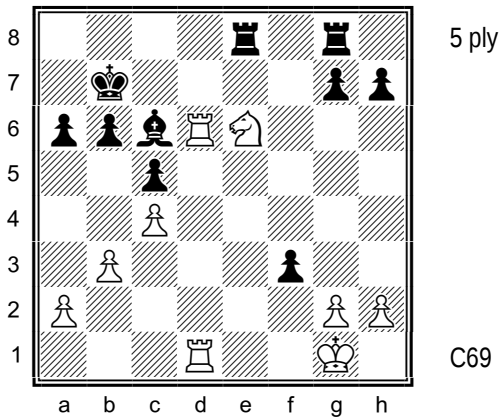


71. White will have the better ending if he can exchange some pieces. The count will be 2-2 after White occupies c8, but White is leading with his Queen. Can White play 36 Qc8? Visualize the position after the moves 36 Qc8¹ Rxc8 37 Rxc8+² Qxc8 38 Nxc8. What is the material balance?

¹ The dual threat of 32 Qxa6 and 32 Qxe6 forces Black's reply. ² This is the only way to avoid mate.

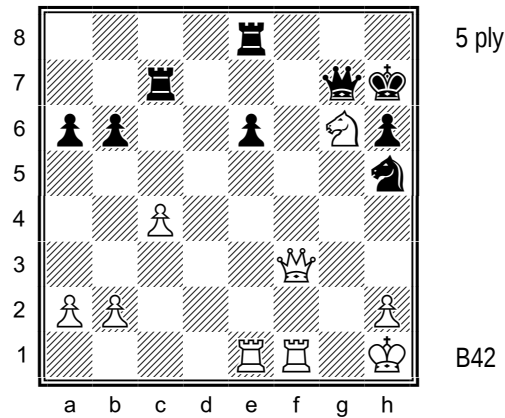


72. The count will be 2-2 after White occupies c8, but White is leading with his Queen. Can White play Qc8? Visualize the position after the moves 22 Qc8 Rxc8 23 Rxc8 Qxc8 24 Nxc8. What is the material balance?



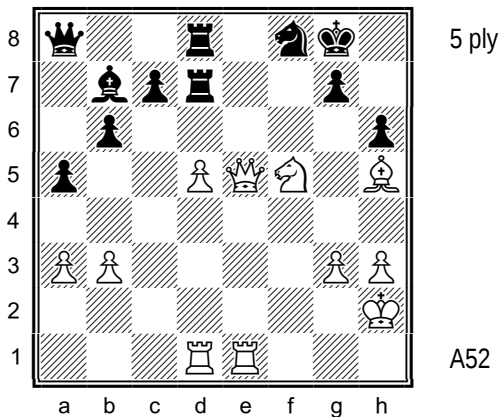
73. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 27 Nd8+ Rxd8¹ 28 Rxd8 Rxd8 29 Rxd8. What is the material balance?

¹ 27...Kc7 loses to 28 Rxc6+ Kb8 29 Rxb6+ Kc8 30 Ne6, when White is up a piece and Black's queenside pawns are weak.



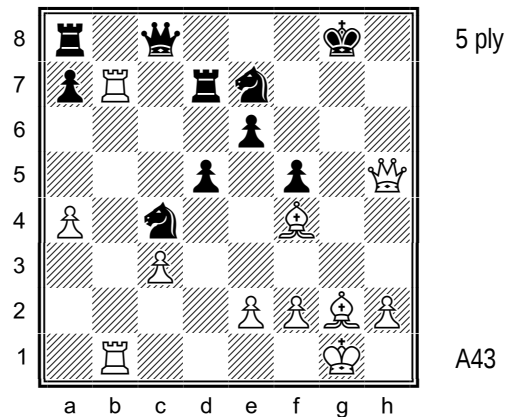
74. Both Knights are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 36 Nf8+ Rxf8¹ 37 Qxf8 Qxf8 38 Rxf8. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a Rook after 36...Kh8 37 Nxe6 Qd7 38 Nxc7, when 18...Qxc7 loses more material to 39 Rxe8+.

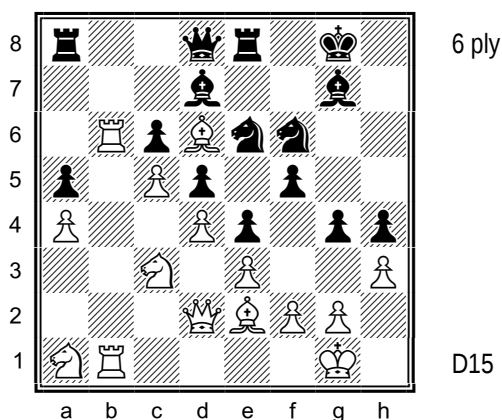


75. Black's Rook on d7 is tied to the defense of g7. Visualize the position after the moves 36 Be8 Rxe8¹ 37 Qxe8 Qxe8 38 Rxe8. What is the material balance?

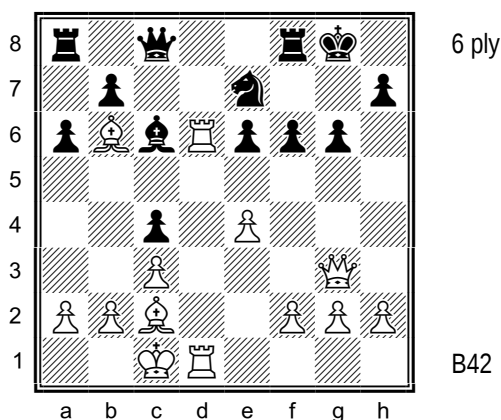
¹ 36...Rf7 loses to 37 Bxf7+ and 38 Qxg7, mate.



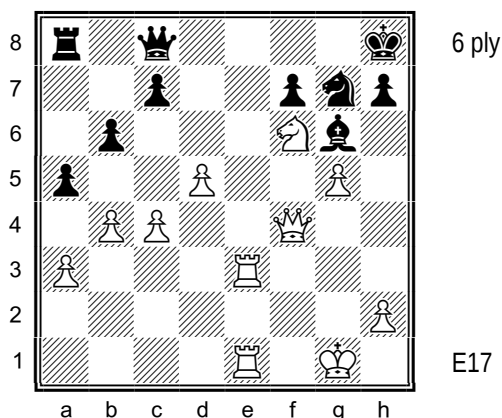
76. White is up a pawn. The count will be 2-2 after White occupies b8, but Black's second defender is his Queen. Visualize the position after the moves 30 Rb8 Rxb8 31 Rxb8 Qxb8 32 Bxb8. What is the material balance?



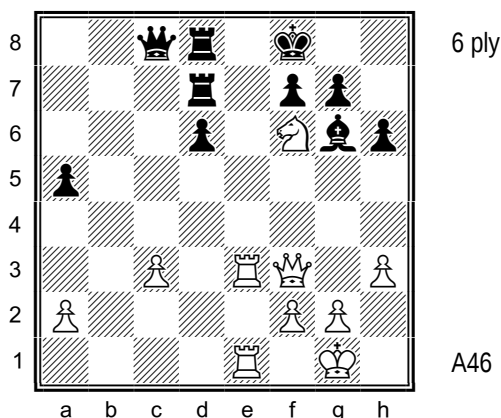
77. The count will be 2-3 after White occupies b8, but Black's second defender is his Queen, which is trapped. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Rb8 Rxb8 25 Rxb8 Qxb8 26 Bxb8 Rxb8. What is the material balance?



78. The count will be 2-3 after White occupies d8, but Black's second defender is his Queen, which is trapped. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rd8 Rxd8 21 Rxd8+ Qxd8 22 Bxd8 Rxd8. What is the material balance?

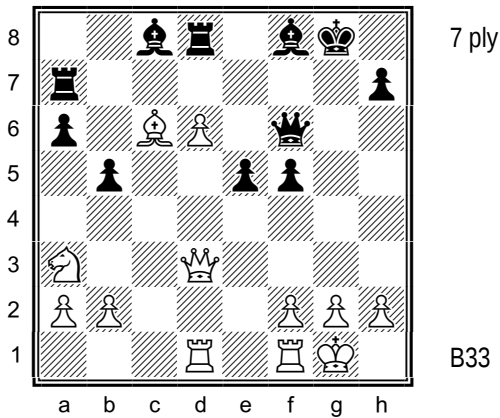


79. White is up the exchange and a pawn. The count will be 2-3 after White occupies e8, but Black's second defender is his Queen. Visualize the position after the moves 34 Re8+ Nxe8 35 Rxe8+ Qxe8 36 Nxe8 Rxe8. What is the material balance?



80. The count will be 2-3 after White occupies e8, but Black's second defender is his Queen. Visualize the position after the moves 38 Re8¹ Rxe8 39 Rxe8+ Qxe8 40 Nxe8 Kxe8. What is the material balance?

¹ White can also win the exchange with 38 Nxd7 Qxd7, but 38 Re8 wins material and gets Black's Queen off the board.

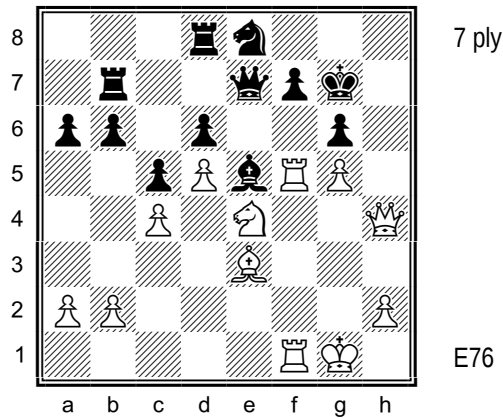


7 ply

B33

81. White is up a pawn, but White's d-pawn is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 22 d7 Bxd7¹ 23 Bxd7² Raxd7 24 Qxd7 Rxd7 25 Rxd7. What is the material balance?

¹ 22...Bb7 23 Bxb7 Rxb7 loses to 24 Qd5+, while 22...e4 allows 23 Qb3+ and 24 dxc8. ² White is already up a piece and threatens 24 Be6+ with 25 Qxd8, as well as 24 Qxf5.

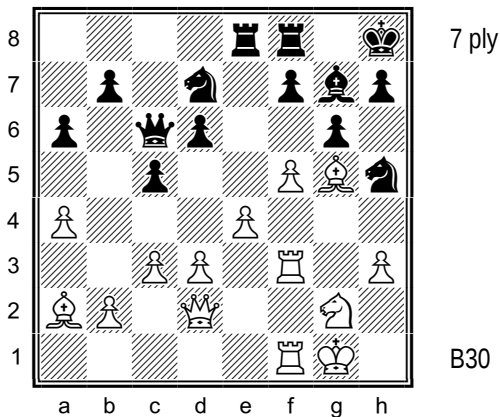


7 ply

E76

82. The count will be 4-4 after White occupies f6. Visualize the position after the moves 27 Nf6¹ Bxf6 28 gxf6+² Nxf6 29 Qxf6+ Qxf6 30 Rxf6. What is the material balance?

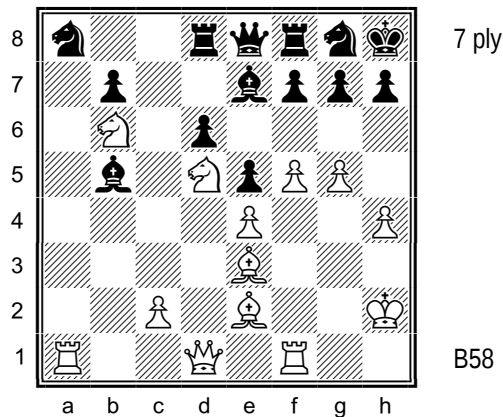
¹ This threatens 28 Qh6, mate, but White can also play 27 Rxe5 Qxe5 28 Qh6+ Kg8 29 Nf6, when 29...Nxf6 can be met by 30 gxf6. ² The pawn fork forces Black's reply.



7 ply

B30

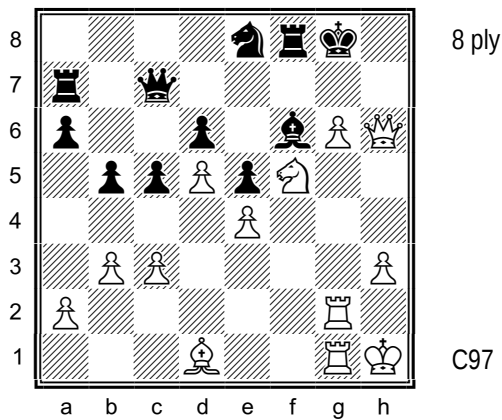
83. The count will be 3-3 after White plays occupies f6, trapping Black's Bishop. Visualize the position after the moves 27 f6 Ndx6 28 Bxf6 Nxf6 29 Rxf6 Bxf6 30 Rxf6. What is the material balance?



7 ply

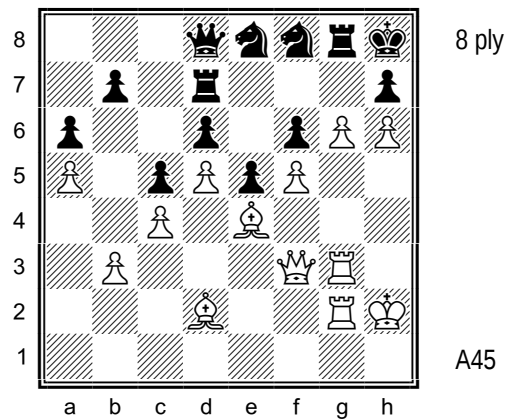
B58

84. White is down a pawn. The count will be 3-3 after White occupies f6, trapping Black's Bishop. Visualize the position after the moves 28 f6 gxf6 29 gxf6 Bxf6 30 Nxf6 Nxf6 31 Rxf6. What is the material balance?



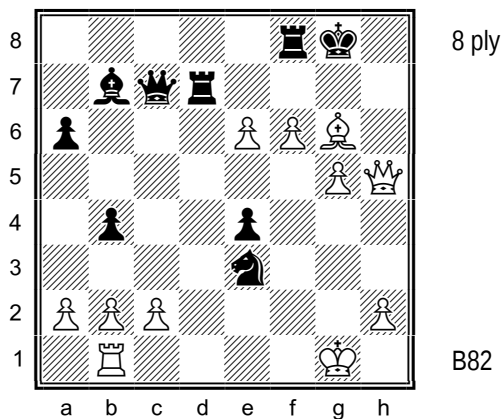
85. White is up two pawns. The count will be 4-4 after White plays g7, but Black's third defender is his Queen. Visualize the position after the moves 36 g7 Nxg7¹ 37 Nxg7 Bxg7 38 Rxdg7+ Qxg7 39 Rxdg7+ Rxdg7. What is the material balance?

¹ 26...Rf7 allows 37 Qh8, mate.



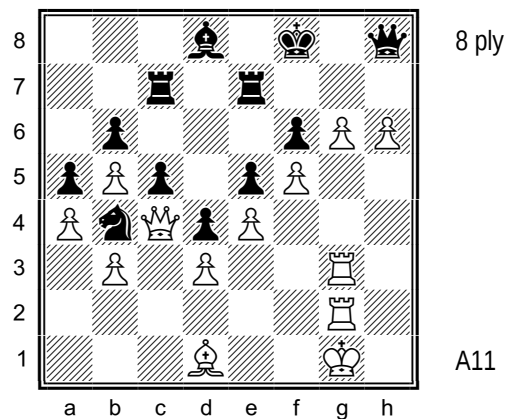
86. The count will be 3-4 after 51 g7, but White will be defending g7 with a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 51 g7+ Nxg7 52 hxg7+ Rxdg7¹ 53 Rxdg7 Rxdg7 54 Rxdg7 Kxdg7. What is the material balance?

¹ 52...Rxdg7 is even worse, for example, 53 Bh6 Qc7 (53...Rxdg3 54 Qxdg3 threatens mate) 54 Bxdg7+ Rxdg7 55 Rxdg7 (White's threat is 56 Rg8, mate) Qxdg7 56 Rxdg7 Kxdg7, when White is up a Queen.



87. White is down a Rook and Knight for four pawns and controls f7 with fewer pieces than Black (3-4), but two of those defenders are a pawn and Bishop. Visualize the position after the moves 34 f7+¹ Rxd7 35 exf7+ Rxf7 36 Bxf7+ Qxf7 37 Qxf7+ Kxf7. What is the material balance?

¹ White can also add another attacker on f7 by playing 34 exd7 Qxd7 35 Re1 Nd5 36 Rf1.



88. White is down a piece for two pawns and controls g7 with fewer pieces than Black (3-4), but one of those defenders is a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 45 g7+ Rxdg7 46 hxg7+ Rxdg7 47 Rxdg7 Qxdg7¹ 48 Rxdg7 Kxdg7. What is the material balance?

¹ Moving the Queen allows 48 Qg8, mate.

CHAPTER 5. EXCHANGES INVOLVING A PASSED PAWN

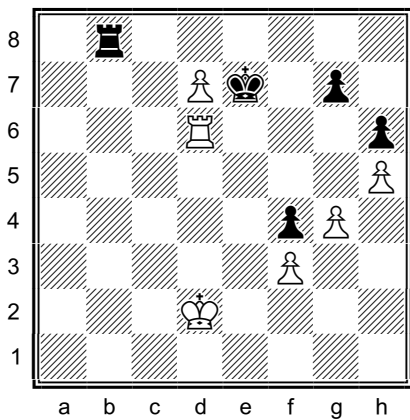
This chapter features a series of exchanges involving a passed pawn. Such exchanges either occur after the promotion of a passed pawn or the capture of a piece that is protected by a passed pawn. The resulting material balance depends on the number and value of the pieces involved in the exchanges.

There are several ways that the side with the passed pawn can gain an advantage:

- ✧ If the queening square is covered by an even number of attackers and defenders of the same value, then White will win a piece for a pawn – see exercises 105, 106, 107, and 108;
- ✧ If Black has an extra defender, then White can give up his pawn to reach a won ending – see exercises 89, 90, 113, and 114;
- ✧ If Black's first defender is a Rook, while White controls the queening square with a minor piece, then White will win at least the exchange for a pawn – see exercises 97, 98, 109, 110, 115, 116, and 117;
- ✧ If Black's cheapest defender is a Rook and White can block the Rook from the queening square with a minor piece, then White will win at least the exchange for a pawn – see exercises 99 and 100;
- ✧ If Black is unable to take with his cheapest defender (a minor piece), but is forced to take with a Rook instead, then White will win at least the exchange for a pawn – see exercises 93, 94, 95, and 96;
- ✧ If White has connected passed pawns on the 7th rank, then White will win at least a piece for two pawns – see exercises 91, 92, 101, 102, 103, and 104; and
- ✧ If Black is defending with his Queen, while White's Queen is not involved in the exchanges, then White will win Black's Queen – see exercises 119 and 120.

This chapter contains thirty-two exercises ranging in depth from four to seven half-moves, as seen in the following table:

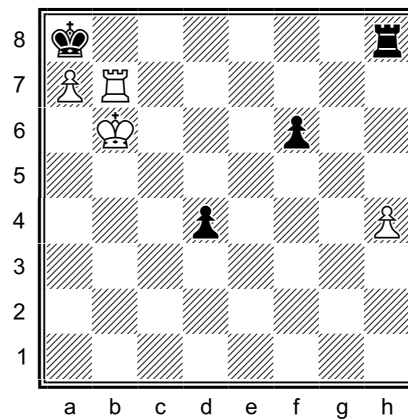
Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13⁺	TOTAL
Exercises:	12	12	7	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	32



4 ply

D13

89. The count will be 1-2 on d8 if White pushes his pawn. White will lose his pawn but gain a won ending. Visualize the position after the move 56 d8=Q+ Rxd8 57 Rxd8 Kxd8. What is the material balance?

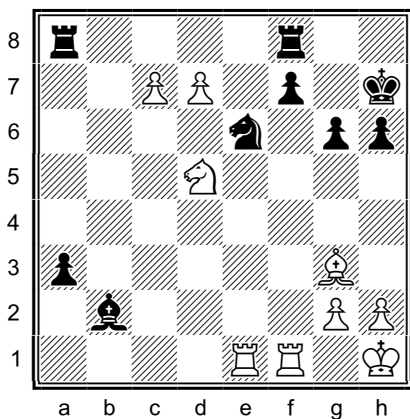


4 ply

A57

90. The count will be 1-2 on b8 after White occupies b8. White will lose a pawn but gain a won ending. Visualize the position after the moves 56 Rb8+ Rxb8+ 57 axb8=Q+ Kxb8¹. What is the material balance? How does White win in this position?

¹ Black resigned here. Black's pawn will queen first, but White will queen with mate.

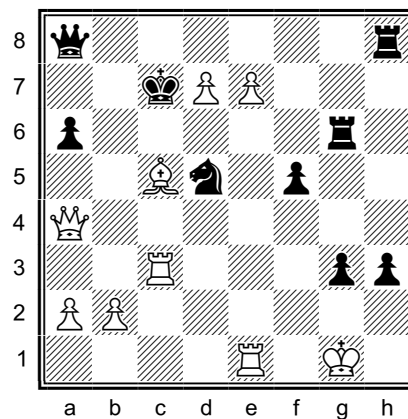


4 ply

A65

91. The count will be 1-2 after White pushes his pawn to c8, but White is defending c8 with a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 34 c8=Q¹ Raxc8 35 dxc8=Q Rxc8. What is the material balance?

¹ 34 Rxf7+ or 34 Nb6 are also good, but not 34 Rxe6 fxe6 35 Rxf8 Rxf8 36 d8=Q, which loses to 36...Rf1, mate.

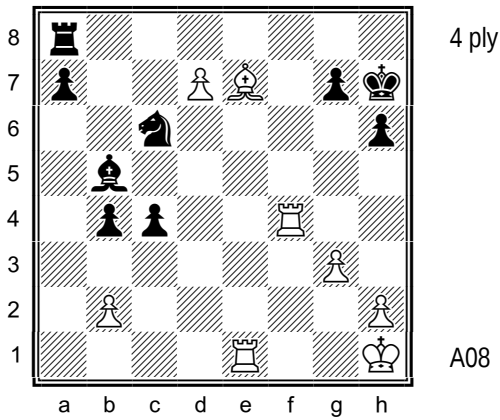


4 ply

D06

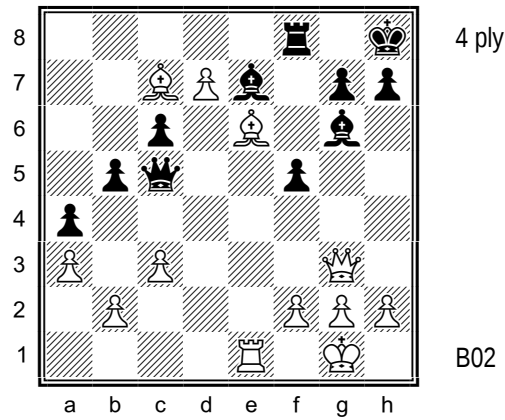
92. The count will be 1-2 after White pushes his pawn to d8, but White is defending with a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 39 d8=Q+¹ Rxd8 40 exd8=Q+ Qxd8. What is the material balance?

¹ 39 e8=Q allows 39...h2+.



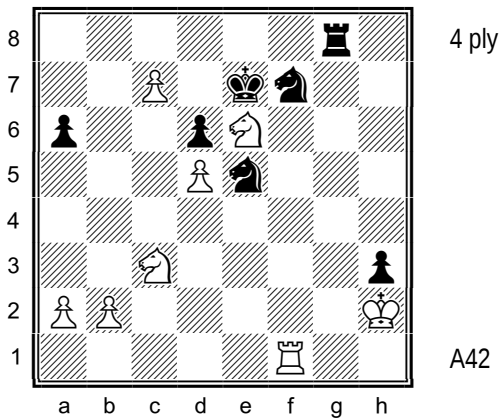
93. White is up the exchange for a pawn. The count will be 1-2 after White pushes his pawn to d8, but Black won't be able to take with his cheapest piece. Visualize the position after the moves 29 d8=Q Rxd8¹ 30 Bxd8 Nxd8. What is the material balance?

¹ 29...Nxd8 loses the Knight to 30 Rf8, pinning the Knight.



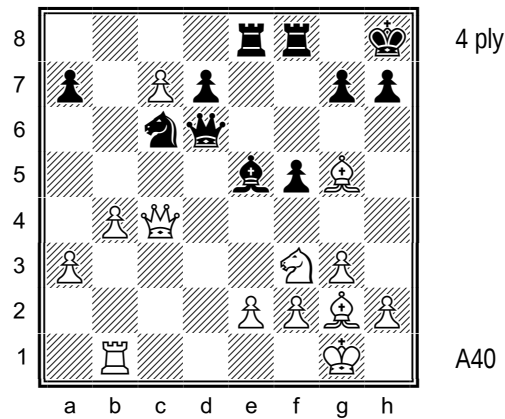
94. White is up a pawn. The count will be 1-2 on d8 after White pushes his pawn, but Black won't be able to take with his cheapest piece. Visualize the position after the moves 33 d8=Q Rxd8¹ 34 Bxd8 Bxd8. What is the material balance?

¹ 33...Bxd8 loses a Rook to 34 Bd6, e.g., 34...f4 35 Bxc5 fxg3 36 Bxf8.



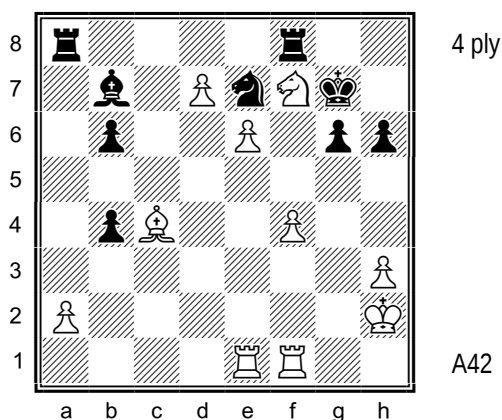
95. White is up a pawn and can block Black's control of the queening square. The count will be 1-3 on d8, but Black's won't be able to take with his cheapest defender. The count on d8 is 1-3. Visualize the position after the moves 36 Nd8 Rxd8¹ 37 cxd8=Q+ Nxd8. What is the material balance?

¹ 36...Nxd8 allows 37 c8=Q.

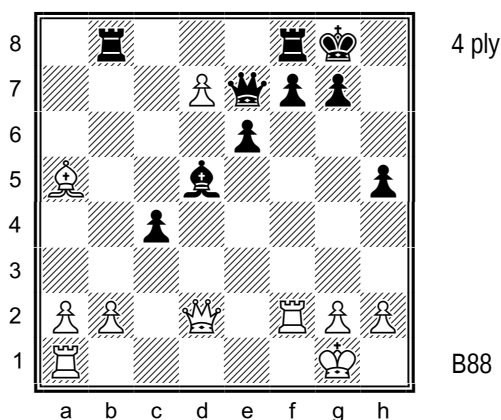


96. White has two pawns for the exchange and can block Black's control of the queening square. The count will be 1-3 on d8, but Black's won't be able to take with his cheapest defender. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Bd8 Rxd8¹ 26 cxd8=Q Rxd8. What is the material balance?

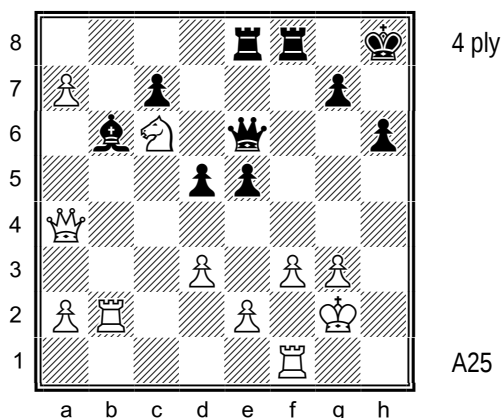
¹ 25...Nxd8 allows 26 c8=Q.



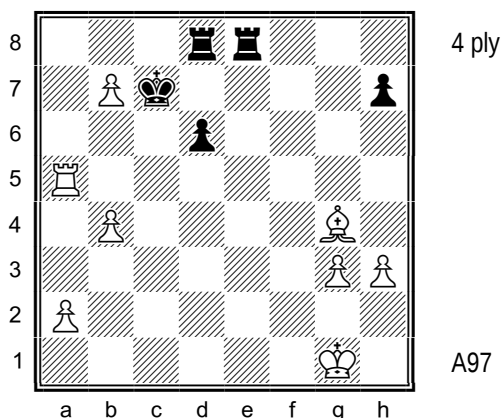
97. White is up a pawn. The count will be 1-2 after White pushes his pawn to d8, but Black's cheapest defender is a Rook. Visualize the position after the moves 38 d8=Q Raxd8 39 Nxd8 Rxd8. What is the material balance?



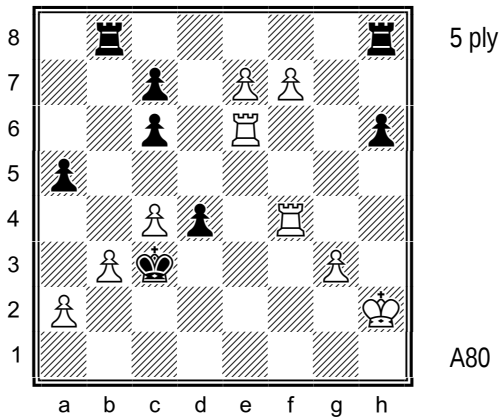
98. The count will be 1-3 after White pushes his pawn to d8, but Black's cheapest defender is his Rook. Visualize the position after the moves 27 d8=Q Rfxd8 28 Bxd8 Rxd8. What is the material balance?



99. White is up a pawn and can block Black's control of the queening square. The count will be 1-2 after White occupies b8, but Black's cheapest defender is a Rook. Visualize the position after the moves 41 Nb8 Rxb8 42 axb8=Q Rxb8. What is the material balance?

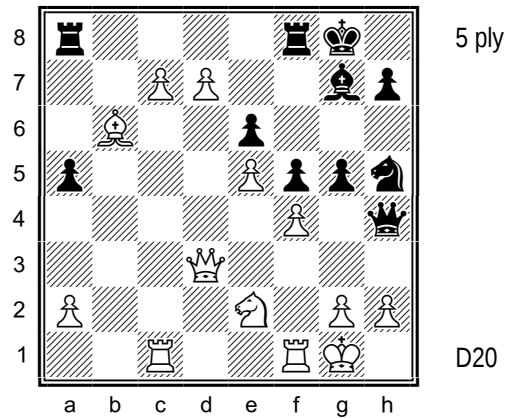


100. White has three pawns for the exchange and can block Black's control of the queening square. The count will be 1-3 after White occupies c8, but Black's cheapest defender is a Rook. Visualize the position after the moves 38 Bc8 Rxc8 39 bxc8=Q+ Rxc8. What is the material balance?



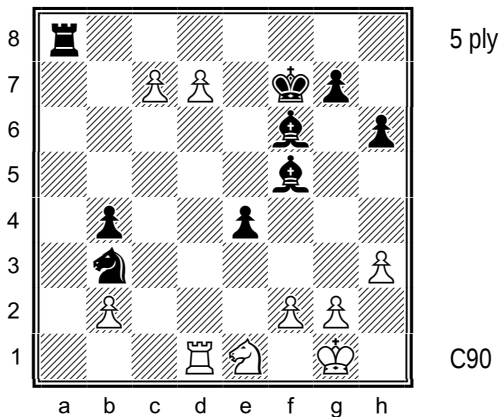
101. The count will be 2-2 after White occupies e8. Visualize the position after the moves 45 e8=Q Rbx8 46 fxe8=Q¹ Rxe8 47 Rxe8². What is the material balance?

¹ 46 Rxe8 is even better. ² Black resigned here.



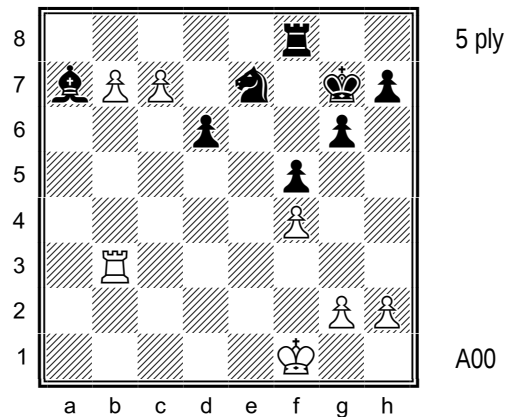
102. White is up two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 29 c8=Q¹ Raxc8 30 Rxc8 Rxc8² 31 dxc8=Q+. What is the material balance?

¹ 29 d8=Q is also good, for example, 29...Raxd8 30 cxd8=Q Rxd8 31 Qxd8, when White is up a pair of Rooks. ² White is up a Queen and a Rook for a pawn after 30...Nxf4 31 Nxf4 gxf4 32 Rxf8+ Bxf8 33 d8=Q.



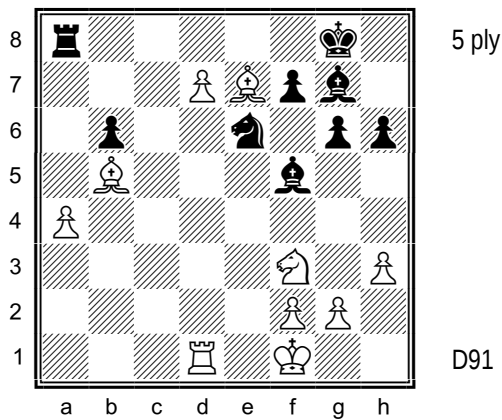
103. White is down two pieces for two pawns, but has connected passed pawns on the 7th rank. Visualize the position after the moves 38 d8=Q¹ Bxd8 39 cxd8=Q Rxd8 40 Rxd8. What is the material balance?

¹ White has only a Rook for two pieces after 38 c8=Q Rxc8 39 dxc8=Q Bxc8.



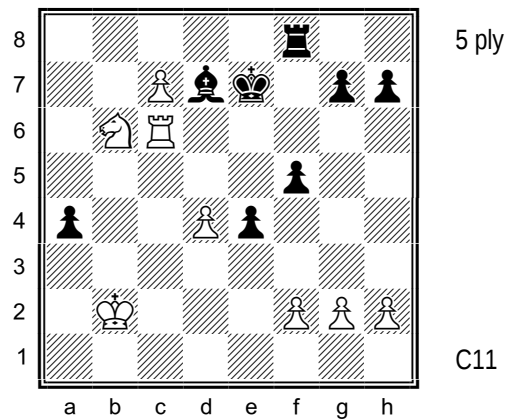
104. White is down two pieces for a pawn, but has connected passed pawns on the 7th rank. Visualize the position after the moves 34 b8=Q¹ Bxb8 35 cxb8=Q Rxb8 36 Rxb8. What is the material balance?

¹ Black is up a piece and a pawn after 34 c8=Q Nxc8 35 bxc8=Q Rxc8.



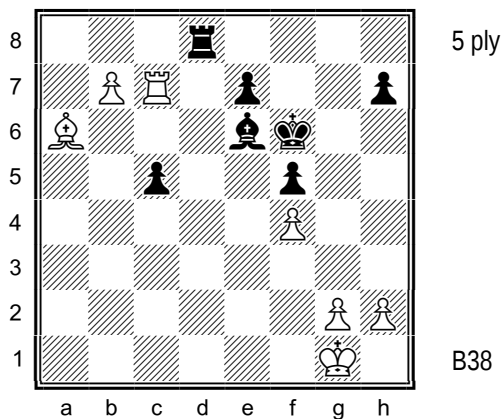
105. The count will be 2-2 after White pushes his pawn to d8. Visualize the position after the moves 34 d8=Q+ Nxd8 35 Rxd8+¹ Rxd8 36 Bxd8. What is the material balance?

¹ This is better than 35 Bxd8, as it gets rid of Black's Rook on a8, the only piece that can defend Black's b-pawn.



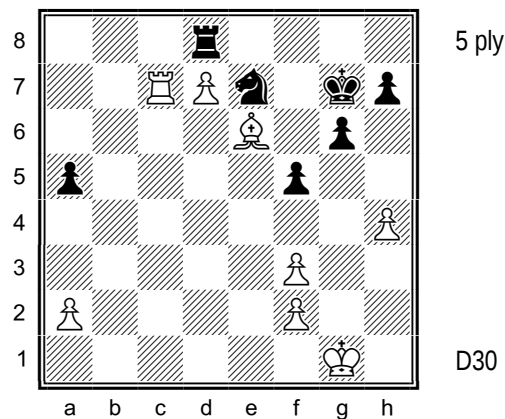
106. White's Rook is under attack, but the count will be 2-2 after White pushes his pawn to c8. Visualize the position after the moves 35 c8=Q Bxc8 36 Rxc8 Rxc8¹ 37 Nxc8+. What is the material balance?

¹ Moving the Rook doesn't help, e.g., a) 36...Rf6 37 Nd5+ or b) 36...Rf7 37 Rc7+.

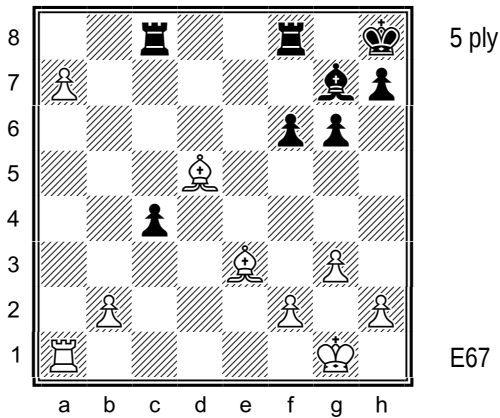


107. The count will be 2-2 on d8 after White plays 36 Re8. Visualize the position after the moves 36 Rc8¹ Rxc8 37 bxc8=Q Bxc8 38 Bxc8. What is the material balance?

¹ The threat of 37 b8=Q forces Black's reply.

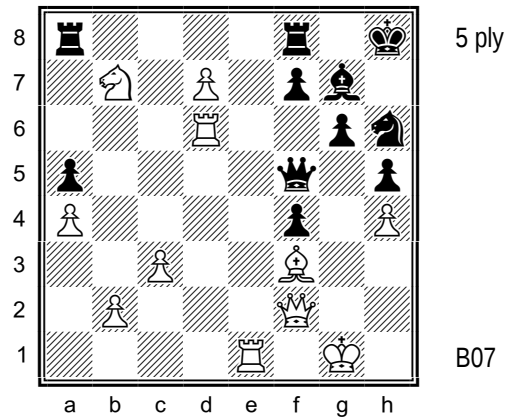


108. White is up a pawn. The count will be 2-2 on c8 after White plays 38 Rc8. Visualize the position after the moves 38 Rc8 Nxc8 39 dxc8=Q Rxc8 40 Bxc8. What is the material balance?



E67

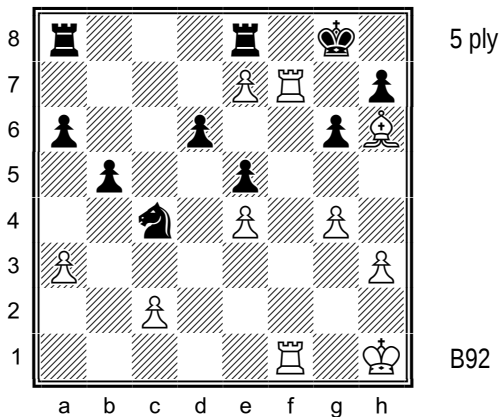
109. White is down the exchange for a pawn. The count will be 2-2 after White pushes his pawn to a8, and Black's cheapest defender is a Rook. Visualize the position after the moves 27 a8=Q Rxa8 28 Rxa8 Rxa8 29 Bxa8. What is the material balance?



B07

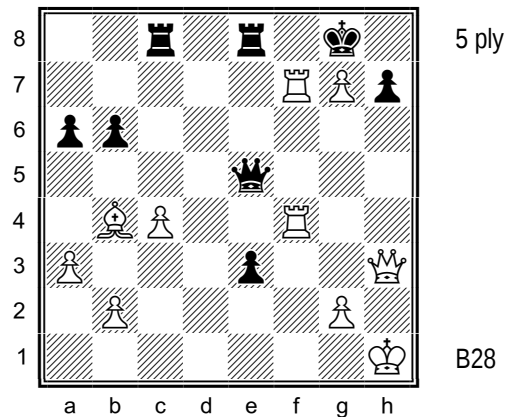
110. The count will be 2-2 after White pushes his pawn to d8, but Black's cheapest defender is a Rook. Visualize the position after the moves 33 d8=Q Raxd8 34 Rxd8¹ Rxd8 35 Nxd8. What is the material balance?

¹ This move ensures that another pair of Rooks comes off of the board.



B92

111. The count will be 3-3 on f8 after White plays 33 Rf8+, but Black's last defender is his King. Visualize the position after the moves 33 Rf8+ Rxf8 34 exf8=R+ Rxf8 35 Rxf8. What is Black's only move in this position?

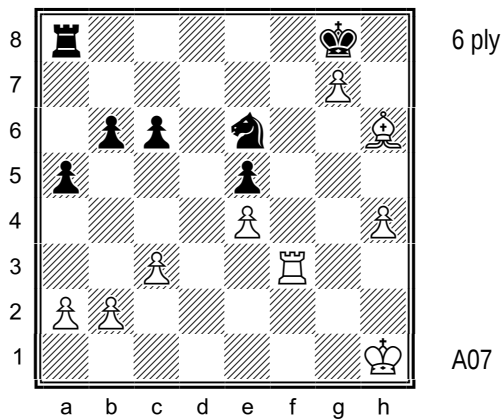


B28

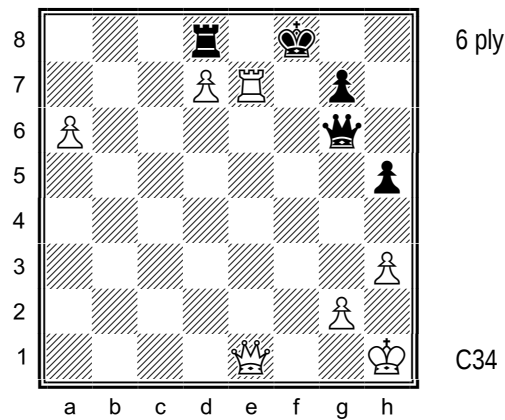
112. White is up a piece and a pawn. The count will be 3-3 after White plays 37 Rf8+, but Black's last defender is his King. Visualize the position after the moves 37 Rf8+ Rxf8¹ 38 gxf8=Q+ Rxf8² 39 Rxf8+. What is the material balance?

¹ 37...Kxg7 allows 38 Rg4+, with mate next move.

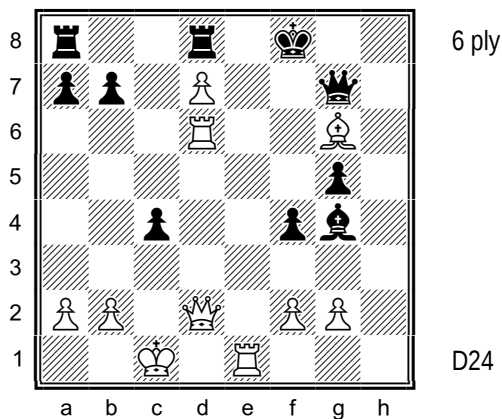
² 38 Rxf8+ is also possible, since Black gets mated after 38...Kxg7 39 Rxc8 e2 40 Qg4+, for example, 40...Kh6 41 Rc6+ or 40...Kf7 41 Rf8, mate.



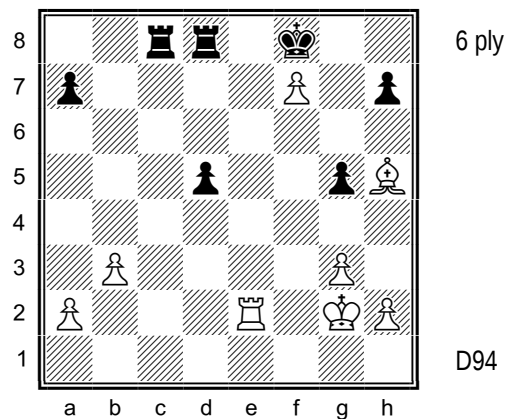
113. White is up two pawns. The count will be 2-3 on f8 after 34 Rf8+, but the value of the pieces is the same. Visualize the position after the moves 45 Rf8+ Rxf8 46 gxf8=Q+ Nxf8 47 Bxf8 Kxf8. What is the material balance?



114. White is up two pawns. The count will be 2-3 on e8 after 46 Re8+, but the value of the pieces is the same. Visualize the position after the moves 46 Re8+ Rxe8 47 dxe8=Q+ Qxe8 48 Qxe8+ Kxe8. What is the material balance?

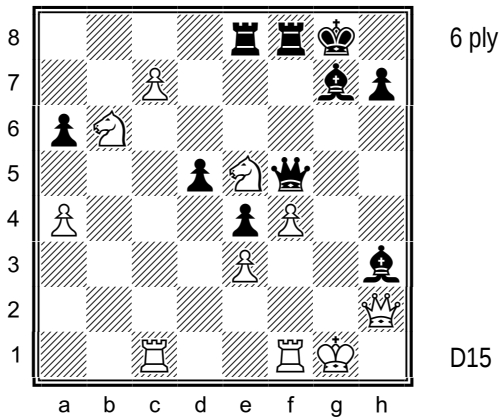


115. The count will be 2-3 after White occupies e8, but Black's cheapest defender is his Rook. Visualize the position after the moves 36 Re8+ Rxe8 37 dxe8=Q+ Rxe8 38 Bxe8 Kxe8. What is the material balance?

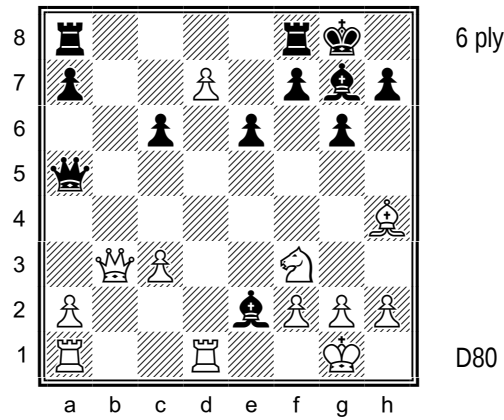


116. White is down the exchange for a pawn. The count will be 2-3 after White occupies e8, but Black's cheapest defender is a Rook. Visualize the position after the moves 32 Re8+ Rxe8¹ 33 fxe8=Q+ Rxe8 34 Bxe8 Kxe8. What is the material balance?

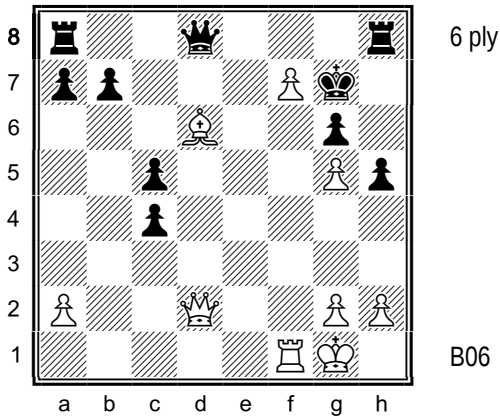
¹ 32...Kg8 lets the pawn to queen.



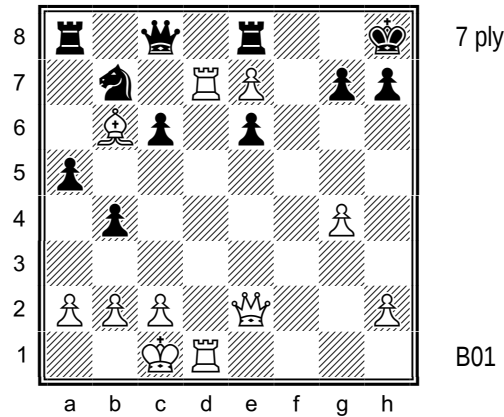
117. The count will be 2-4 after White pushes his pawn to c8, but Black's cheapest defender is his Rook. Visualize the position after the moves 41 c8=Q Rxc8 42 Nxc8 Rxc8 43 Rxc8+ Qxc8. What is the material balance?



118. White's Rook on d1 is under attack. The count will be 2-3 after White pushes his pawn to d8, but Black's cheapest defender is his Rook. Visualize the position after the moves 18 d8=Q Raxd8 19 Rxd8 Rxd8 20 Bxd8 Qxd8. What is the material balance?



119. White is down the exchange and a pawn. The count will be 2-4 on f8 after White pushes his pawn, but Black's second defender is his Queen. Visualize the position after the moves 27 f8=Q+ Rxf8 28 Rxf8 Qxf8¹ 29 Bxf8+ Rxf8. What is the material balance?

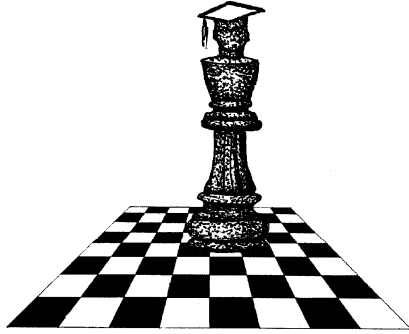


120. The count will be 3-4 after White occupies d8, but Black is defending with his Queen. Visualize the position after the moves 26 Rd8¹ Nxd8 27 exd8=Q Rxd8 28 Rxd8+ Qxd8 29 Bxd8 Rxd8. What is the material balance?

¹ The threat of 27 Rxc8 forces Black to take on d8.

¹ 28...Qd7 loses to 29 Qc3+ Kh7 30 Qh8, mate.

CHESS VISUALIZATION
COURSE



SECTION 2. BEFORE AND AFTER

The exercises in this section are similar to those in Section 1, in that they involve a series of exchanges on a single square, but this section focuses on what occurs both before and after the series of exchanges.

This section contains the following chapters:

CHAPTER 6. PREPARATORY BUILD-UP

CHAPTER 7. AFTER EFFECTS

CHAPTER 8. EXCHANGING TO A WON ENDING

CHAPTER 9. BEFORE AND AFTER

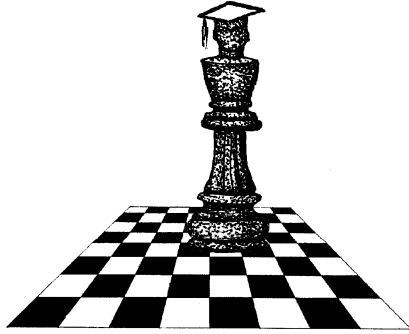
CHAPTER 6, PREPARATORY BUILD-UP, contains exercises that illustrate how to build up a position prior to initiating a series of exchanges.

CHAPTER 7, AFTER EFFECTS, contains exercises in which a series of exchanges is followed by some tactical device that typically results in the win of material or checkmate.

CHAPTER 8, EXCHANGING TO A WON ENDING, contains exercises in which a series of exchanges leads to a won ending.

CHAPTER 9, BEFORE AND AFTER, features exercises in which a preparatory build-up is followed by a series of exchanges, which in turn is followed by either a tactical device or an exchange of pieces that leads to a won ending.

CHESS VISUALIZATION
COURSE



CHAPTER 6. PREPARATORY BUILD-UP

This chapter features exercises that illustrate how to build up a position prior to a series of exchanges. The following themes are seen in the preparatory build-up of a position:

- ✧ Piling on – see exercises 130, 135, 136, 137, 143, 146, 151, 154, 155, and 156;
- ✧ Removing a defender – see exercises 122, 134, 138, 151, and 156;
- ✧ Overworked piece – see exercises 129, 133, and 134;
- ✧ Zugzwang – see exercise 145; and
- ✧ Sacrificing material to open lines – see exercises 123, 124, 131, and 141.

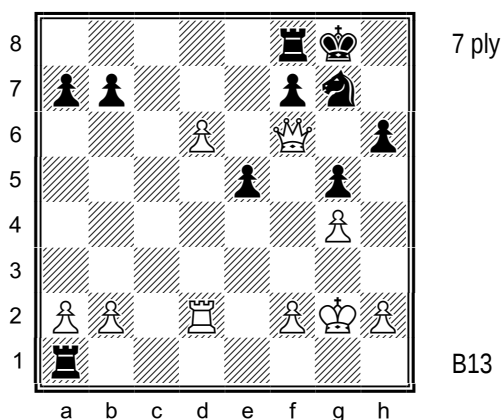
An important sub-theme seen in these exercises involves ignoring your opponent's threats – see exercises 125, 126, and 144. Other sub-themes seen include situations in which White is leading with his Queen (see exercise 126) and situations in which two of Black's defenders are his King and Queen (see exercises 132 and 141).

The following is a breakdown of the exercises based on the chapters presented in Section 1:

- ✧ Even Exchanges – see exercises 130, 153, and 154;
- ✧ Extra Attacker – see exercises 123, 124, 135, 136, 137, 138, 143, 144, 145, 146, 151, 155, and 156;
- ✧ Pieces of Different Value – see exercises 122, 126, 129, and 141;
- ✧ Penetration – see exercises 125, 132, 133, 147, and 148; and
- ✧ Passed Pawn – see exercises 121, 127, 128, 139, 140, 142, 149, 150, and 152.

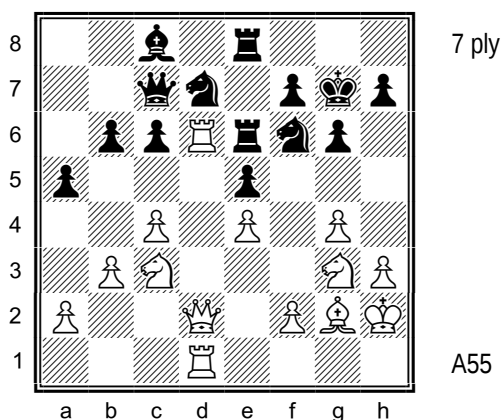
This chapter contains thirty-six exercises ranging in depth from seven to fifteen half-moves, as seen in the following table:

Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13⁺	TOTAL
Exercises:	-	-	-	8	4	8	2	4	2	8	36



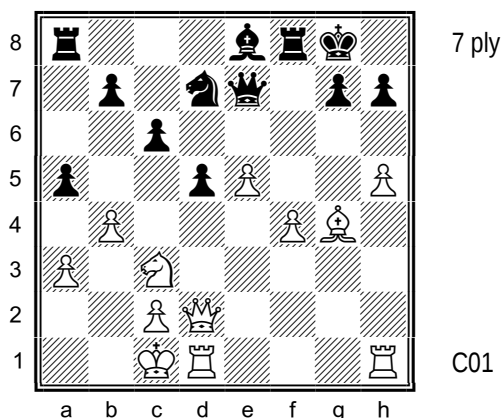
121. White has a Queen for a Rook and a Knight. Visualize the position after the moves 28 d7 Ne6 29 d8=Q Nxd8 30 Rxd8 Rxd8 31 Qxd8¹. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here.

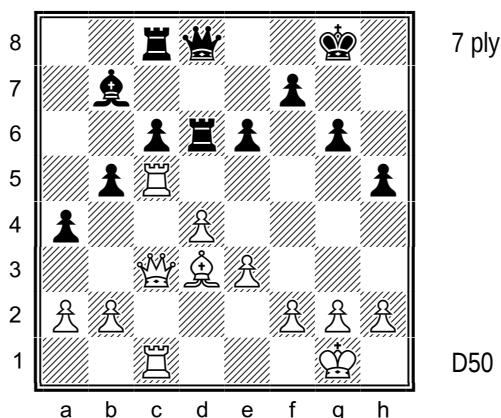


122. The count on d7 is 3-3, but White can remove Black's Knight on f6. Visualize the position after the moves 31 g5 Ng8¹ 32 Rxd7 Bxd7 33 Qxd7 Qxd7 34 Rxd7. What is the material balance?

¹ White wins a pawn after 31...Rxd6 32 Qxd6 Qxd6 33 Rxd6 Ng8 34 Rxc6.

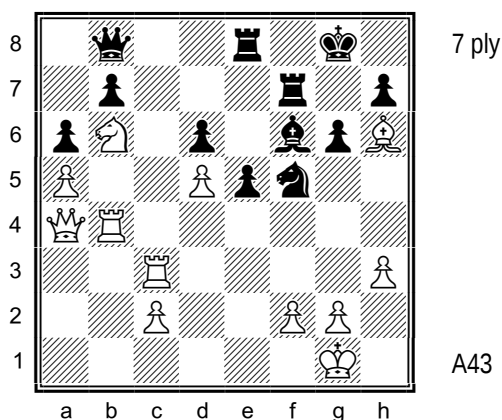


123. The count on d7 is 1-2, but that soon changes. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Nxd5 cxd5 23 Qxd5+ Kh8 24 Bxd7 Bxd7 25 Qxd7. What is the material balance?



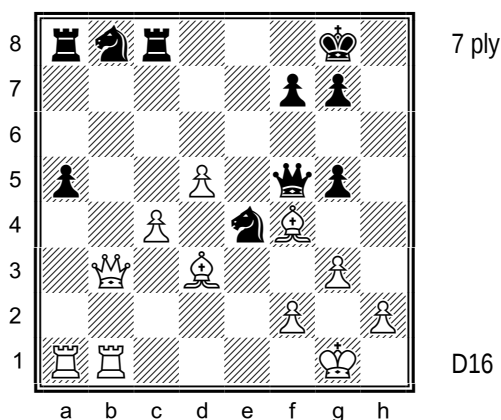
124. The count on c8 is 3-2. Visualize the position after the moves 28 Bxb5 cxb5¹ 29 Rxc8 Bxc8 30 Qxc8 Qxc8 31 Rxc8+. What is the material balance?

¹ Not taking the Bishop loses a second pawn to 29 Bxa4.



125. White's Bishop on h6 is under attack, but Black's back rank is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 30 Rbc4¹ Nxb6² 31 Rc8 Rxc8 32 Rxc8+ Qxc8 33 Nxc8. What is the material balance?

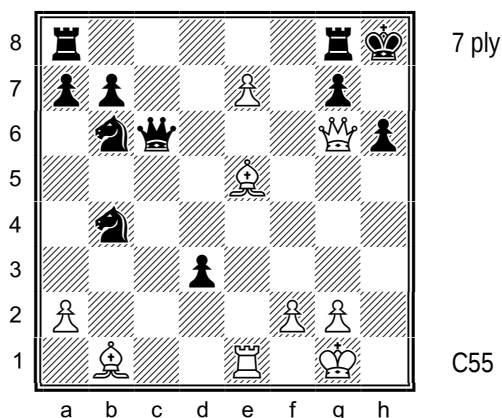
¹ 30 Be3 wastes a tempo that Black can take advantage of with 30...Nxe3 31 fxe3 e4, attacking White's Rook on c3 and preventing 32 Rbc4. ² 30...Qa7 drops the Rook on e8.



126. White is up a pawn, but his Bishop is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 26 Bxe4¹ Qxe4 27 Bxb8 Raxb8² 28 Qxb8 Rxb8 29 Rxb8+. What is the material balance?

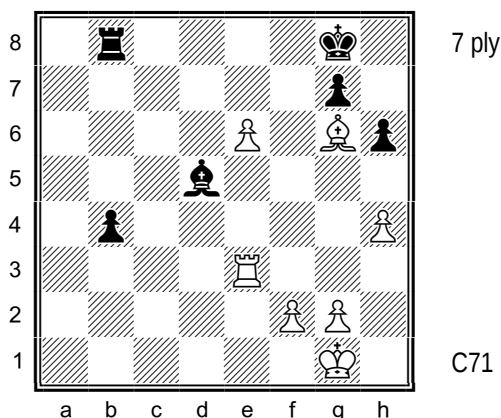
¹ The immediate 26 Bxb8 gives Black at least a draw after 26...Qxf2+ 27 Kh1 Qf3+ 28 Kg1 Qf2+.

² White is up a piece after 27...Qxc4 28 Qxc4 Rxc4 29 d6 and has a strong passed pawn.

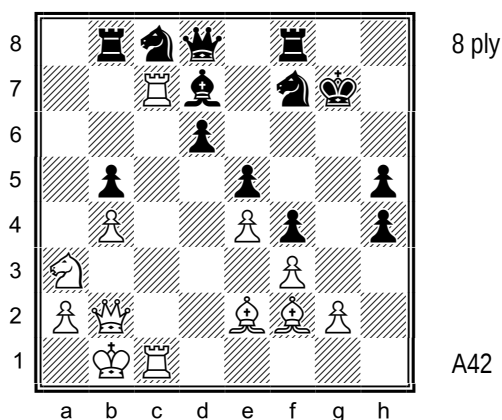


127. White is down a Rook and a pawn, and his Queen is under attack, but he can gain the advantage on e8. Visualize the position after the moves 30 Bxg7+ Rxg7 31 e8=Q+ Rxe8 32 Rxe8+ Qxe8¹ 33 Qxe8+. What is the material balance?

¹ Forced, since 32...Rg8 allows 33 Qxg8, mate.

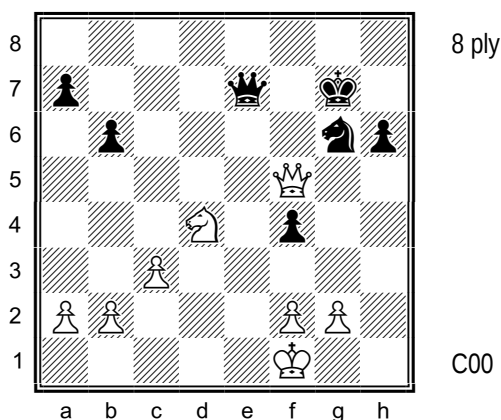


128. White is up a pawn and has a favorable count on e8. Visualize the position after the moves 33 e7 Bf7 34 e8=Q+ Rxe8 35 Rxe8+ Bxe8 36 Bxe8. What is the material balance?

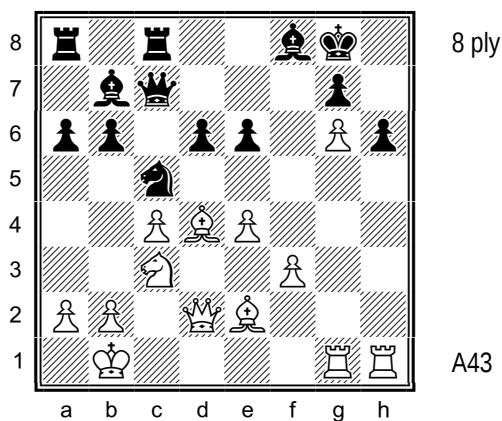


129. Visualize the position after the moves 31 Nxb5¹ Bxb5 32 Bxb5 Rxb5 33 Rxc8 Qxc8 34 Rxc8 Rxc8. What is the material balance?

¹ White can also win a pawn with 31 Bxh4.

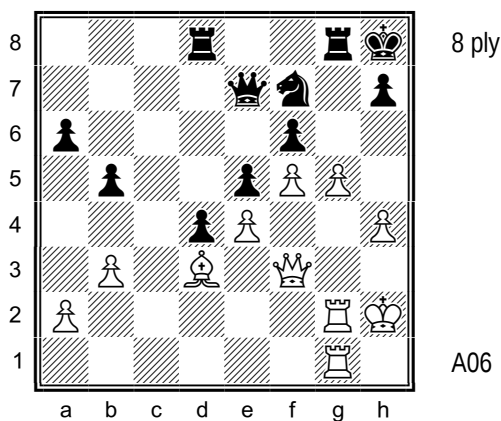


130. White is up a pawn. Black's King is tied to the defense of his Knight on g6. Visualize the position after the moves 49 Ne6+ Kh7 50 Nxf4 Qe8 51 Qxg6+ Qxg6 52 Nxg6 Kxg6. What is the material balance?



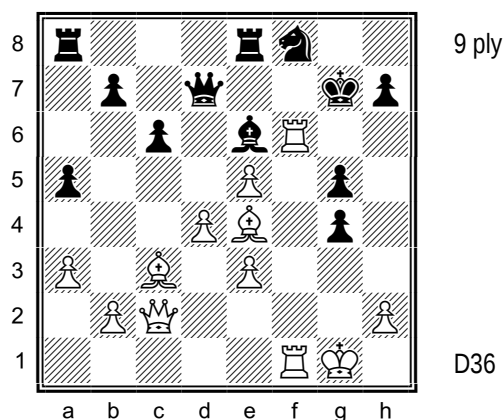
131. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxh6 gxh6 22 g7 Bxg7¹ 23 Bxg7² Qxg7 24 Rxg7+ Kxg7. What is the material balance?

¹ 22...Be7 23 Qxh6 threatens 24 Qh8+ Kf7 25 g8=Q+. ² White's threat is 23 Qxh6, but 23 Rxg7 is also good.

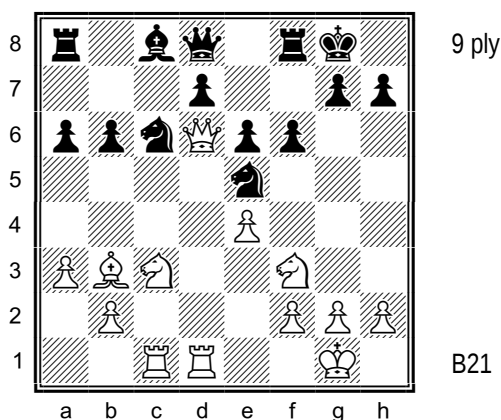


132. Visualize the position after the moves 35 g6 Nd6¹ 36 g7+ Rxg7 37 Rxg7 Qxg7 38 Rxg7 Kxg7. What is the material balance?

¹ 35...Nh6 36 g7+ is similar; after 35...hxg6 36 Rxg6 threatens 37 Qh5+.

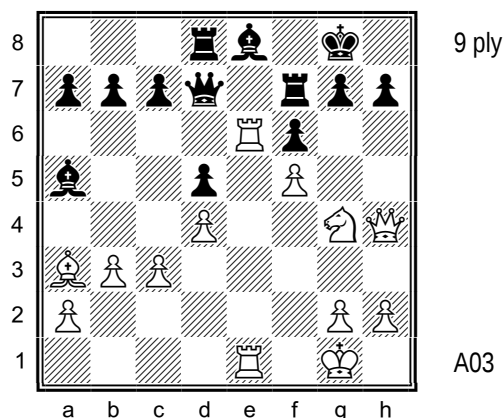


133. White sacrifices a piece to gain access to g6 and f7. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Bxh7 Nxh7 26 Qg6+ Kh8 27 Rf7 Bxf7 28 Rxf7 Qxf7 29 Qxf7. What is the material balance?



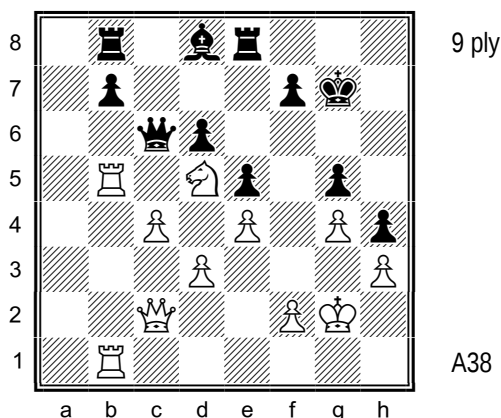
134. Black is up a pawn, but his d-pawn is overworked. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxe5 fxe5 18 Bxe6+ Kh8¹ 19 Bxd7 Bxd7 20 Qxd7 Qxd7 21 Rxd7. What is the material balance?

¹ 18...dxe6 allows 19 Qxc6, with a double attack on Black's Queen and Rook.



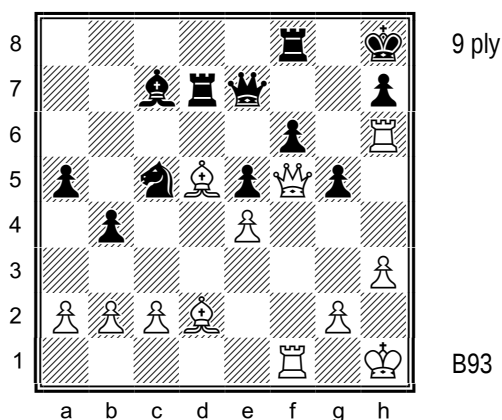
135. White's pawn on c3 is under attack, but Black's Bishop on e8 can't move. Visualize the position after the moves 28 Qg3¹ Kh8 29 Qe3 h6 30 Rxe8+ Rxe8 31 Qxe8+ Qxe8 32 Rxe8+. What is the material balance?

¹ This defends the Pc3 and threatens 29 Nxf6+.



136. Visualize the position after the moves 27 Qb3 b6¹ 28 Nxb6 Bxb6² 29 Rxb6³ Rxb6 30 Qxb6 Qxb6⁴ 31 Rxb6. What is the material balance?

¹ Shifting the point of contact to b6 allows Black to trade his passive Bd8 for White's strong Nd5. ² Otherwise the Knight just goes back to d5. ³ The double attack on Black's Queen and Rook forces Black to capture on b6. ⁴ Black can also play 30...Qc5 or 30...Qd7.

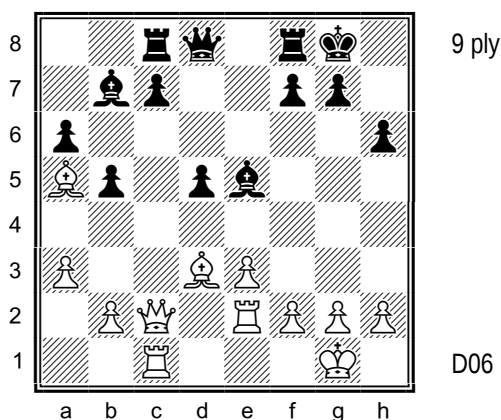


9 ply

B93

137. Visualize the position after the moves 29 Bxg5¹ Bd8² 30 Bxf6+ Rxf6 31 Rxf6 Qxf6 32 Qxf6+ Bxf6 33 Rxf6. What is the material balance?

¹ Taking on f6 immediately with 29 Rxf6 Qxf6 30 Qxf6+ Rxf6 31 Rxf6 allows 31...Nxe4 32 Bxe4 Rxd2, when material is even. ² 29...fxg5 allows 30 Rxh7+ Qxh7 31 Qxf8+ Qg8 32 Qxg8, mate.

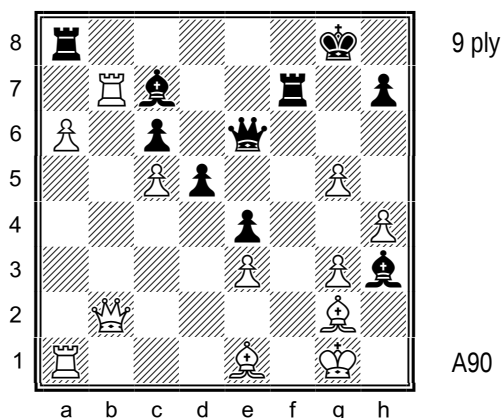


9 ply

D06

138. White is down a pawn. The count on c7 is 3-3, but White can remove a defender. Visualize the position after the moves 21 f4¹ Bd6 22 Bf5 Rb8 23 Bxc7 Bxc7 24 Qxc7 Qxc7 25 Rxc7. What is the material balance?

¹ So that White's b-pawn isn't hanging after the Queen moves.

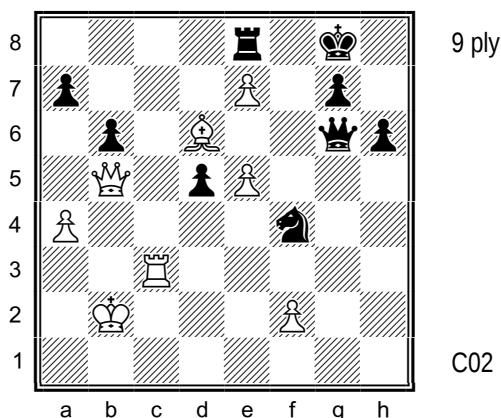


9 ply

A90

139. White is up two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 38 a7 Bxg2¹ 39 Kxg2 Qg4² 40 Rb8+ Bxb8 41 axb8=Q+ Rxb8 42 Qxb8+. What is the material balance?

¹ 38...Be5 drops a piece to 39 Rb8+ Rxb8 40 axb8+ Bxb8 41 Qxb8+. ² 39...Qc8 40 Rb1 Rf8 can be met by 41 Ba5, when Black's Bishop can't move because of mate on g7.

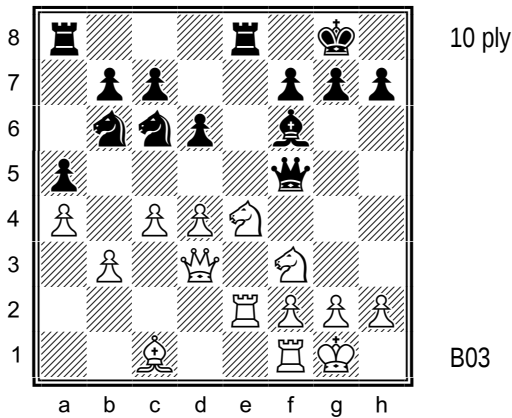


9 ply

C02

140. White is down a pawn, but has a strong passed pawn on e7. Visualize the position after the moves 45 Rf3 Ne6¹ 46 Qxd5 Kh7 47 Rf8 Nxf8² 48 exf8=Q Rxf8 49 Bxf8. What is the material balance?

¹ 45...Qf7 drops a piece to 46 Rxf4. ² 47...Nc5 loses to 48 Qg8, mate. If Black does nothing, e.g., 47...h5 then White wins the Ne6 with 48 Rxe8 Qxe8 49 Qxe6.

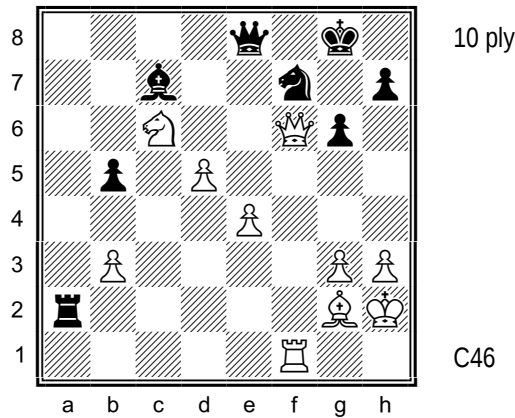


10 ply

B03

141. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Rfe1¹ Kf8² 17 Nxd6 Qd7³ 18 Rxe8+ Rxe8 19 Rxe8+ Qxe8 20 Nxe8 Kxe8⁴. What is the material balance?

¹ White's threat is 17 Nxf6+. ² 16...Rf8 is better, getting out of the line of fire. ³ The only response to the dual threat of Rxe8+ and Nxf5. 17...Qxd3 allows a back rank mate. ⁴ Black resigned here.

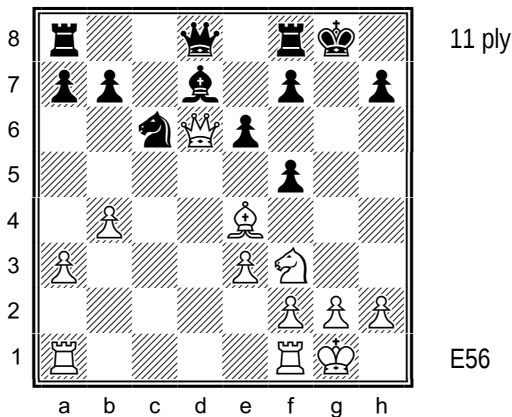


10 ply

C46

142. White is up two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 49 Qe6 Qxe6¹ 50 dxe6 Ne5 51 e7 Ra8 52 Nd8 Rxd8² 53 exd8=Q+ Bxd8. What is the material balance?

¹ Avoiding the exchange of Queens with 49...Qf8 allows 50 Ne7+, when 50...Kg7 gives White a mate in three: 51 Qf6+ Kh6 52 Nf5+ Kh5 53 Qh4. ² 52...Bxd8 allows e8=Q+.

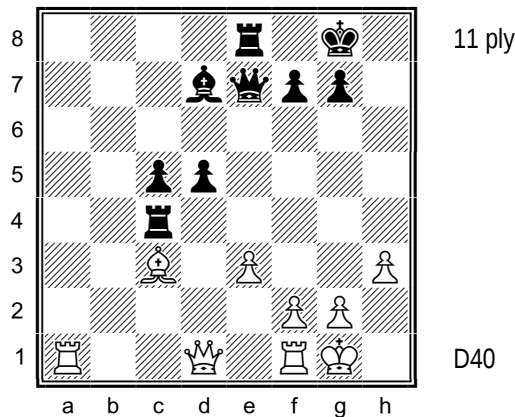


11 ply

E56

143. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bxf5 exf5 19 Rfd1 Nb8¹ 20 Ne5 b6 21 Nxd7 Nxd7 22 Qxd7 Qxd7² 23 Rxd7. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a Queen and pawn for a Rook and Bishop after 19...Bc8 20 Qg3+, with 21 Rxd8. The actual game continued 19...a5 20 b5 Nb8 21 Ne5 b6 22 Rac1 Qe8 23 Nxd7, when White is up a pawn (1-0, 48). ² After 22...Qf6 23 Rac1 Rfd8 24 Qc7, White is still threatening to exchange material.

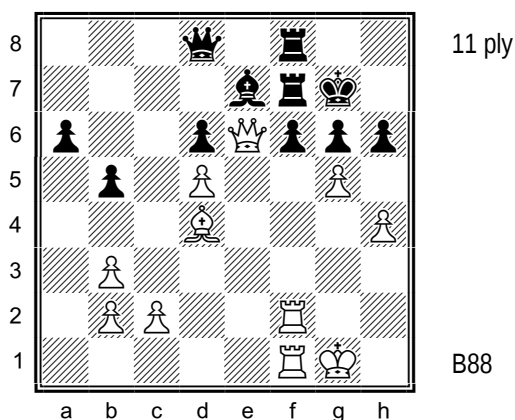


11 ply

D40

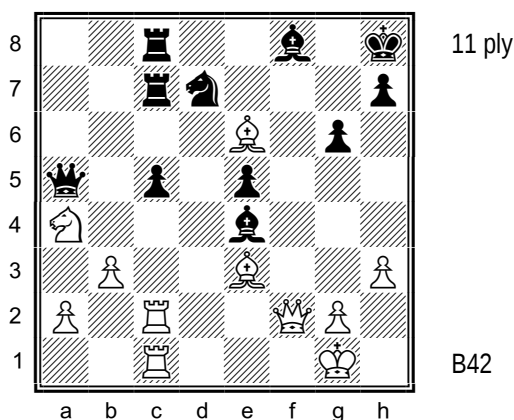
144. White's Bishop on c3 is under attack, but Black's Bishop on d7 will become pinned. Visualize the position after the moves 29 Qxd5¹ Rxc3 30 Ra7 Rd8 31 Rd1 c4 32 Rxd7 Rxd7 33 Qxd7 Qxd7 34 Rxd7. What is the material balance?

¹ Passive play, such as 29 Qd2, allows Black to keep an advantage with 29...Qg5, threatening both 30...Bxh3 and 30...d4.



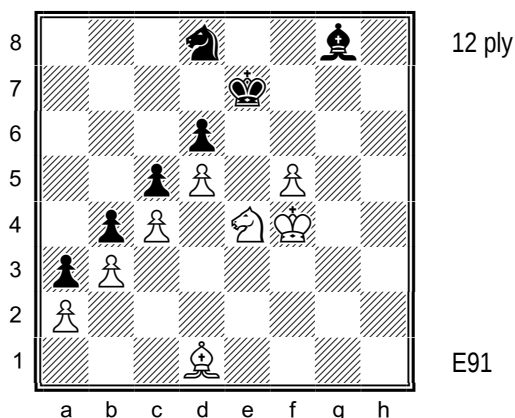
145. The count on f6 is even (5-5), but White can force a Black defender to move away with zugzwang. Visualize the position after the moves 29 b4 h5 30 c3 Kh7 31 gxf6 Bxf6 32 Rxf6 Rxf6 33 Rxf6 Rxf6 34 Bxf6¹. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here.



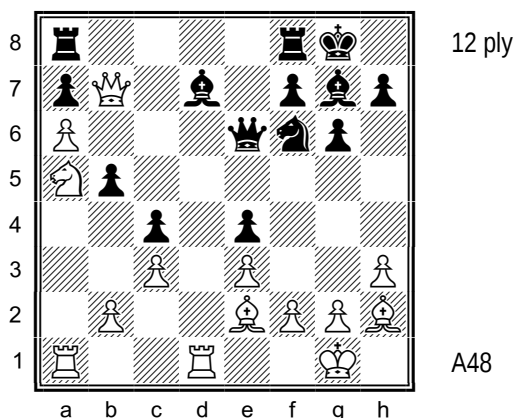
146. White's Rook on c2 is under attack, but Black's Knight on d7 is pinned. Visualize the position after the moves 37 Rd2 Qa7 38 Rcd1 Bc6 39 Qf7 Bg7¹ 40 Rxd7 Bxd7 41 Rxd7 Rxd7 42 Qxd7. What is the material balance?

¹ 39...Rd8 allows 40 Qg8, mate.



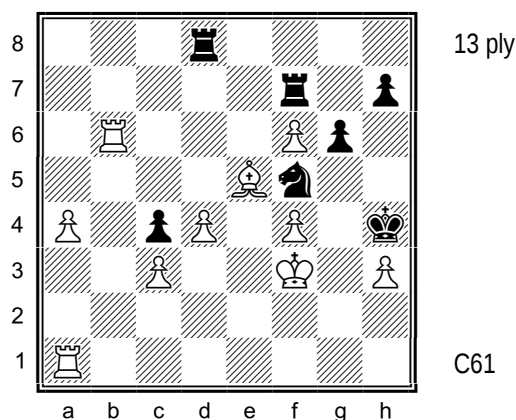
147. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 51 f6+ Kd7¹ 52 Ng5² Ke8³ 53 Bh5+ Kf8 54 f7 Nxf7 55 Bxf7 Bxf7 56 Nxf7 Kxf7. What is the material balance?

¹ 51...Kf7 drops the d-pawn for free after 52 Bh5+ Kf8 53 Nxd6. ² Another idea is 52 Bg4+, intending to meet 52...Kc7 with 53 Ng5 and 54 Be6. ³ 52...Nf7 allows 53 Bg4+ Kd8 54 Be6, for example, 54...Ke8 55 Bxf7+ Bxf7 56 Nxf7 Kxf7 57 Kf5, with a won ending.



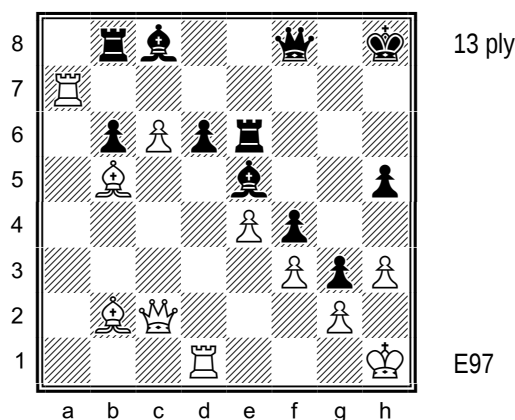
148. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Rd6 Qe8¹ 24 Rad1 Be6 25 Nc6 h5² 26 Rd8 Qxd8 27 Rxd8 Rfxd8 28 Nxd8 Rxd8. What is the material balance?

¹ 23...Qe7 24 Rad1 Rfd8 can be met by 25 Nc6, while 23...Qf5 24 Bg4 removes a defender from d7, e.g., 24...Nxb4 25 hxb4 Qxb4 26 Qxd7, when White is up a piece for a pawn. ² The count is now 3-3 on d8, but Black is defending with his Queen.



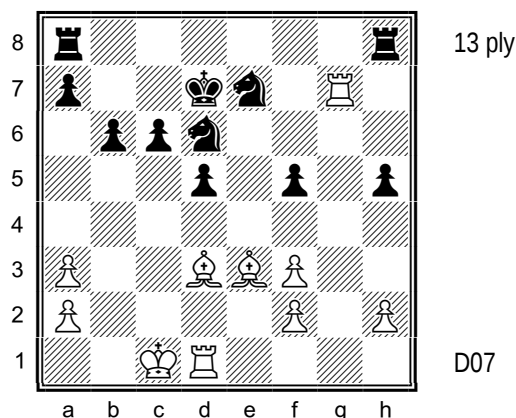
149. White is up three pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 46 a5 Kh5¹ 47 a6 Nh4+ 48 Kf2 Rdd7 49 Bb8 Nf5 50 a7 Rxa7 51 Rxa7 Rxa7 52 Bxa7. What is the material balance?

¹ 46...Ra7 47 a6 Rdd7 can be met by 48 Rab1 and 49 Rb7.



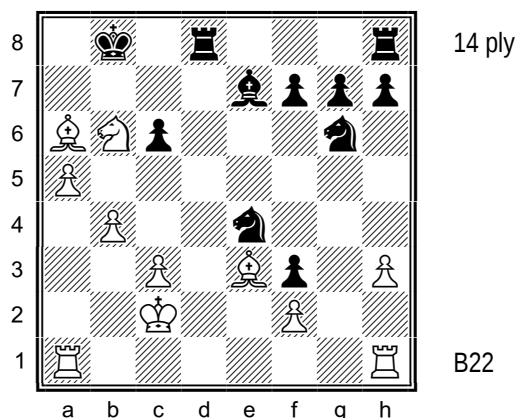
150. Visualize the position after the moves 33 c7 Rb7 34 Rxb7 Bxb7 35 Bd7 Re7¹ 36 Bxe5+² dxe5 37 c8=Q Bxc8 38 Qxc8 Qxc8 39 Bxc8. What is the material balance?

¹ 35...Bc8 36 Bxe6 Bxe6 loses the exchange and more after 37 Bxe5+ dxe5 38 Rd8. ² 36 Rxd6 is also good, as is 36 c8=Q Bxc8 37 Bxc8.



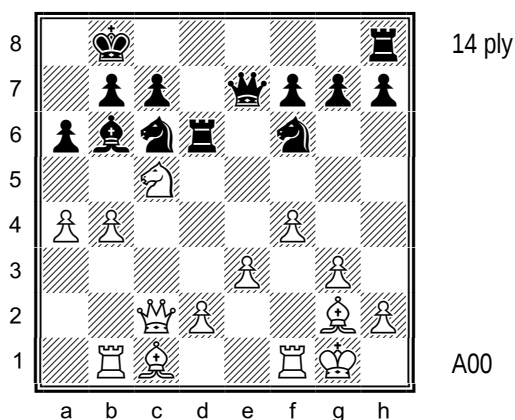
151. White is down a pawn, but has a pin on d7. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Bg5 Rae8 24 Re1 Ndc8 25 Bxf5+ Kd6¹ 26 Re6+ Kc5² 27 Bxe7+ Nxe7³ 28 Rxe7 Rxe7 29 Rxe7. What is the material balance?

¹ 25...Kd8 loses a piece to 26 Bxc8. ² Other moves also lose a piece, e.g., 26...Kd7 allows the double check 27 Rxe7+, while 26...Kc7 abandons the Ne7. ³ After 27...Kb5 White can consolidate with 28 Bg5, for example, 28...Reg8 29 Rxg8 Rxg8 30 f4.



152. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Bd3 f5 21 a6 Bf6¹ 22 a7+ Kb7 23 Bxe4² fxe4 24 a8=Q+ Rxa8 25 Rxa8 Rxa8 26 Nxa8 Kxa8. What is the material balance?

¹ 21...Ka7 22 Nc4+ Ka8 23 a7 Kb7 24 Nb6 is similar to the game. ² White can also play 23 a8=Q+ immediately, since ...Nxc3 can be met by Bxf5.

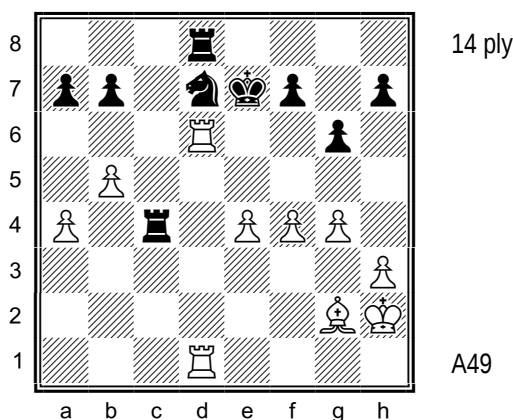


14 ply

A00

153. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Nxb7 Kxb7 22 b5 axb5¹ 23 axb5 Qd7 24 Qa4² Ra8 25 Bxc6+ Rxc6 26 bxc6+ Qxc6 27 Qxc6+ Kxc6. What is the material balance?

¹ 22...Ka7 23 Bxc6 a5 keeps the a-file closed. ² Better is 24 bxc6+ Rxc6 25 Ra1 with 26 Qa4.

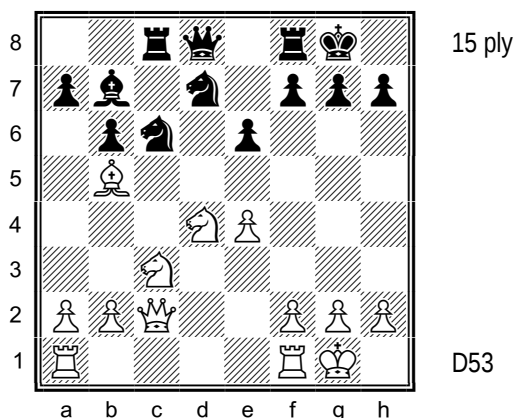


14 ply

A49

154. White is up a pawn, but his pawn on a4 is attacked. Visualize the position after the moves 34 e5 Rc7¹ 35 a5 b6² 36 axb6 axb6 37 Bc6³ Ra7 38 Rxd7+ Rxd7 39 Rxd7+ Rxd7 40 Bxd7 Kxd7. What is the material balance?

¹ 34...Rxa4 loses a piece after 35 Bxb7 Rxf4 36 Bc6. ² Black can't mark time, as White will play f4-f5, with e6 to follow. ³ 37 f5 is also good.

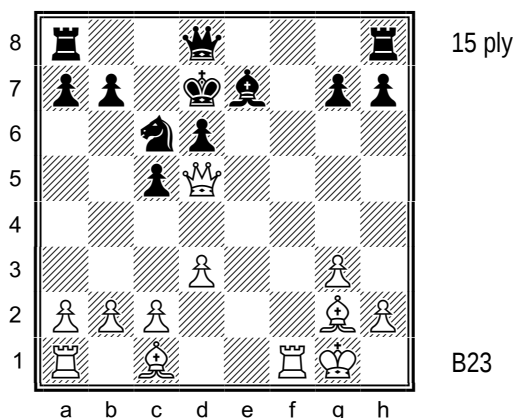


15 ply

D53

155. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Rad1 Nxd4¹ 16 Rxd4 Rc7 17 Rfd1 Bc8 18 Qd2 Re8 19 Bxd7 Bxd7 20 Rxd7 Rxd7 21 Qxd7 Qxd7 22 Rxd7. What is the material balance?

¹ This just helps White pile up on Black's pinned Knight on d7. Alternatives: a) 15...a6 drops a pawn to 16 Nxc6 Bxc6 17 Bxa6; b) 15...Nb4 loses a piece to 16 Qa4, with a double attack on b4 and d7; c) perhaps best is 15...Ncb8 16 f4 a6, challenging White's Bishop, although White retains the better position.



15 ply

B23

156. Black's Bishop on e7 is defended three times and can be defended once more, but it's still weak. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Rf7 g6 16 Bg5 Rb8 17 Re1 Re8 18 Qe6+ Kc7 19 Bxe7 Nxe7 20 Rxe7+ Rxe7¹ 21 Qxe7 Qxe7² 22 Rxe7. What is the material balance?

¹ 20...Kb6 drops another Rook. ² 21...Qd7 is better.

CHAPTER 7. AFTER EFFECTS

This chapter features exercises in which a series of exchanges is followed by some tactic that is present in the position after the series of exchanges occurs. The following tactical themes are seen in the chapter:

- ✧ Pins – see exercises 158, 172, 191, and 192;
- ✧ Double attacks – see exercises 159, 163, 167, 168, 170, 171, 176, 177, 179, and 180;
- ✧ Forks – see exercises 166, 169, 186, and 188;
- ✧ Skewers – see exercises 173, 175, 178, 181, 182, and 185;
- ✧ Removing a defender – see exercises 160, 161, 163, 165, and 167;
- ✧ Overworked pieces or pawns – see exercises 162 and 175;
- ✧ Desperados – see exercise 190; and
- ✧ Mates – see exercises 183, 184, and 187.

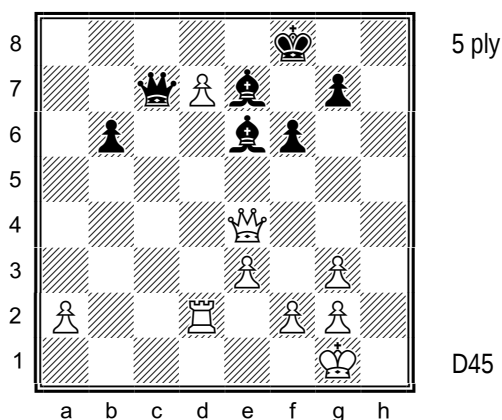
The following is a breakdown of the exercises based on the chapters presented in Section 1:

- ✧ Even Exchanges – see exercises 158, 161, 163, 176, 179, 182, and 186;
- ✧ Extra Attacker – see exercise 190;
- ✧ Pieces of Different Value – see exercises 159, 160, 162, 165, 166, 167, 168, 169, 171, 172, 174, 177, 178, 180, 183, 184, 185, 187, 188, 191, and 192;
- ✧ Penetration – see exercises 164, 170, 173, 175, 181, and 189; and
- ✧ Passed Pawn – see exercises 157, 164, 173, 174, 189.

The sub-theme of leading with one's Queen is present in exercises 168, 188, and 192.

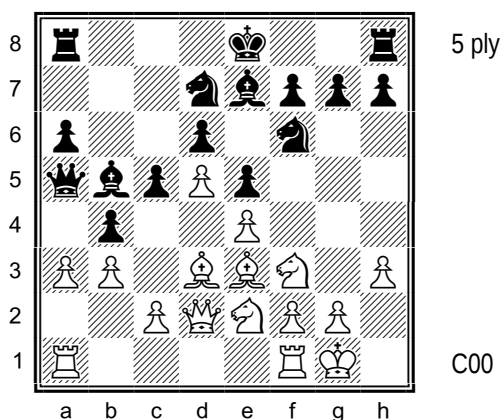
This chapter contains thirty-six exercises ranging in depth from five to fourteen half-moves, as seen in the following table:

Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13⁺	TOTAL
Exercises:	-	2	-	6	4	16	2	2	-	4	36

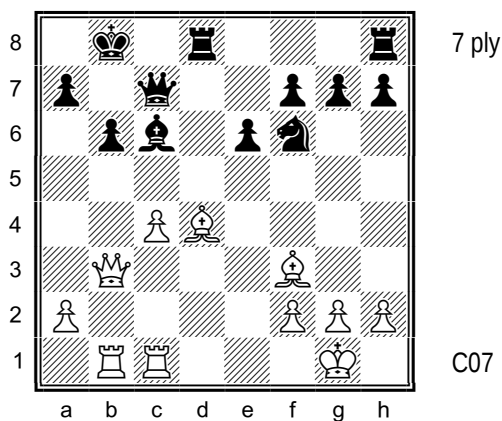


157. White has a Rook and three pawns for two Bishops, but Black is threatening both 39... Bxd7 and 39... Qc1+. Visualize the position after the moves 39 d8=Q+¹ Bxd8 40 Rxd8+ Qxd8 41 Qxe6. What is the material balance?

¹ 39 Qxe6 lets Black equalize after 39... Qc1+ 40 Kh2 Qxd2.

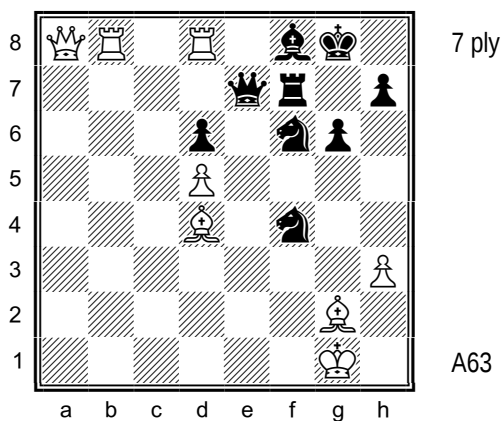


158. The count on b4 is 2-2 and 1-1 on b5. Visualize the position after the moves 14 axb4 Qxb4 15 Qxb4 cxb4. How does White win material in this position?

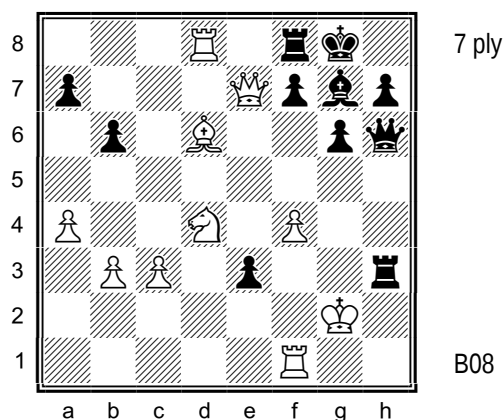


159. White is down a pawn. The count on b6 is 3-2, but one of Black's defenders is a pawn. Note also that the count on c6 is 1-1, so Black's Bc6 is potentially weak. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Bxb6 axb6 21 Qxb6+ Qxb6 22 Rxb6+ Ka7¹. How does White win material here?

¹ 22... Kc7 doesn't change anything.



160. White is up the exchange for a pawn. The count on f8 is 3-3; the count on f6 is 1-2, but White can eliminate both of Black's defenders. Visualize the position after the moves 46 Rxf8+ Rxf8 47 Rxf8+ Qxf8 48 Qxf8+ Kxf8. How can White win material here?

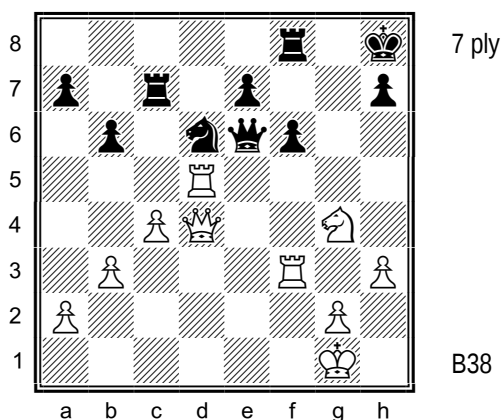


7 ply

B08

161. Black has just given up a piece for two pawns on g2 and h3. Visualize the position after the moves 35 Rxf8+ Bxf8 36 Qxf8+ Qxf8 37 Bxf8 Rh5¹ 38 Be7². What is the material balance?

¹ 37...Kxf8 38 Kxh3 loses an extra exchange. ² Black resigned here.

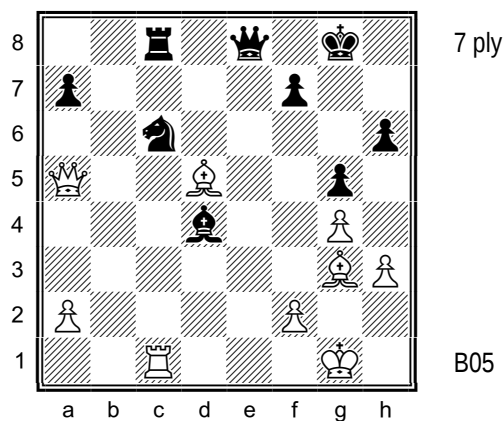


7 ply

B38

162. The count is 3-3 on f6, 2-2 on d6. Black is defending both with the same pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 31 Nxf6 Rxf6¹ 32 Rxf6 Qxf6² 33 Qxf6+ exf6 34 Rxd6. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a pawn after 31...exf6 32 Rxd6. ² Black can keep the Queens on the board with 32 exf6.

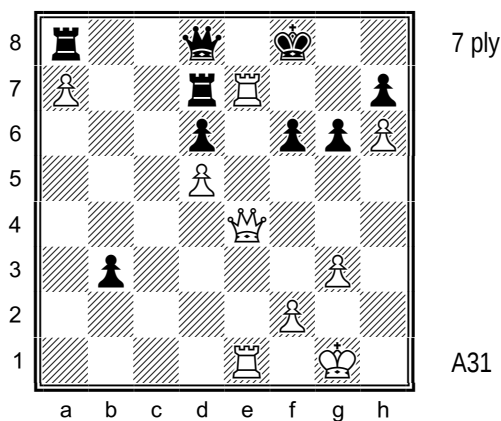


7 ply

B05

163. The count on c6 is 2-2, but the Nc6 defends Black's Bd4. Visualize the position after the moves 30 Rxc6 Rxc6 31 Bxc6¹ Qxc6. How can White win material in this position?

¹ Black resigned here.

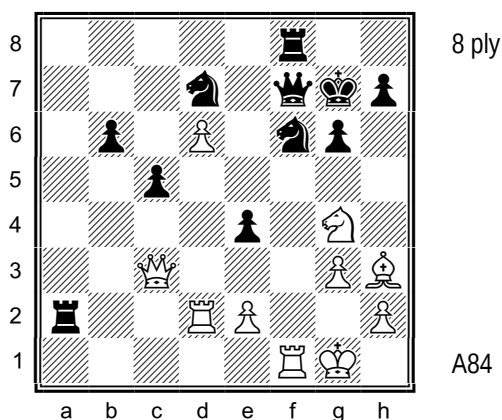


7 ply

A31

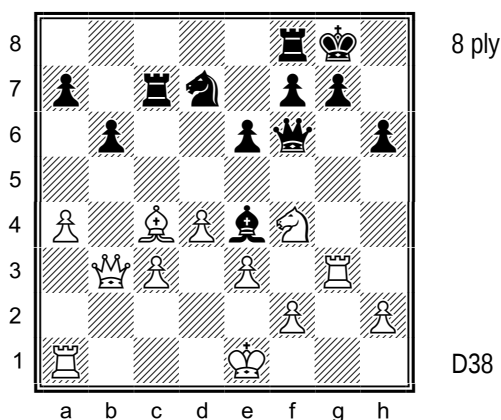
164. The count will be 2-3 on e8 after White plays 37 Re8+, but White can clear the 8th rank for his a-pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 37 Re8+ Qxe8 38 Qxe8+ Rxe8 39 Rxe8+ Kxe8 40 a8=Q+ Rd8¹ 41 Qb7². What is the material balance?

¹ 40...Ke7 41 Qb8 or 41 Qg8 b2 42 Qxh7+ Kd8 43 Qg8+ Kc7 44 Qxg6 stops Black's b-pawn. ² Black resigned here.



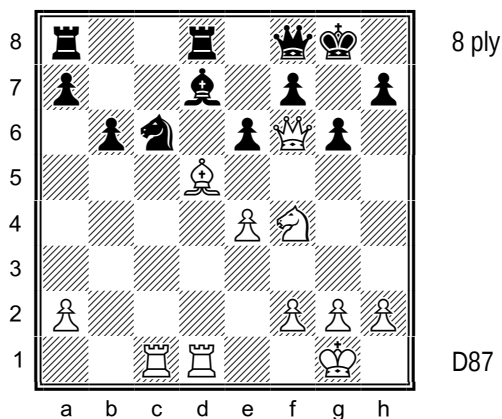
165. White is down a pawn. The count on f6 is 3-4, but Black's Queen is overworked. Visualize the position after the moves 30 Nxf6 Nxf6 31 Rxf6 Qxf6¹ 32 Qxf6+ Rxf6 33 Rxa2 Rxd6. What is the material balance?

¹ 31...Ra1+ loses to 32 Rf1+ Kg8 33 Qxa1, while 31...Qb7 allows 32 Rxf8+ Kxf8 33 Rxa2.



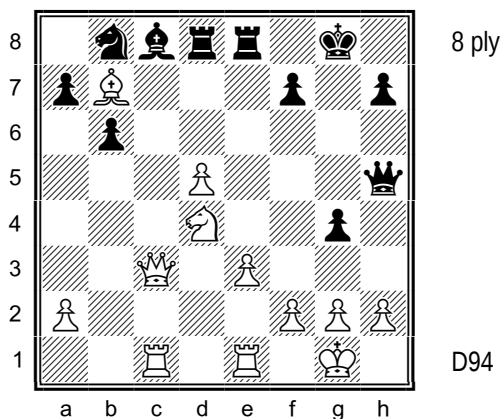
166. The count on e6 is 3-2, but one of Black's defenders is a pawn. Yet after exchanging twice on e6, White will have a Knight fork. What is the material balance after the moves 19 Bxe6 fxe6 20 Qxe6+¹ Qxe6² 21 Nxe6 Rfc8 22 Nxc7 Rxc7?

¹ 20 Nxe6 gives Black a mate in three: 20...Qxf2+ 21 Kd1 Qf1+ 22 Kd2 Rf2, mate. ² Otherwise Black is down two pawns.

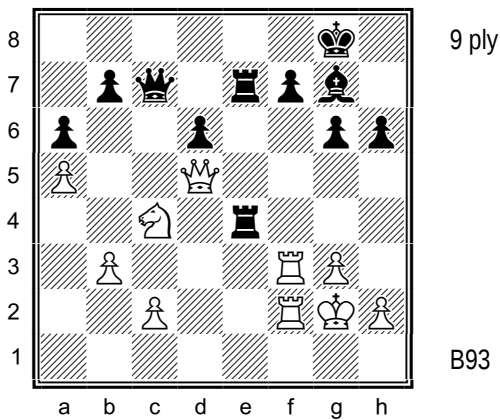


167. White is down a pawn. The count on e6 is 3-2, 2-2 on c6. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Nxe6¹ fxe6² 23 Bxe6+ Bxe6 24 Qxe6+ Qf7 25 Qxc6 Qxa2. What is the material balance?

¹ 22 Bxc6 Bxc6 23 Rxc6 allows 22...Rxd1, mate, while 22 Bxc6 Bxc6 23 Nxe6 transposes to the game. 22 Bxe6 is bad because White's Queen is under attack after 22...fxe6 and doesn't have time to play 23 Nxe6. ² 22...Bxe6 23 Bxe6 transposes.

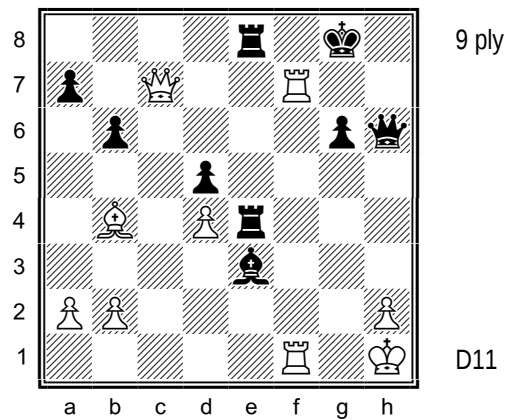


168. White is up a pawn. The count on c8 is 3-2, but White's second attacker is his Queen. Yet Black's undefended Knight on b8 is vulnerable. Visualize the position after the moves 29 Bxc8 Rxc8 30 Qxc8 Rxc8 31 Rxc8+ Kg7 32 Rxb8 Qxd5. What is the material balance?



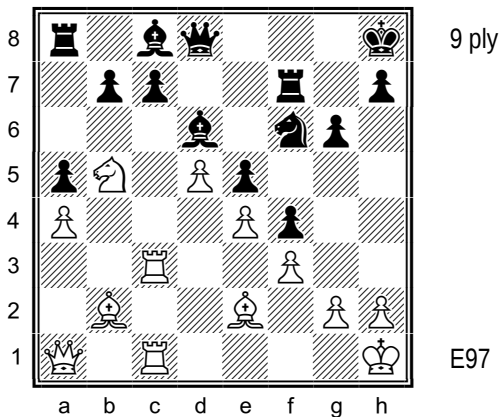
169. White is down a pawn, but has pressure on f7. Visualize the position after the moves 34 Rxf7 Rxf7 35 Rxf7¹ Qxf7 36 Qxf7+ Kxf7. How does White win material in this position?

¹ This is better than 35 Qxe4, when material is even.

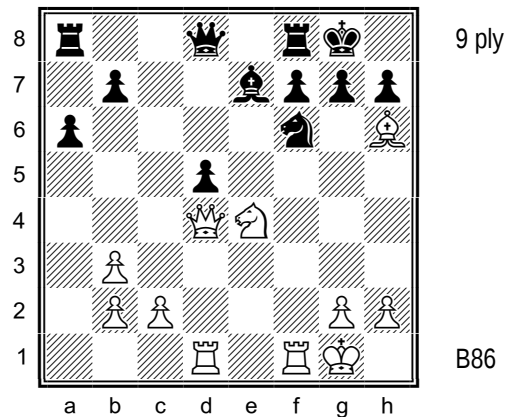


170. Visualize the position after the moves 30 Rf8+ Rxf8 31 Rxf8+ Qxf8 32 Bxf8 Kxf8 33 Qd8+ Kg7 34 Qxd5¹. What is the material balance?

¹ Note that Black can't play 34...Rxd4 here because it drops the Bishop to 35 Qxe5+.

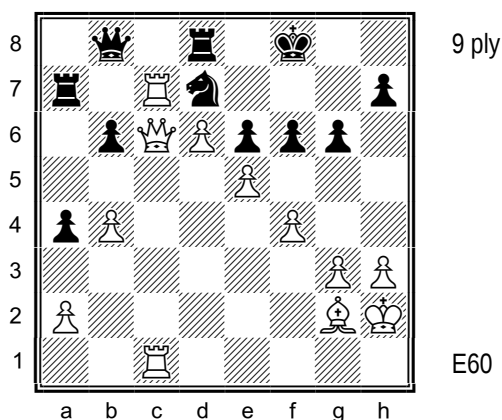


171. White is down a pawn, but has pressure on c7 and along the a1-h8 diagonal. The count on c7 is 3-3, but watch the count on f6 as well. Visualize the position after the moves 28 Nxc7 Bxc7 29 Rxc7 Rxc7 30 Rxc7 Qxc7. How does White win some of his material back and gain the better position?



172. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nxf6+ Bxf6 17 Rxf6 Qxf6¹ 18 Qxf6 gxf6 19 Bxf8 Kxf8 20 Rxd5. What is the material balance?

¹ 17...gxf6 leads to mate after 18 Qg4+, while 17...gxh6 18 Rd3 threatens 19 Rg3+.

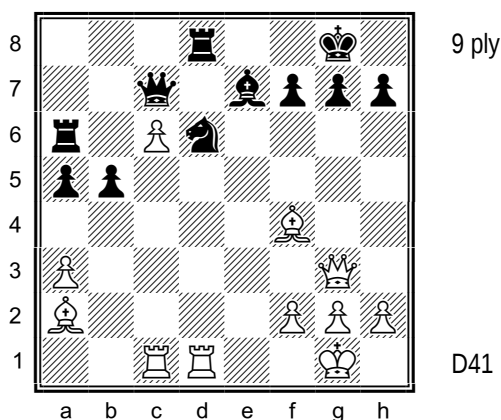


9 ply

E60

173. White is up a solid protected passed pawn on d6. Visualize the position after the moves 37 Rc8 Rxc8¹ 38 Qxc8+ Qxc8² 39 Rxc8+ Kf7. How does White win material in this position?

¹ The only move. ² 38...Kf7 39 Qxb8 Nxb8 40 Rc7 is similar to the game.

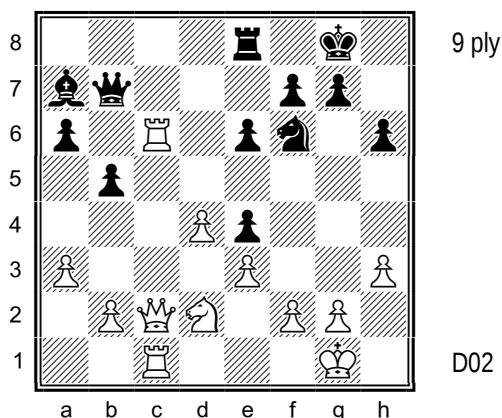


9 ply

D41

174. White first gives up the exchange, then a Queen for a Rook in order to promote his passed pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Bxd6 Bxd6 26 Rxd6 Rxd6 27 Qxd6 Qxd6 28 c7 g6¹ 29 c8=Q+. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a piece for a pawn after 28...Ra8 29 c8=Q+ Rxc8 30 Rxc8+ Qf8 31 Rxf8+ Kxf8.

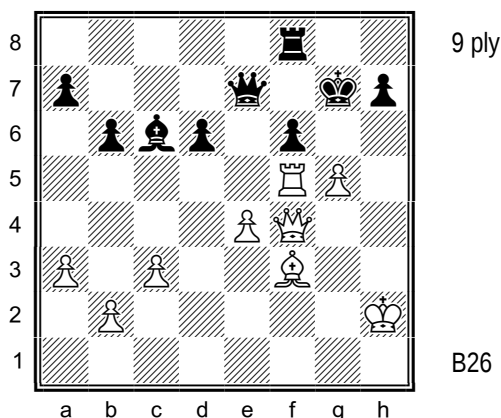


9 ply

D02

175. White is up the exchange. Visualize the position after the moves 29 Rc8¹ Rxc8 30 Qxc8+ Qxc8 31 Rxc8+ Kh7 32 Ra8 Bb6 33 Rxa6. What is the material balance?

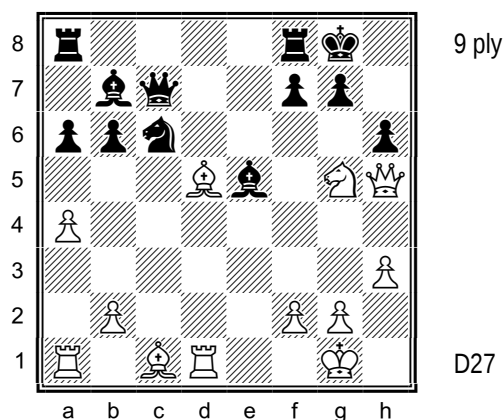
¹ White is threatening both 30 Nxe4 and 30 Rxe8 Nxe8 31 Qc8 Qxc8 32 Rxc8 Kf8 33 Nxe4. The immediate 29 Nxe4 is also possible.



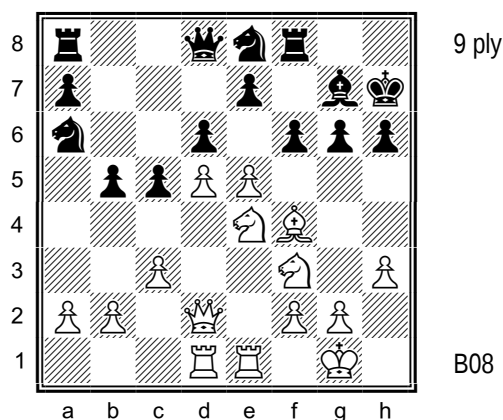
9 ply

B26

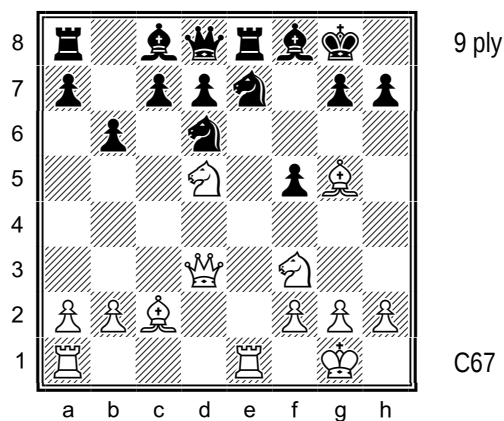
176. The count on f6 is 3-3, but note that Black's Bishop on c6 is attacked as many times as it is defended, so it is potentially weak. Visualize the position after the moves 39 gxf6+ Rxf6 40 Rxf6 Qxf6 41 Qxf6+ Kxf6. How does White win material here?



177. The count on f7 is 3-3, but Black's Bb7 is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Nxf7 Rxf7 19 Qxf7+ Qxf7 20 Bxf7+ Kxf7. How does White win material here?

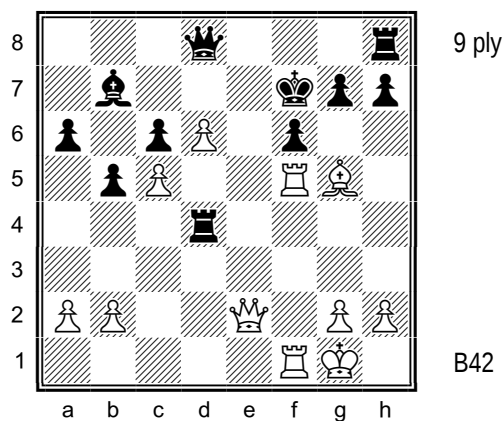


178. The count on d6 is 3-3, but Black's Knight on a6 is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 18 exd6 exd6 19 Nxd6 Nxd6 20 Bxd6 Qxd6. How does White win material in this position?



179. White is down two pawns. The count on e7 is 3-3. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nxe7+ Bxe7 16 Bxe7 Rxe7 17 Rxe7¹ Qxe7. How can White win material in this position?

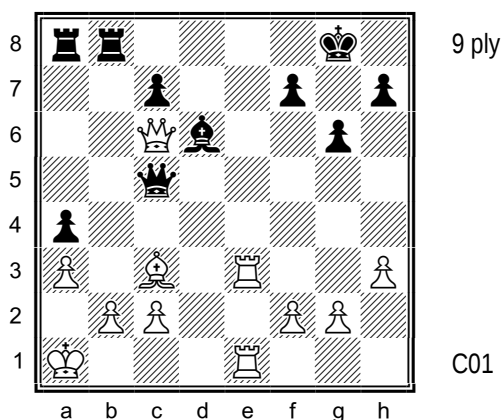
¹ Black resigned here.



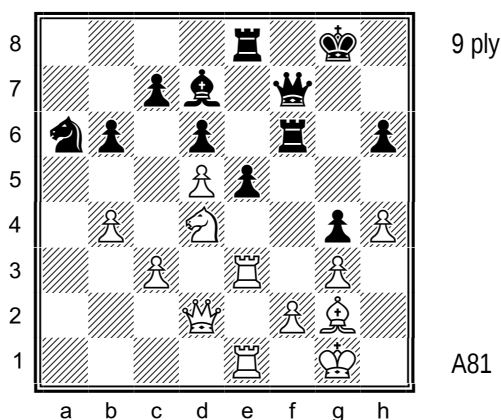
180. The count on f6 is 3-3. Black is defending with a pawn. Note also that Black's Bb7 is potentially weak. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Bxf6 gxf6 24 Rxf6+ Qxf6¹ 25 Rxf6+ Kxf6 26 Qe7+² Kf5 27 Qxb7³. What is the material balance?

¹ 24...Kg8 loses to 25 Qe6+ Kg7 26 Qf7, mate.

² Black resigned here. ³ 27 Qg7, attacking three pieces at once, is not as good, as Black can defend everything with 27...Rd1+ 28 Kf2 Rb8.

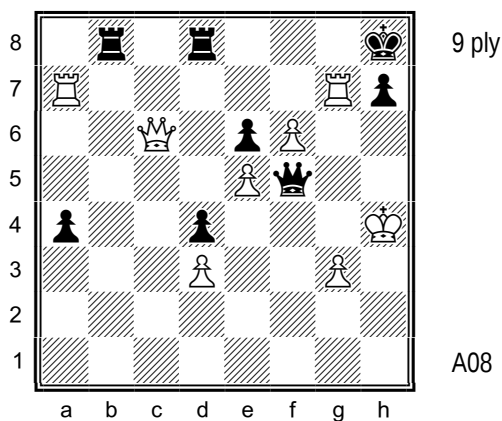


181. The count on e8 is 3-2. Visualize the position after the moves 28 Re8+ Rxe8 29 Rxe8+ Rxe8 30 Qxe8+ Bf8. How can White win in this position?

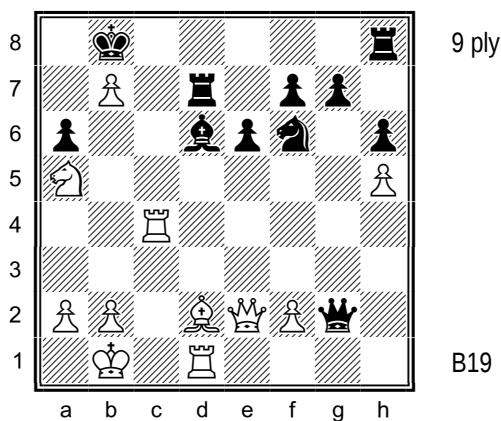


182. Black has just played e7-e5. The count on e6 is 4-4 (after taking *en passant*). Visualize the position after the moves 24 dxe6 Bxe6 25 Nxe6 Rfxe6¹ 26 Rxe6 Rxe6 27 Rxe6² Qxe6. How can White win here?

¹ Alternatives: a) 25...Kh8 loses to 26 Ng5; b) White is up a Queen after 25...Qd7 26 Nc5 bxc5 27 Rxe8+ Kg7 28 R1e7+ Qxe7 29 Rxe7. ² Black resigned here.

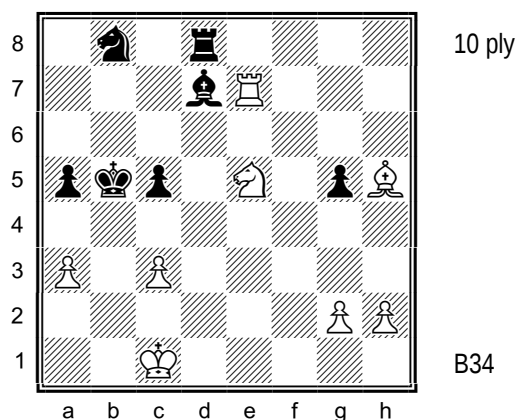


183. Visualize the position after the moves 42 Rxh7+ Qxh7+ 43 Rxh7+ Kxh7. How does White mate in three in this position?

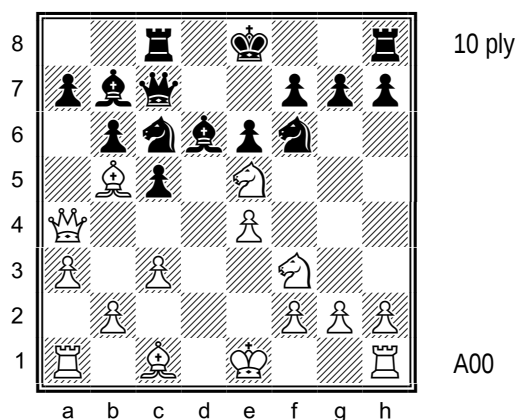


184. Visualize the position after the moves 27 Rc8+ Rxc8 28 bxc8=Q+ Kxc8 29 Qxa6+ Kd8¹ 30 Nc6+² Kc7³. How does White mate in one?

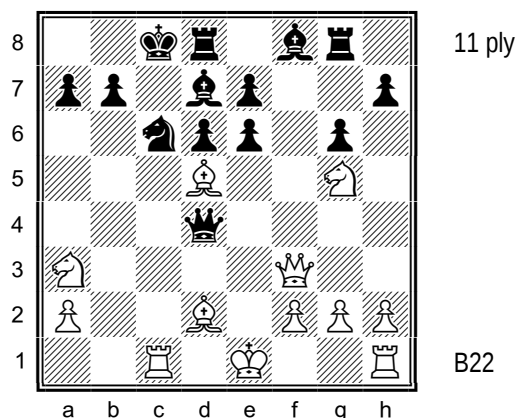
¹ 29...Kc7 30 Rc1+ Kd8 31 Nc6+ transposes to the game. ² Black resigned here. ³ 30...Ke8 31 Qc8+ Rd8 32 Qxd8 is mate.



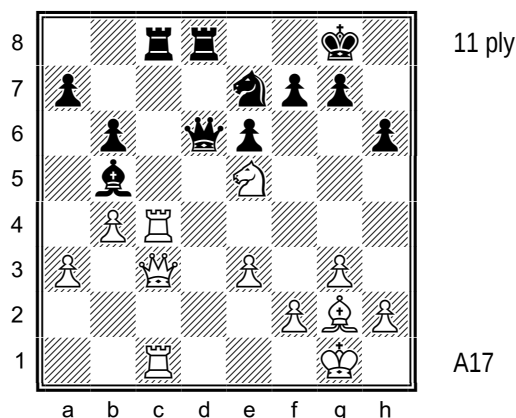
185. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 44 Nxd7 Nxd7 45 Rxd7 Rxd7 46 Be8 Kc6 47 Kc2 Kd6 48 Bxd7 Kxd7. What is the material balance?



186. The count on c6 is 3-3. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxc6+ Bxc6 13 Nxc6 Qxc6 14 Qxc6+ Rxc6. How can White win material in this position?

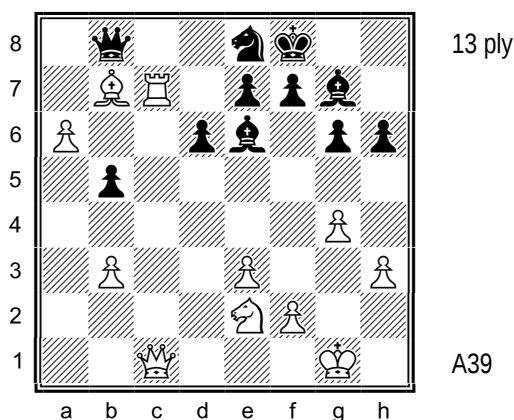


187. White has a piece for three pawns. The count on c6 is 3-2. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Bxc6 Bxc6 21 Rxc6+ bxc6 22 Qxc6+ Kb8 23 0-0¹ Qb6 24 Rb1 Qxb1+ 25 Nxb1. What is the material balance?



188. The count on c8 is 3-2, but White's second attacker is his Queen. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Rxc8 Rxc8 25 Qxc8+ Nxc8 26 Rxc8+ Kh7. How can White win material in this position?

¹ White's threat is 24 Rb1+, winning Black's Queen.

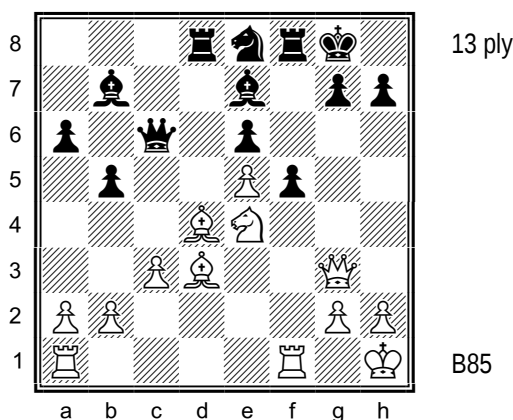


13 ply

A39

189. White is up the exchange and has a passed a-pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 36 Rc8 Bxc8¹ 37 Qxc8 Qxc8 38 Bxc8 Nc7 39 Bb7 b4 40 a7² Ke8 41 a8=Q+ Nxa8 42 Bxa8. What is the material balance?

¹ 36...Qa7 loses to 37 Ra8, for example, 37...Qc5 38 Bc6 wins Black's Knight on e8 or 37...Qb6 38 Qc6, with a double attack on e8 and b6. ² Black resigned here.

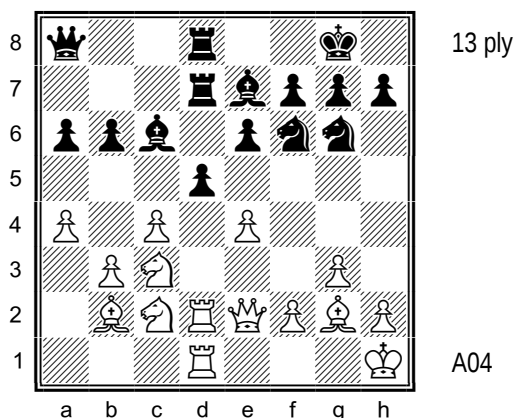


13 ply

B85

190. Black has just played 18...f7-f5. Visualize the position after the moves 19 exf6 Nxf6 20 Nxf6+ Bxf6 21 Rxf6 Rxf6 22 Bxf6 Qxg2+¹ 23 Qxg2 Bxg2+ 24 Kxg2 gxf6² 25 Rd1. What is the material balance?

¹ This is the best way to meet the dual threat of 23 Qxg7 mate and 23 Bxd8. ² 24...Rxd3 can be met by 25 Bg5, preventing 25...Rd2+.

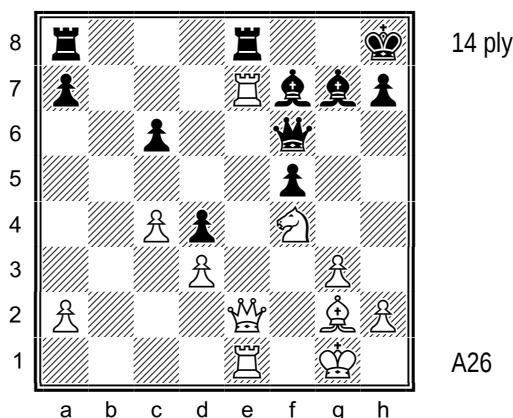


13 ply

A04

191. The count on d5 is even (6-6), but White can get a pin along the h1-a8 diagonal. Visualize the position after the moves 23 cxd5 exd5 24 Nxd5¹ Nxd5 25 exd5 Bxd5² 26 Rxd5 Rxd5 27 Rxd5 Rxd5 28 Ne3 Qc8 29 Nxd5. What is the material balance?

¹ This is better than 24 exd5 Bb7, when White's Knight on c3 and Bishop on b2 are passive. ² Black is down a pawn after 25...Bb7 and the exchange after 25... Rxd5 26 Bxd5 Rxd5.



14 ply

A26

192. The count is 3-2 on e8, but White's second attacker is his Queen. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Rxe8+ Bxe8 26 Qxe8+ Rxe8 27 Rxe8+ Bf8 28 Ne6¹ Kg8 29 Bxc6 h5 30 Rxf8+ Qxf8 31 Nxf8 Kxf8. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here.

CHAPTER 8. EXCHANGING TO A WON ENDING

This chapter features exercises that illustrate how to use a series of exchanges to create a favorable ending. The following themes are seen in this chapter:

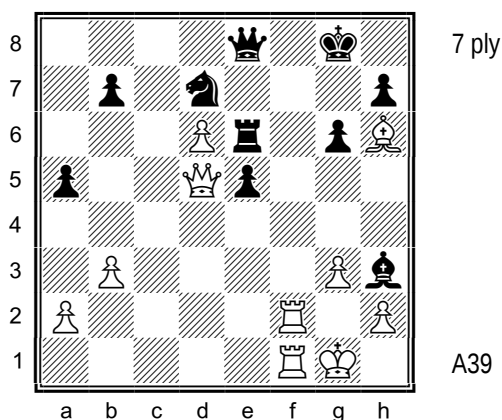
- ✧ Freeing up a passed pawn – see exercises 193, 196, 200, and 201;
- ✧ Creating a passed pawn by winning a weak pawn – see exercises 195, 197, 198, and 199;
- ✧ Ignoring your opponent's threat – see exercises 193 and 197;
- ✧ Consolidation – see exercises 194, 202, 206, 208, and 214;
- ✧ Pawn break leads to penetration – see exercises 204, 205, 207, and 217;
- ✧ Outside passed pawn used as a decoy – see exercises 203, 209, and 220;
- ✧ Zugzwang wins a critical pawn – see exercises 211, 212, 213, 219, 221, and 223; and
- ✧ Mates involving a passed pawn – see exercises 222, 225, 226, 227, and 228.

The following is a breakdown of the exercises based on the chapters presented in Section 1:

- ✧ Even Exchanges – see exercises 194, 197, 198, 199, 208, 222, 224, 225, and 226;
- ✧ Extra Attacker – none;
- ✧ Pieces of Different Value – see exercises 196, 200, 202, 203, 204, 205, 207, 211, 216, 218, 219, 221, and 224;
- ✧ Penetration – see exercises 193, 215, and 220; and
- ✧ Passed Pawn – see exercises 195, 206, 209, 210, 213, 214, 217, 227, and 228.

This chapter contains thirty-six exercises ranging in depth from seven to thirty nine half-moves, as seen in the following table:

Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13 ⁺	TOTAL
Exercises:	-	-	-	4	-	4	-	4	-	24	36

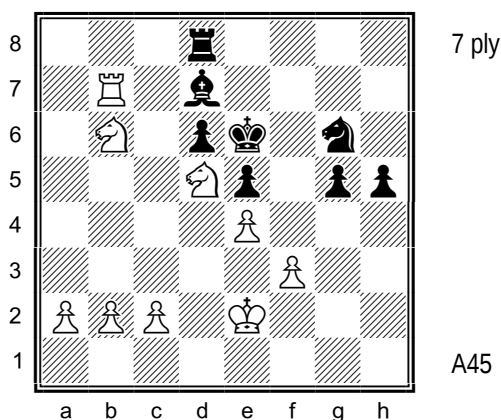


7 ply

A39

193. White is up the exchange, but his Rook is under attack. White is able to force a series of exchanges that frees up his d-pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 36 Rf8+ Nxf8 37 Rxf8+ Qxf8 38 Bxf8¹ Kxf8 39 d7². What is the material balance?

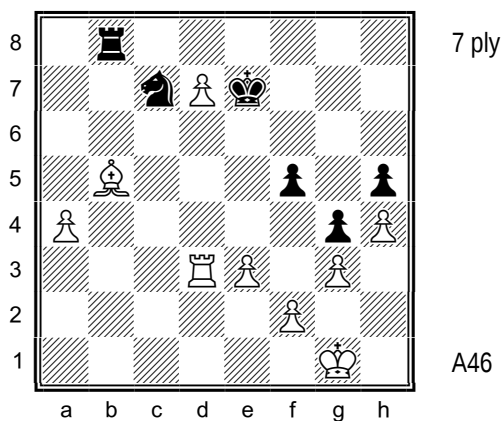
¹ Black resigned here. ² White's pawn will queen.



7 ply

A45

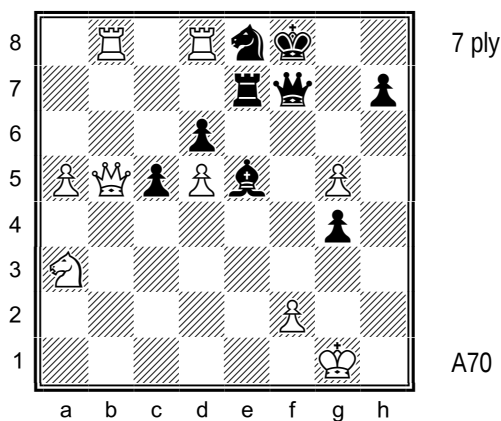
194. White is up a pawn, but Black's h-pawn could become dangerous. Visualize the position after the moves 40 Nxd7 Rxd7 41 Rxd7 Kxd7 42 Nf6+ Kc6 43 Nxh5. What is the material balance?



7 ply

A46

195. White is up three pawns and can create a passed e-pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 57 d8=Q+ Rxd8 58 Rxd8 Kxd8 59 Bd3 Ne8 60 Bxf5. What is the material balance?



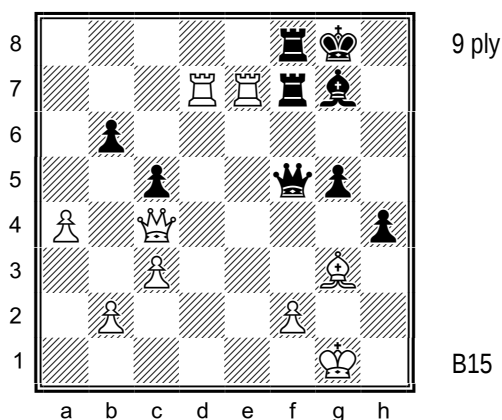
7 ply

A70

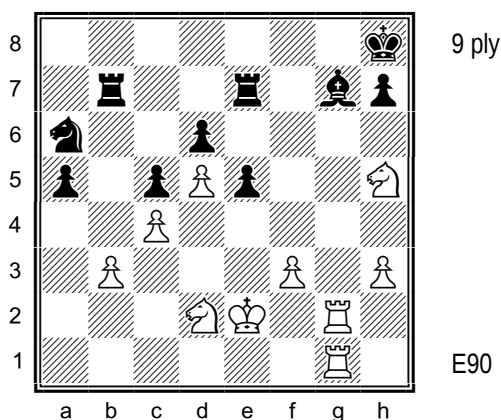
196. White gives back his extra material in order to promote his passed pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 42 Qxe8+¹ Rxe8 43 Rxe8+ Qxe8² 44 Rxe8+ Kxe8 45 a6³. What is the material balance?

¹ 42 Rxe8+ is also good. ² 43...Kg7 is met by 44 Rg8+, when Black is forced to play 44...Qxg8.

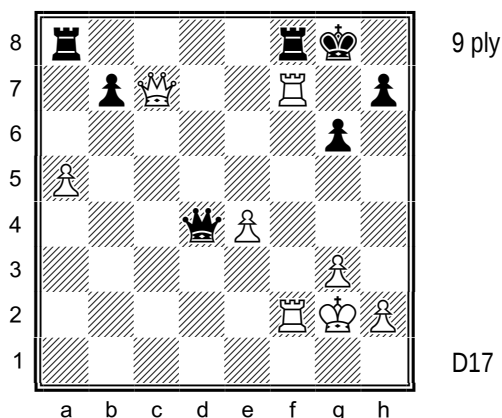
³ Black resigned here as White's pawn will queen.



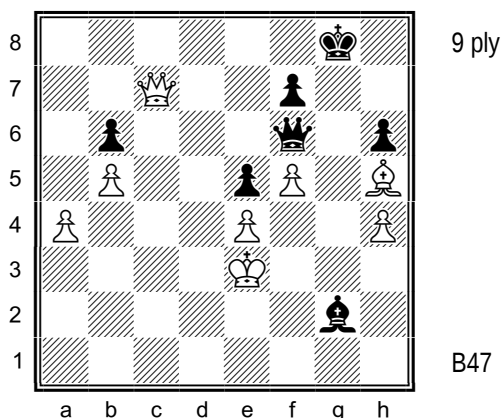
197. White's Bishop is under attack, but Black's b-pawn is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 31 Rxf7 Rxf7 32 Rxf7 Qxf7 33 Qxf7+ Kxf7 34 Bc7 Ke6 35 Bxb6. What is the material balance?



198. Black's d-pawn is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 33 Nxg7 Rxg7 34 Rxg7 Rxg7 35 Rxg7 Kxg7 36 Ne4 Kg6 37 Nxd6. What is the material balance?



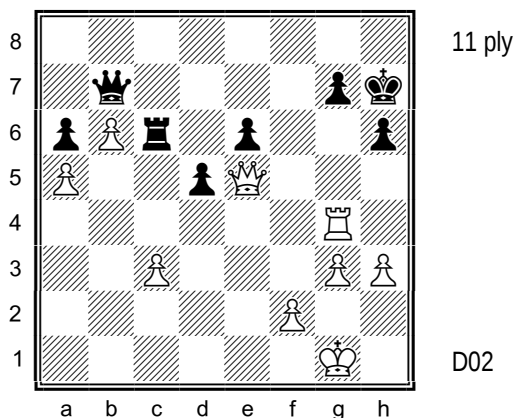
199. White is up a pawn and can create a protected passed pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 42 Rxf8+ Rxf8 43 Rxf8+ Kxf8 44 Qc8+¹ Kg7 45 Qxb7+ Kh6 46 a6. What is the material balance?



200. White can give up a piece to promote one of his queenside pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 43 Qxf7+ Qxf7 44 Bxf7+ Kxf7 45 a5 Bf1 46 axb6¹ Bxb5 47 b7². What is the material balance?

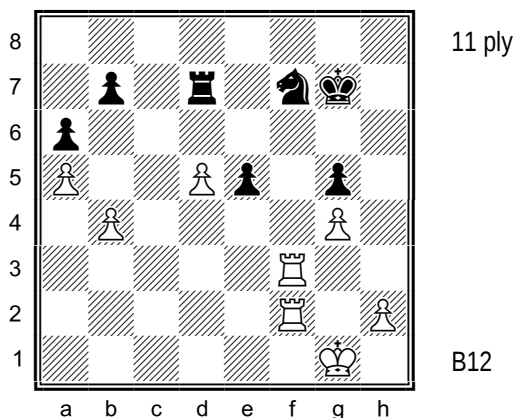
¹ The immediate 44 Qxb7 defends the e-pawn, but loses the a-pawn to 44...Qd2+ and 45...Qxa5. The only way to keep both pawns is to take on b7 with check.

¹ Black resigned here, but White had to be careful, as 46 a6 loses to 46...Bxb5 47 a7 Bc6, when Black's Bishop stops the pawn. ² White's pawn will queen.



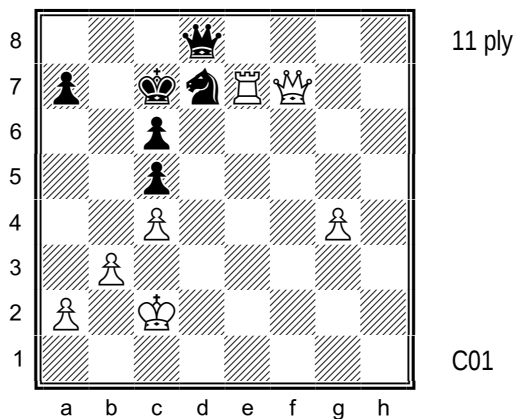
201. White forces a series of exchanges that frees up his b-pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 42 Qxg7+ Qxg7 43 Rxg7+ Kxg7 44 b7 d4¹ 45 b8=Q Rxc3² 46 Qe5+ Kf7 47 Qxd4. What is the material balance?

¹ 44...Rxc3 45 b8=Q Rc4 drops the a-pawn to 46 Qb7+ Kf6 47 Qxa6. ² 45...dxc3 loses the Rook to 46 Qb7+.



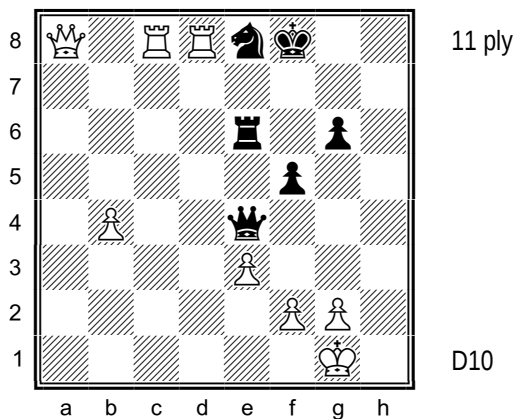
202. White is up the exchange and a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 48 Rxf7+ Rxf7 49 Rxf7+ Kxf7 50 Kf2 Ke7 51 Ke3 Kd6¹ 52 Ke4² Kd7 53 Kxe5. What is the material balance?

¹ 51...Kd7 52 Ke4 Kd6 is met by 53 h3, when Black has to give way. ² Black resigned here.



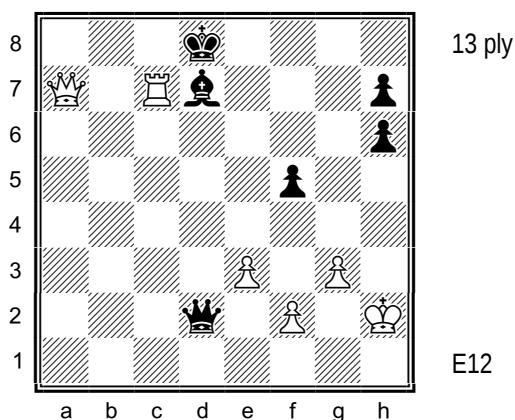
203. White can give back the exchange to win Black's weak queenside pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 47 Rxd7+¹ Qxd7 48 Qxd7+ Kxd7 49 Kd3² Ke6 50 Ke4 Kf6 51 g5+³ Kxg5 52 Ke5. What is the material balance?

¹ 47 g5 also wins. ² White can also play on the queenside directly, for example, 49 Kc3 Ke6 50 b4 Ke5 51 b5 cxb5 52 cxb5 kf4 53 a4 Kxg4 54 a5 Kf5 55 b6, when Black's King is outside the box. ³ Black resigned here. 51 Kf4 a6 52 g5+ Kg6 53 Ke5 is similar.



204. White can give up his extra material to break through on the kingside. Visualize the position after the moves 52 Rxe8+ Rxe8 53 Rxe8+ Qxe8 54 Qxe8+ Kxe8 55 Kh2¹ g5² 56 g4 fxg4 57 Kg3. What is the material balance?

¹ 55 g4 immediately also wins, as does saving the b-pawn with 55 Kf1 Kd7 56 Ke2 Kc6 57 Kd3 Kb5 58 Kc3, as was played in the game (1-0, 60). ² 55...Kd7 56 Kh3 g5 57 g4 is similar.

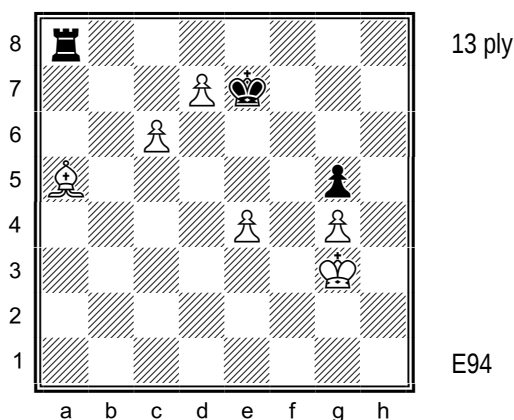


13 ply

E12

205. Black's pawns are weak. Visualize the position after the moves 48 Rxd7+ Qxd7 49 Qxd7+ Kxd7 50 Kh3 Ke6¹ 51 g4² Ke5 52 f4+ Kf6 53 gxf5 Kxf5 54 Kh4. What is the material balance?

¹ 50...h5, securing g4, isn't an option since the h-pawn falls to 51 Kh4 Ke6 52 Kxh5. ² Also good is 51 Kh4 Kf6 Kh5 Kg7 with 53 f3 or 53 f4. Black resigned here.

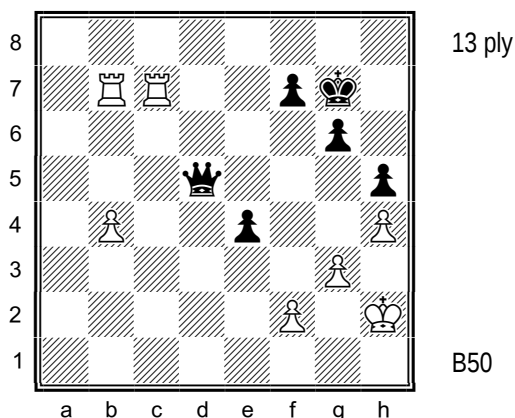


13 ply

E94

206. White has three pawns for the exchange. Visualize the position after the moves 56 d8=Q+ Rxd8 57 Bxd8+ Kxd8 58 e5 Kc7 59 Kf3 Kxc6 60 Ke4 Kc5¹ 61 Kf5 Kd5 62 Kf6². What is the material balance?

¹ White also wins after 60...Kd7 61 Kf5. ² Black resigned here.

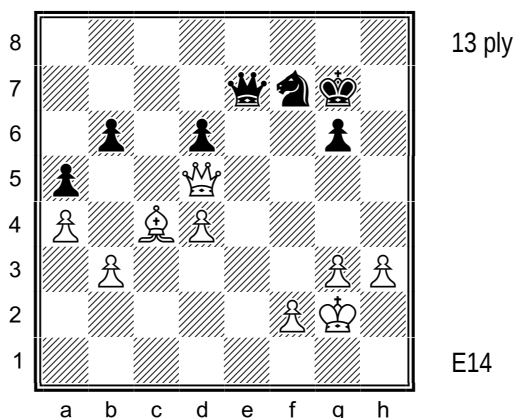


13 ply

B50

207. White's outside passed pawn serves as a decoy to lure Black's King away from the kingside. Visualize the position after the moves 47 Rxf7+ Qxf7 48 Rxf7+ Kxf7 49 g4¹ Ke6 50 Kg3 Ke5 51 gxf5 gxf5 52 b5 Kd5 53 Kf4. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here. White can also play 49 b5 Ke6 50 b6 Kd6 51 g4, for example, 51...Kc6 52 Kg3 Kxb6 53 gxf5 gxf5 54 Kf4.

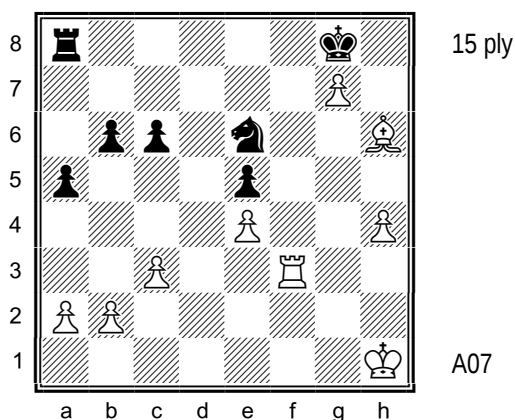


13 ply

E14

208. White uses his extra pawns to set up an impenetrable barrier. Visualize the position after the moves 41 Qxf7+ Qxf7 42 Bxf7 Kxf7 43 d5 Kf6 44 f4 Kf5 45 Kf3¹ Kf6 46 Kg4 Kf7 47 f5². What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here. ² Regardless of what Black does, White will gain connected passed pawns on the kingside.

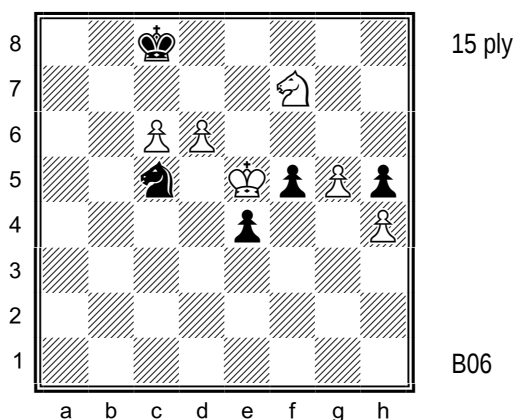


209. White is up two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 45 Rf8+ Rxf8¹ 46 gxf8=Q+ Nxf8 47 Bxf8 Kxf8 48 Kg2 Kg7 49 Kg3 b5² 50 Kg4 Kf6 51 h5 c5 52 a3³. What is the material balance?

¹ 45...Nxf8 46 gxf8=Q+ doesn't change anything.

² 49...Kg6 50 Kg4 Kf6 51 h5 is also hopeless.

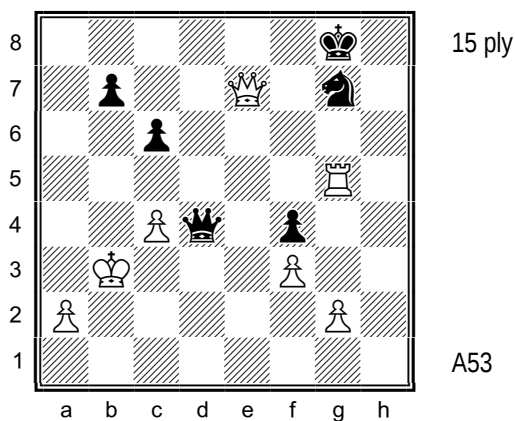
³ Black resigned here. 52 b3 and 52 h6 also win.



210. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 64 d7+ Nxd7+ 65 cxd7+ Kxd7 66 Kxf5¹ e3 67 Ne5+ Ke7 68 Kg6² Ke6 69 Nf3 Kd5³ 70 Kf5 Kd6 71 Kf6. What is the material balance?

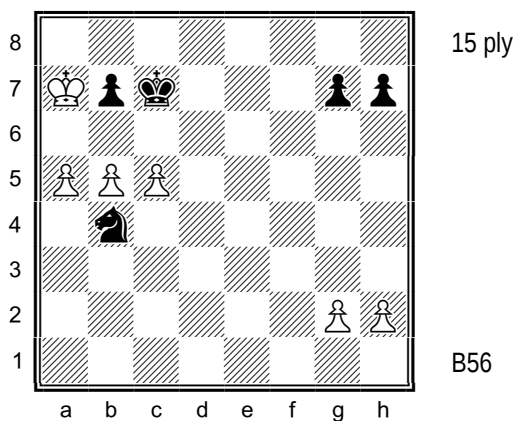
¹ Black resigned here. ² 68 g6 with Kg5 is also good.

³ White's pawn queens after 69...Ke7 70 Kh7.



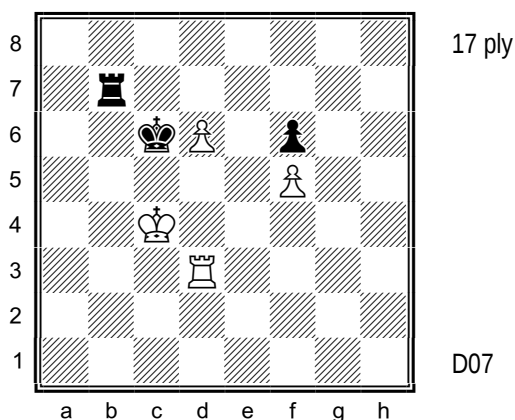
211. White has several ways to win. Visualize the position after the moves 44 Rxg7+ Qxg7 45 Qxg7+ Kxg7 46 Kc3¹ Kf6 47 Kd4 Kf5 48 c5² Kf6 49 Ke4 Kg5 50 Ke5 Kg6 51 Kxf4. What is the material balance?

¹ White can also play on the queenside -- 46 Kb4 b6 47 c5 b5 48 Ka5 also wins. ² Black resigned here. 48 Kc5 is also good.



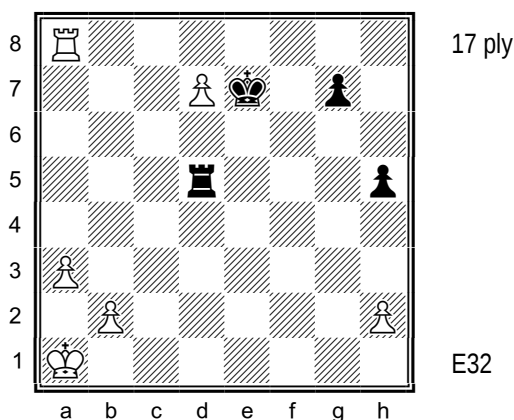
212. White can win back his piece and create a zugzwang. Visualize the position after the moves 43 c6 Nxc6+ 44 bxc6 bxc6 45 Ka6¹ h6² 46 g4 g6 47 h4 g5 48 h5 c5 49 Kb5 Kb7 50 Kxc5. What is the material balance?

¹ Black will soon run out of pawn moves on the king-side, forcing him to move either his King or pawn on the queenside. ² 45...g6 46 h4 is similar to the game continuation, while 45...h5 can be met by 46 h4 and 45...g5 by 46 g4.



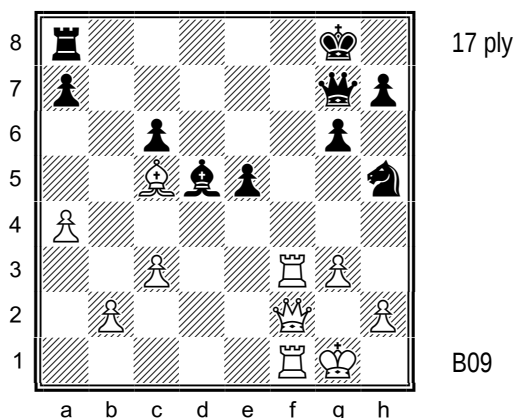
213. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 55 d7 Rxd7 56 Rxd7 Kxd7 57 Kd5 Ke7 58 Kc6¹ Ke8² 59 Kd6 Kf7 60 Kd7 Kf8 61 Ke6 Kg7 62 Ke7 Kg8 63 Kxf6. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here. ² 58...Kf7 59 Kd7 Kg7 60 Ke7 transposes.



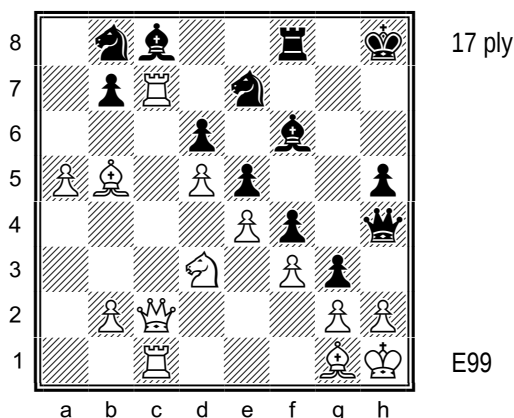
214. White is up two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 40 d8=Q+ Rxd8 41 Rxd8 Kxd8 42 Kb1¹ g5 43 Kc2 g4 44 Kd2 h4 45 Kd2 g3 46 hxg3 h3 47 Kf2 h2 48 Kg2. What is the material balance?

¹ White has to be careful, as 42 b4 loses to 42...g5, for example, 43 Kb2 g4 44 Kc2 h4 45 Kd2 g3 46 hxg3 h3 and Black's pawn queens. Black resigned after 42 Kb1.



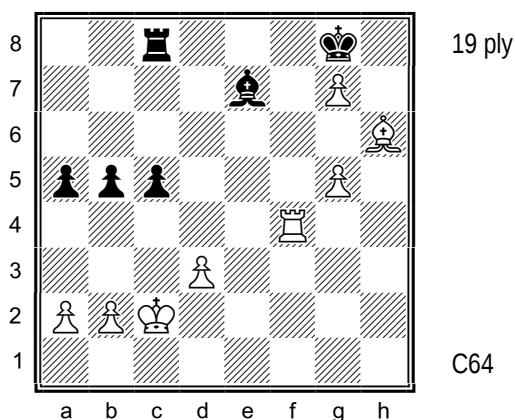
215. The count on f8 is 4-3. White is up the exchange. Visualize the position after the moves 29 Rf8+ Rxf8 30 Qxf8+ Qxf8 31 Rxf8+ Kg7 32 Ra8¹ Nf6 33 Rxa7+ Kg8 34 a5 Ne4 35 Be3 Bc4 36 a6 Bxa6² 37 Rxa6. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here. ² 36...Nd6 is worse, e.g., 37 Ra8+ Kg7 38 a7 Nb5, when White is up a Queen for a Knight after 39 Rg8+ Bxg8 40 a8=Q.



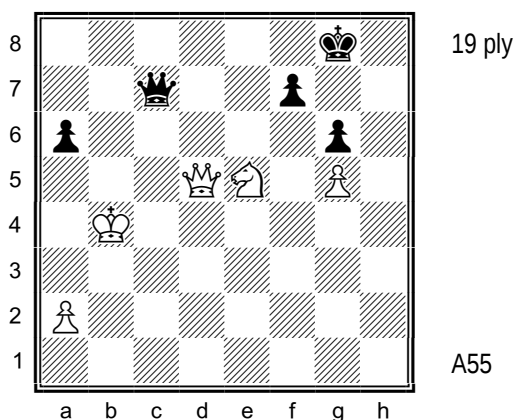
216. White gives up his Queen for three pieces, but gains an unstoppable passed pawn. What is the material balance after the moves 29 Rxc8 Nxc8 30 Qxc8 Rxc8 31 Rxc8+ Kg7 32 Rxb8 Kh6¹ 33 Rxb7 Bg7 34 a6² Qd8 35 a7 h4³ 36 Rb8 Qc7 37 a8=Q?

¹ 32...Bd8 33 Rxb7+ with 34 a6 and 32...gxh2 33 Bf2 doesn't change anything. ² Black resigned here. ³ 35...Qa8 drops the Queen to 36 Rb8.



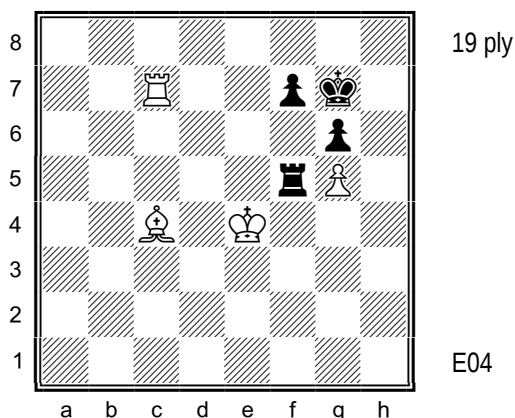
217. Visualize the position after the moves 51 Rf8+ Bxf8 52 gxf8=Q+ Rxf8 53 Bxf8 Kxf8¹ 54 a4² bxa4 55 Kc3 Ke7 56 Kc4³ Kd6 57 g6 Ke6 58 Kxc5 Kf6 59 d4 Kxg6 60 Kc6. What is the material balance?

¹ Black's King has to watch White's g-pawn. ² This ensures access to c4, e.g., 54...b4 55 Kb3 Kf7 56 Kc4 also wins. White can also defend his g-pawn with 54 Ke2 Kf7 53 Ke3 Kg6 53 Kf4. ³ Black resigned here.



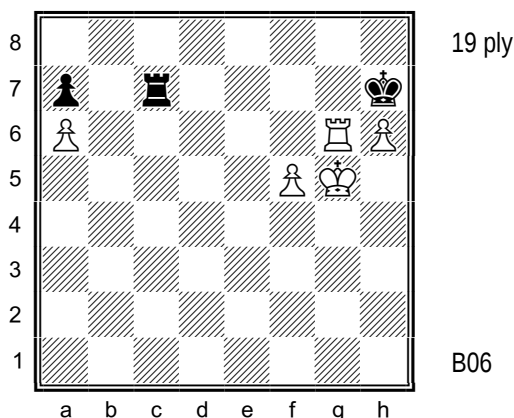
218. How far will Black's g-pawn advance during the time it takes White to queen his a-pawn? Visualize the position after the moves 51 Qxf7+ Qxf7 52 Nxf7 Kxf7 53 Ka5 Ke6 54 Kxa6 Kf5 55 Kb5 Kxg5 56 a4¹ Kf4 57 a5 g5 58 a6 g4 59 a7 g3 60 a8=Q. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here.



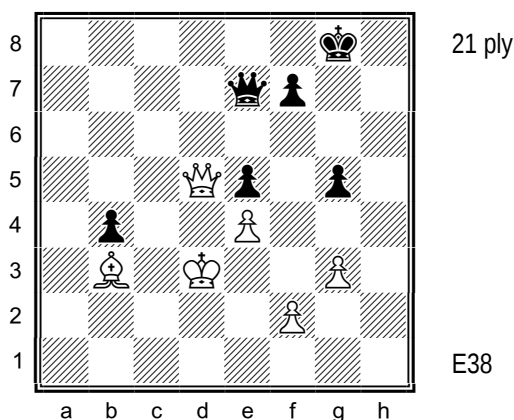
219. White can give back his material, win Black's g-pawn, then queen his last remaining pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 48 Rxf7+ Rxf7 49 Bxf7 Kxf7 50 Kd5¹ Ke7 51 Ke5 Kf7 52 Kd6 Kf8 53 Ke6 Kg7 54 Ke7 Kg8 55 Kf6 Kh7 56 Kf7 Kh8 57 Kxg6. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here. 50 Ke5 can be met by 50...Ke7, when White can't make progress.



220. White is up two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 52 Rg7+ Rxg7+ 53 hxg7 Kxg7 54 f6+¹ Kf7² 55 Kf5 Kf8 56 Ke6 Ke8 57 Kd6 Kf7 58 Kc7 Kxf6 59 Kb7 Ke7 60 Kxa7 Kd7 61 Kb7. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here. ² 54...Kf8 55 Kf5 Kf7 56 Ke5 Kf8 57 Kd6 is similar.

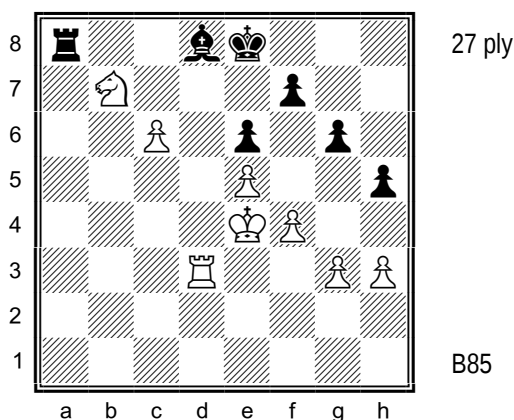


21 ply

E38

221. White can give back his piece to gain a won ending. Visualize the position after the moves 46 Qxf7+ Qxf7 47 Bxf7+ Kxf7 48 Kc4¹ Ke7 49 Kxb4 Kd6² 50 g4³ Kc6 51 Kc4 Kd6 52 Kb5 Ke6 53 Kc6 Ke7 54 Kd5 Kf6 55 Kd6 Kf7 56 Kxe5. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here. ² 49...g4 50 Kc5 Ke6 51 Kc6 doesn't change much. ³ 50 Kb5 g4 51 Kb6 also wins.

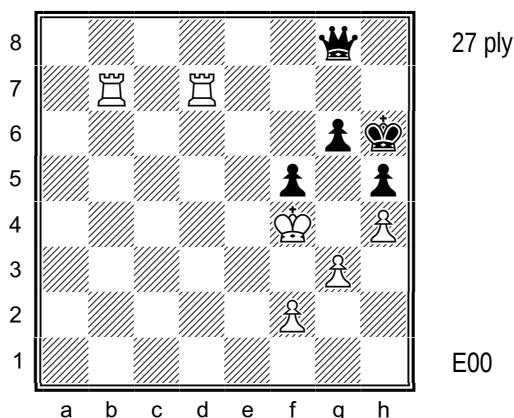


27 ply

B85

222. How does White mate in five moves after the moves 48 Rxd8+ Rxd8 49 Nxd8 Kxd8 50 Kd4 Kc8¹ 51 Kc4 Kd8² 52 Kb5 Kc7 53 Kc5 Kc8 54 Kd6 Kd8 55 c7+ Kc8 56 Kc6³?

¹ 50...Kc7 51 Kc5 gives White the opposition. ² 51...Kb8 transposes after 52 Kb5 Kc8 (52...Kc7 53 Kc5) 53 Kb6 Kb8 54 c7+ Kc8 55 Kc6. ³ Black is in zugzwang. The actual game continued 56 Ke7 Kxc7 57 Kxf7 Kc6 58 Kxe6 (1-0, 72).

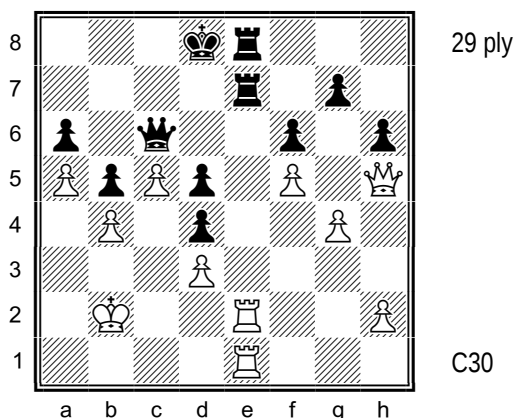


27 ply

E00

223. Visualize the moves 67 Rh7+ Qxh7 68 Rxh7+ Kxh7 69 Ke5¹ Kh6 70 Ke6² Kg7 71 f4 Kh7 72 Kf7 Kh6 73 Kg8³ g5 74 hxg5+⁴ Kg6 75 Kh8 h4⁵ 76 gxh4 Kh5. How does White win here?

¹ 69 Kg5 Kg7 70 f3 Kf7 71 Kh6 Kf6 72 f4 Kf7 73 Kh7 Kf6 74 Kg8 is similar to the game. ² 70 Kf6 Kh7 71 f4 Kh6 72 Kf7 Kh7 73 Ke6 Kg7 74 Ke7 Kh7 75 Kf7 transposes. ³ Black resigned here. ⁴ 74 fxg5+ also wins. ⁵ 75...Kf7 loses to 76 Kh7, when White's g-pawn queens.

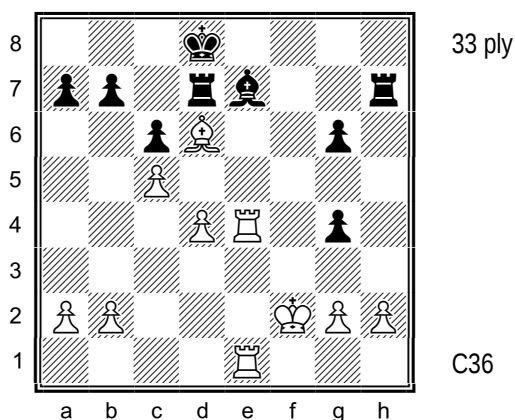


29 ply

C30

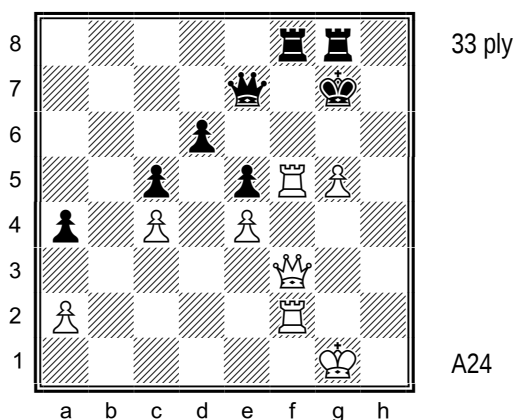
224. Black's King has to watch White's c-pawn, so White is free to break through on the king-side. Visualize the moves 39 Qxe8+ Rxe8¹ 40 Rxe8+ Qxe8² 41 Rxe8+ Kxe8 42 Kc2 Kf7 43 Kd2³ Ke7 44 Ke2 Ke8 45 Kf3 Kf7 46 Kg3 Ke7 47 Kh4 Ke8 48 Kh5 Kf7 49 c6 Ke7 50 Kg6 Kd6 51 Kxg7 Kxc6 52 Kxf6 Kd6. How does White win here?

¹ 39...Qxe8 40 Rxe7 Qc6 41 Re8+ is similar. ² 40...Kc7 loses a Rook to 41 R1e7+. ³ Black resigned here.



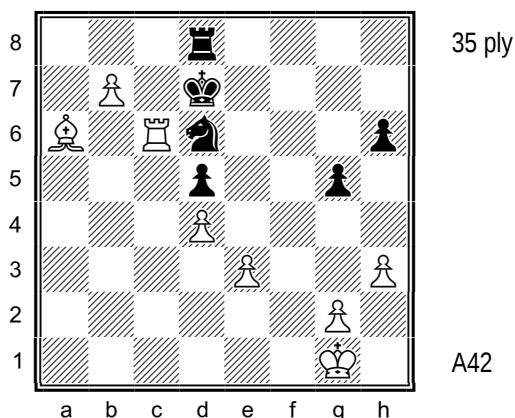
225. How does White mate in three after the moves 26 Bxe7+ Rdx7 27 Rxe7 Rxe7 28 Rxe7 Kxe7 29 Kg3 Ke6 30 Kxg4 Kf6¹ 31 h4 Kf7 32 Kg5 Kg7 33 g4 a6² 34 h5 gxh5 35 gxh5 a5 36 h6+ Kh7 37 a4 Kg8 38 Kg6 Kh8 39 h7?³

¹ In the game Black chose 30...Kd5 31 Kg5 Kxd4 32 Kxg6 (1-0). ² 33...b6 loses to 34 d5, when White gains a passed c-pawn. ³ Hint: What is Black's only legal move?



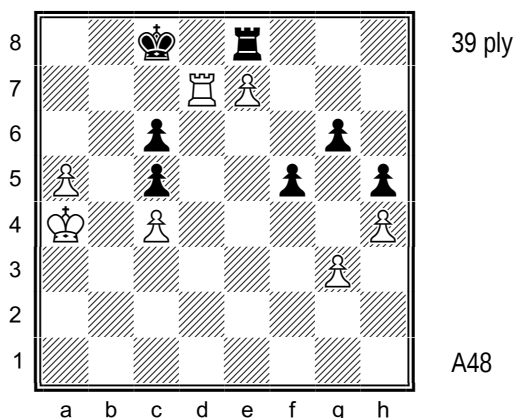
226. How does White mate in four after the moves 41 Rxf8 Rxf8 42 Qxf8+ Qxf8 43 Rxf8 Kxf8 44 Kf2¹ Kf7 45 Kg3 Kg6² 46 Kg4 a3 47 Kh4 Kg7 48 Kh5 Kh7 49 g6+ Kg7 50 Kg5 Kg8 51 Kf6 Kf8 52 g7+ Kg8 53 Kg6?³

¹ White takes the distant opposition, but could also have played 44 Kg2 or 44 Kh2. Black resigned here. ² 45...Kg7 46 a3 Kg6 47 Kg4 is similar. ³ Hint: What is Black's only legal move?



227. How does White mate in four after the moves 38 Rc8¹ Rxc8 39 bxc8=Q+ Nxc8 40 Bxc8+ Kxc8 41 e4 dxe4 42 Kf2 Kd7 43 Ke3 Kd6 44 Kxe4 Ke6 45 d5+ Kf6 46 g4² Ke7 47 Ke5 Kd7 48 d6 Kd8 49 Ke6 Ke8 50 d7+ Kd8 51 Kd6?³

¹ White's threat of 39 b8=Q forces Black to trade on c8. ² Black resigned here. ³ Hint: What is Black's only legal move?



228. How does White mate in five moves after 64 Rd8+ Rxd8 65 exd8=R+ Kxd8 66 a6 Kc8 67 Ka5 Kc7 68 a7 Kb7 69 a8=R Kxa8 70 Kb6 Kb8¹ 71 Kxc6 Kc8 72 Kxc5² Kc7 73 Kd5³ Kd7 74 c5⁴ Kc7 75 c6 Kc8⁵ 76 Kd6 Kd8 77 c7+ Kc8?

¹ White's pawn will queen first and with check after 70...g5. ² 72 Kd6 is also possible. ³ Black resigned here. ⁴ Also good is 74 Ke5 Ke7 75 c5 Kd7 76 Kf6, winning. ⁵ White's pawn will queen after 75...Kd8 76 Kd6 Kc8 77 c7 Kb7 78 Kd7.

CHAPTER 9. BEFORE AND AFTER

This chapter is a composite of the previous three chapters in that these exercises feature a preparatory build-up that is followed by either a tactical device or an exchange of pieces that leads to a won ending.

Typical preparatory themes seen prior to the series of exchanges include the following:

- ✧ Opening lines with a pawn move or capture – see exercises 229, 235, 249, and 251;
- ✧ Sacrificing material to open lines – see exercises 242 and 243;
- ✧ Piling on – see exercises 232, 236, 239, and 245;
- ✧ Removing a defender – see exercises 230, 231, and 246; and
- ✧ Cutting lines of communications – see exercises 233 and 247.

Sub-themes include situations in which White is leading with his Queen (exercise 229) and situations where White ignores his opponent's threats (exercises 233, 235, 236, and 250).

Tactical themes that occur after the exchanges include the following:

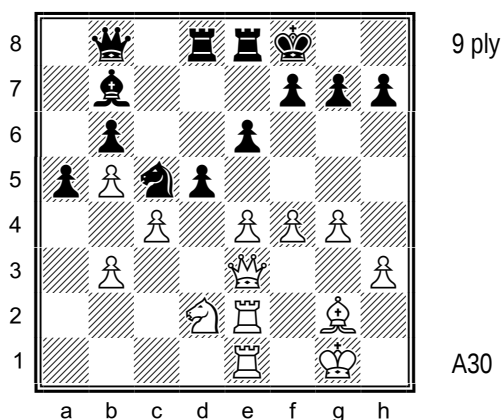
- ✧ Double attacks – see exercise 231;
- ✧ Forks – see exercises 237, 247, and 249;
- ✧ Skewers – see exercises 235, 248, and 250;
- ✧ Removing a defender – see exercises 240 and 244; and
- ✧ Overworked pieces and pawns – see exercises 229, 232, 238, and 239.

The following is a breakdown of the exercises based on the chapters presented in Section 1:

- ✧ Even Exchanges – see exercises 229, 231, 236, 242, 245, 246, 251, and 252;
- ✧ An Extra Attacker – see exercises 230, 233, and 243;
- ✧ Pieces of Different Value – see exercises 239, 240, and 244;
- ✧ Penetration – see exercises 231, 238, and 241; and
- ✧ Passed Pawn – see exercises 234, 237, 238, 248, 249, and 250.

This chapter contains twenty-four exercises ranging in depth from nine to fifteen half-moves, as seen in the following table:

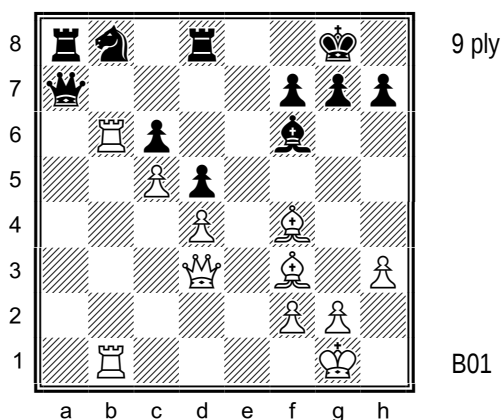
Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13⁺	TOTAL
Exercises:	-	-	-	-	-	10	-	10	-	4	24



9 ply

A30

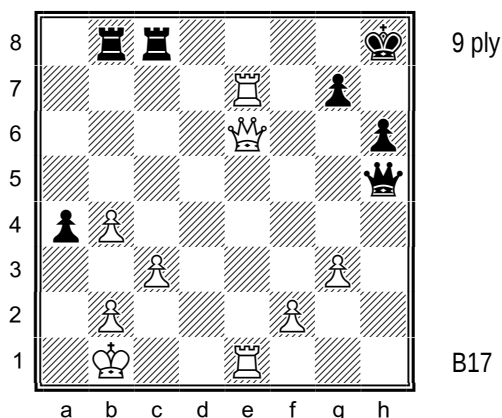
229. Visualize the position after the moves 29 exd5 exd5 30 Qxe8+ Rxe8 31 Rxe8+ Qxe8 32 Rxe8+ Kxe8 33 cxd5. What is the material balance?



9 ply

B01

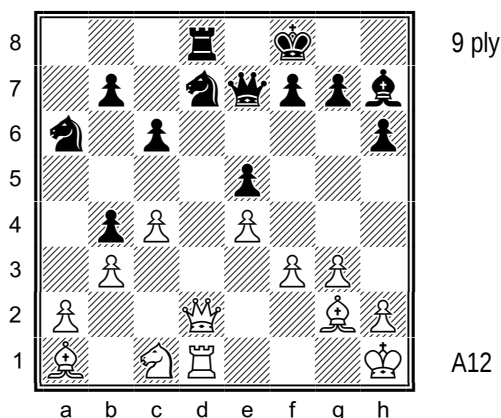
230. The count on b8 is 3-3, but not for long. Visualize the position after the moves 27 Rb7 Qa4 28 Rxb8 Raxb8 29 Rxb8 Rxb8 30 Bxb8 Bxd4 31 Bd6. What is the material balance?



9 ply

B17

231. White is up two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 36 Qf7 Qg4¹ 37 Re8+ Rxe8 38 Rxe8+ Rxe8 39 Qxe8+ Kh7 40 Qxa4. What is the material balance?



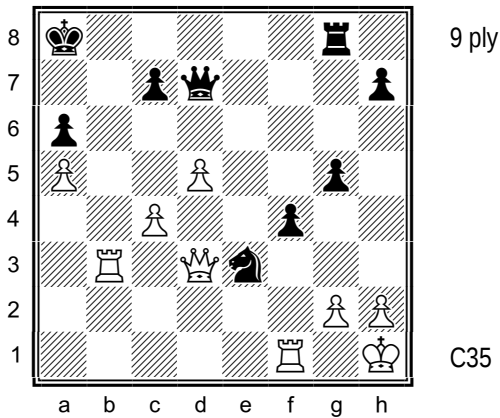
9 ply

A12

232. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Bh3 Ke8¹ 26 Bxd7+ Rxd7 27 Qxd7+ Qxd7 28 Rxd7 Kxd7 29 Bxe5. What is the material balance?

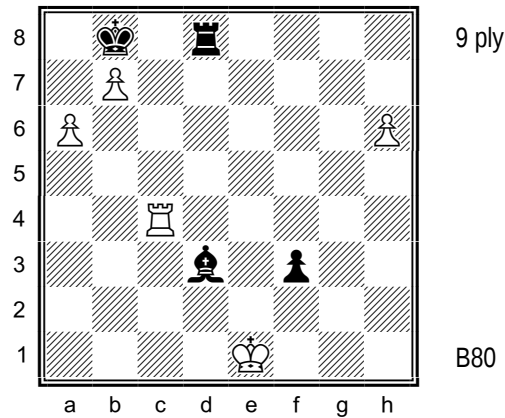
¹ Exchanging Queens with 37...Qxf7 38 Rxf7 deprives Black of all chances of counterplay. With 36...Qg4, Black is hoping to take advantage of the weak light squares around White's King, in particular d1 and b3, but White's 40th move dispels this notion.

¹ Best is 25...f6, overprotecting the pawn on e5, intending to meet 26 Bxd7 with 26...Nb8.



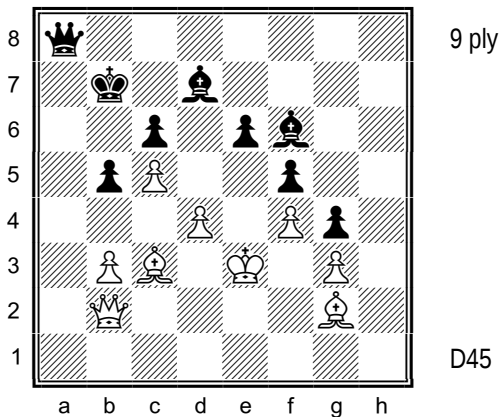
233. White is up the exchange, but his Rook is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 30 c5¹ Qc8 31 c6 Nxf1 32 Rb7 Qxb7 33 cxb7+ Kxb7 34 Qxf1. What is the material balance?

¹ White is threatening mate in one. Also good is 30 Rfb1, intending to meet 30...Qg4 with 31 Qe4, protecting g2 and threatening 32 d6+ Ka7 33 Qb7, mate.



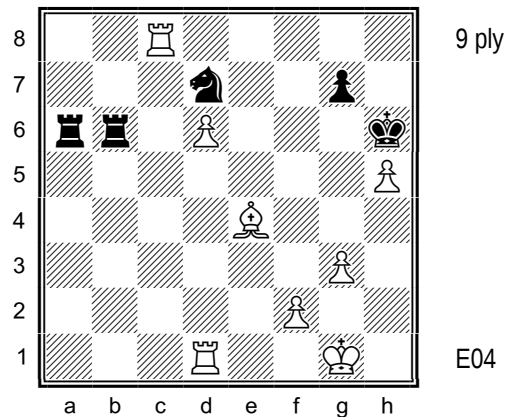
234. White has two pawns for a piece, but his Rook is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 54 Rc3 Bxa6¹ 55 Rc8+ Rxc8 56 bxc8=Q+ Kxc8 57 h7 Bb7 58 h8=Q+. What is the material balance?

¹ This takes the Bishop off of the b1-h7 diagonal and allows White to exchange down to a won ending. Protecting the f-pawn with 54...Be4 is better.



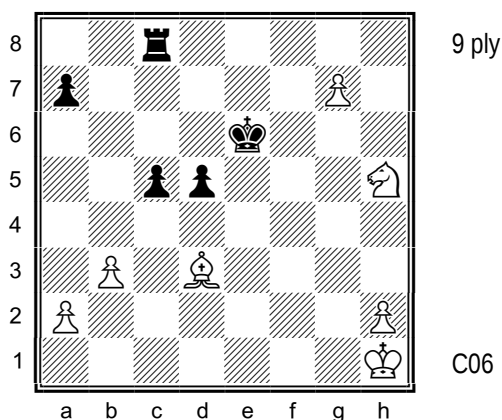
235. Visualize the position after the moves 54 d5 Bxc3 55 dxc6+ Bxc6 56 Bxc6+ Kxc6¹ 57 Qg2+² Kxc5 58 Qxa8. What is the material balance?

¹ Taking the Bishop loses the Queen. Material is even after 56...Kc8, when both Bishops and both Queens are under mutual attack. White can choose between a Queen ending (57 Qxc3 Qxc6) or one with Bishops of opposite color (57 Bxa8 Bxb2). ² Black resigned here.



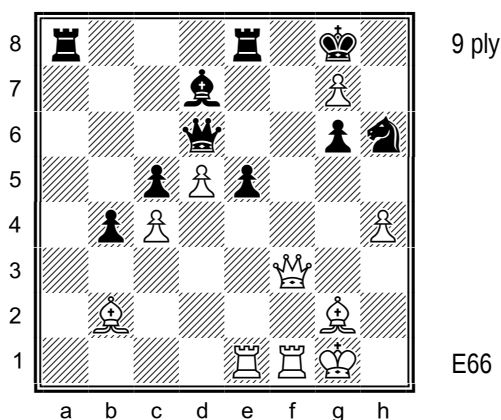
236. White is up three pawns, but his d- and h-pawns are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 41 Rd8 Ra7¹ 42 Bf5 Rbb7 43 Rxd7 Rxd7 44 Bxd7 Rxd7 45 Rd5. What is the material balance?

¹ 41...Rxd6 loses a piece to 42 Rxd7, while 41...Nf6 42 d7 threatens 43 Rh8+ Kg5 44 d8=Q.

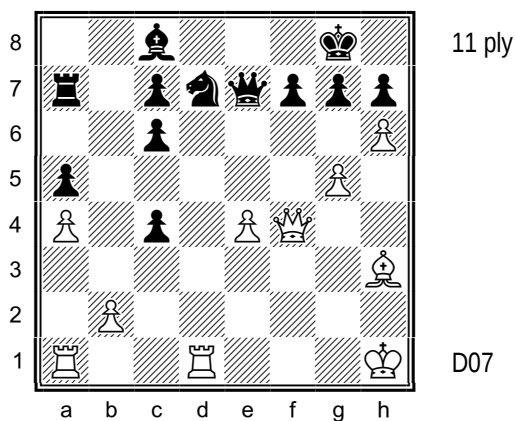


237. White has two minor pieces and a pawn for a Rook. Visualize the position after the moves 41 Bh7 Kf7 42 g8=Q+ Rxc8 43 Bxc8+ Kxc8 44 Nf6+¹ Kf7 45 Nxd5. What is the material balance?

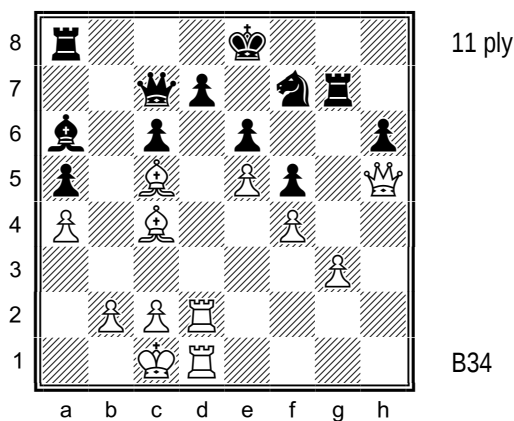
¹ Black resigned here.



238. Visualize the position after the moves 39 Bxe5 Rxe5 40 Qf8+ Rxf8 41 gxf8=Q+ Qxf8 42 Rxf8+ Kxf8 43 Rxe5. What is the material balance?

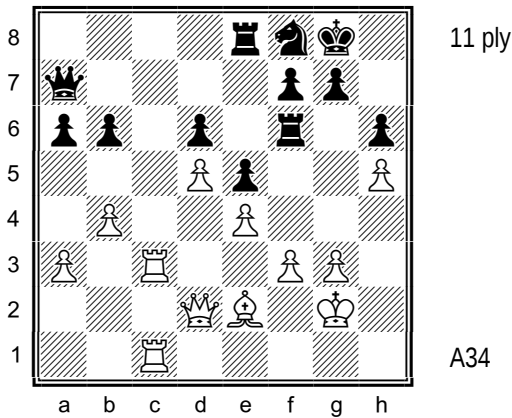


239. White is up the exchange for two pawns, but Black's Knight on d7 is pinned. The count on d7 is 2-2. Both White and Black can add another attacker (White's Rook on a1 and Black's Rook on a7), but then Black's back rank becomes weak. Visualize the position after the moves 33 Rd2 c5 34 Rad1 c6 35 Bxd7 Rxd7 36 Rxd7 Bxd7 37 Rxd7. Why can't Black play 37... Qxd7?



240. White's Bishop on c4 is under attack, but Black's Knight on f7 is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 40 Bxa6 Rxa6 41 Rxd7 Qxd7 42 Rxd7 Kxd7 43 Bf8¹ Rh7 44 Qg6 Rh8 45 Qxf7+. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here.

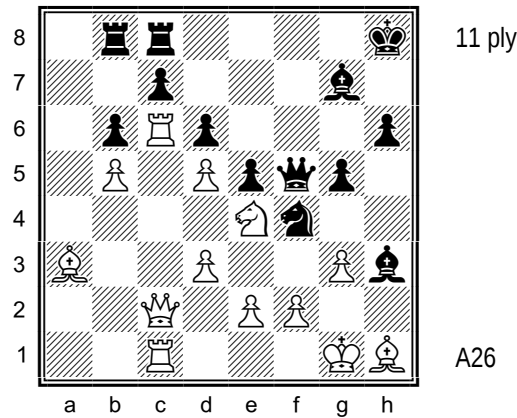


11 ply

A34

241. Black's Rook on f6 is out of play and his queenside pawns are weak. Visualize the position after the moves 34 Rc7 Qa8 35 Qc3 g6¹ 36 Rc8 Rxc8 37 Qxc8 Qxc8 38 Rxc8² gxh5 39 Bxa6. What is the material balance?

¹ Black's pawns are weak after 35...a5 b5 or 35...b5 36 Qc6. ² Black's a-pawn is defenseless.

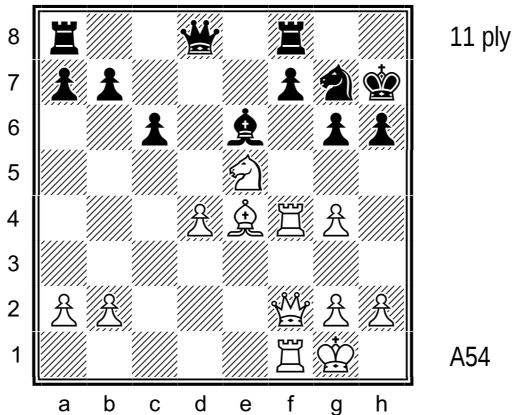


11 ply

A26

242. The count on c8 is 3-3. Visualize the position after the moves 30 Nxd6¹ cxd6 31 Rxc8+ Rxc8 32 Qxc8+ Qxc8 33 Rxc8+ Bxc8 34 gxf4 exf4 35 Bxd6. What is the material balance?

¹ 30 gxf4 is also possible, but White takes the opportunity to get Black's dangerous-looking pieces away from his King.

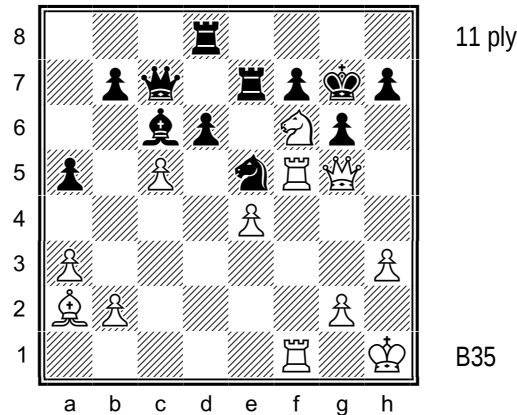


11 ply

A54

243. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Nxc6 fxc6¹ 26 Rxf8 Qxf8 27 Qxf8 Rxf8 28 Rxf8 Bxa2 29 Rb8 b6 30 Bxc6. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up the exchange and a pawn after 25...Kg8 26 Nxf8 Qxf8, while 25...Re8 allows 26 Ne5+ Kg8 27 Nxf7, forking d8 and h6.



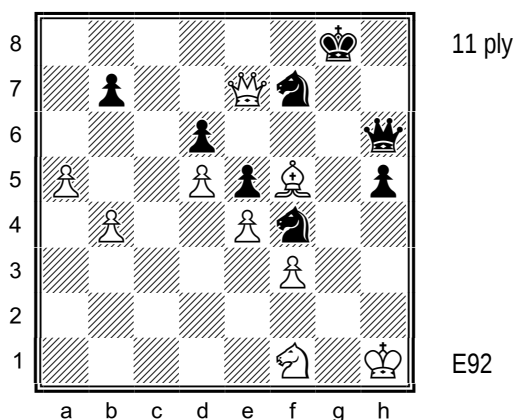
11 ply

B35

244. Visualize the position after the moves 33 Ng4 Nxc4¹ 34 Rxf7+ Rxf7 35 Rxf7+ Qxf7 36 Bxf7 Rf8² 37 Qxc4 Rxf7 38 cxd6. What is the material balance?

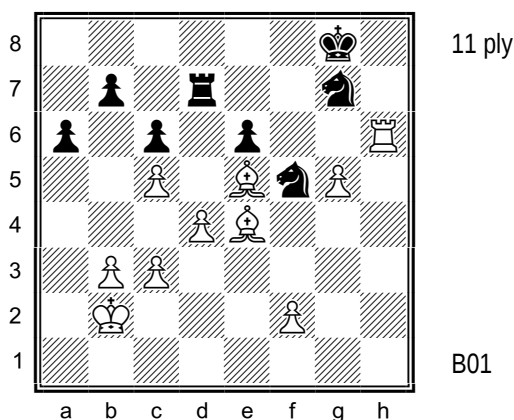
¹ 33...Rf8 loses to 34 Qf6+ Kg8 35 Nh6, mate.

² 36...Kxf7 drops the Rook on d8. White is up a Queen and pawn for Rook and Knight after 36...Nf6 37 cxd6 Rxd6 (37...Kxf7 38 e5 gives White connected passed pawns in the center) 38 Bd5.



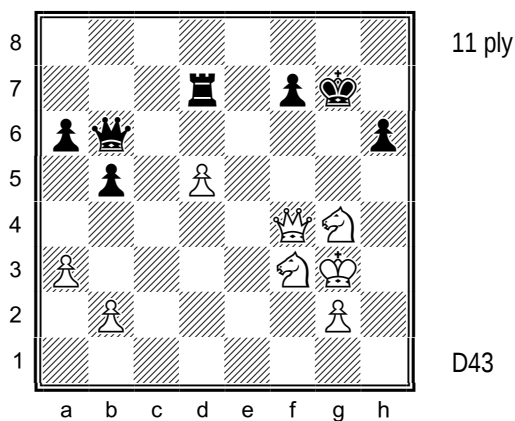
245. White has a queenside pawn majority and can enter a won ending by exchanging pieces. Visualize the position after the moves 53 Be6¹ Qg6 54 Bxf7+ Qxf7 55 Qxf7+ Kxf7 56 b5 Nd3 57 a6 bxa6 58 bxa6. What is the material balance?

¹ White can also play 53 Qxb7, intending to meet 53...Qg5 with 54 Qc8+ Kg7 55 Qc2.



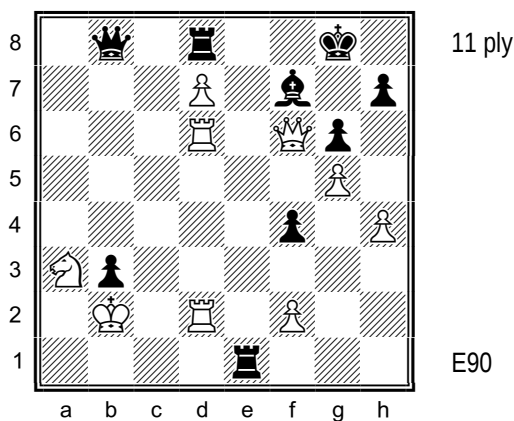
246. White is up two pawns and can get rid of all of Black's pieces. Visualize the position after the moves 41 Bxf5 exf5¹ 42 Rg6 Kh7 43 Rxc7+ Rxc7 44 Bxc7 Kxc7² 45 c4 Kg6 46 f4. What is the material balance?

¹ 41...Nxf5 drops the e-pawn. ² Black resigned here.



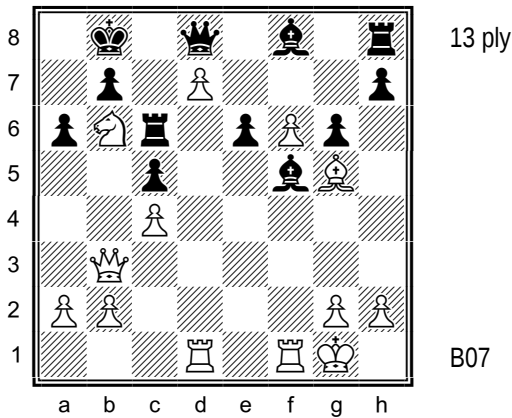
247. White has two Knights for a Rook, but his d-pawn is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 48 Nfe5¹ Rc7 49 Nc6² Rxc6 50 dxc6 Qxc6 51 Qxf7+³ Kxf7 52 Ne5+ Ke6 53 Nxc6. What is the material balance?

¹ The pressure on f7 keeps Black's Rook tied to the 7th rank. ² White's threat is 50 Qxh6 Kg8 51 Nf6, mate. ³ Black resigned here.



248. Visualize the position after the moves 41 Rc6¹ Kf8² 42 Rc8 Rxc8 43 dxc8=Q+ Qxc8 44 Rd8+ Qxd8 45 Qxd8+ Re8 46 Qd6+. What is the material balance?

¹ White threatens 42 Qxd8+ Qxd8 43 Rc8. ² This prevents 42 Qxd8+ Qxd8 43 Rc8, since Black can now defend his Queen with 43...Ke8.

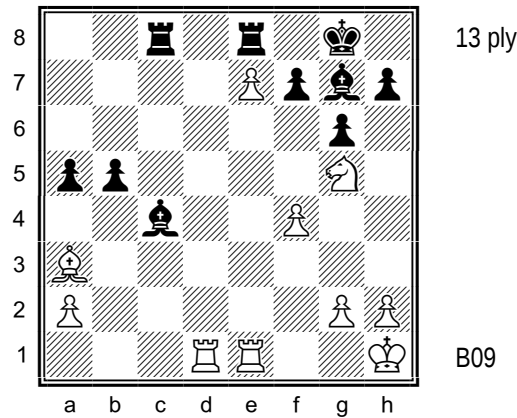


13 ply

B07

249. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 24 f7 Be7¹ 25 Bxe7 Qxe7 26 d8=Q+ Rxd8 27 Rxd8+ Qxd8 28 f8=Q² Qxf8³ 29 Nd7+ Kc7 30 Nxf8. What is the material balance?

¹ 24...Qxg5 loses the Queen to 25 d8=Q+ Qxd8 26 Rxd8+. ² Black resigned here. ³ 28...Rd6 29 Qxd8+ Rxd8 doesn't change anything.

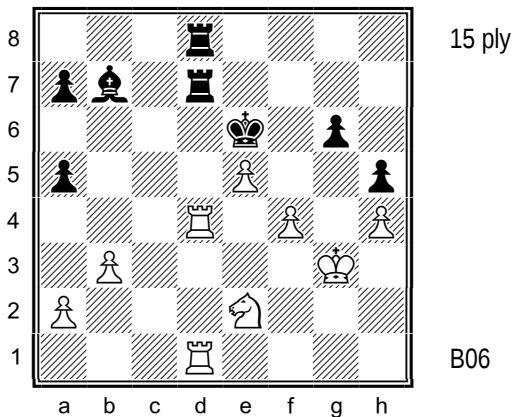


13 ply

B09

250. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Ne4 b4¹ 25 Nd6 Bf6² 26 Nxc8 bxa3³ 27 Rd8 Rxd8 28 exd8=Q+ Bxd8 29 Re8+ Kg7 30 Rxd8. What is the material balance?

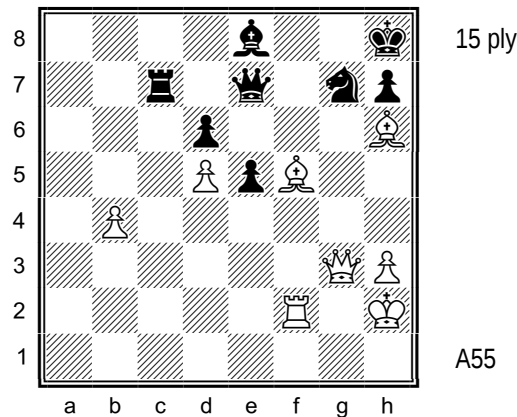
¹ 24...Rb8 25 Nd6 doesn't change anything. ² 25... bxa3 allows 26 Nxc8, when Black can't play 26... Rxc8 because of 27 Rd8+. ³ White is up two Rooks for a Bishop and pawn after 26...Rxc8 27 e8=Q+ Rxe8 28 Rxe8+ Kg7 29 Bc1.



15 ply

B06

251. White is up a pawn, while Black's King is tied to the defense of his Rd7. Visualize the position after the moves 43 f5+ gxf5 44 Nf4+ Ke7 45 Rxd7+ Rxd7 46 Rxd7+ Kxd7 47 Nxh5 Be4 48 Nf6+ Ke6 49 Nxe4 fxe4 50 Kf4. What is the material balance?



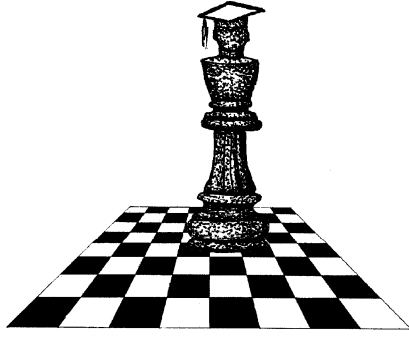
15 ply

A55

252. White's Bishops and Rook dominate Black's Queen, which allows White to create some pins and enter a won ending. Visualize the position after the moves 42 Bg5 Qf8 43 Be6 Bf7 44 Bh6 Qg8 45 Bxf7 Rxf7 46 Rxf7 Qxf7¹ 47 Qxg7+ Qxg7 48 Bxg7+ Kxg7 49 b5. What is the material balance and how does White win in this position?

¹ Black resigned here.

CHESS VISUALIZATION
COURSE



SECTION 3. TWO SECTORS OF THE BOARD

This section contains exercises in which the play typically occurs over two sectors of the board. It includes the following chapters:

CHAPTER 10. TWO SECTORS OF THE BOARD (WHITE TO PLAY)

CHAPTER 11. TWO SECTORS OF THE BOARD (BLACK TO PLAY)

CHAPTER 12. MULTIPLE IMBALANCES

CHAPTER 13. EXPANDING THE POSITION

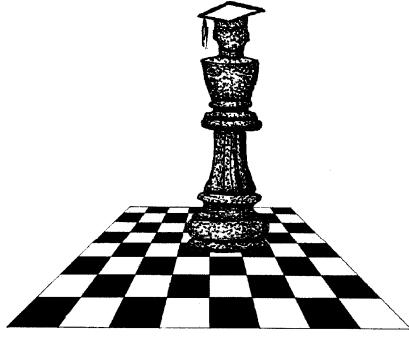
CHAPTER 10, TWO SECTORS OF THE BOARD (WHITE TO PLAY), contains exercises in which the activity covers two sectors of the chess board with White to play.

CHAPTER 11, TWO SECTORS OF THE BOARD (BLACK TO PLAY), contains exercises in which the activity covers two sectors of the chess board with Black to play.

CHAPTER 12, MULTIPLE IMBALANCES, contains exercises involving the exchange of pieces of different value in positions where the material balance is already uneven.

CHAPTER 13, EXPANDING THE POSITION, contains exercises in which a number of White pieces move up the board in concert to create or convert an advantage.

CHESS VISUALIZATION
COURSE



CHAPTER 10. TWO SECTORS OF THE BOARD (WHITE TO PLAY)

This chapter contains exercises in which the activity takes place over two or more sectors of the board. For the purposes of this chapter, we divide the board into five separate sectors:

- ✧ The kingside (which includes the squares within the f1-h8 rectangle);
- ✧ The queenside (which includes the squares within the a1-c8 rectangle);
- ✧ The center (the squares d4, d5, e4, and e5); and
- ✧ The deep center – one for White (the squares within the d6-e8 rectangle) and one for Black (the squares within the d3-e1 rectangle).

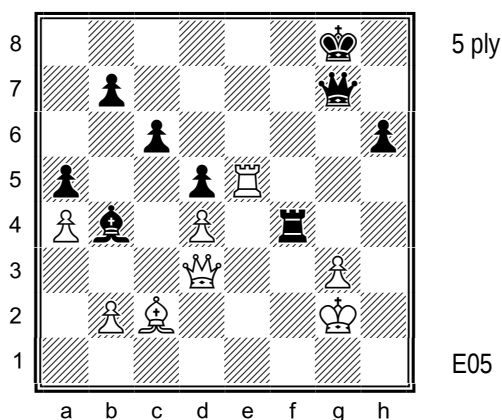
The following are the most common two-sector combinations seen in this chapter:

- ✧ Queenside and center – see exercises 255, 262, 264, 267, 269, 271, and 279;
- ✧ Kingside and center – see exercises 261, 263, 266, 270, and 274;
- ✧ Kingside and the deep center – see exercises 268 and 273; and
- ✧ Kingside and queenside – see exercises 256, 257, and 265.

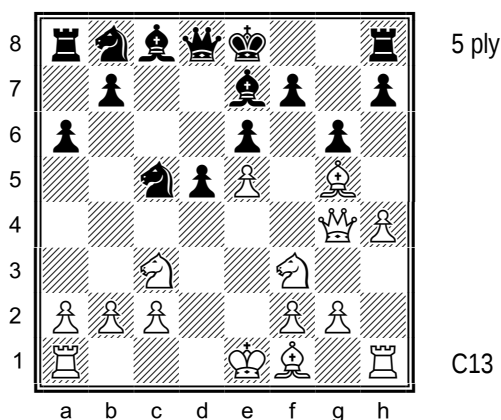
Exercises in which the activity spills over into a third sector of the board by one square are also included in this chapter (as opposed to Chapter 23), as they do not significantly increase the difficulty of the visualization exercise.

This chapter contains thirty-six exercises ranging in depth from five to eleven half-moves, as seen in the following table:

Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13⁺	TOTAL
Exercises:	-	4	4	12	4	6	2	4	-	-	

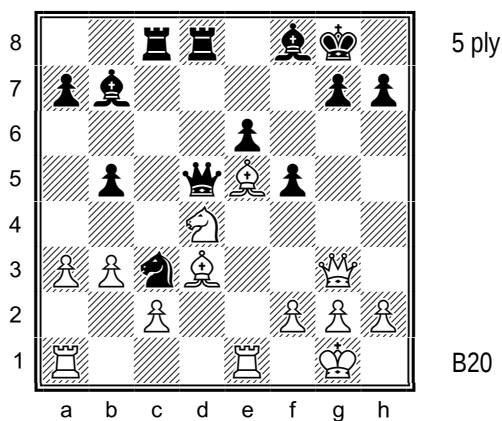


253. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 40 Qh7+ Qxh7 41 Bxh7+ Kxh7 42 gxf4. What is the material balance?



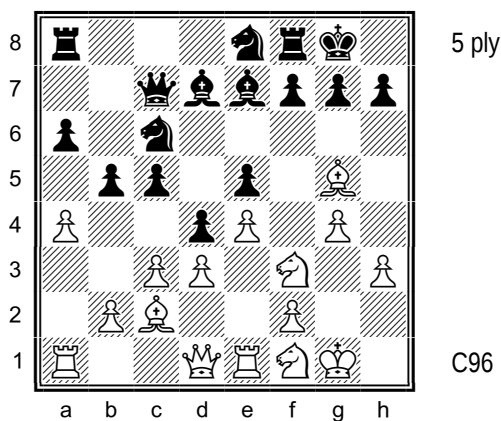
254. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxe7 Qxe7 11 Nxd5 Qd8¹ 12 Nf6+. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a piece and a pawn after 11...exd5 12 Qxc8+ Qd8 13 Qxc5.



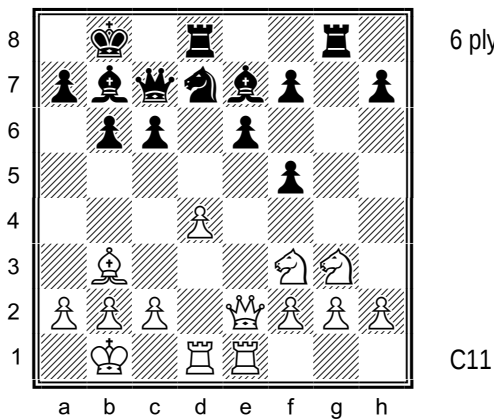
255. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Nxe6 Qxe6 22 Bxc3 Qf7 23 Be5¹. What is the material balance?

¹ White can defend his Bc3 with 23 Bxb5, but then his Queen is overworked: 23...f4 24 Qh3 Bxg2 25 Kxg2 Qd5+ with 26...Qxb5.

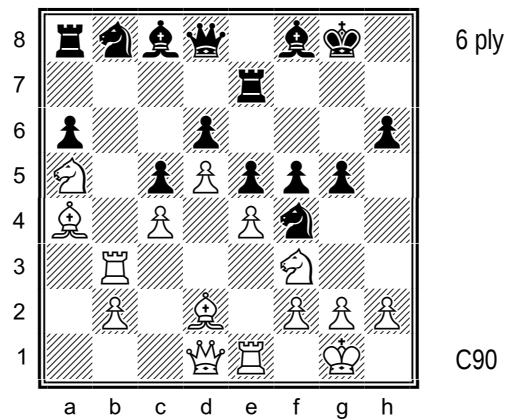


256. Visualize the position after the moves 17 axb5 Bxg5¹ 18 bxc6² Qxc6³ 19 Nxc5. What is the material balance?

¹ Moving the Knight drops the Be7 and Rf8. ² Two of Black's pieces are under attack. ³ Black decides to keep his light-squared Bishop. He could also have kept his dark-squared Bishop with 18...Bf4 19 cxd7 Qxd7.

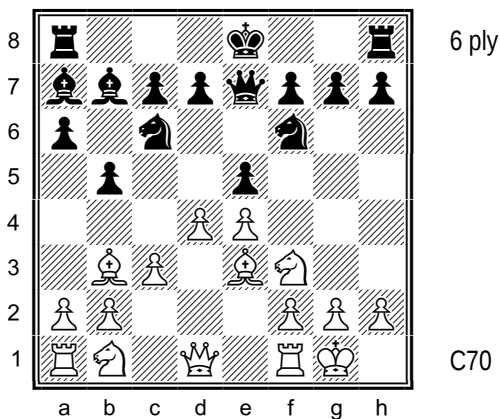


257. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nxf5 Bb4 17 c3 Bxc3 18 bxc3 exf5. What is the material balance?



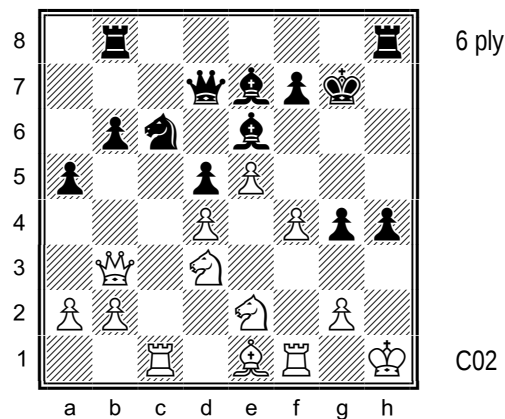
258. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Bc6 Nxc6¹ 25 Nxc6 Qe8 26 Nxe7+ Bxe7. What is the material balance?

¹ 24...Ra7 drops the Nb8.



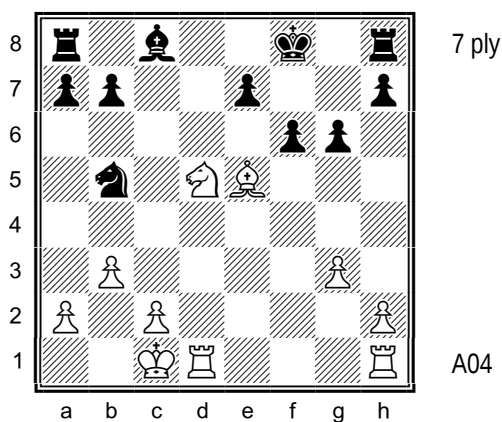
259. Visualize the position after the moves 10 d5 Bxe3¹ 11 dxc6² Bxf2+ 12 Rxf2 Bxc6. What is the material balance?

¹ Better is moving the Knight to a5, b8, or d8. ² Two of Black's pieces are under attack.

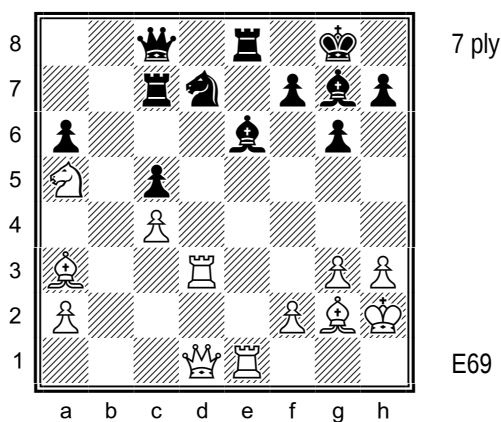


260. Black's Queen is overworked. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Rxc6¹ Qxc6 24 f5 Bg5² 25 fxe6 fxe6. What is the material balance?

¹ 23 f5 Bxf5 24 Rxc6 is also possible. ² 24...Bd7 25 f6+ wins Black's Bishop on e7.

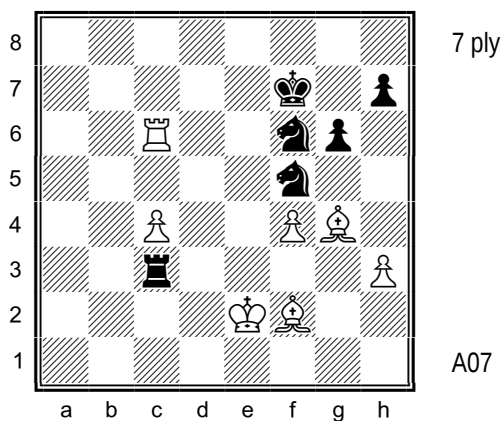


261. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nxf6 exf6 20 Rd8+ Kg7 21 Bxf6+ Kxf6 22 Rxh8. What is the material balance?



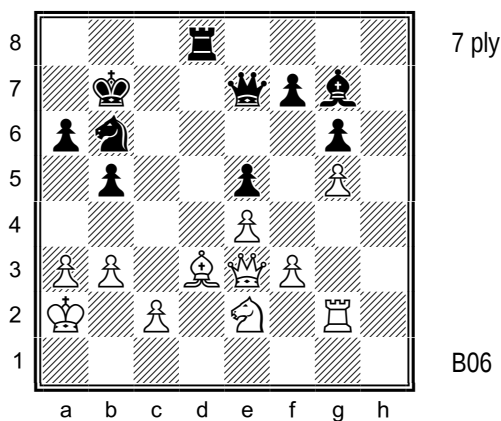
262. Visualize the position after the moves 27 Bb7 Rxb7¹ 28 Nxb7 Qxb7 29 Rxe6 fxe6 30 Rxd7. What is the material balance?

¹ 27...Qd8 is also playable, e.g., 28 Nc6 Qf6.



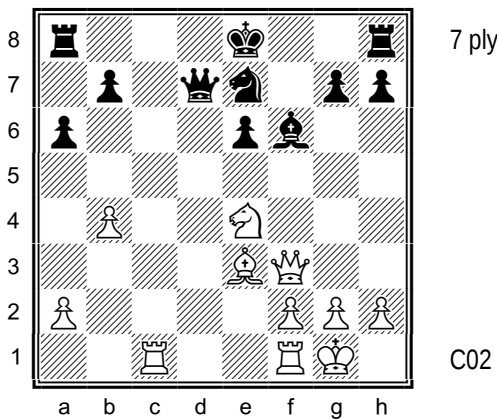
263. Visualize the position after the moves 42 Bxf5 gxf5 43 Rxf6+¹ Kxf6 44 Bd4+ Ke6 45 Bxc3. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here.



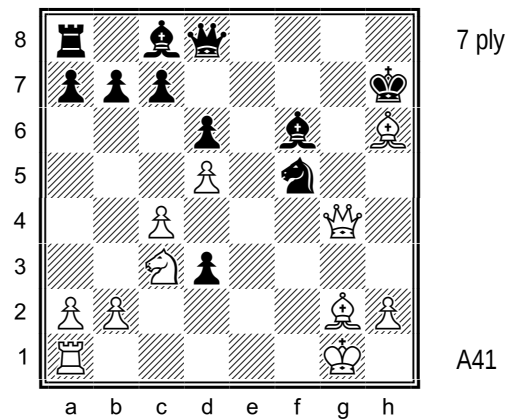
264. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 29 Nc3 Rc8¹ 30 Qxb6+² Kxb6 31 Nd5+ Kb7 32 Nxe7. What is the material balance?

¹ Better is 29...Bf8, for example, 30 b4 a5 or 30 Nb1 Qc5, trying to create an ending with Rooks and Bishops of opposite color, as this would give Black the best chance to draw a pawn-down position. ² Black resigned here.



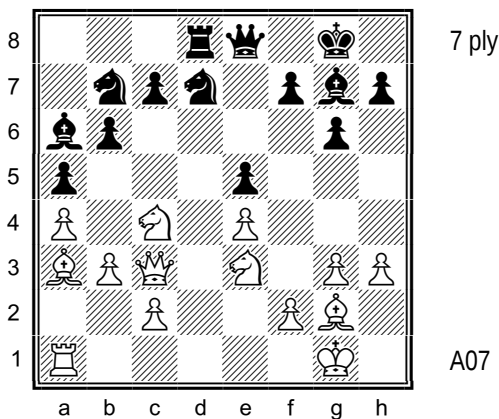
265. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Qxf6 gxf6 20 Nxf6+ Kd8 21 Bb6+¹ Qc7 22 Rxc7. What is the material balance?

¹ 21 Bb6+ wins an extra piece compared to 21 Nxd7 Kxd7. Black resigned here.



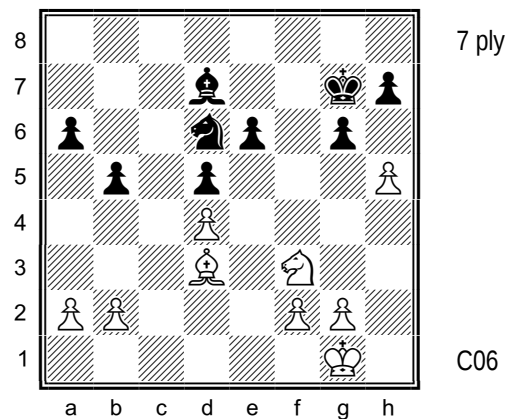
266. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Qh5 Bd4+¹ 20 Be3+ Kg7 21 Qg4+² Kf7 22 Bxd4. What is the material balance?

¹ White has the better position after 19...Nxb6 20 Be4+ Kg8 (20...Kg7 21 Qg6+ Kf8 22 Qxh6+ loses a tempo) 21 Qxh6 Qe7 22 Rf1. Here 21 Qg6+ doesn't allow White to take on h6 with tempo because of 21...Bg7. ² Black resigned here.



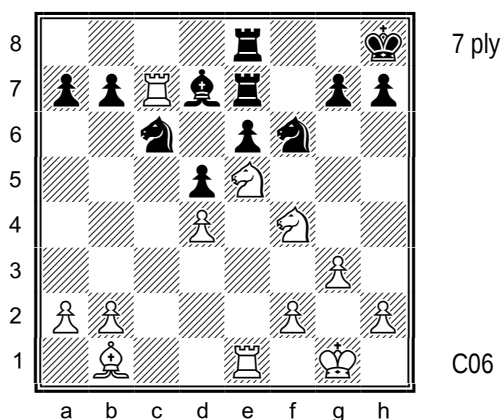
267. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Nd5¹ Ndc5² 23 Nxc7 Qd7 24 Nxa6 Nxa6 25 Nxb6³. What is the material balance?

¹ The threat is 23 Nxc7, winning Black's trapped Queen and attacking Black's Bishop on a6. ² This move saves the Queen by blocking the a3-f8 diagonal and also defends the Ba6, but 22...Rc8 is relatively best. ³ Black resigned here.



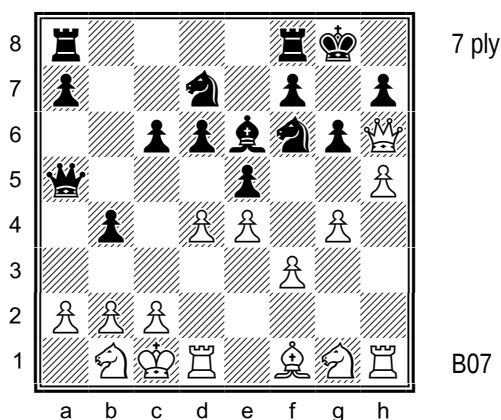
268. Black's Bishop on d7 is unprotected. Visualize the position after the moves 35 hxg6 hxg6 36 Bxg6 Kxg6¹ 37 Ne5+ Kg5 38 Nxd7. What is the material balance?

¹ The actual game continued 36...Nc4 37 b3 Kxg6 38 bxc4 dxc4 39 Nxe5 Kf6 40 Nxd7, when White's extra piece was able to stop Black's passed pawn (1-0, 47).



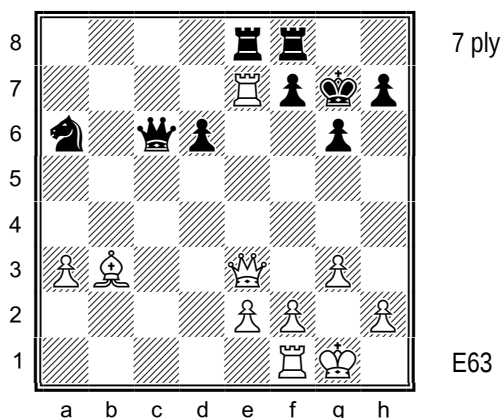
269. The count on e6 is 2-3, but that soon changes. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Nxc6 Bxc6¹ 23 Rxe7 Rxe7 24 Rxe6 Rxe6 25 Nxe6. What is the material balance?

¹ After 22...bxc6, White can either play 23 Rxa7 or 23 Nd3 with 24 Nc5/24 Ne5.



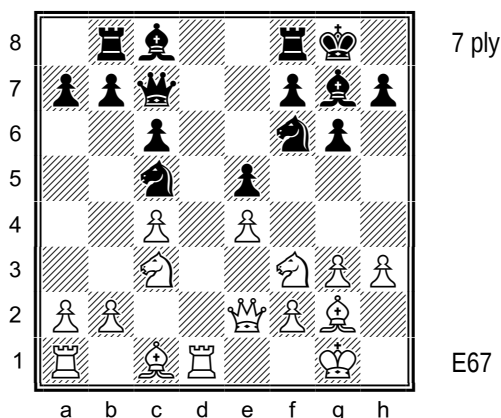
270. Watch the 6th rank. Black's Bishop on e6 will soon be weak. Visualize the position after the moves 14 hxg6 fxg6 15 g5 Nh5¹ 16 Rxh5 gxh5 17 Qxe6+. What is the material balance?

¹ The actual game continued 15...Bxa2 16 gxf6 Nxf6 17 dxe5 dxe5 18 b3 Qc5 when 19 Bc4+ Kh8 20 Rd7 gives White a 3-2 advantage on h7 (1-0).



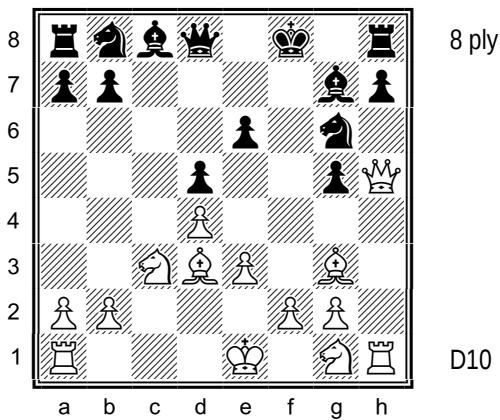
271. Black is weak along the a4-e8 diagonal. Visualize the position after the moves 28 Qd4+ Kg8 29 Ba4¹ Qc8 30 Bxe8 Rxe8 31 Qxd6². What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here. ² 31 Rxe8 is also good for White.

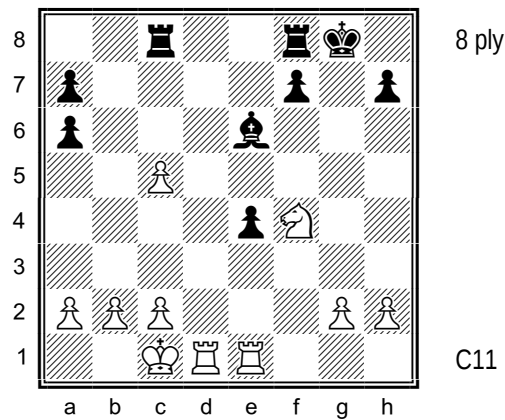


272. White's Pe4 is under attack, but Black is vulnerable along the h2-b8 diagonal. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Nxe5 Nfxe4¹ 14 Nxe4 Nxe4² 15 Nd3 Nxg3³ 16 fxg3. What is the material balance?

¹ 13...Qxe5 loses the exchange to 14 Bf4. ² 14...Bxe5 loses a piece to 15 Nxc5. ³ The attack on White's Queen gives Black time to save his Rb8. Other Knight moves lose the Rook, for example, 15...Nf6 16 Bf4 or 15...Nd6 16 c5 with 17 Bf4.

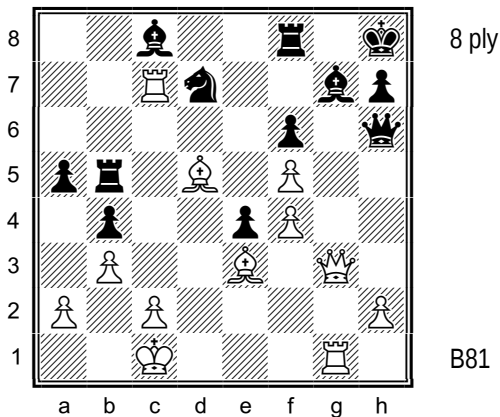


273. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxg6 hxg6 13 Qxh8+ Bxh8 14 Rxh8+ Ke7 15 Rxd8 Kxd8. What is the material balance?



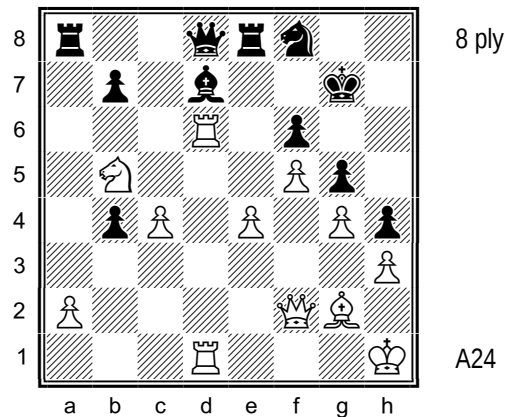
274. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxe4 Rxc5 22 Rxe6 fxe6 23 Nxe6¹ Rcf5 24 Nxf8 Kxf8. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here.



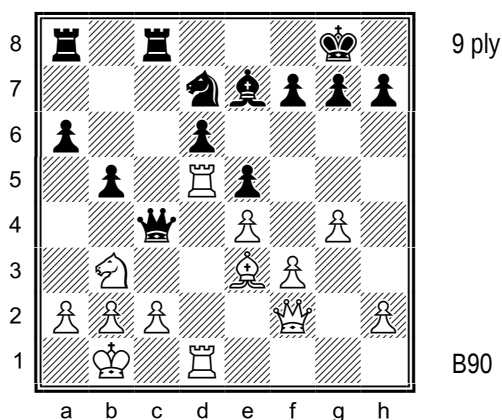
275. White is down a piece for a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 29 Bc6 Rxf5¹ 30 Rxc8² Rxc8 31 Bxd7 Rcc5 32 Bxf5 Rxf5. What is the material balance?

¹ 29...Rb8 30 Ba7 Rg8 (worse is 30...Rd8 31 Bxb8 Nxb8 32 Rxg7, when White is up the exchange and threatens 33 Rg8+) 31 Bxb8 Nxb8 32 Bd5 wins Black's Rook on g8. ² Material is even after 30 Bxd7 Bxd7 31 Rd7 Rg8, but White has the much better position.



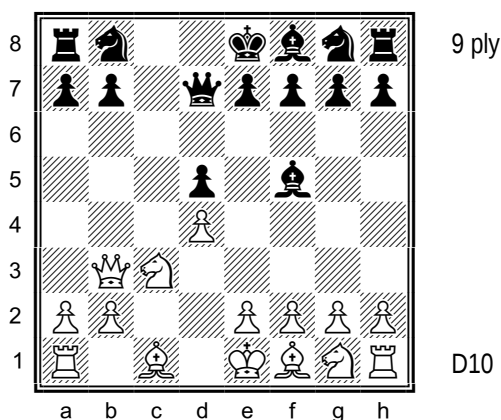
276. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 31 Qd4¹ Bxb5² 32 Rxd8 Raxd8 33 Qxd8 Rxd8 34 Rxd8 Bxc4. What is the material balance?

¹ White's main threat is 32 Nc7 Qxc7 33 Qxf6. ² 31...Rxa2 allows 32 Nc7, for example, 32...Re7 33 Qxf6+ or 32...Qe7 33 Rxd7 Nxd7 34 Nxe8+ Qxe8 35 Qxd7+, when White is up a piece.



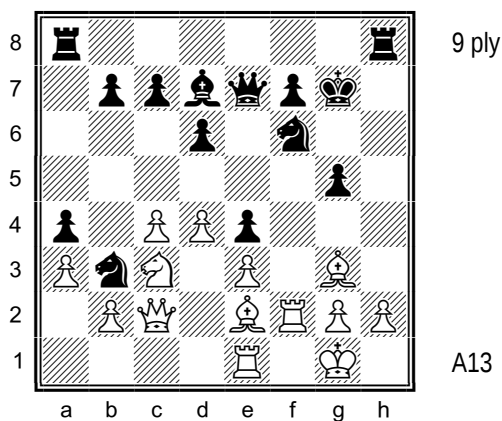
277. Visualize the position after the moves 19 R1d3 Nf6¹ 20 Rc3 Nxd5 21 Rxc4 bxc4 22 exd5 cxb3 23 axb3. What is the material balance?

¹ Black can also play 19...Qc7 and 19...b4.



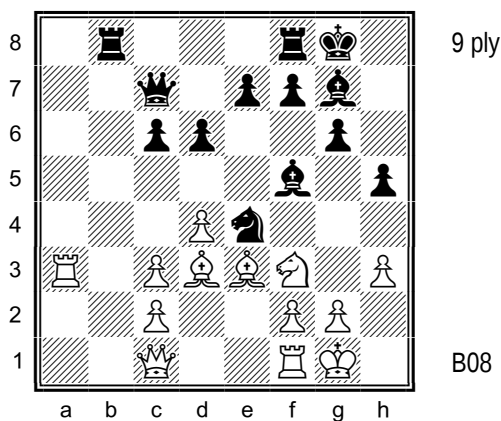
278. Visualize the position after the moves 6 e4¹ dxe4² 7 Bb5 Nc6 8 d5 e6 9 dxc6 bxc6 10 Ba4. What is the material balance?

¹ This is better than taking the d-pawn. ² 6...Bxe4 7 Nxe4 dxe4 8 Bb5 is similar to the game.



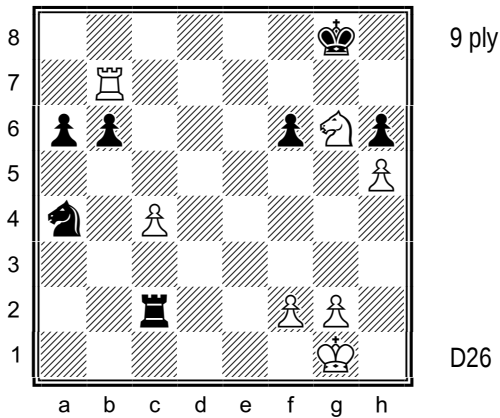
279. Black is weak along the f-file. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Ref1¹ Rh6² 23 Nxe4 Nxe4³ 24 Rxf7+ Qxf7 25 Rxf7+ Kxf7 26 Qxe4. What is the material balance?

¹ 22 Ref1 not only hits Black's Knight on f6, but also the pawn behind it. Black resigned here. ² White has a Queen, Bishop and two pawns for two Rooks after 22...Be8 23 Rxf6 Qxf6 24 Rxf6 Kxf6 25 Nxe4+ Ke7 26 Nxe5. ³ White is up two pawns after 23...Qxe4 24 Qxe4 Nxe4 25 Rxf7+ and 26 Rxd7.



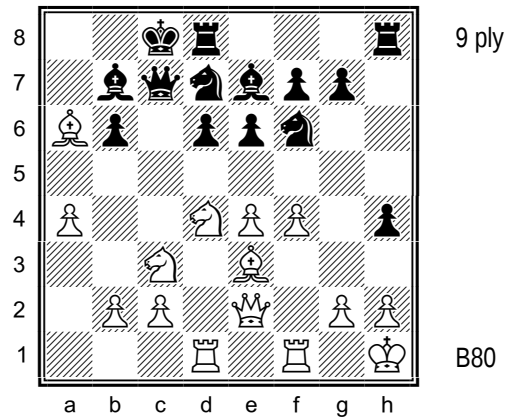
280. Visualize the position after the moves 19 g4 hxg4 20 hxg4 Bxg4 21 Bxe4 d5¹ 22 Nh2 Bh3² 23 Bg2. What is the material balance?

¹ Black is down a piece for a pawn after 21...f5 22 Nh2 fxe4 23 Nxe4. ² 22...Be2 is met by 23 Re1; the actual game continued 22...Qd7 23 Bg2 Bh3 24 Bxh3 Qxh3 25 Bf4, attacking Black's Rook on b8 and intending 26 Qe3, hitting both Black's pawn on e7 and the Queen on h3 (1-0, 30).



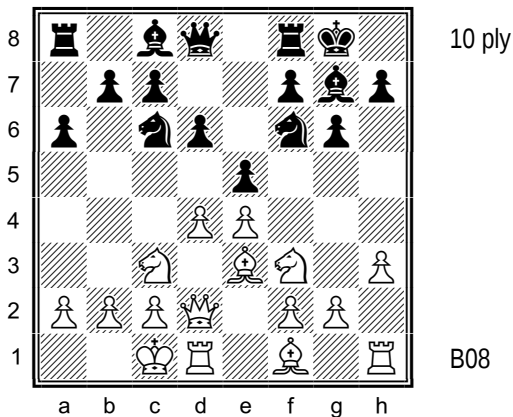
281. White's pawn c4 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 37 Ne7+ Kf8¹ 38 Nf5² Rxc4 39 Rb8+³ Kf7 40 Nd6+ Ke6 41 Nxc4. What is the material balance?

¹ 37...Kh8 38 Nd5 Rxc4 loses to 39 Nxf6 and 30 Rh7, mate. ² This move attacks Black's h-pawn and indirectly defends White's c-pawn. ³ Black resigned here.

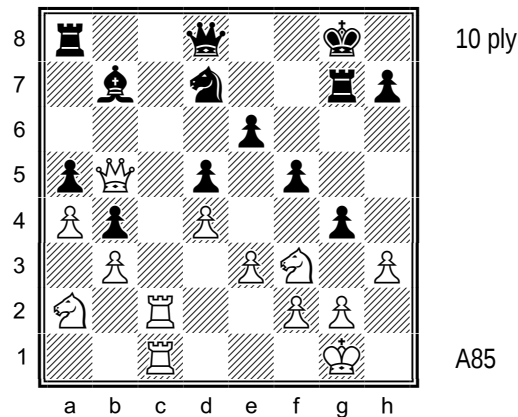


282. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Ndb5 Bxa6 16 Nxd6+ Bxd6 17 Qxa6+ Qb7¹ 18 Qxb7+ Kxb7 19 Rxd6. What is the material balance?

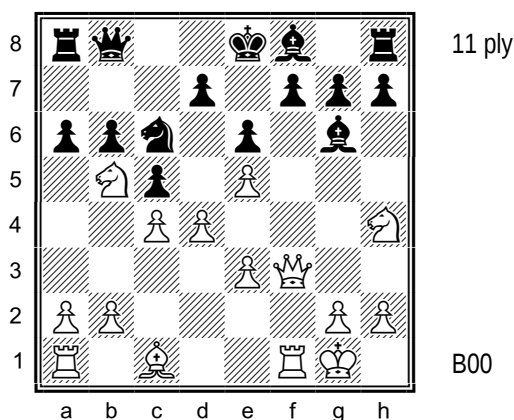
¹ White is up two pawns after 17...Kb8 18 Nb6 Qb7 19 Qxb7+ Kxb7 20 Nxd6+ and will also win the exchange after 20...Kc7 21 Nxf7.



283. Visualize the position after the moves 9 dxe5 dxe5 10 Qxd8 Rxd8 11 Rxd8+ Nxd8 12 Nxe5 Nxe4 13 Nxe4 Bxe5. What is the material balance?

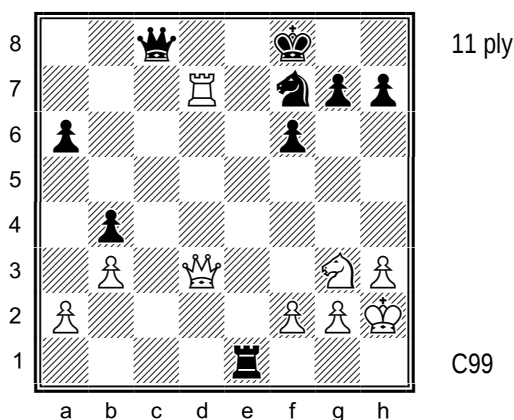


284. Each player has a piece under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Qxb7 gxf3 24 Rc8 Rxc8 25 Kh1 Rxc8 26 Rxc8 Qxc8 27 Qxc8+ Nf8. What is the material balance?



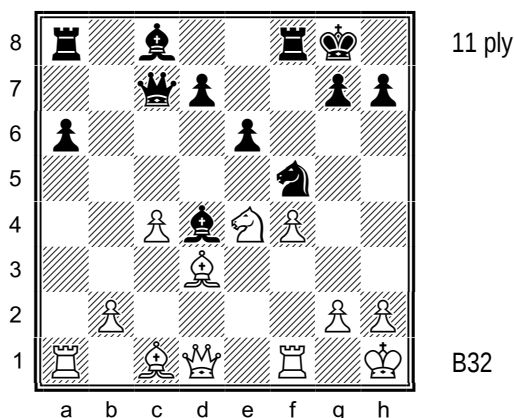
285. White's Knight on b5 is under attack, but Black's King is vulnerable. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Nxb6 fxb6 15 Qf7+ Kd8 16 Qxf8+ Rxf8 17 Rxf8+ Ke7 18 Rxb8 Rxb8¹ 19 Nd6. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here.



286. Visualize the position after the moves 36 Qd5 Re7¹ 37 Rxe7 Kxe7 38 Nf5+ Kf8 39 Qxf7+ Kxf7 40 Nd6+ Ke6 41 Nxc8. What is the material balance?

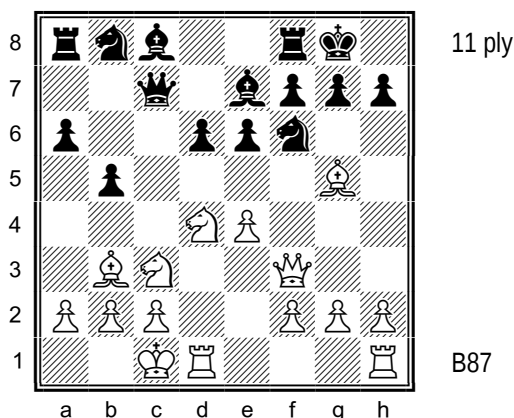
¹ 36...Qe8 loses a pawn to 37 Qc5+ Kg8 38 Rb7.



287. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Ng5¹ Bf6² 20 Bxf5 Bxg5³ 21 fxg5⁴ Rxf5 22 Rxf5 exf5 23 Qd5+ Kh8 24 Qxa8. What is the material balance?

¹ White's threat is 20 Bxf5 Rxf5 21 Qxd4. ² This blocks the Rook's defense of f5. Black's position is more solid after either 19...Qb6 or 19...Bc5.

³ 20...exf5 drops the Ra8 to 21 Qd5+. ⁴ Black resigned here.



288. Visualize the position after the moves 11 e5 Bb7 12 exf6 Bxf3 13 fxe7 Bxd1¹ 14 Nxe6 Qxe7² 15 Bxe7 Rc8³ 16 Rxd1⁴. What is the material balance?

¹ White has three pieces for the Queen after 13...Re8 14 Nxf3. ² Best. 14...fxe6 allows mate in two: 15 Bxe6+ Rf7 (16...Kh8 17 exf8=Q, mate) 16 e8=Q, mate, while after 14...Qc8 15 exf8=Q+ Qxf8 16 Nxf8 White is up two pieces. ³ 15...Re8 can be met by either 16 Nc7 or 16 Bxd6. ⁴ Black resigned here.

CHAPTER 11. TWO SECTORS OF THE BOARD (BLACK TO PLAY)

This chapter contains exercises in which the activity takes place over two or more sectors of the board, but with Black to move. The diagrams are set up with White at the bottom of the board in order to give you the opportunity to practice visualizing positions in which your opponent is the aggressor and most of the action takes place on your side of the board.

The following are the most common two-sector combinations seen in this chapter:

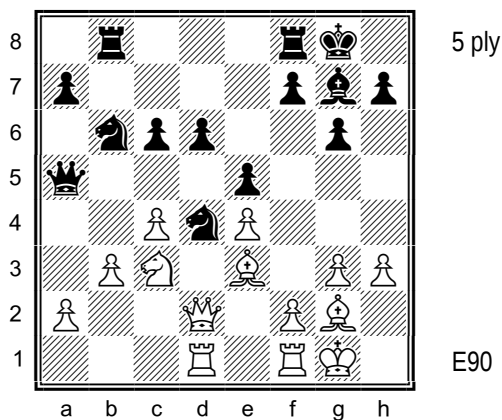
- ✧ Queenside and center – see exercises 294, 296, 298, 299, 305, and 310;
- ✧ Kingside and center – see exercises 290, 291, 292, 302, 303, 308, 309, and 313; and
- ✧ Kingside and queenside – see exercises 300, 301, 306, and 312.

Exercises in which the activity spills over into a third sector of the board by one square are also included in this chapter (as opposed to Chapter 24), as they do not significantly increase the difficulty of the visualization exercise.

The diagrams in this chapter were intentionally set up with White at the bottom of the board in order to give you the opportunity to practice visualizing moves from the defender's point of view.

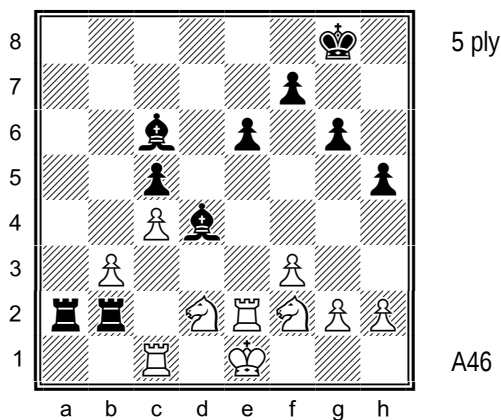
This chapter contains thirty-six exercises ranging in depth from five to eleven half-moves, as seen in the following table:

Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13⁺	TOTAL
Exercises:	-	8	-	8	8	6	2	4	-	-	36

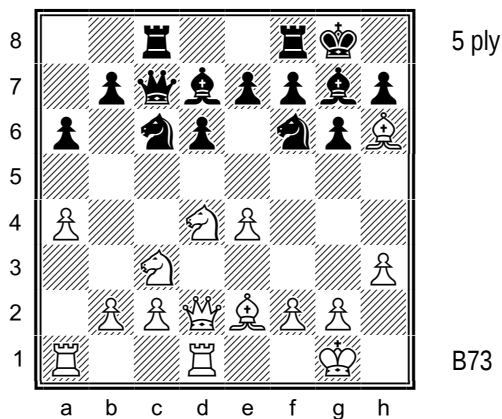


289. Visualize the position after the moves 17...Qxc3 18 Bxd4¹ Qxd2 19 Rxd2 exd4. What is the material balance?

¹ 18 Qxc3 loses a piece to Ne2+ 19 Kh1 Nxc3.

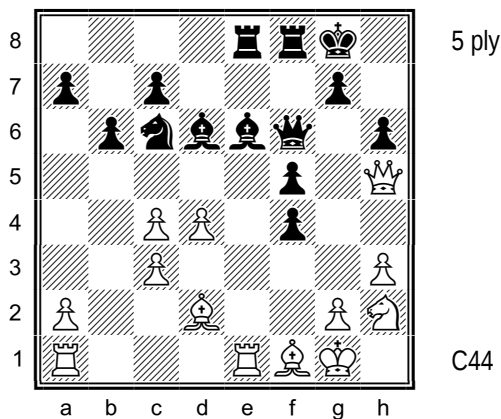


290. The count is 2-2 on d2 and 1-1 on f2, but White's King is defending both. Visualize the position after the moves 35...Rxd2 36 Rxd2 Rxd2 37 Kxd2 Bxf2. What is the material balance?

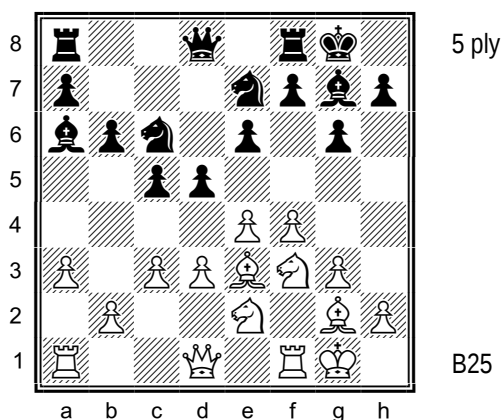


291. White has just played 13 Be3-h6. Visualize the position after the moves 13...Nxd4 14 Bxg7 Nxe2+ 15 Qxe2 Kxg7¹. What is the material balance?

¹ White resigned here.

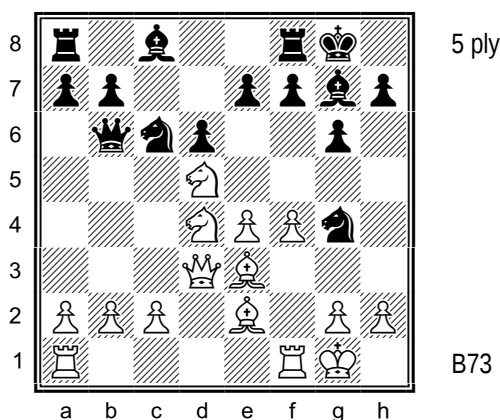


292. Black is up a pawn. White is threatening 19 d5, but his Bd2 is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 18...Nxd4 19 cxd4 Qxd4+ 20 Kh1 Qxd2. What is the material balance?



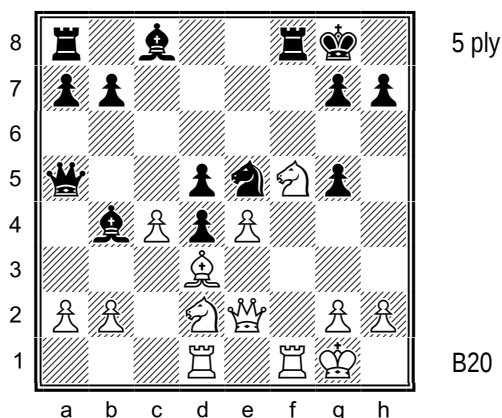
293. Visualize the position after the moves 12...dxe4 13 Ne5¹ Nxe5 14 fxe5 Bxd3. What is the material balance?

¹ 13 dxe4 loses a piece to 13...Qxd1 14 Rfxd1 Bxe2.



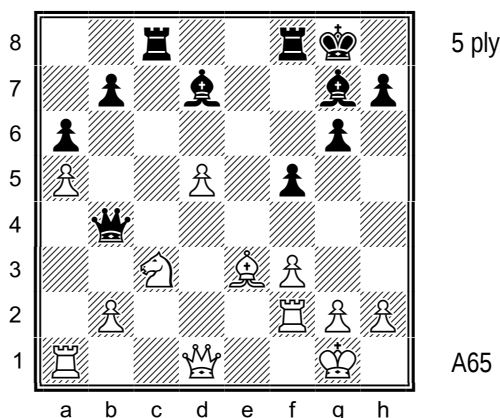
294. Black's Queen is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 11...Bxd4¹ 12 Nxb6 Bxe3+ 13 Kh1² Bxb6. What is the material balance?

¹ 11...Qxb2 12 Rfb1 traps Black's Queen, but Black can get a Rook, Knight, and two pawns for it after 12...Qxd4 13 Bxd4 Bxd4+ 14 Kf1 Nxb2+ 15 Ke1 Bxa1 16 Rxa1 Ng4. ² Material is even after 13 Qxe3 Nxe3 14 Nxa8 Nxf1 15 Rxf1.



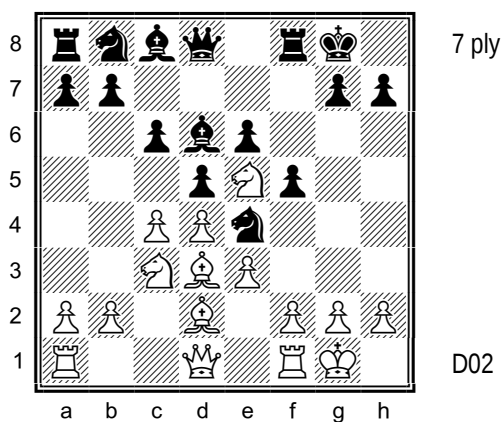
295. Black is up a pawn. The count on f5 is 2-2, but Black can clear the 5th rank. Visualize the position after the moves 15...Nxd3 16 Qxd3 dxe4 17 Qxe4¹ Bxf5². What is the material balance?

¹ In the actual game White played 17 Nh6+ gxh6 18 Rxf8+ Kxf8 19 Nxe4 (0-1), when Black is up a piece and pawn and can hold his e-pawn with 19...Qe5. ² 18 Qxd4 loses the Queen to 18...Bc5.



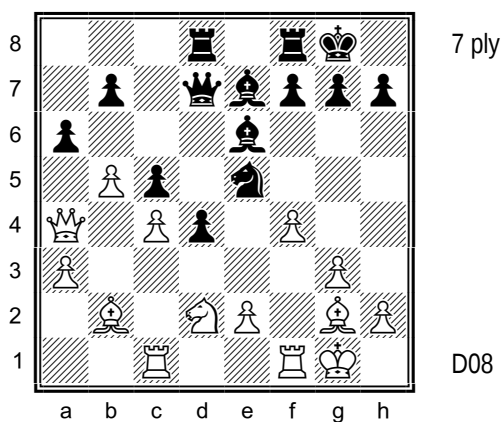
296. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 22...Rxc3¹ 23 bxc3² Qxc3 24 Rb1³ Qxe3⁴. What is the material balance?

¹ 22...Bxc3 23 bxc3 Qxc3 wins the pawn back, but gains nothing more. The actual game continued 22...Rfe8 (1-0, 30). ² Black has two pieces for a Rook after 23 Bd2 Qxb2 24 Bxc3 Qxc3. ³ Black is up a piece after 24 Bb6 Qxa1 25 Qxa1 Bxa1. ⁴ 25 Rxb7 can be met by 25...Bd4 26 Qf1 Bb5.



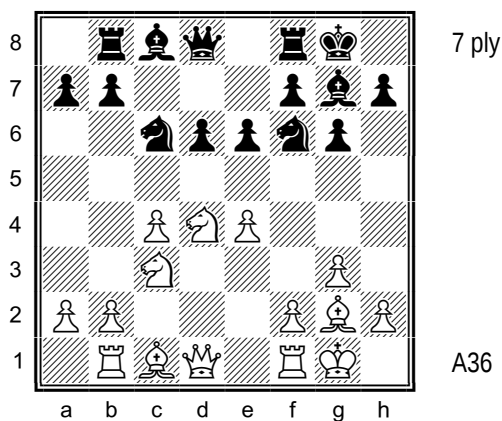
297. Watch the d-file. Visualize the position after the moves 9...Nxd2 10 Qxd2 Bxe5 11 dxe5 dxc4 12 Rfd1 cxd3¹. What is the material balance?

¹ 12...Qxd3 loses to 13 Qc1, when Black's Queen is trapped.



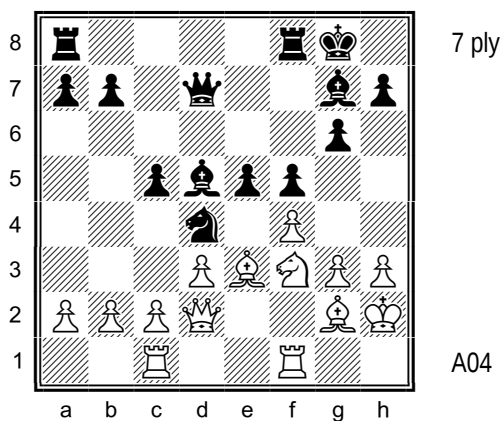
298. Black's Knight is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 16...Nxc4 17 Nxc4 axb5 18 Ne5 bxa4 19 Nxd7 Rxd7¹. What is the material balance?

¹ White resigned here.



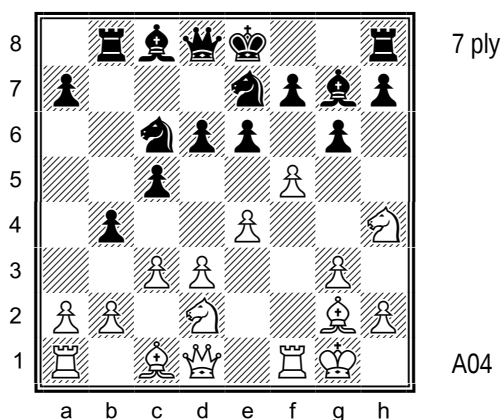
299. Visualize the position after the moves 11...Nxe4 12 Nxc6 Nxc3 13 bxc3 Qc7¹ 14 Nxb8 Qxb8. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a Rook for a pawn after 13...bxc6 14 Rxb8.



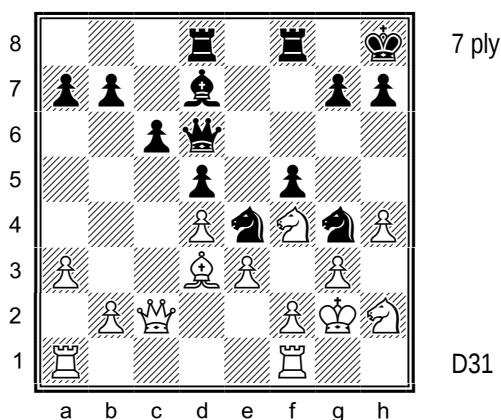
300. Visualize the position after the moves 17...exf4¹ 18 Bxf4 Nxf3+ 19 Bxf3 Bxf3 20 Rxf3 Bxb2. What is the material balance?

¹ 17...Nxf3 and 17...Bxf3 both transpose.



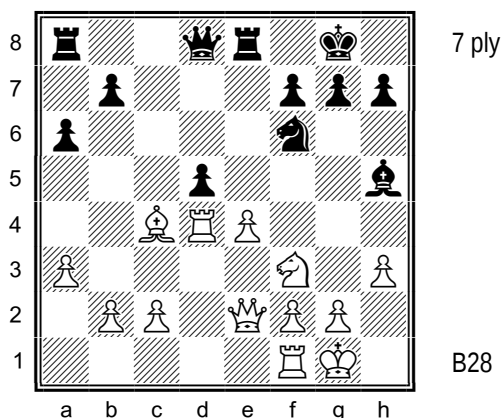
301. Visualize the position after the moves 11...bxc3 12 f6¹ Bxf6 13 Rxf6 cxb2 14 Bxb2 Rxb2. What is the material balance?

¹ White is down a pawn after 12 bxc3 Bxc3 13 Rb1 Bd4+ 14 Kh1.



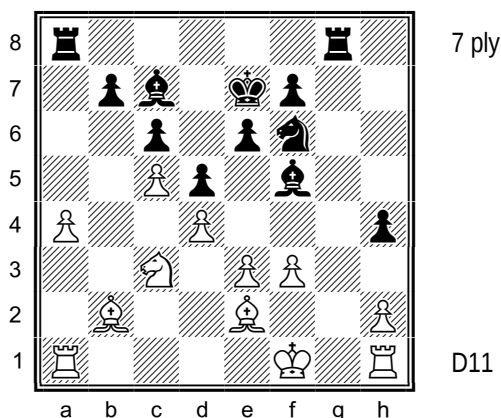
302. Visualize the position after the moves 20...Nexf2 21 Qd2¹ Nxd3 22 Nxg4² Nxf4+ 23 Rxf4 fxg4. What is the material balance?

¹ 21 Rxf2 loses the Queen to 21...Nxe3, but now the threat of 22 Rxf2 is on. 21 Nxg4 Nxg4 concedes the pawn. ² White is down a pawn after 22 Qxd3 and has a weak pawn on e3.



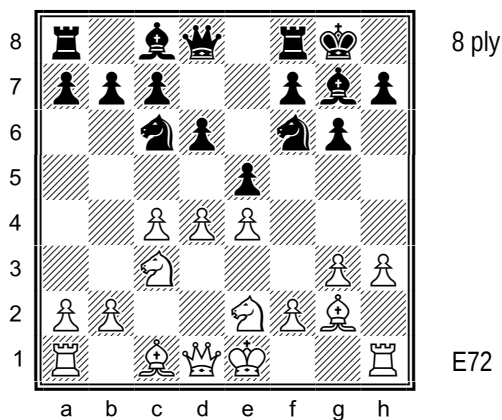
303. Visualize the position after the moves 17...Rxe4 18 Rxe4 dxe4 19 g4 exf3 20 Qxf3 Bg6¹. What is the material balance?

¹ The actual game continued 20...Qc7 21 gxh5 Qxc4 22 h6 Qe4 23 Qc3 Qg6+ (0-1).



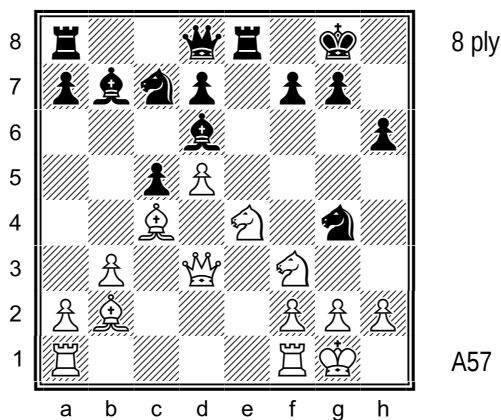
304. Black's Bishops are strong. Visualize the position after the moves 22...Bh3+ 23 Ke1¹ Bg2 24 Rg1 Bxh2² 25 Rxg2³ Rxg2. What is the material balance?

¹ 23 Kf2 loses a pawn to 23...Rg2+ 24 Ke1 (24 Kf1? Rxh2+ 25 Kg1 Rg8 is mate) Rxh2, when White still has to contend with Black's passed h-pawn. ² White resigned here. ³ 25 Kf2 Bxg1+ 26 Rxg1 h3 is just as bad for White.



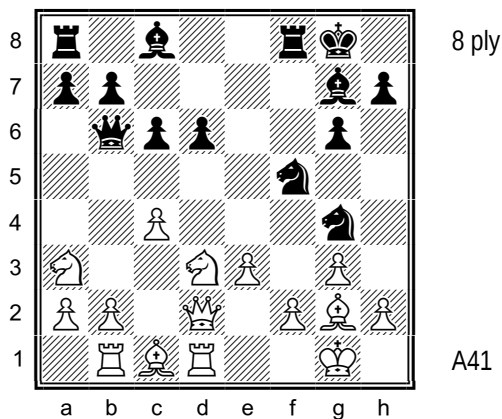
305. Visualize the position after the moves 8...exd4 9 Nxd4 Nxd4 10 Qxd4 Nxe4 11 Qd3¹ Nxc3 12 bxc3. What is the material balance?

¹ 11 Qxe4 loses the Queen to 11...Re8.

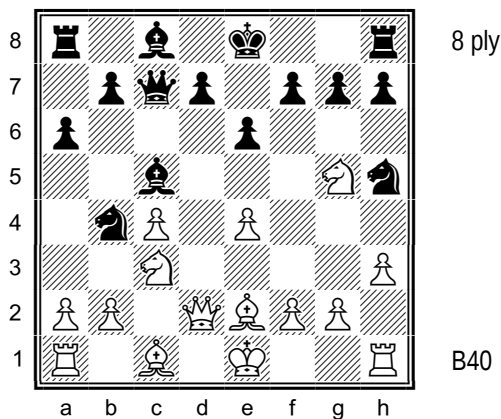


306. Visualize the position after the moves 15...Bxh2+ 16 Nxh2 Nxh2 17 Nxc5¹ Nxf1 18 Nxb7 Qg5 19 Rxf1. What is the material balance?

¹ Black is up a pawn after 17 Kxh2 Qh4+ 18 Kg1 Rxe4.

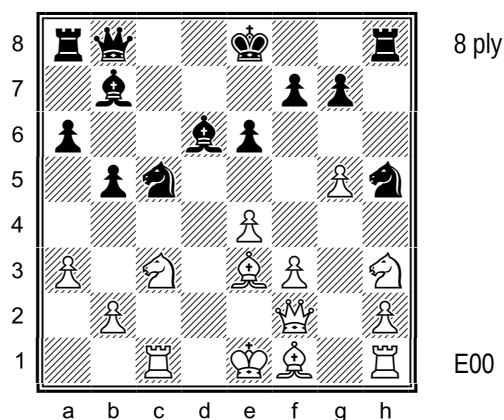


307. Black is down a pawn. The count on e3 is 3-3, but Black can add his Bishop to the a7-g1 diagonal. Visualize the position after the moves 17...Nfxe3 18 fxe3 Nxe3 19 Qxe3 Bd4 20 Nc2 Bxe3+ 21 Bxe3. What is the material balance?



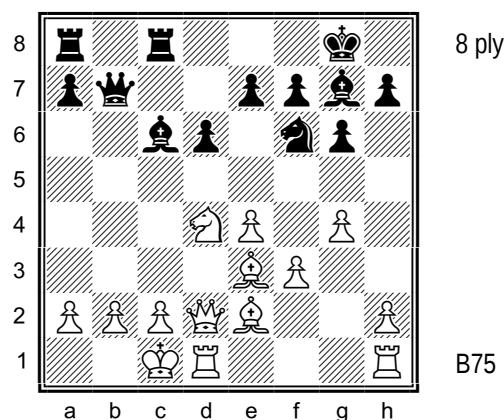
308. Visualize the position after the moves 11...Ng3 12 fxg3 Be3 13 Qxe3¹ Nc2+ 14 Kf2 Nxe3 15 Bxe3. What is the material balance?

¹ 13 Qd1 allows mate in two: 13...Qxg3+ 14 Kf1 Qf2, mate.



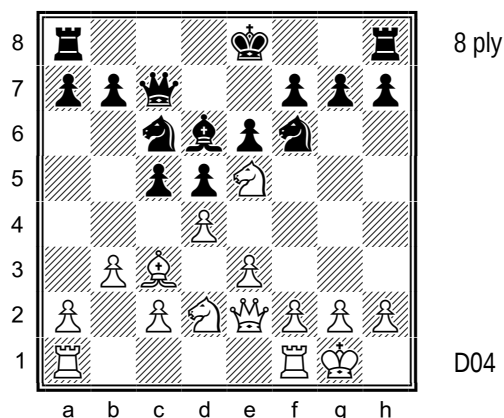
309. Black is down a pawn and wants to win White's Queen by playing Bg3. Visualize the position after the moves 21...Ng3 22 hxc3 Nd3+¹ 23 Bxd3 Bxg3 24 Ke2² Bxf2 25 Nxf2. What is the material balance?

¹ 22...Bxg3 23 Bxc5 Bxf2+ 24 Kxf2 is similar to the game. ² 24 Qxg3 Qxg3+ drops the Nh3.



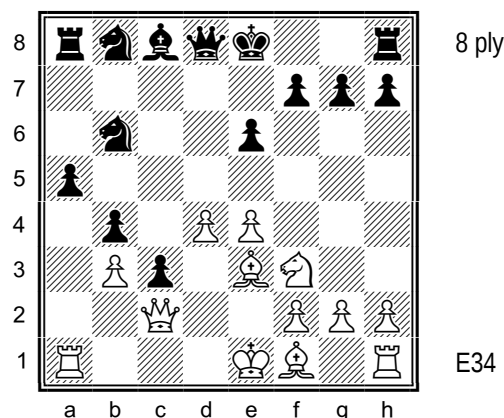
310. Black is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 16...Nxe4 17 fxe4 Bxe4 18 Rhe1 Rxc2+ 19 Qxc2¹ Bxc2 20 Kxc2. What is the material balance?

¹ 19 Nxc2 allows 19...Qxb2, mate.



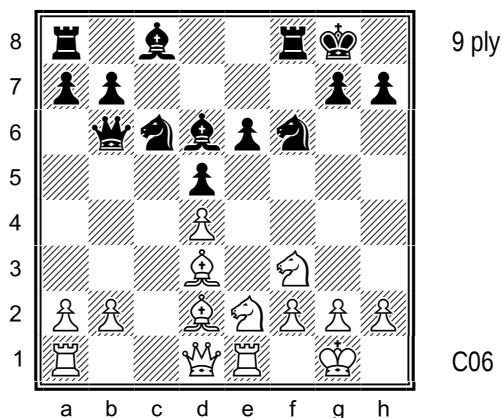
311. Visualize the position after the moves 11...cxd4 12 exd4¹ Nxe5 13 dxe5 Qxc3 14 exf6 gxf6² 15 Nf3. What is the material balance?

¹ 12 Bxd4 drops the Ne5. ² 14...Qxf6 lets White regain his pawn with 15 Qb5+ and 16 Qxb7, which isn't possible with the Queen on c3, since White is tied to the defense of his Knight.



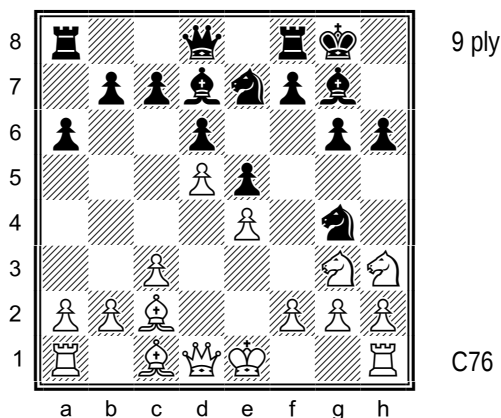
312. Black is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 15...Ba6 16 Rxa5¹ Bxf1 17 Rxa8 Bxg2 18 Rg1 Bxf3 19 Ra7². What is the material balance?

¹ Relatively best is 16 Bxa6 Rxa6 17 0-0, although White is still down a pawn. ² In the game White gave up his Rook with 19 Bf4 Nxa8 and resigned after 20 Rxc7 Qa5 (0-1).



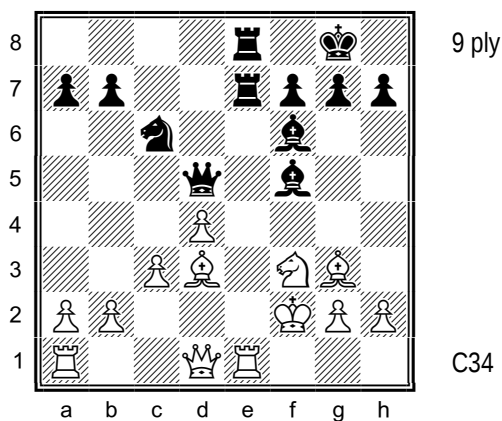
313. White's f-pawn is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 13...e5 14 dxe5¹ Ng4 15 Be3² Nxe3 16 fxe3 Qxe3+ 17 Kh1 Nxe5. What is the material balance?

¹ White can't allow 14...e4. ² Alternatives: a) 15 Rf1 allows 15...Ncxe5, with the dual threat of 16...Nxd3 and 16...Rxf3; b) 15 Qc2 may be best, although Black gets an attack after 15...Qxf2+ 16 Kh1 Rxf3.



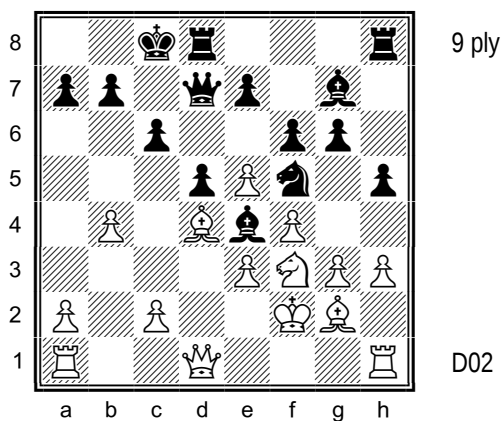
314. Visualize the position after the moves 13...f5 14 exf5 gxf5 15 Nxf5¹ Rxf5 16 Qxg4 Rxf2 17 Qd1² Rg2. What is the material balance?

¹ 15 Nh5 is better. ² 17 Qe4 allows 17...Bf5, with a double attack on White's Bishop on c2.



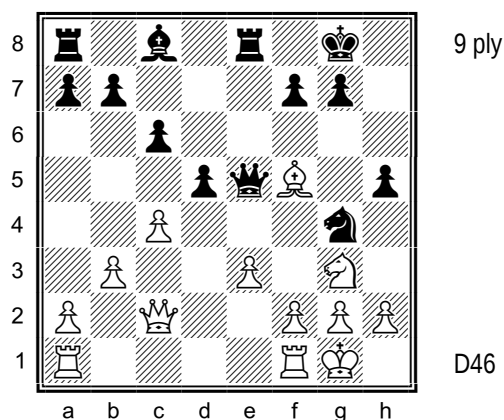
315. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 16...Rxe1 17 Nxe1 Nxd4 18 cxd4¹ Qxd4+ 19 Kf1 Rxe1+ 20 Kxe1 Bxd3². What is the material balance?

¹ Material is even after 18 Kf1 Nc6. ² Black threatens 21...Qe3+ or 21...Bg5 and 22...Qg1, mate.



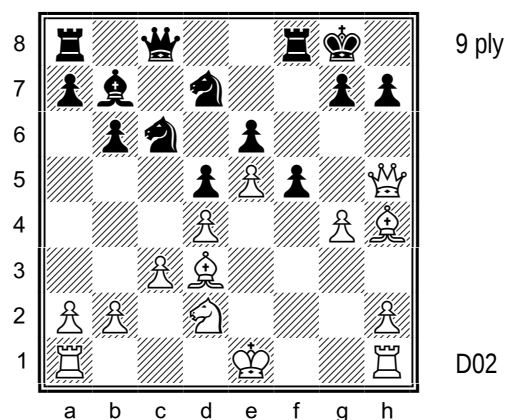
316. Visualize the position after the moves 16...Bxf3 17 Bxf3 fxe5 18 Bc3¹ exf4 19 Bxg7 fxe3+ 20 Ke2 Nxg7². What is the material balance?

¹ 18 fxe5 and 18 Bxe5 Bxe5 19 fxe5 Qe6 both give Black a target on e5 and an open f-file, while 18 Bxa7 drops the exchange to 18...e4 19 Be2 Bxa1. ² 21 Kxe3 gives Black an attack after 21...Nf5+ 22 Kf2 Qd6.

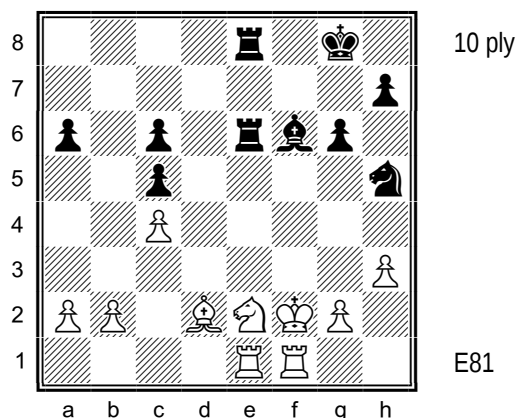


317. Visualize the position after the moves 16...h4 17 Bxc8¹ Raxc8 18 Qf5² hgx3 19 Qxg4 gxf2+ 20 Kh1³ Qxe3. What is the material balance?

¹ 17 Bxg4 loses a pawn to 17...hxg3 18 Bxc8 gxh2+ 19 Kh1 Raxc8. ² White is down two pawns after 18 h3 Nxe3 19 fxe3 Qxe3+ 20 Kh1 hxg3. ³ White can't take the pawn -- 20 Rxf2 drops the Ra1, while 20 Kxf2 Qxe3 is mate.

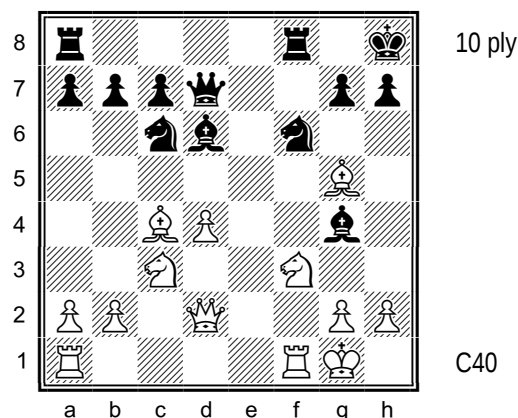


318. Visualize the position after the moves 16...Ndx5 17 dxe5 Nxe5 18 Be2 d4 19 0-0 dxc3 20 bxc3 Qxc3. What is the material balance?



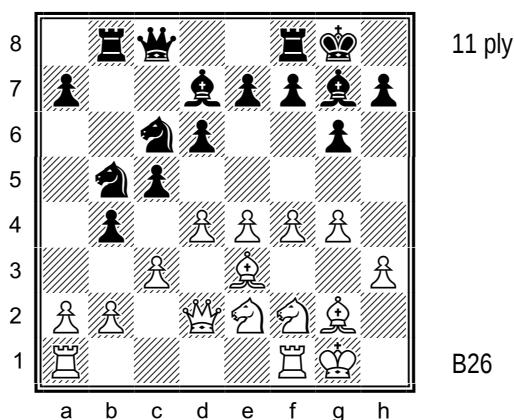
319. The count on e2 is 2-2. Visualize the position after the moves 30...Bh4+¹ 31 g3 Rxe2+ 32 Rxe2 Rxe2+ 33 Kxe2 Nxg3+ 34 Kf2 Nxf1+ 35 Kxf1. What is the material balance?

¹ 30...Bd4+ gives Black little after 31 Nxd4 cxd4 32 b4, but 30...Bxb2 is possible, intending to target White's pawn on c4.

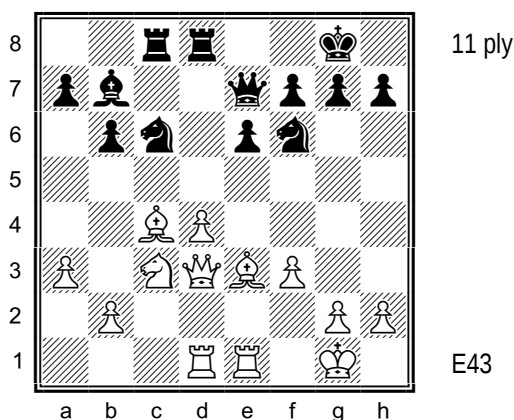


320. Visualize the position after the moves 14...Bxf3 15 Rxf3 Nxd4 16 Rh3¹ Qxh3² Nf3+ 18 Kg2 Nxd2 19 Bxd2. What is the material balance?

¹ 16 Qxd4 loses the Queen to 16...Bxh2+, while 16 Rff1 leaves Black up a pawn. ² In the actual game White lost his Queen after 17 Qxd4 Qxh2+ (0-1) 18 Kf1 (18 Kf2 doesn't change anything) 18...Bc5 19 Qxc5 Ne4+.

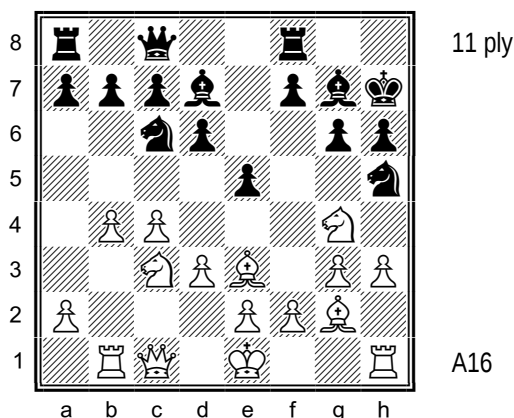


321. Visualize the position after the moves 16...bxc3 17 bxc3 Nxc3 18 Qxc3 cxd4 19 Nxd4 Nxd4 20 Bxd4 Qxc3 21 Bxc3 Bxc3. What is the material balance?



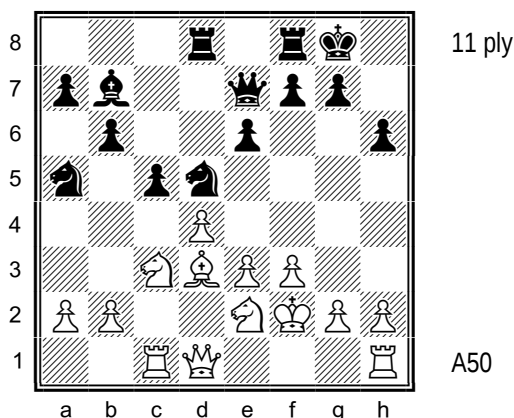
322. Visualize the position after the moves 16...Ne5 17 dxe5 Rxd3 18 exf6 Rxd1¹ 19 fxe7 Rxe1+ 20 Kf2 Rxe3² 21 Kxe3 Re8³. What is the material balance?

¹ 18...Qxf6 19 Bxd3 gives White a Rook and two minor pieces for a Queen and pawn. ² Moving the Rook elsewhere gives White time to play 21 Bb5. ³ White resigned here.



323. The count is 3-2 on h6. Visualize the position after the moves 14...f5 15 Nxh6 f4 16 gxf4 exf4 17 Ng4 fxe3 18 fxe3 Bxg4¹ 19 hxg4 Qxg4. What is the material balance?

¹ 18...Ng3 is also good for Black.



324. Visualize the position after the moves 15...Nxe3 16 Kxe3 cxd4+ 17 Nxd4¹ Rxd4 18 Bh7+ Kxh7 19 Qxd4 Rd8² 20 Qxd8³ Qxd8. What is the material balance?

¹ Black is up a pawn after 17 Kf2 dxc3 18 Rxc3. ² White resigned here. ³ 20 Qa4 allows 20...Qc5+ 21 Ke2 Ba6+ 22 Ke1 Qe3+ 23 Ne2 Qxe2, mate.

CHAPTER 12. MULTIPLE IMBALANCES

This chapter contains exercises that feature two or more sets of imbalances: a series of exchanges involving pieces of different value occurs in a position where the material balance is already unbalanced. Thus in the initial position one side might be up the exchange, two pieces for a Rook, a Queen for two Rooks, and so on. A series of uneven exchanges then takes place, such as the exchange of a piece for one or more pawns, a Rook for one or more minor pieces, a Queen for a Rook and Bishop, and so on.

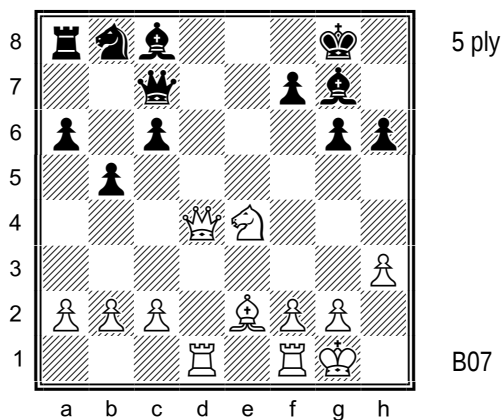
The following specific situations occur in these exercises:

- ✧ One side is up (down) the exchange, then wins (loses) a piece – see exercises 325, 328, 333, and 349;
- ✧ One side is up (down) a piece, then loses (wins) the exchange – see exercises 332 and 346;
- ✧ One side is up (down) the exchange, then wins (loses) two pieces for a Rook – see exercises 326, 335, 342, 348, and 351;
- ✧ One side is down the exchange, then wins a Rook – see exercise 337;
- ✧ One side is down a piece, then wins a Queen for two pieces – see exercise 360.

For exercises that involve three difference types of imbalances, see exercises 329, 343, 353, and 356.

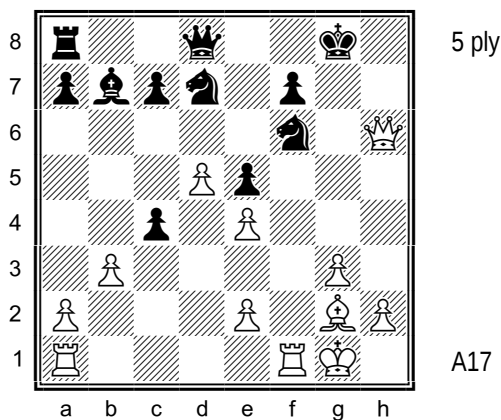
This chapter contains thirty-six exercises ranging in depth from five to ten half-moves, as seen in the following table:

Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13⁺	TOTAL
Exercises:	-	8	2	8	8	8	2	-	-	-	36



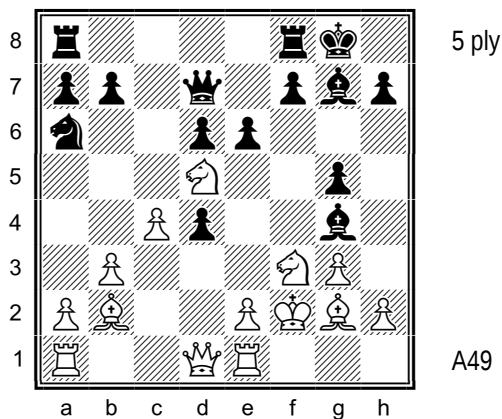
325. White is up the exchange. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Qd8+ Qxd8 21 Rxd8+¹ Bf8 22 Rxc8. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here.



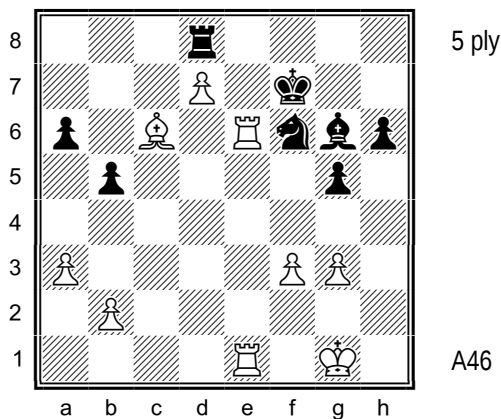
326. White has a Rook and two pawns for two pieces. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rf5¹ Nh7² 22 Rxf7 Kxf7 23 Qxh7+. What is the material balance?

¹ White threatens 22 Rg4, mate. ² 21...Nf8, intending to cover the check with 22...Ng6, drops the Nf6.

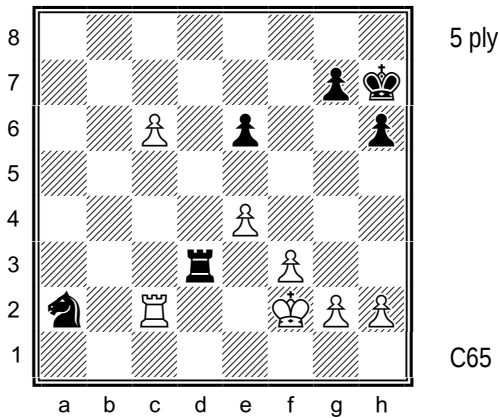


327. White is up a piece for two pawns, but his Knight on d5 is trapped. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxd4 exd5¹ 16 Bxg7 Kxg7 17 Qxd5. What is the material balance?

¹ 15...Bxd4+ 16 Qxd4 exd5 17 Qxd5 is similar, except that Black's King is on g8 instead of g7.

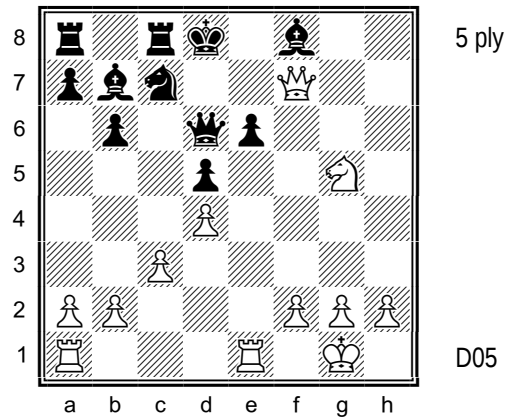


328. The count is 4-3 on e8. White is up the exchange and a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 43 Re8 Nxe8 44 dxe8=Q+ Rxe8 45 Bxe8+. What is the material balance?



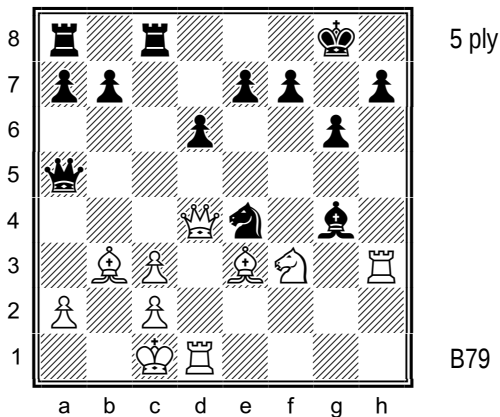
329. White is down a piece for two pawns, but has a passed pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 40 c7 Nb4 41 c8=Q¹ Nxc2 42 Qxc2. What is the material balance?

¹ 41 Rc4 is saves the Rook, but White prefers to simplify.



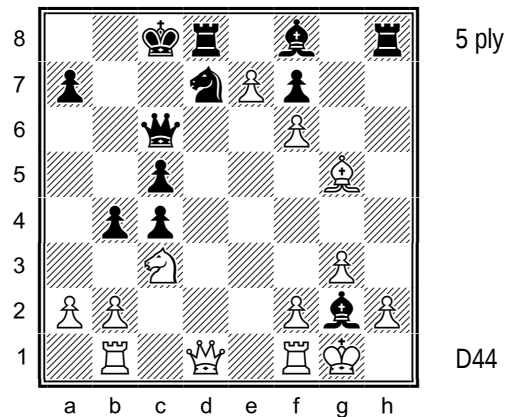
330. White is down two pieces for three pawns, but is able to win Black's Queen. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Nxe6+ Nxe6 25 Rxe6 Qxe6¹ 26 Qxe6. What is the material balance?

¹ 25...Qd7 26 Qxf8+ Kc7 27 Qf4+ Kd8 28 Rd6 is even worse.



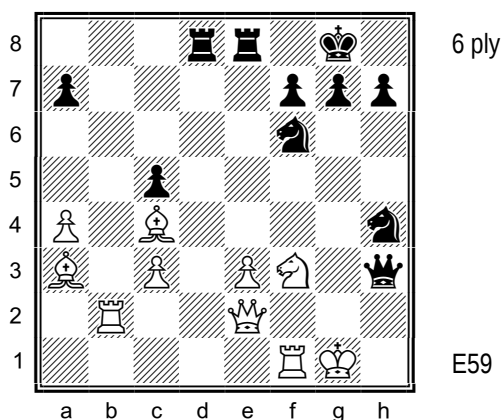
331. White has a piece for four pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Bxf7+ Kxf7¹ 20 Rxh7+ Ke8 21 Qxe4. What is the material balance?

¹ 19...Kf8 20 Rxh7 threatens mate in a variety of ways (Qg7, Qh8, and Bh6).



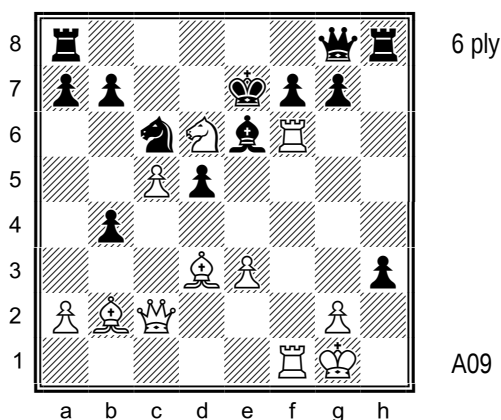
332. White is down a piece for two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nb5 Qxb5¹ 20 exd8=Q Kxd8 21 Kxg2. What is the material balance?

¹ The threat is 20 Nxa7+, winning Black's Queen. 19...Kb7 loses to 20 exd8=N+.



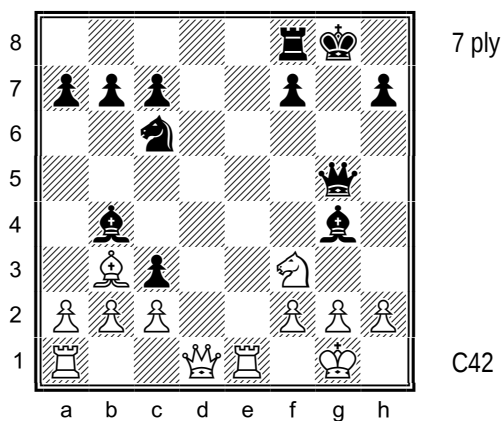
333. White is up a piece for two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Bxf7+ Kh8¹ 25 Bxe8 Qg4+ 26 Kh2² Rxe8. What is the material balance?

¹ 24...Kxf7 25 Ng5+ wins Black's Queen, as does 24...Kf8 25 Bxc5 Kxf7 26 Ng5+. ² 26 Kh1 Ne4 threatens 27...Ng3+.

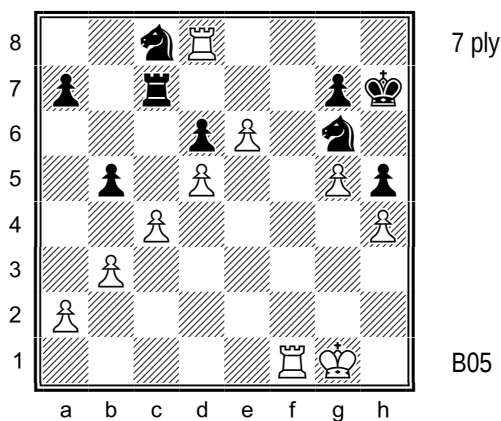


334. White has a piece for three pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxf7+ Bxf7 22 Rxf7+ Qxf7¹ 23 Nxf7 Kxf7. What is the material balance?

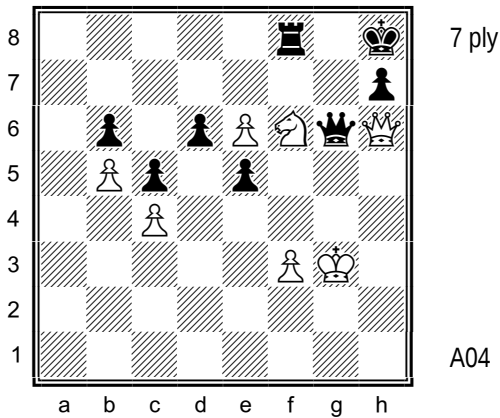
¹ Alternatives: a) 22...Ke6 23 Bf5 is mate; b) 22...Kd8 can be met by 23 Nxb7+ Kc8 24 Nd6+ Kd8 25 Bf5 (threatening 26 Rd7, mate), when 25...Nb8 loses to 26 Qa4.



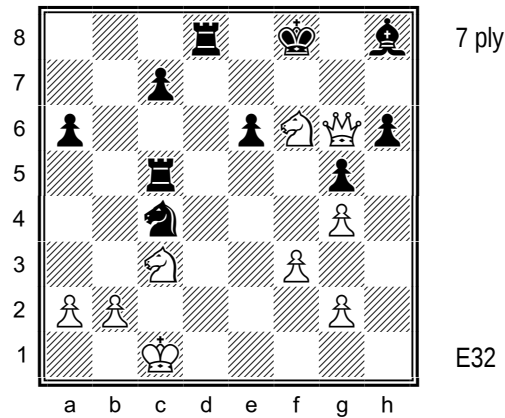
335. White is up the exchange. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nxc5 Bxd1 16 bxc3 Bxc3 17 Raxd1 Bxe1 18 Rxe1. What is the material balance?



336. White has a Rook and two pawns for two Knights. Visualize the position after the moves 37 Rd7 Rc5 38 Rff7 Nge7 39 Rfxe7 Nxe7 40 Rxe7. What is the material balance?



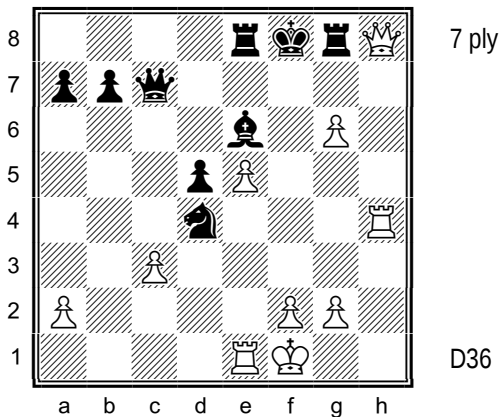
337. White is down the exchange and a pawn, but has a passed pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 46 Qxg6 hxd6 47 e7 Ra8 48 e8=Q+ Rxe8 49 Nxe8. What is the material balance?



338. White has a Queen for two Rooks, but Black's Rooks are weak. Visualize the position after the moves 41 Qg8+¹ Ke7 42 Qh7+ Kxf6² 43 Ne4+ Ke5 44 Nxc5. What is the material balance?

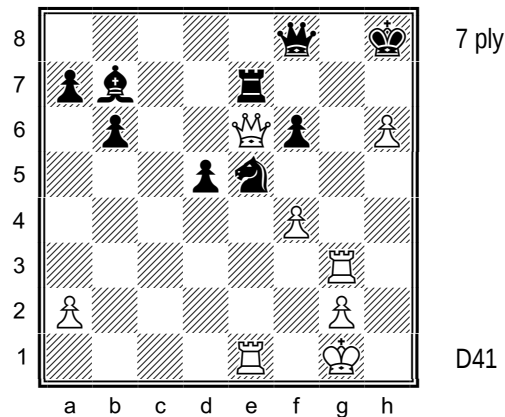
¹ 41 Nce4 loses to 41...Ne3+ and 42...Rc1, mate.

² 42...Kd6 43 Nfe4+ is similar.



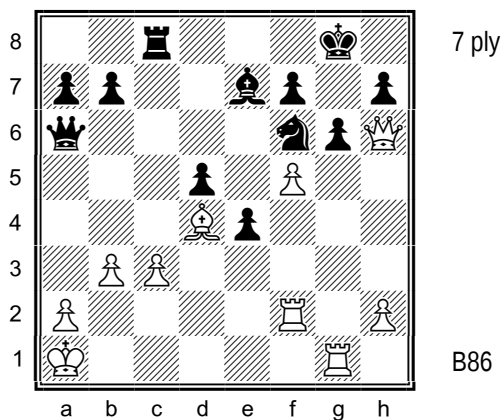
339. White is down two pieces for three pawns and his Queen is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 28 Qf6+ Bf7 29 Qxf7+ Qxf7 30 gxf7¹ Kxf7 31 cxd4. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here.



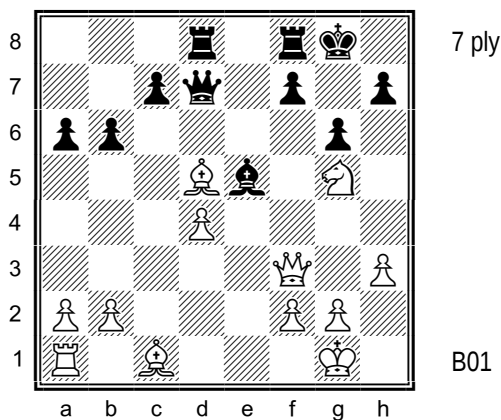
340. White has a Rook for two pieces. Visualize the position after the moves 32 Rg8+ Qxg8¹ 33 Qxf6+ Kh7 34 Qxe7+ Nf7² 35 Qxb7. What is the material balance?

¹ Better for Black is 32...Kh7 33 Rxf8 Rxe6 34 fxe5, although White is up the exchange and threatens 35 Rxf7+. ² 34...Kh8 is met by 35 Qxe5+ Kh7 36 Qf6, threatening 37 Re7+.



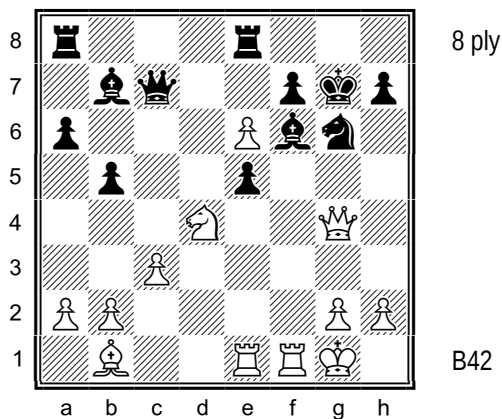
341. White has a Rook for a Knight and two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 27 fxg6 fxg6 28 Rxg6+ hxg6 29 Qxg6+ Kf8¹ 30 Bxf6². What is the material balance?

¹ 29...Kh8 is met by 30 Rf4, with the threat of 31 Rh4+, mating. ² 30 Rxf6 Bxf6 31 Bxf6 gives Black at least a perpetual with 31...Qf1+ 32 Kb2 Qe2+ 33 Ka3 Qa6+

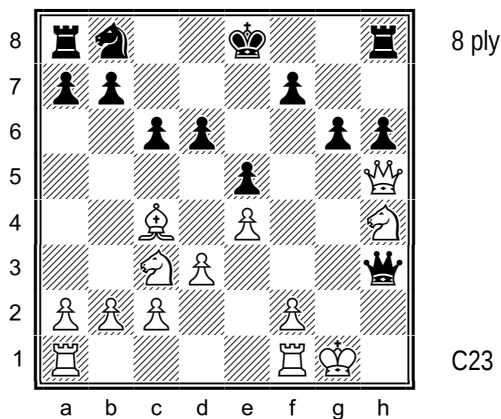


342. White has two pieces for a Rook. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Bxf7+ Rxf7 20 Qxf7+ Qxf7 21 Nxf7 Kxf7¹ 22 dxe5². What is the material balance?

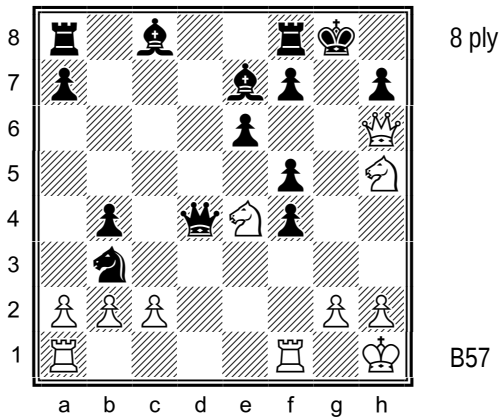
¹ In the actual game, Black played 21...Bxd4 and lost his Rd8 (1-0). ² White isn't worried about 22... Rd1+, as the pin can easily be broken by b3 and Bb2.



343. White is down a piece for a pawn, but has pressure along the f-file. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Rxf6 Kxf6 26 Rf1+ Kg7 27 Rxf7+ Qxf7 28 exf7 Kxf7. What is the material balance?



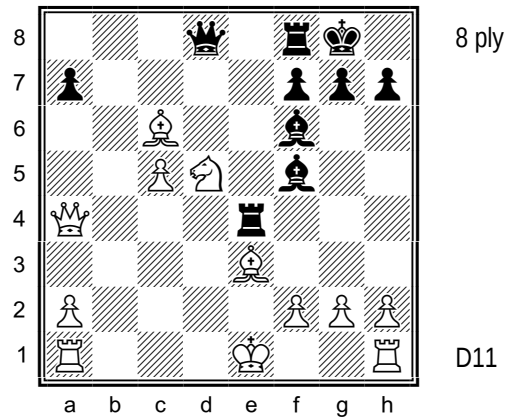
344. White is up two pieces for two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bxf7+ Kxf7 15 Qxg6+ Kf8 16 Qxd6+ Ke8 17 Qxe5+. What is the material balance?



8 ply

B57

345. White is down a piece for two pawns and two of his pieces are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rad1 Qe5 21 Nef6+ Bxf6 22 Nxf6+ Qxf6 23 Qxf6 Nc5. What is the material balance?

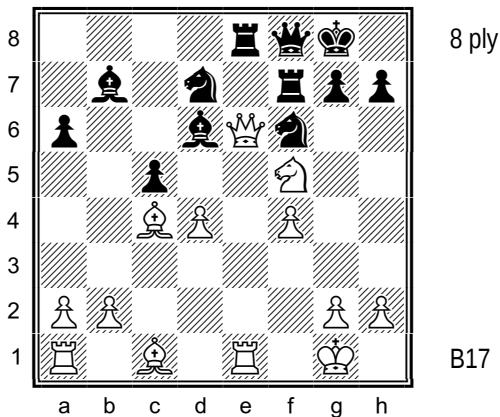


8 ply

D11

346. White is up a piece and a pawn, but two of his pieces are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Nxf6+ Qxf6 22 Bxe4 Qxa1+ 23 Ke2¹ Qxh1 24 Bxf5 Qxg2. What is the material balance?

¹ 23 Qd1 loses a piece to 23...Qxd1 24 Kxd1 Bxe4, although White remains up a pawn.

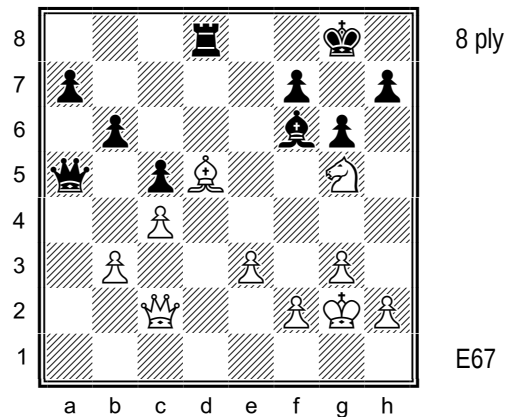


8 ply

B17

347. White is down a piece for two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Qxf7+ Qxf7 19 Bxf7+ Kxf7 20 Nxd6+¹ Kf8 21 Nxe8² Nxe8. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here. ² 21 Rxe8 Nxe8 22 Nxb7 is also good for White.

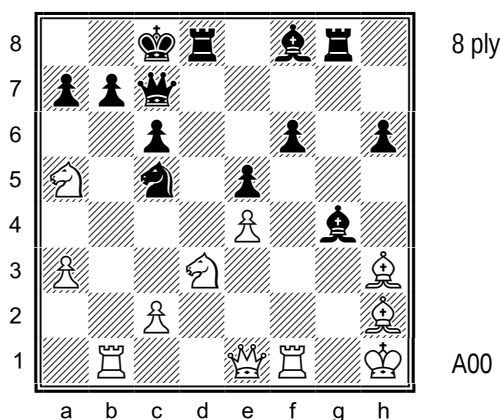


8 ply

E67

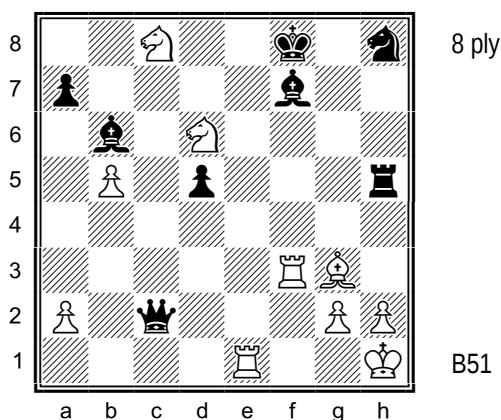
348. White is down the exchange. Visualize the position after the moves 30 Nxb7 Kxb7¹ 31 Bxf7² Rg8 32 Bxg8+ Kxg8 33 Qxg6+ Bg7. What is the material balance?

¹ 30...Rxd5 is met by 31 Nxf6+ and 32 Nxd5. ² White threatens 32 Qxg6+ Kh8 33 Qh6, mate.



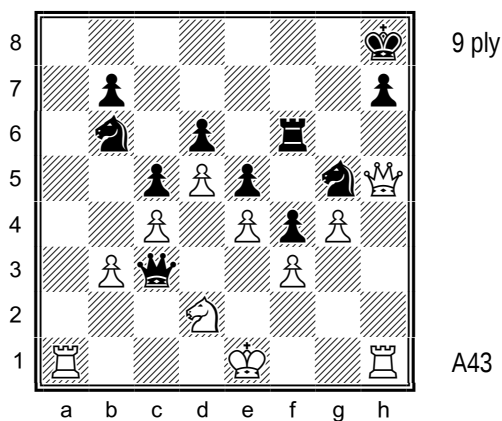
349. White has a piece for three pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Bxg4+ Rxd4 25 Nxc5 Bxc5 26 Nxb7¹ Bb6² 27 Nxd8³ Qxd8. What is the material balance?

¹ White is forking Black's Bishop and Rook. ² White is up a Queen for a Rook and pawn after 26...Qxb7 27 Rxb7 Kxb7 28 Rxf6. ³ Black resigned here.



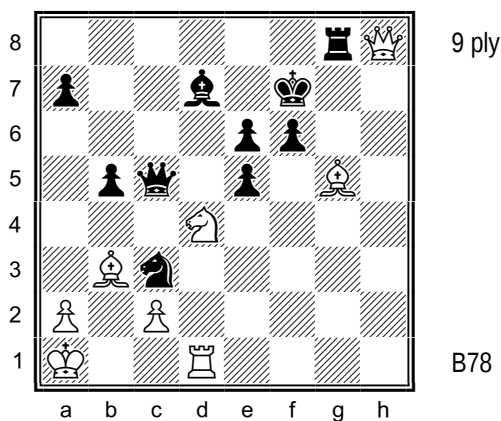
350. White is down a Rook and two pawns for a Queen. Visualize the position after the moves 37 Nxf7 Nxf7 38 Nd6 Qg6¹ 39 Rxf7+ Qxf7² 40 Nxf7 Kxf7. What is the material balance?

¹ 38...Rh7 loses the Knight to 39 Re8+ Kg7 40 Rxf7+, and then the Queen to 40...Kg6 41 Rg8+ Kh5 42 Rf5+. ² 39...Kg8 allows 40 Re8, mate.



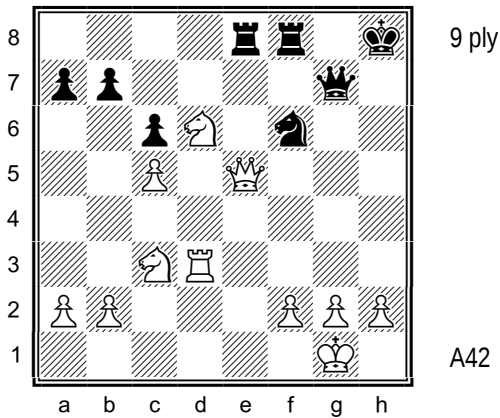
351. White is up the exchange. Visualize the position after the moves 30 Qxg5 Qxa1+ 31 Ke2 Qxh1 32 Qxf6+ Kg8 33 Qd8+¹ Kg7 34 Qxb6. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here.



352. White has a piece for three pawns, but four of his pieces are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 33 Qxf6+ Ke8 34 Qd8+ Kf7 35 Qxd7+ Kg6¹ 36 Qxe6+ Kxg5 37 Qxg8+. What is the material balance?

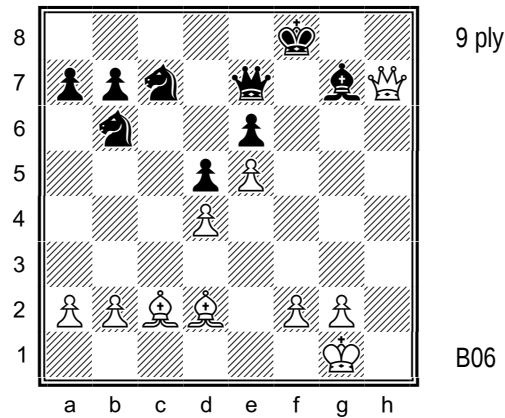
¹ 35...Kf8 loses to either 36 Nxe6, mate or 36 Rf1, mate.



353. White has three pawns for the exchange. Visualize the position after the moves 28 Nxe8 Rxe8¹ 29 Qxe8+ Nxe8 30 Rh3+² Kg8 31 Rg3 Qxg3 32 fxg3. What is the material balance?

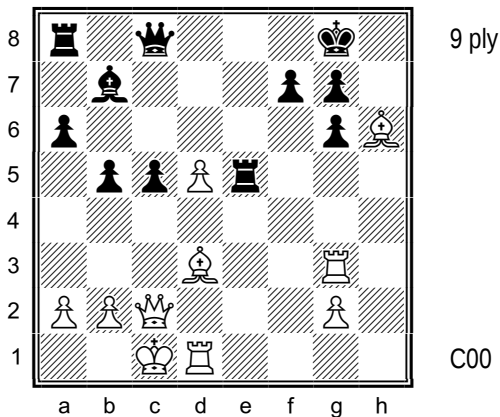
¹ This is better than 28...Nxe8 29 Rh3+ Kg8 30 Rg3.

² Black resigned here.



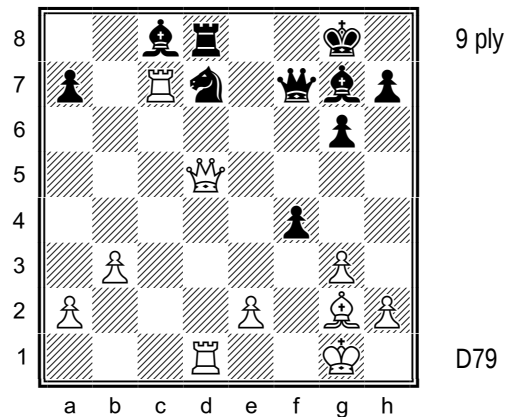
354. White is down a piece for two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 29 Bg6¹ Nd7 30 Bh6² Nf6³ 31 exf6 Qxf6 32 Qh8+ Ke7 33 Qxg7+. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here. ² This pins Black's Bishop and threatens 31 Qh8, mate. ³ Black intends to meet 31 Qh8 with 31...Ng8.



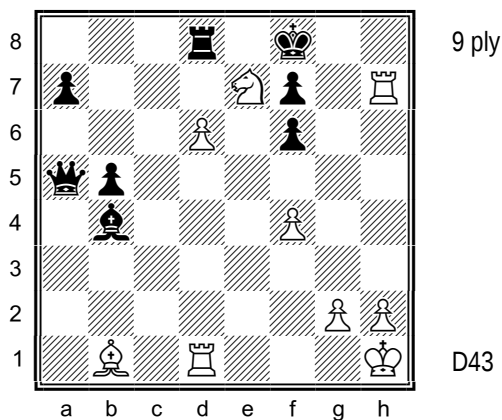
355. White is up a piece for two pawns, but will lose his d-pawn if his Bh6 retreats. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Bxg6 fxg6¹ 25 Qxg6 Qf8² 26 Qxg7+³ Qxg7 27 Rxg7+ Kh8 28 Rxb7. What is the material balance?

¹ 24...gxh6 loses the Queen to 25 Bf5+. ² 25...Re7 loses to 26 Bxg7, with the threat of 27 Bf6+ and 28 Qg8, mate. ³ Black resigned here.



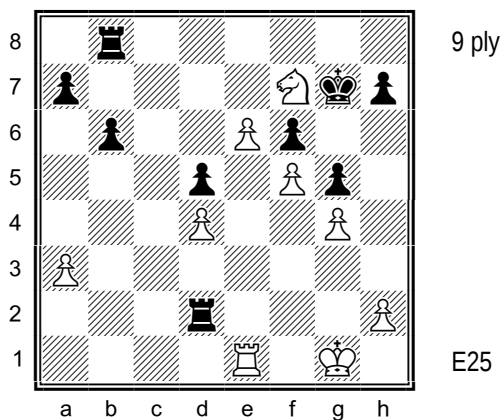
356. White has a Rook and pawn for two minor pieces. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Bh3¹ Qxd5 23 Rxd5 Nf8² 24 Rxc8³ Rxd5⁴ 25 Be6+ Kh8 26 Bxd5. What is the material balance?

¹ White's threat is 23 Be6. ² 23...Be5 is met by 24 Rxa7, maintaining the pin and gaining connected passed pawns on the queenside. ³ Black resigned here, as White's Rook on d5 is indirectly defended. Also possible is 24 Rxd8. ⁴ 24...Rxc8 25 Bxc8 is similar.

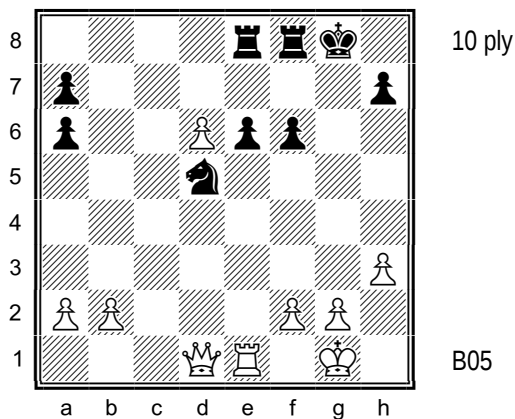


357. White has a Rook and Knight for a Queen. Visualize the position after the moves 37 Rh8+¹ Kg7 38 Rxd8 Qxd8 39 Nc6 Qxd6² 40 Rxd6 Bxd6 41 Nxa7. What is the material balance?

¹ This is better than the immediate 36 Nc6, which allows 37...Qa4, when White has nothing better than a draw, e.g., 38 Rh8+ Kg7 39 Rh7+. ² 39...Qd7 40 Nxb4 gains another piece and threatens 41 Na6-c5.

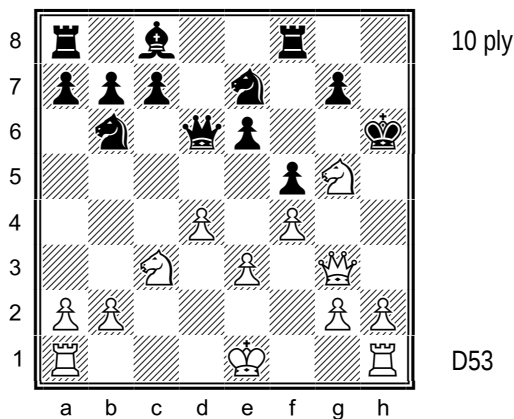


358. White is down the exchange, but has a passed pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 37 Nd6 Rxd4 38 e7 Rxd4+ 39 Kh1 Ra4 40 e8=Q Rxe8 41 Nxe8+. What is the material balance?



359. White is up a Queen and pawn for a Rook and Knight. Visualize the position after the moves 28 Rxe6 Rxe6 29 Qxd5 Kf7 30 f4¹ Rd8² 31 f5 Rxd6 32 fxe6+ Rxe6. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here. ² 30...f5 loses to 31 Qxf5+ Rf6 32 Qxh7+ Ke6 33 Qe7+ Kd5 34 d7.



360. White is down a piece for a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Qh4+ Kg6 16 Qh7+ Kf6 17 Nce4+ fxe4 18 Nxe4+ Kf7 19 Nxd6+ cxd6. What is the material balance?

CHAPTER 13. EXPANDING THE POSITION

This chapter contains exercises in which a number of White pieces move up the board in concert to create or convert an advantage. Aaron Nimzovich talked about the passed pawn's "lust to expand", but such expansion applies to all of the pieces, not just the passed pawn. This chapter shows how multiple pieces can march up the board in unison to create or convert an advantage.

Typical methods utilized during expansion include the following:

- ✧ Freeing a square – see exercises 363, 371, and 392;
- ✧ Clearing a line – see exercises 365, 367, and 378; and
- ✧ Exchanging pieces to open up a line – see exercises 361 and 377.

The following exercises illustrate how to create and/or utilize a strong piece:

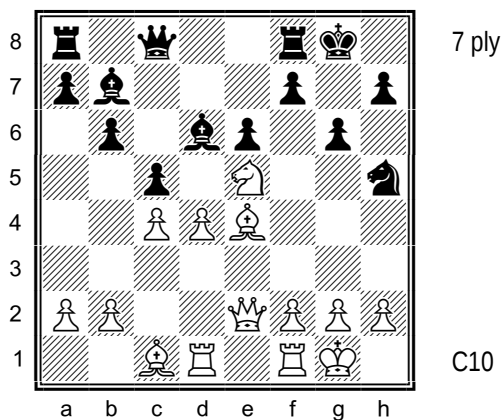
- ✧ Knight – see exercises 372, 376, and 387;
- ✧ Bishop – see exercises 364, 375, 380, 384, and 388;
- ✧ Rook – see exercises 362, 366, 368, 373, 379, and 386;
- ✧ Queen – see exercises 369, 370, and 374; and
- ✧ Queen and Knight – see exercises 389 and 391.

The following exercises prompt you to find a mate:

- ✧ Mate in one – see exercises 366 and 367;
- ✧ Mate in two – see exercises 369, 370, 371, and 386; and
- ✧ Mate in three – see exercises 372, 373, and 385.

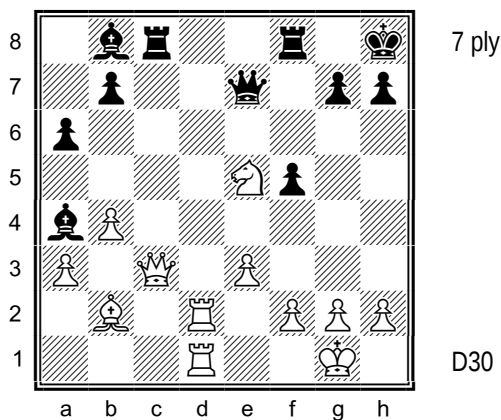
This chapter contains thirty-two exercises ranging in depth from seven to eleven half-moves, as seen in the following table:

Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13⁺	TOTAL
Exercises:	-	-	-	8	-	14	2	8	-	-	32



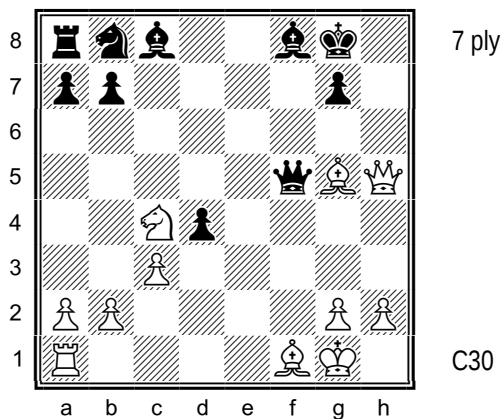
361. White can get his Rook to d7. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxb7 Qxb7¹ 17 dxc5 Bxc5 18 Rd7 Qc8 19 Rfd1. What is the material balance?

¹ This deflects Black's Queen from c5 and allows White to play 18 Rd7 with tempo.



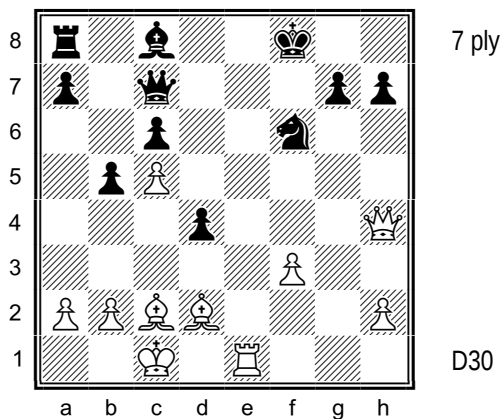
362. White is up a pawn, but two of his pieces are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Qxc8 Rxc8 25 Rd8+ Rxd8 26 Rxd8+ Be8¹ 27 Rxb8. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a pawn after 26...Qxd8 27 Nf7+ Kg8 28 Nxd8.



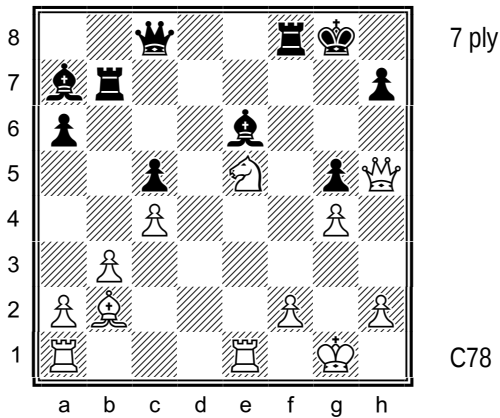
363. White is up a pawn and can rearrange his pieces on c4 and f1. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Nd6¹ Bxd6 22 Bc4+ Be6 23 Rf1 Qxf1+² 24 Bxf1. What is the material balance?

¹ This move frees c4 for the Bishop, while White's next move frees f1 for the Rook. ² 23...Qe5 loses to 24 Qe8+ Kh7 25 Bd3+ Bf5 26 Bxf5, when Black has to give up his Queen to avoid mate.



364. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 26 Bf4 Qa5¹ 27 Bb3² Qd8³ 28 Bd6+ Qxd6 29 cxd6. What is the material balance?

¹ 26...Qd8 27 Bb3 is similar. ² Black is in a mating net and resigned here. ³ 27...Nd5 cuts off the a2-g8 diagonal, but also loses to 28 Bd6+, for example, a) 28...Kf7 29 Qe7+ Kg6 30 Rg1+, followed by either 31 Qe5 or 31 Qg5, mate, or b) 28...Kg8 29 Re8+ Kf7 30 Rf8+ Kg6 31 Bc2+ Bf5 32 Bxf5, mate.

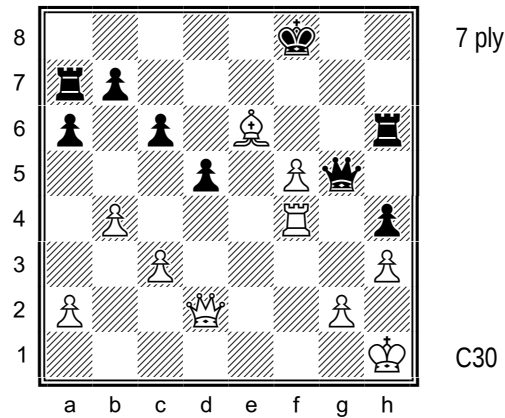


7 ply

C78

365. White is up two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 27 Nd7¹ Qxd7² 28 Qxg5+ Kf7 29 Qf6+ Kg8³ 30 Qxe6+. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here. 27 Qxg5+ can be met by 27...Rg7, winning White's g-pawn. ² 27...Rxd7 loses a Bishop and Rook to 28 Qxg5+ Kf7 29 Qg7+ Ke8 30 Rxe6+ Kd8 31 Qxf8+. ³ 29...Ke8 is met by 30 Rxe6+.

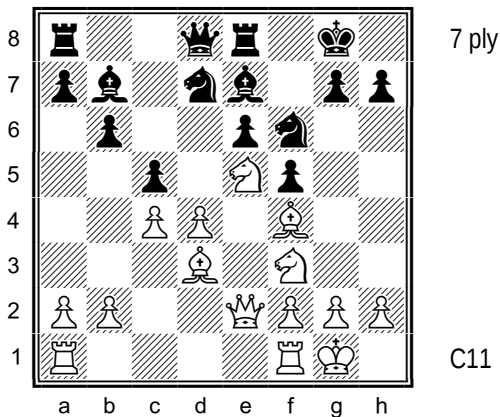


7 ply

C30

366. White is down the exchange but has a winning position. How does White mate after the moves 29 Qd4¹ Ra8 30 Rg4 Qf6² 31 Rg8+³ Ke7?

¹ White unpins his Rook, while at the same time attacking Black's Rook on a7. ² 30...Qe7 allows 31 Rg8, mate; 30...Qd8 allows 31 Qg7+ Ke8 32 Qf7, mate. ³ Black resigned here.

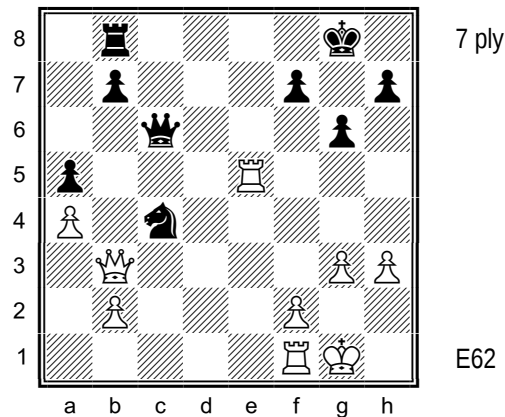


7 ply

C11

367. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nf7 Kxf7¹ 16 Qxe6+ Kg6² 17 g4³ Be4. How does White mate in one in this position?

¹ 15...Qc8 is met by 16 Qxe6. ² 16...Kxe6 loses to 17 Ng5, mate. After 16...Kf8 17 Ng5, the only way to prevent mate on f7 is by playing 17...Ne5 18 dxe5 Bd5 19 cxd5 Qxd5, but this loses the Queen to 20 Nxh7+ Nxh7 21 Qxd5. ³ This takes away h5 and threatens 18 Bxf5, mate.

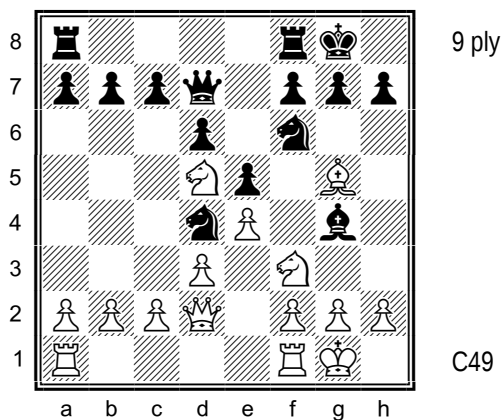


7 ply

E62

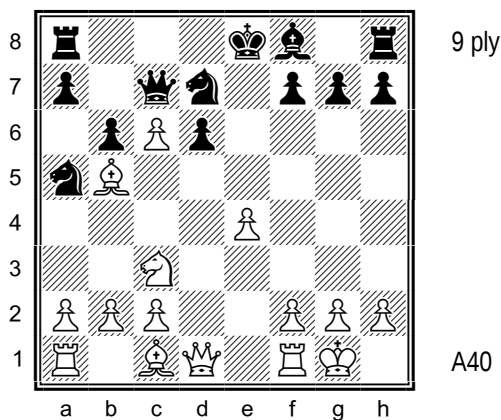
368. White is up the exchange and can grab the 7th rank. Visualize the position after the moves 30 Re7¹ b5² 31 Rd1 Qf6 32 Rdd7 Ne5³. How does White win in this position?⁴

¹ 30 Rc1 Nxe5 31 Rxc6 Nxc6 wins a Queen for Rook and Knight, but Black's position is solid. ² Overprotecting the Knight allows Black's Queen to move. ³ 32...Qxb2 33 Qxb2 Nxb2 34 Rxf7 Nxa4 35 Rg7+ also wins. ⁴ Hint: Black's Queen is overworked.



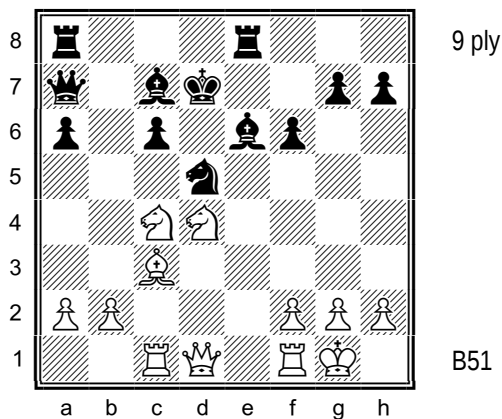
369. Capablanca wins this symmetrical position. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxf6 Bxf3¹ 13 Ne7+ Kh8 14 Bxg7+ Kxg7. How does White mate in two here?

¹ 12...Nxf3+ 13 gxf3 Bh3 is met by 14 Qg5.



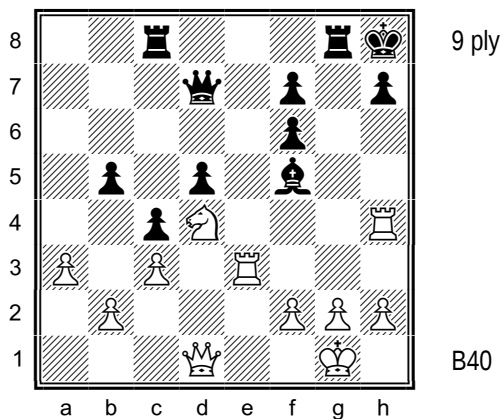
370. White is up two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 11 cxd7+ Kd8 12 Qd5 Rb8¹ 13 Qxf7 Be7². How does White mate in two here?

¹ 12...Qb8 is met by 13 Qxf7 Be7 14 Nd5, threatening both 15 Qxe7+ and 15 Qe8+. ² 13...Qc5 14 Nd5 covers c7 and threatens 15 Qe8, mating.



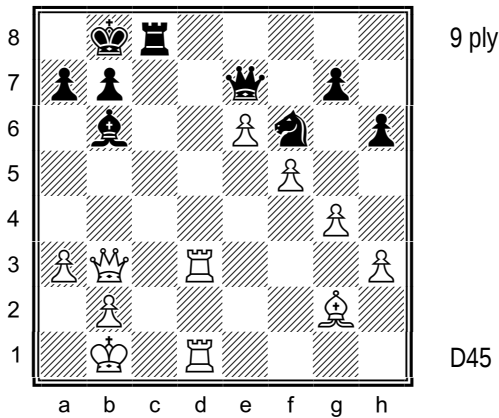
371. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Nxc6 Kxc6 22 Bd4 Qb8 23 Qa4+¹ Kb7². How does White mate in two?

¹ Black resigned here. ² 23...Qb5 24 Na3+ wins the Queen.



372. Visualize the position after the moves after the moves 26 Re7 Qxe7¹ 27 Nxf5² Qf8³. How does White mate in three here?

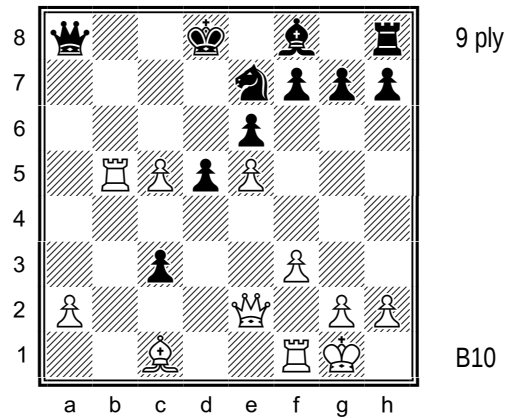
¹ Moving the Queen drops the Bf5 for free. ² Black resigned here. ³ Alternatives: a) 27...Rg5 28 Nxe7 gives White a Queen and Knight for a Rook; b) 27...Qd8 28 Rxf7+ Kxf7 29 Qh5 is mate.



373. White is up the exchange and two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 40 Rd7 Nxd7¹ 41 Rxd7² Qg5. How does White mate in three?

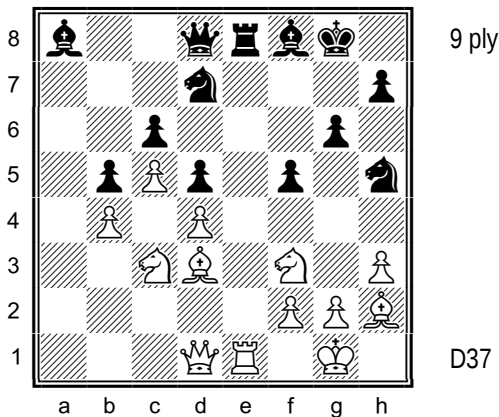
¹ 41...Qxd7 42 exd7 Rd8 loses to 43 Qd5, for example, 43...Kc7 44 Qxb7+ Kd6 45 Qd5+ and now a) 45...Kc7 46 Qc6+ Kb8 47 Qb7, mate, or b) 45...Ke7 46 Qe6+ Kf8 47 Bd5, with mate to follow.

² Black resigned here.

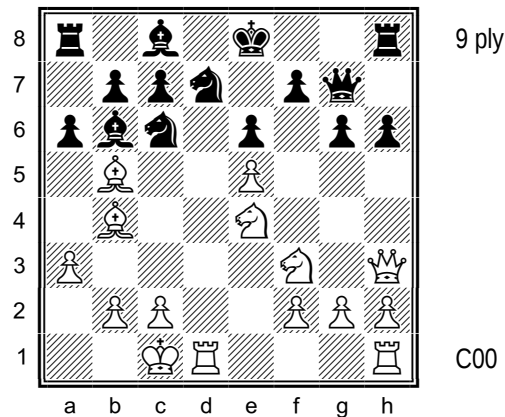


374. White is up the exchange. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bg5 h6 19 Rfb1 Kc7¹ 20 Rb7+ Qxb7 21 Rxb7+ Kxb7 22 Qb5+. What is the material balance?

¹ 19...hgx5 20 Rb8+ Qxb8 21 Rxb8+ Nc8 22 Qa6 leads to mate.

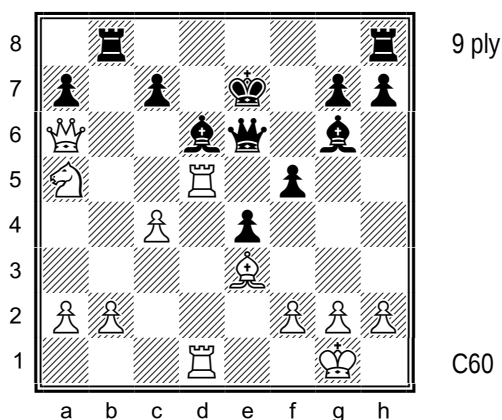


375. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Rxe8 Qxe8 20 Nxd5 cxd5 21 Bxb5 Qc8 22 Qa4 Ndf6 23 Be5. What is the material balance?



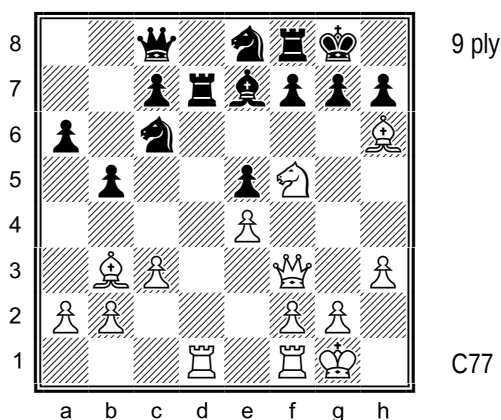
376. White's Bishop on b5 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxc6 bxc6 18 Rxd7 Bxd7 19 Nf6+ Kd8 20 Rd1 Kc8 21 Rxd7¹. What is the material balance?

¹ Here 21...Bxf2 is answered by 22 Qxe6.



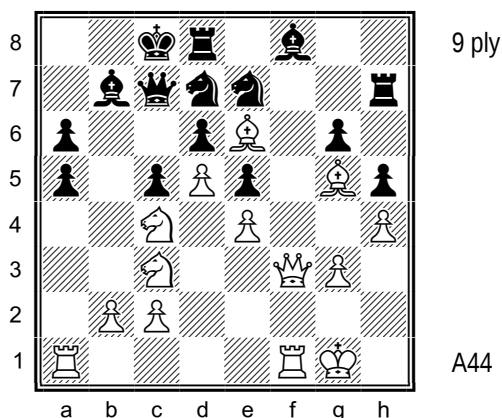
377. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Nc6+ Kf7 22 Nxb8 Rxb8 23 Rxd6 cxd6¹ 24 Qxa7+² Qe7 25 Qxb8. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a Rook if Black doesn't take on d6.
² Black resigned here.



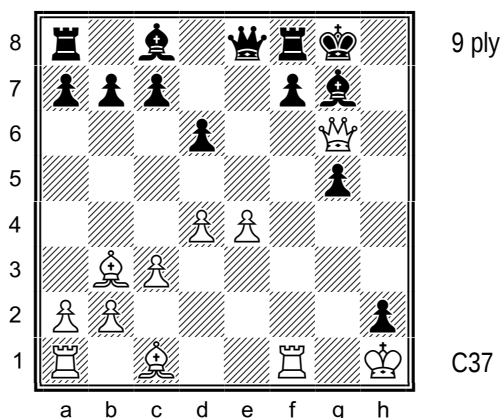
378. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rxd7 Qxd7 21 Bxg7 Nxg7 22 Qg4¹ Bf6 23 Nh6+ Kh8 24 Qxd7. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here.



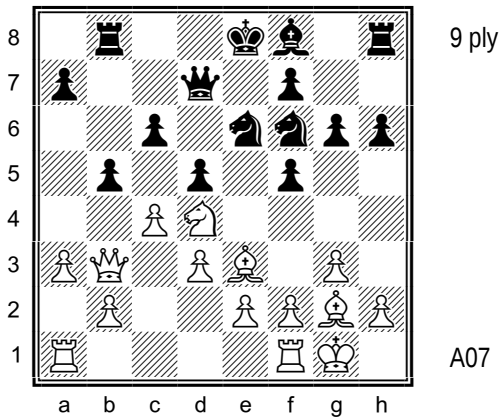
379. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Qxf8 Rxf8 20 Rxf8+ Qd8 21 Nxd6+ Kc7 22 Rxd8¹ Kxd8 23 Nxb7+. What is the material balance?

¹ 22...Kxd6 loses to 23 Rxd7, mate.



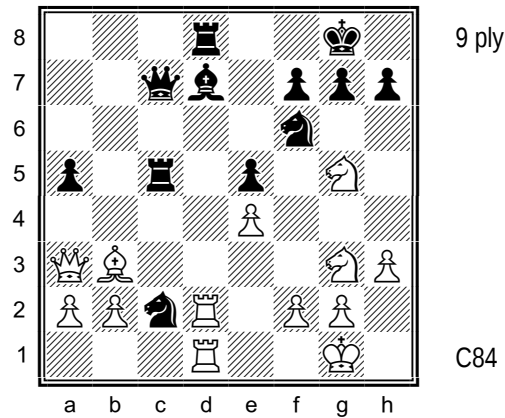
380. White is down two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxg5 Be6 18 Rxf7 Bxf7¹ 19 Bf6² Qxe4+ 20 Qxe4 Bxf6 21 Qxb7. What is the material balance?

¹ 18...Rxf7 leaves Black a pawn down after 19 Bxe6 Kf8 20 Qxf7+ Qxf7 21 Bxf7 Kxf7 22 Kxh2. ² Black resigned here.



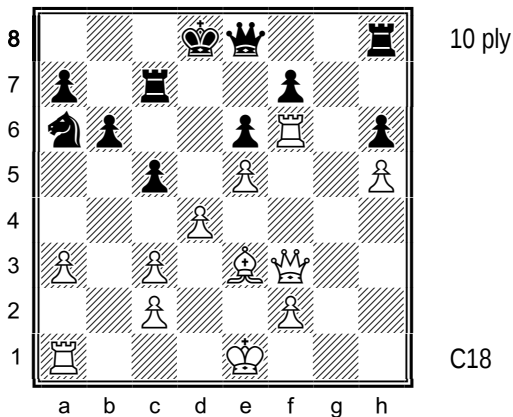
381. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nxc6 Qxc6 16 cxd5 Nc5 17 Qc3 Qd6¹ 18 Bxc5 Qxc5 19 Qxf6². What is the material balance?

¹ 17...Qc7 undefends the Nf6. ² White threatens both 20 Qxh8 and 20 Qe5+, winning the Rb8. Black resigned here.



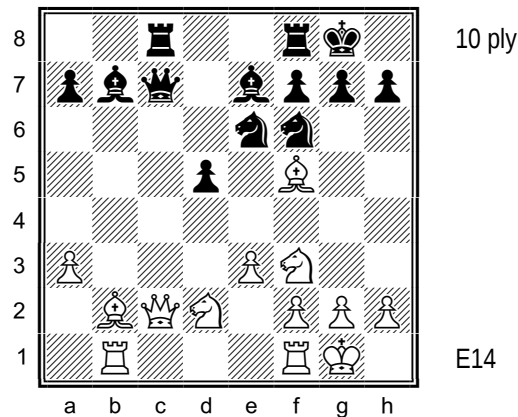
382. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 30 Rxc2 Rxc2 31 Qe7¹ Be8 32 Bxf7+ Bxf7² 33 Rxd8+³ Qxd8 34 Qxd8+. What is the material balance?

¹ The threat is 32 Qxf7+ Kh8 33 Qg8+, with a smothered mate. ² 32...Kh8 loses to 33 Qf8+. ³ Black resigned here.



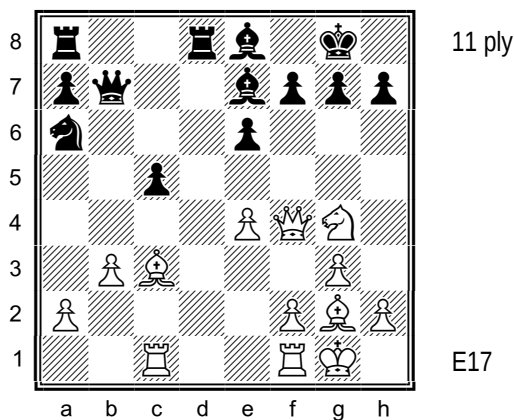
383. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 25 dxc5 Nxc5 26 Rd1+ Ke7¹ 27 Bxc5+ bxc5 28 Rxe6+² Kf8³ 29 Rxe8+⁴ Kxe8. What is the material balance?

¹ 26...Rd7 27 Bxc5 bxc5 28 Rxd7 Qxd7 29 Rxf7 Qe8 (defending the Rook against 30 Qf6+) 30 Qa8, mate. ² Black resigned here. ³ Taking on e6 is met by 29 Qf6, mate. ⁴ White can also play 29 Qf6, for example, 29...Qxe6 30 Qxh8+ Ke7 31 Qd8, mate, or 29...Rg8 30 Rxe8+ Kxe8 31 Qd8, mate.



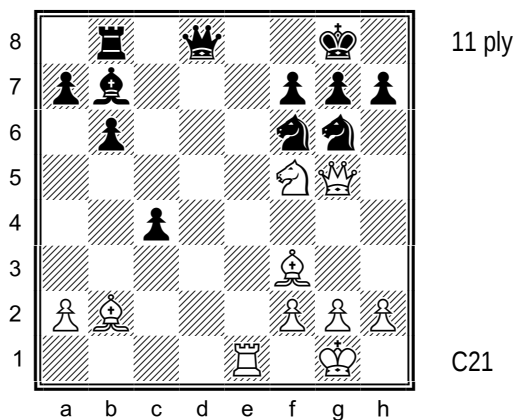
384. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Qxc7 Rxc7 18 Be5 Rd7 19 Nd4¹ Nxd4 20 Bxd4² Bc8³ 21 Bxd7 Nxd7⁴. What is the material balance?

¹ White's threat is 20 Nxe6. ² White's Bishops dominate Black's Rook. 20 Bxd7 is also possible, when White is up the exchange after 20...Ne2+ 21 Kh1 Ba6 22 Bb5. ³ 20...Rc7 21 Be5 also wins material. ⁴ In the game Black lost his a-pawn after 21...Bxd7 22 Rb7 Rd8 23 Rxa7 (1-0, 24).



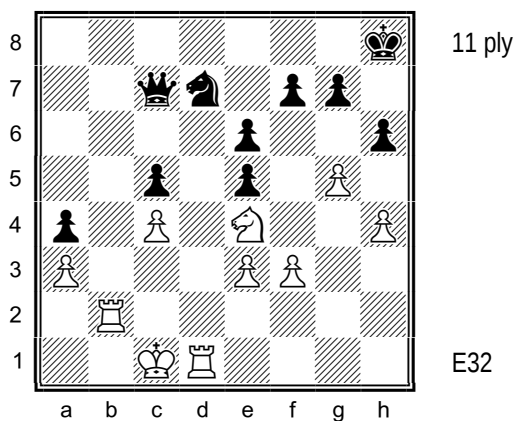
385. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Bxg7¹ Kxg7 20 Qh6+ Kg8 21 e5 Qc7². How does White mate in three?

¹ Black resigned here. ² 21...Rd5 allows the same mate.



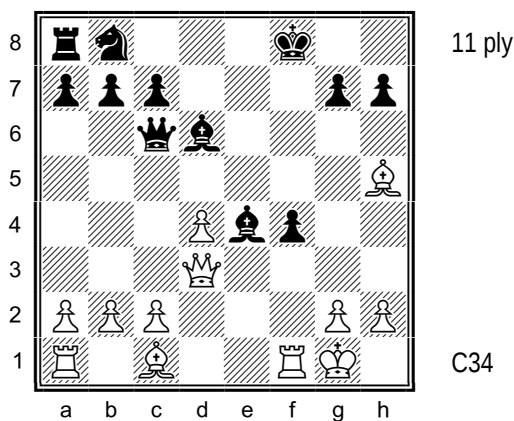
386. White is down two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Bxb7 Rxb7 22 Bxf6 Qxf6¹ 23 Re8+ Nf8 24 Nh6+ Qxh6. How does White mate in two?

¹ 22...gxf6 23 Qh6 Qf8 is met by 24 Re8 with 25 Qg7, mate.



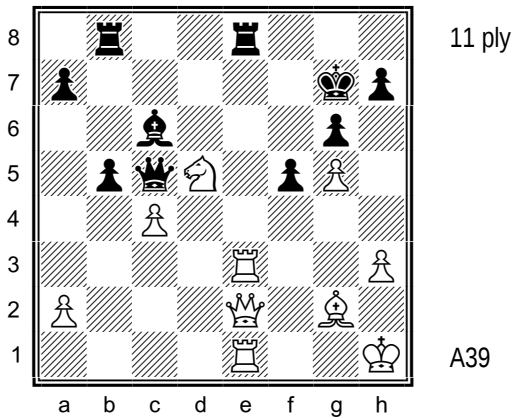
387. White has two Rooks for a Queen and pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 29 gxf6 gxf6 30 Rxd7 Qxd7 31 Rb8+ Kg7 32 Rg8+¹ Kxg8 33 Nf6+ Kg7 34 Nxd7. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here.



388. White is up the exchange, but his Queen and g-pawn are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxf4 Kg8¹ 17 Bxd6 cxd6 18 Qb3+² d5 19 Bf7+ Kh8 20 Bxd5³ Qd6 21 Bxe4. What is the material balance?

¹ Best. 16...Bxd3 loses to 17 Bxd6+ Kg8 18 Rf8, mate. 16...Bxf4 leaves White is up at least a Rook and a pawn after 17 Rxf4 and 18 Qxe4. ² Black resigned here. ³ This move attacks Black's Queen and threatens 21 Rf8, mate.

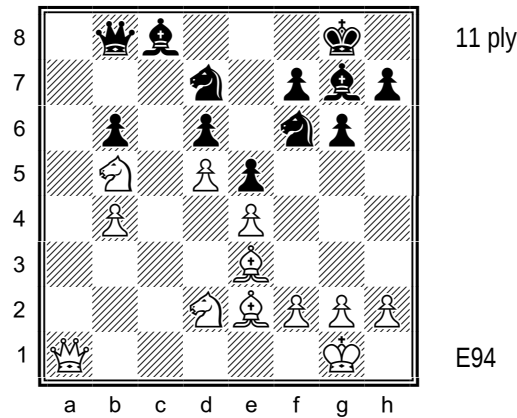


11 ply

A39

389. White has a piece for two pawns, but his c-pawn is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 29 Qb2+ Kg8 30 Qf6¹ bxc4 31 Rxe8+ Rxe8 32 Rxe8+ Bxe8 33 Ne7+² Qxe7 34 Qxe7. What is the material balance?

¹ 30 Re7, hitting g7, is even better, e.g., 30 Re7 Rxe7 31 Rxe7 Qxe7 32 Nxe7+ Kf8 33 Bxc6 with 34 Qf6, mate. ² Black resigned here.

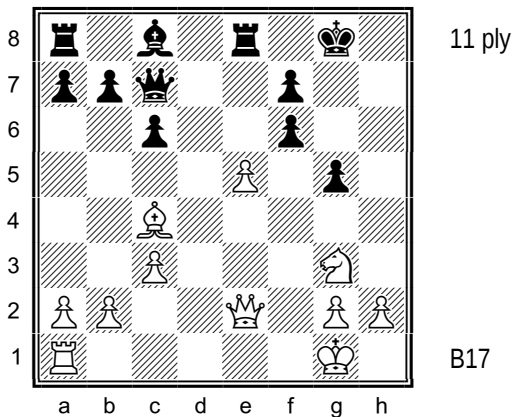


11 ply

E94

390. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Qa7¹ Qxa7 21 Nxa7 Bb7 22 Bb5² Bf8³ 23 Bc6 Ba6⁴ 24 b5 Bxb5 25 Nxb5. What is the material balance?

¹ White threatens 21 Qxb8 Nxb8 winning either the b- or d-pawn. ² White's threat is 23 Bc6 Ba6 b5. ³ 22...Nb8 23 Bc6 Bxc6 24 dxc6 also wins. ⁴ White's pawn can't be stopped after 23...Bxc6 24 dxc6.

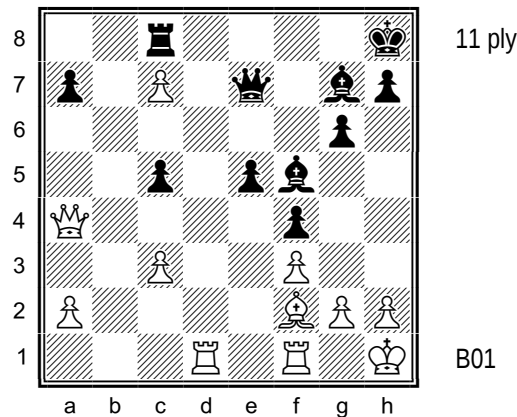


11 ply

B17

391. White is down the exchange. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Qh5 Qxe5¹ 18 Qg6+² Kh8 19 Qh6+ Kg8 20 Nh5³ f5 21 Nf6+ Qxf6 22 Qxf6. What is the material balance?

¹ 17...Rxe5 is better, as this hangs the f-pawn. 17...Be6 allows 18 Qh6 Bxc4 19 Nh5, threatening both 20 Qg7 and 20 Nf6. ² 18 Qxf7+ Kh8 19 Qg6 can be met by 19...Be6. ³ The threat is 21 Qg7, mate and 21 Nxf6+. Black resigned here.



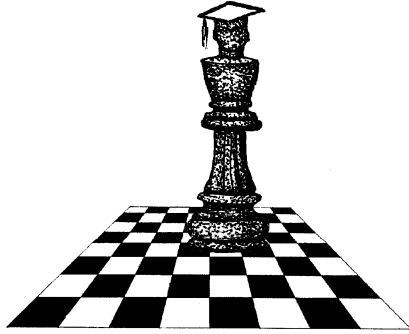
11 ply

B01

392. White is up the exchange. Visualize the position after the moves 31 Rd8+ Rxd8 32 cxd8=Q+ Qxd8¹ 33 Rd1 Qa8 34 Bh4² e4³ 35 Rd8+ Qxd8 36 Bxd8. What is the material balance?

¹ White has given up his passed pawn to reach this position. ² Black resigned here. 34 Qa5 is worse, as it allows Black to add a cheap defender to d8 and take h5 away from White with 34...Bf6. ³ Other moves are similar.

CHESS VISUALIZATION
COURSE



SECTION 4. QUEENS UNDER ATTACK

This section contains exercises in which each player captures his opponent's Queen using a piece of lesser value. As in the previous section, the activity covers at least two different sectors of the board and contains the following chapters:

CHAPTER 14. FIRST PLAYER TO ATTACK THE QUEEN

CHAPTER 15. SECOND PLAYER TO ATTACK THE QUEEN

CHAPTER 16. DESPERADO QUEENS

CHAPTER 17. DOUBLE DESPERADOS

CHAPTER 18. PINS TO THE QUEEN

CHAPTER 14, FIRST PLAYER TO ATTACK THE QUEEN, shows how the first player to attack an enemy Queen can gain the advantage.

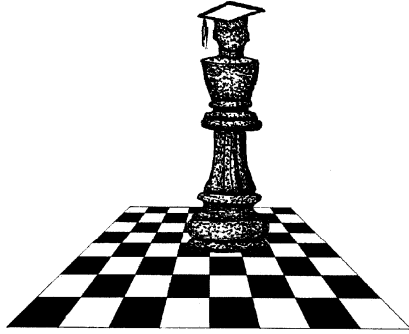
CHAPTER 15, SECOND PLAYER TO ATTACK, shows how the second player to attack the enemy Queen can gain an advantage.

CHAPTER 16, DESPERADO QUEENS, shows how an attacked Queen can voluntarily give herself up for a piece of lesser value.

CHAPTER 17, DOUBLE DESPERADOS, features exercises in which both Queens voluntarily give themselves up for a piece of lesser value.

CHAPTER 18, PINS TO THE QUEEN, features exercises in which a Queen is captured by a piece of lesser value due to the breaking of a pin to the Queen.

CHESS VISUALIZATION
COURSE



CHAPTER 14. FIRST PLAYER TO ATTACK THE QUEEN

This chapter features exercises in which each player captures his opponent's Queen using a piece of lesser value (Rook, Bishop, Knight, or pawn). It shows how the first player to attack the enemy Queen can gain an advantage. An important feature to consider in such situations is the nature of both Queens – are they unprotected or defended by another piece?

- ✧ Defended vs. undefended Queen. If the first player's Queen is defended while the second player's Queen is not, then the first player to attack will win material because he'll be able to take the enemy piece that captured his Queen, an option that won't be available to the second player, since his Queen was undefended – see exercises 393, 394, 399, and 413.
- ✧ Both Queens defended. If both players' Queens are defended, then one way that the first player can gain an advantage is by capturing the Queen with a piece of lesser value – see exercises 396, 412, 419, and 420.

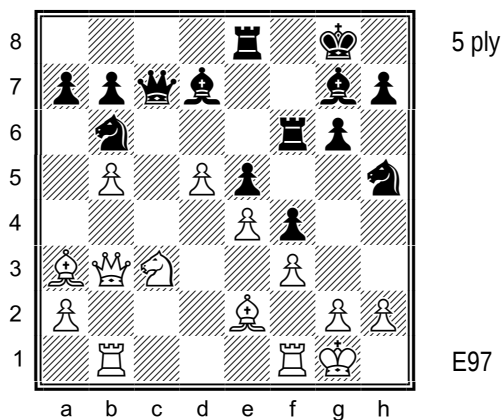
Even when the first player does not gain an advantage directly from the trade of Queens, there may be an opportunity to win material after the exchange of Queens occurs, such as by capturing a hanging piece, by winning material through the use of some tactical device such as a Knight fork or Rook scower, or by gaining an important tempo through check or some other threat. Here are the typical features seen:

- ✧ Capturing a hanging piece – see exercises 402, 405, 406, 407, 413, 417, 418, and 420;
- ✧ Winning material by using a tactical device – see exercises 398, 400, 410, 414, 423, and 424;
- ✧ Gaining a tempo by means of a check – see exercises 401, 402, 403, 404, 408, 415, 416, 421, and 422; and
- ✧ Gaining a tempo by means of a threat – see exercises 397, 411, and 423.

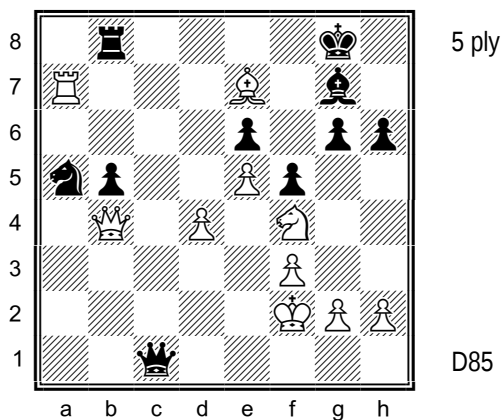
These features can often compensate for other disadvantages in the position, such as having a Queen that's undefended or using a piece of great value to attack your opponent's Queen.

This chapter contains thirty-two exercises ranging in depth from five to eleven half-moves, as seen in the following table:

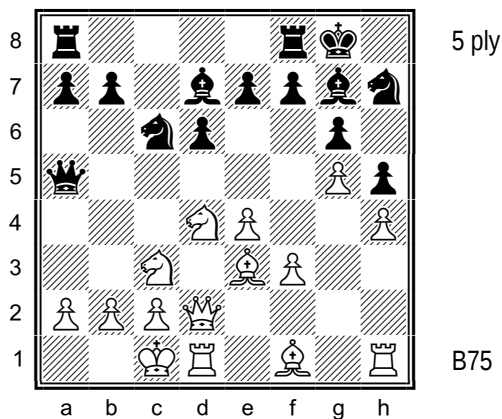
Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13 ⁺	TOTAL
Exercises:	-	4	2	12	2	6	1	5	-	-	32



393. Visualize the position after the moves 21 d6+ Be6 22 dxc7 Bxb3 23 Rxb3. What is the material balance?

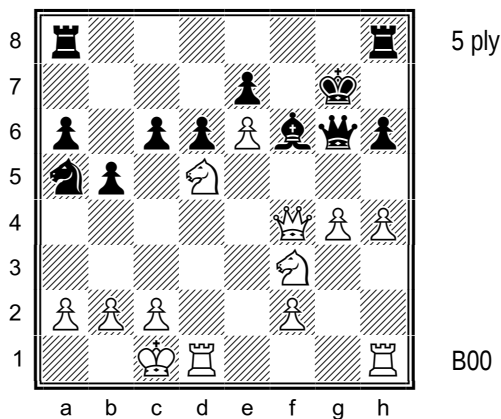


394. Both Knights are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 33 Ne2 Nc6 34 Nxc1 Nxb4 35 Bxb4. What is the material balance?



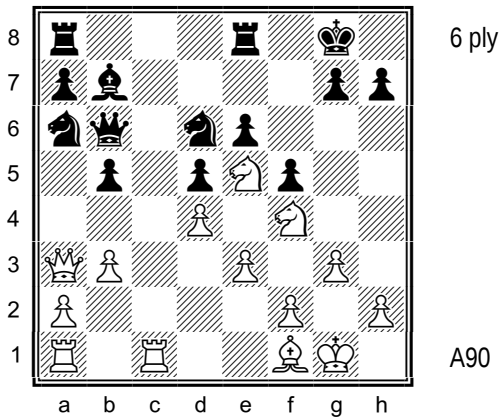
395. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Nb3 Bxc3¹ 14 Nxa5 Bxd2+ 15 Bxd2. What is the material balance?

¹ 13...Qb4, 13...Qc7, or 13...Qd8 are also playable.



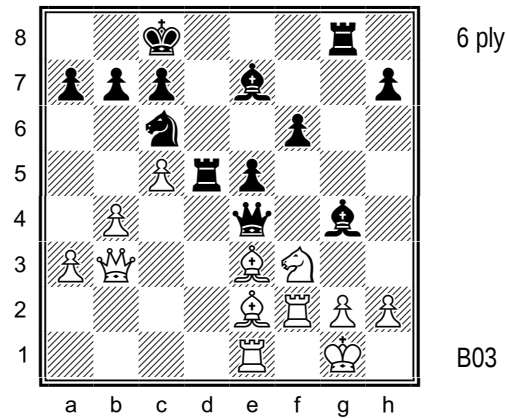
396. White is up a pawn, but his Nd5 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 23 h5 Bg5¹ 24 hxg6 Bxf4+ 25 Nxf4. What is the material balance?

¹ Moving the Queen drops another pawn, e.g., 23... Qe8 24 Nxf6 exf6 25 Rxd6 or 23...Qg5 24 Nxg5 Bxg5 25 Qxg5 hxg5 25 Nxe7.



6 ply

A90



6 ply

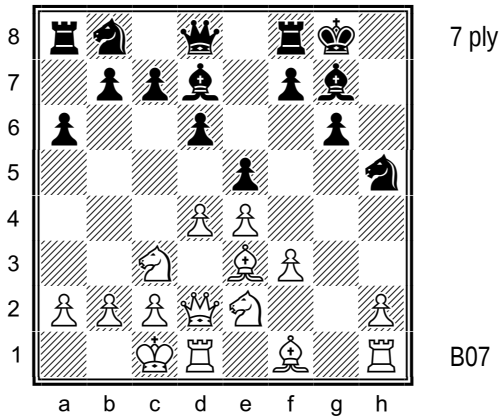
B03

397. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nd7 b4¹ 21 Nxb6 bxa3 22 Nxa8 Rxa8². What is the material balance?

¹ 20...Qd8 21 Qxd6 wins a piece (e.g., 21...Re7 22 Bxb5). ² In the actual game Black played 22...g5, but resigned after 23 Bxa6 Bxa6 24 Nc7 (1-0).

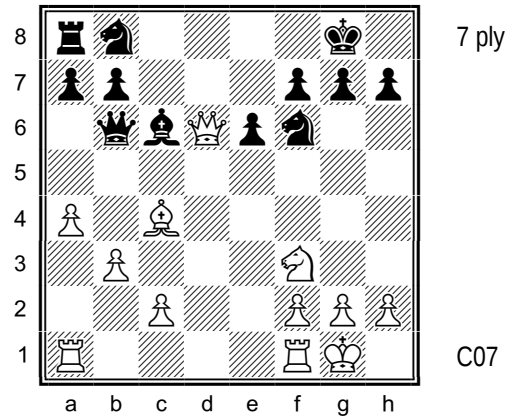
398. Black is up a pawn, but his Queen is tied to the defense of the Rd5. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Nd2 Nd4 22 Nxe4¹ Nxb3 23 Bc4 and 24 Bxb3. What is the material balance?

¹ 22 Bc4 Nxb3 23 Nxe4 is similar to the game.



7 ply

B07



7 ply

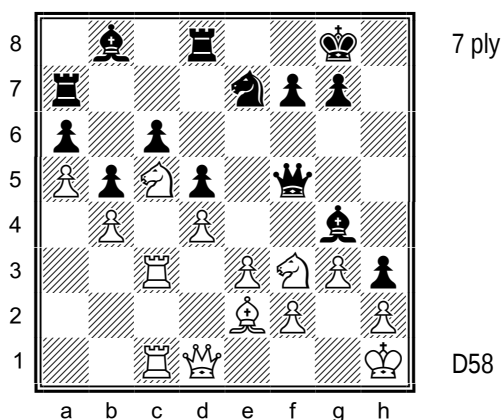
C07

399. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Ng3 Qh4¹ 12 Bg5 Bh6² 13 Bxh4 Bxd2+ 14 Rxd2. What is the material balance?

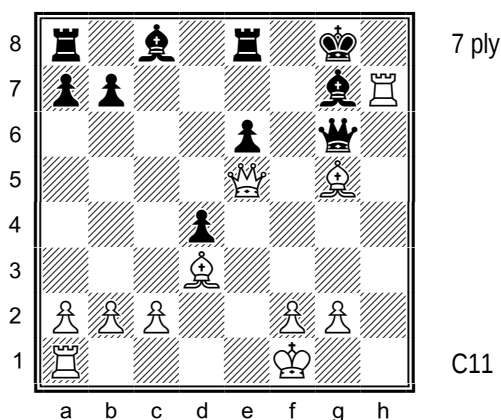
¹ White gets an attack if Black moves his Knight, for example, 11...Nxg3 12 hxg3 with 13 Qh2 or 11...Nf6 12 dxe5 dxe5 with 13 h4 and 14 h5. ² The only way to save his trapped Queen.

400. White is up the exchange and Black's Queen is trapped. Visualize the position after the moves 17 a5 Ne4 18 axb6 Nxd6 19 Rxa7¹ Be8 20 Rxa8. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here. White gets a new Queen after 19...Rxa7 20 bxa7.

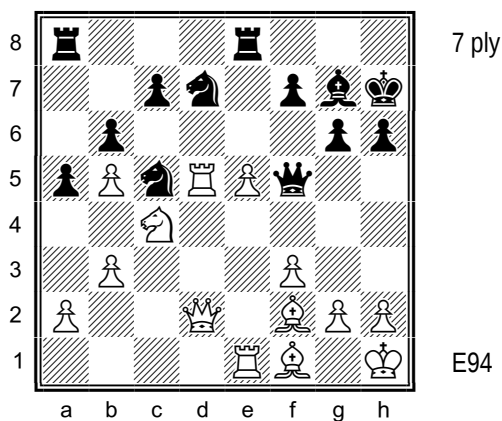


401. White will have the better pawn structure and better pieces in an ending. Visualize the position after the moves 36 Nh4 Bxe2 37 Nxf5 Bxd1 38 Nxe7+ Rxe7 39 Rxd1. What is the material balance?



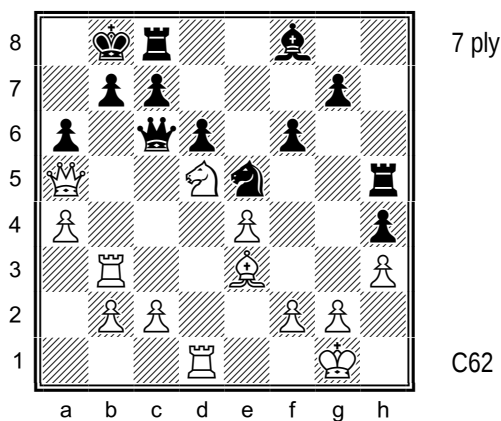
402. White is up a pawn. Both Queens are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Bxg6 Bxe5 26 Re1 Bg7¹ 27 Rxg7+ Kxg7 28 Bxe8². What is the material balance?

¹ Leaving the a1-h8 diagonal allows 27 Bf6 and 28 Rh8, mate. ² Black resigned here.



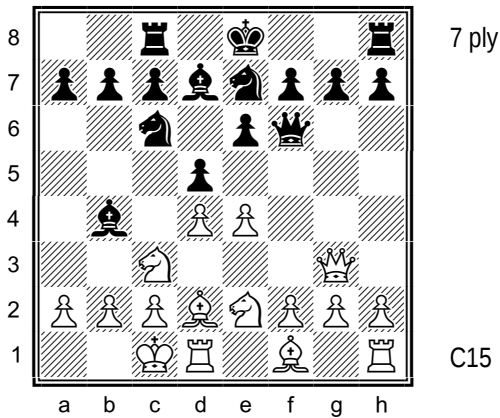
403. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 28 e6 Bc3¹ 29 Rxf5 Bxd2 30 Rxf7+ Kg8 31 Nxd2². What is the material balance?

¹ 28...Ne5 was also possible, though White wins a piece after 29 exf7 Re7 30 Nxe5 Bxe5 31 Bxc5 bxc5 32 f4. ² Black resigned here.



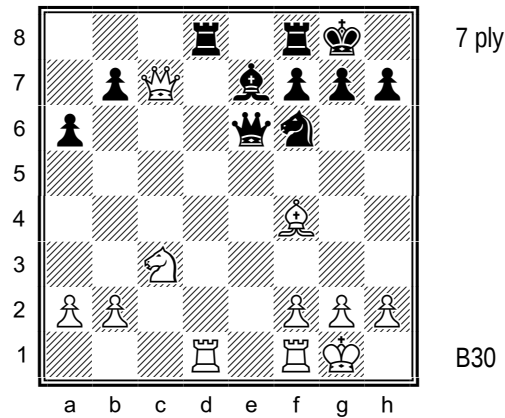
404. White has to watch out for discovered attacks along the fifth rank. Visualize the position after the moves 29 Nb4 Nf3+¹ 30 gxf3 Rxa5 31 Nxc6+² Ka8 32 Nxa5. What is the material balance?

¹ 29...Qxe4 loses to 30 Nxa6+ Ka8 31 Nb4+ Kb8 21 Qa7, mate. ² Black resigned here.



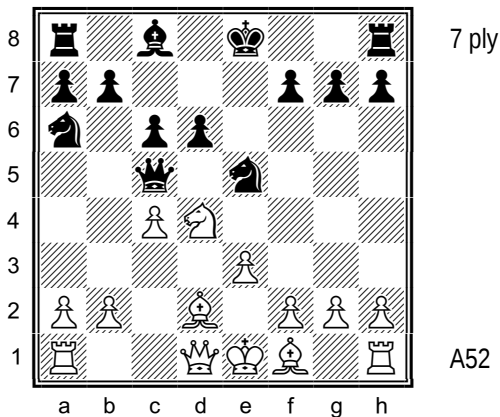
405. Visualize the position after the moves 9 Bg5 Bd6¹ 10 Bxf6 Bxg3 11 Bxe7 Bxf2 12 Bg5. What is the material balance?

¹ 9...Qg6 loses material to 10 Nf4 Bd6 11 Nxg6 Bxg3 with either 12 Nxb8 or 12 Nxe7 Nxe7 13 hxg3.



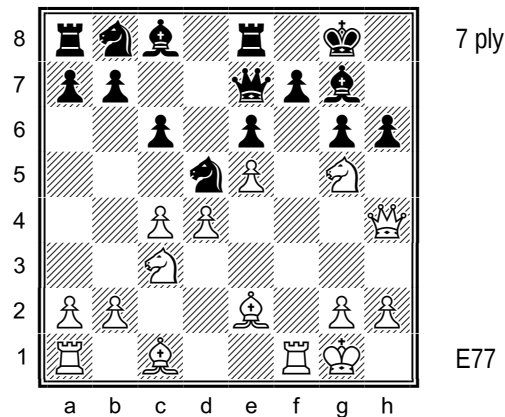
406. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Rde1 Bd6¹ 18 Rxe6 Bxc7 19 Rxf6 gxf6² 20 Bxc7. What is the material balance?

¹ Relatively best is 17...Rd7 18 Rxe6 Rxc7 19 Rxf6 Rxc3, although White is up a pawn after 20 Rb6 Rc2 21 Rxb7. ² White is up a piece after 19...Bxf4 20 Rxf4.



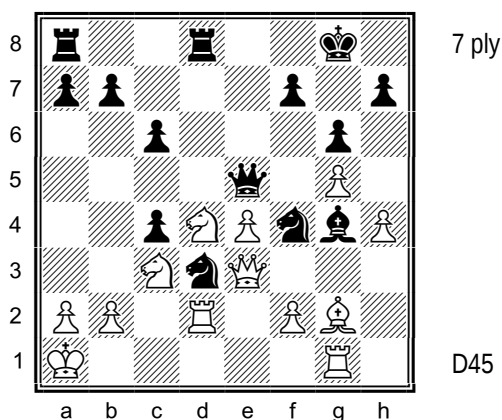
407. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Nb3 Bg4¹ 12 Nxc5² Bxd1 13 Nxa6³ bxa6⁴ 14 Rxd1. What is the material balance?

¹ Black's Queen is trapped after 11...Qb6 12 Ba5. ² White is up a piece after 12 f3 Qb6 13 fxg4, but the text is even better. ³ The threat of 14 Nc7+ gives White time to capture Black's Bishop on d1. ⁴ White is up a Rook after 13...Bh5 14 Nc7+ Kd7 15 Nxa8 Rxa8.



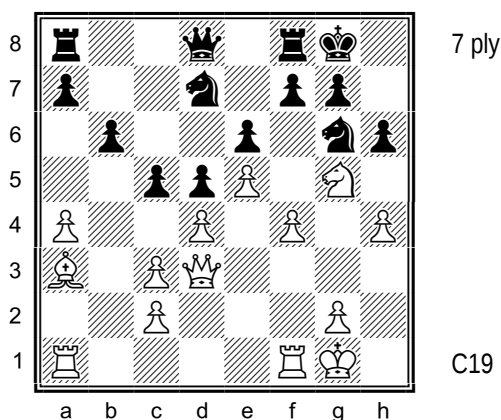
408. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Rxf7¹ hxf7² 15 Rxe7 gxf4 16 Rxe8+ Kf7 17 Rxc8. What is the material balance?

¹ The alternative 14 cxd5 hxf7 15 Bxf7 is also good for White, but Black's Queen is active after 15...Qb4. ² Black can gain a Rook and Knight for a Queen and pawn after either 14...Qxf7 15 Nxf7 Nxc3 16 bxc3 Kxf7 or 14...Qxg5 15 Bxg5 Kxf7, but lacks development in both cases.



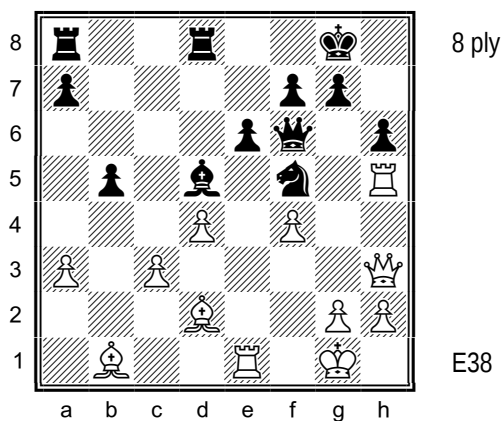
409. White is down a pawn and his Nd4 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Nf3 Nxd2 24 Nxe5¹ Nxe3 25 Nxd4² Nxd4 26 Rxd4. What is the material balance?

¹ 24 Rxd2 Bxf3 25 Qxf3 loses the exchange to 25... Ne1. ² White is down a piece after 25 fxe3 Nxe5.

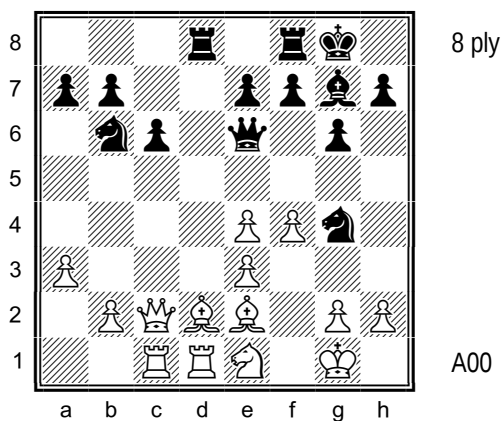


410. White's Knight on g5 and pawn on h4 are under attack, but Black's f-pawn is overworked. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxe6 Nxe5¹ 18 Nxd8 Nxd3 19 Nc6² Nxf4 20 Rxf4. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a pawn after 17...fxe6 18 Qxg6 Qe8 (18...Qxh4 loses the Nd7 to 19 Qe6+). ² Black's Knight is trapped.

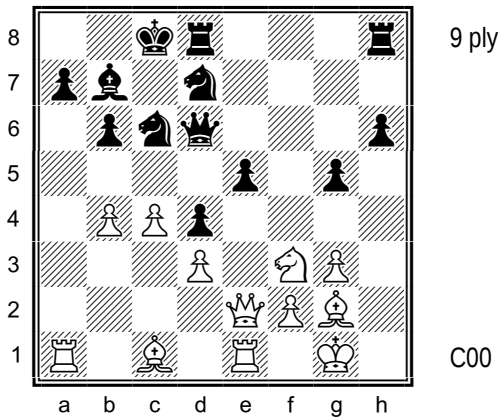


411. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Bxf5 exf5 26 Rxf5 Be6 27 Rxf6 Bxh3 28 Rc6 Be6. What is the material balance?

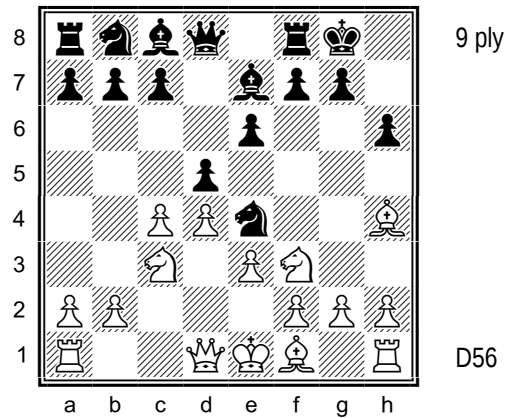


412. Visualize the position after the moves 18 f5¹ gxf5² 19 exf5 Rxd2³ 20 fxe6 Rxc2 21 Nxc2⁴ Nh6. What is the material balance?

¹ Two of Black's pieces are under attack. ² White is up the exchange after 18...Rxd2 19 fxe6 Rxc2 20 exf7+ Kxf7 21 Nxc2. ³ Moving the Queen drops the Knight. ⁴ 21 exf7 first is even better, when 21...Rxf7 can be met by 22 Rd8+ Rf8 23 Rxf8+ Kxf8 24 Nxc2.

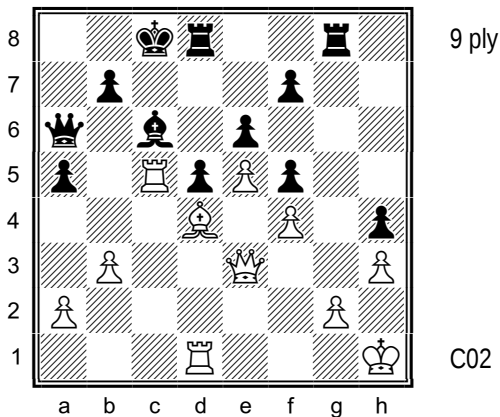


413. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Ba3 g4 22 b5 gxf3 23 Bxd6 fxe2 24 bxc6 Bxc6 25 Bxc6. What is the material balance?



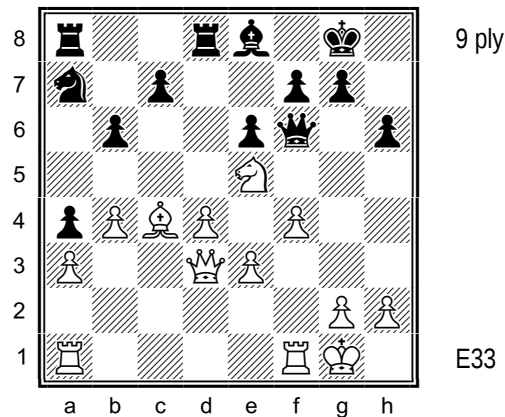
414. Visualize the position after the moves 8 Bxe7 Nxc3 9 Bxd8 Nxd1¹ 10 Be7² Re8³ 11 Ba3 Nxf2 12 Kxf2. What is the material balance?

¹ Black's Knight is trapped. ² Two of Black's pieces are under attack. ³ 10...Nxf2 11 Kxf2 Re8 12 Ba3 transposes, while 10...Nxb2 loses the exchange for a pawn after 11 Bxf8 Kxf8 12 c5.



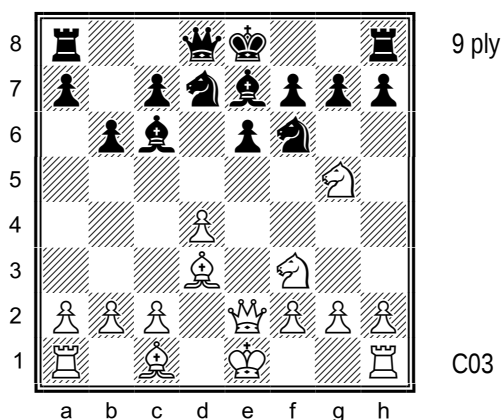
415. White is down a pawn, but Black's a-pawn is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 26 Qd2 Rg3¹ 27 Rxa5 Rd3 28 Rxa6 Rxd2 29 Rxc6+² bxc6 30 Rxd2. What is the material balance?

¹ Heading for d3. White has a Queen and Bishop for two Rooks after 26...Qb6 27 Rxc6+ Qxc6 28 Rc1 Kd7 29 Rxc6 bxc6 30 Qxa5. Black's prospects are dim after 26...Qa8 27 Rxa5 Qb8 28 Qf2. ² Black resigned here.



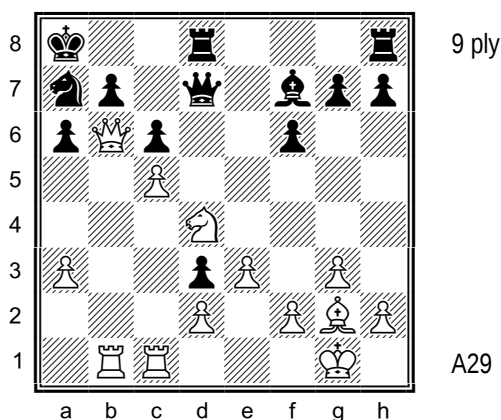
416. Visualize the position after the moves 19 f5 b5¹ 20 fxe6 bxc4² 21 Rxf6 cxd3 22 exf7+ Bxf7 23 Rxf7. What is the material balance?

¹ Best. 19...Qe7 20 fxe6 f6 (or 20...fxe6 21 Qe4, threatening 22 Bd3) 21 Nf7. ² The desperado 20... Qxf1+ 21 Qxf1 bxc4 gives Black a Rook and Bishop for a Queen and two pawns, but White can now win a piece with 22 exf7+ Bxf7 23 Qxf7+ Kh8 24 Qxc4.



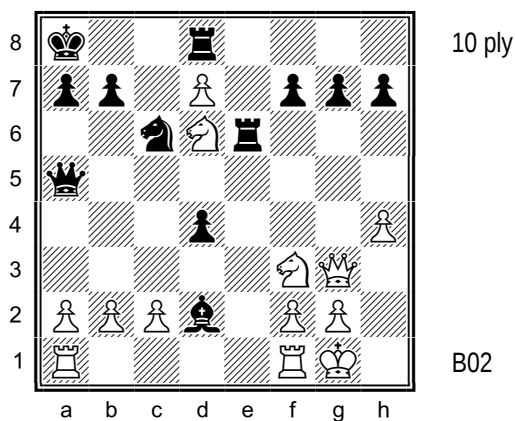
417. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Nxf7 Bxf3¹ 11 Qxe6² Nf8³ 12 Nxd8 Nxe6 13 Nxe6 Bxg2 14 Rg1⁴. What is the material balance?

¹ After 10...Kxf7 11 Ng5+ Ke8 12 Nxe6 Qc8 13 Nxf7+ Kd8 14 Ne6+ Ke8 15 Bf4, White has three pawns for a piece and threatens 16 Nxc7+. ² Three Black pieces are under attack. ³ White is up two pawns after 11...Bd5 12 Nxd8 Bxe6 13 Nxe6. ⁴ White threatens 15 Nxc7+, but 14...Kd7 defends.



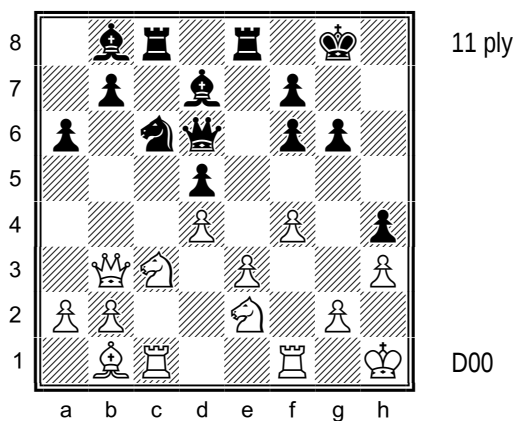
418. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Bh3 Nc8¹ 23 Bxd7 Nxb6 24 Bxc6² bxc6 25 Rxb6 Bd5³ 26 Rxa6+. What is the material balance?

¹ White gets his Knight to d6 after 22...Qe7 23 Nf5 Qd7 24 Nd6, when White gains a pawn and a dominant position after 24...Qe7 (forced) 25 Qxb7 Qxb7 26 Rxb7. ² Black resigned here. ³ Defending the a-pawn with 25...Ka7 leads to mate after 26 Nxc6+ Ka8 27 Rcb1 Bc4 28 Rb7 with 29 Ra7, mate.



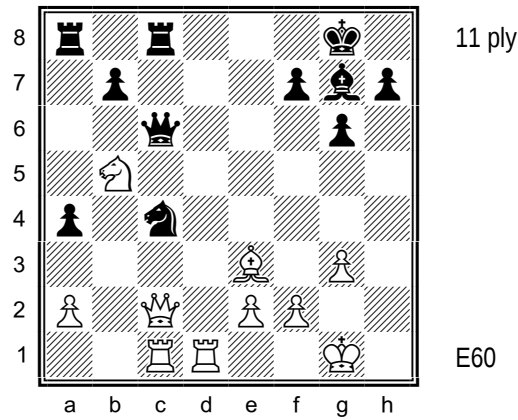
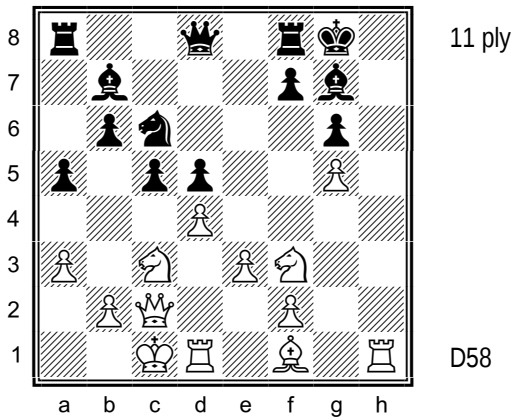
419. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nc4¹ Rg6² 20 Nxa5 Rxc3 21 Nxc6³ bxc6⁴ 22 fxg3 Be3+ and 23...Rxd7. What is the material balance?

¹ Two Black pieces are under attack. ² 19...Bf4 drops a piece after either 20 Qxf4 or 20 Nxa5 Bxg3 21 Nxc6 Rxc6 22 fxg3 Rxc2 23 Nxd4. ³ Three of Black's pieces are under attack. ⁴ 21...Rxc2+ loses an additional, e.g., 22 Kxg2 bxc6 23 Nxd2 Rxd7.



420. Visualize the position after the moves 20 e4¹ dxe4² 21 Nxe4 Nxd4 22 Rxc8 Rxc8 23 Nxd6 Nxb3 24 Nxc8³ Bxc8 25 axb3. What is the material balance?

¹ 20 Qxd5 Rxe3 gains nothing. ² 20...Ba7 21 e5 fxe5 22 fxe5 drives Black's Queen away from d5, while 20...Be6 loses a pawn to 21 exd5 Bxd5 22 Nxd5 Rxe2 23 Qxb7 Ree8 24 Be4. ³ Black resigned here.

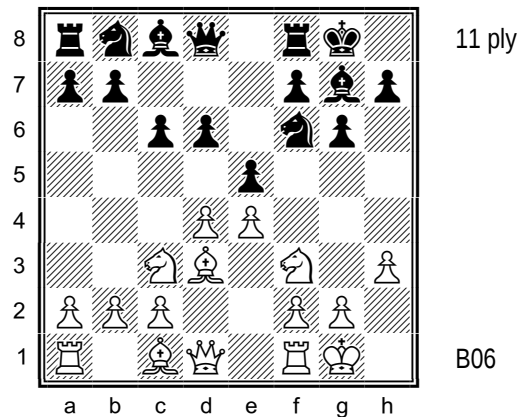
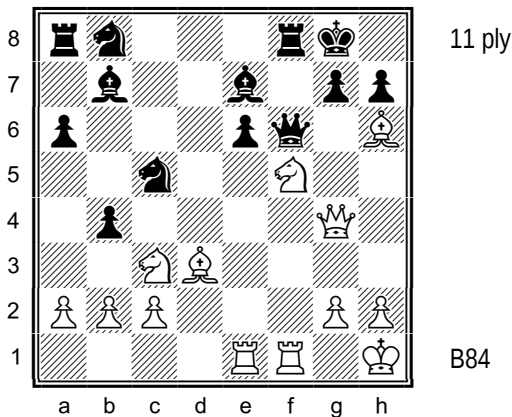


421. Visualize the position after the moves 17 dxc5 bxc5¹ 18 Rxd5 Nd4² 19 Rxd8 Nxc2 20 Rxf8+ Kxf8 21 Kxc2 Bxf3 22 Rh4. What is the material balance?

422. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Na7 Nxe3 26 Nxc6 Nxc2¹ 27 Ne7+ Kf8 28 Nxc8 Rxc8 29 Rd2 b5 30 Rdxc2. What is the material balance?

¹ 17...Bxc3 18 Qxc3 wins Black's Queen because of the mate threat. ² Discovering an attack on White's Rook d5, as well as the Knight on f3 and the Rook on h1 behind it.

¹ 26...Rxc6 allows the desperado 27 Qxc6 bxc6 28 fxe3, when White is up the exchange for a pawn.



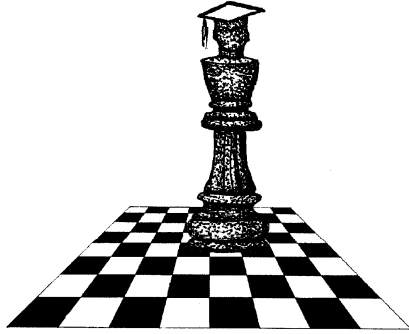
423. Both of White Knights are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Bxg7 exf5¹ 20 Bc4+ Rf7 21 Bxf6+ fvg4 22 Bxe7 bxc3 23 Bxf7+² Kg7 24 Bxc5. What is the material balance?

424. Visualize the position after the moves 8 dxe5 dxe5 9 Nxe5 Nxe4 10 Nxf7 Nxc3¹ 11 Nxd8 Nxd1 12 Bc4+² Kh8 13 Rxd1. What is the material balance?

¹ 19...Qg5 allows mate after 20 Nxe7+ Qxe7 21 Bxe5+. ² 23 Rxf7 is also good. Black resigned here.

¹ White is up a pawn after 10...Rxf7 11 Nxe4. ² To clear the d-file. Black has two pieces for a Rook and two pawns after 12 Rxd1 Rxd8 13 Bc4+ Rd5 14 Bxd5+ cxd5 15 Rxd5.

CHESS VISUALIZATION
COURSE



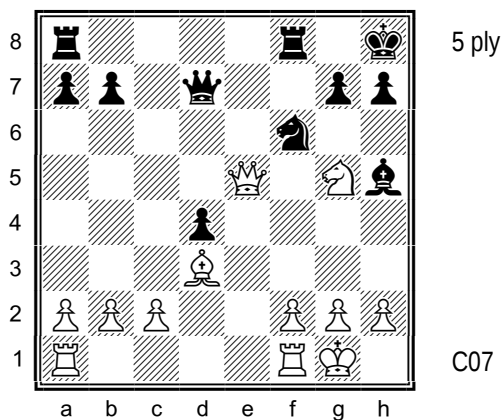
CHAPTER 15. SECOND PLAYER TO ATTACK THE QUEEN

This chapter shows how the second player to attack the opponent's Queen can gain an advantage. Typical techniques involve the following:

- ✧ Capturing a piece while simultaneously attacking the Queen -- see exercises 425, 426, 427, 428, 432, 433, 434, 435, 436, 437, 441, 442, 443, 444, 447, 448, 451, and 452;
- ✧ Using a piece of lesser value to attack the Queen – see exercises 428, 429, 431, and 432;
- ✧ Gaining a tempo by means of check – see exercise 430; and
- ✧ Capturing the Queen with a threat – see exercises 439, 445, and 449.

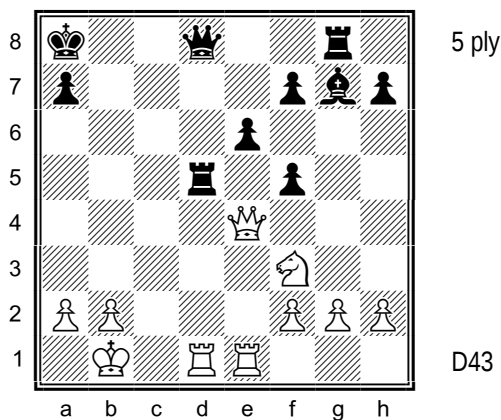
This chapter contains twenty-eight exercises ranging in depth from five to eleven half-moves, as seen in the following table:

Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13⁺	TOTAL
Exercises:	-	2	2	10	2	6	2	4	-	-	



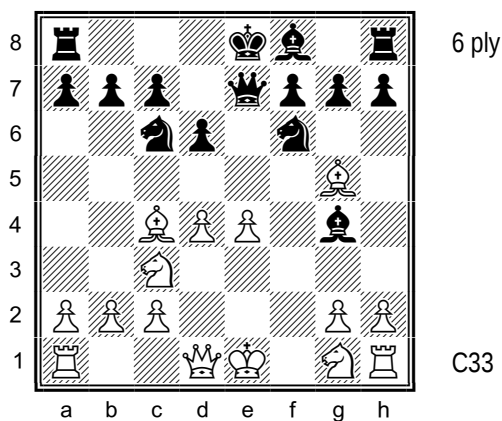
425. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nxh7 Rfe8¹ 20 Nxf6 Rxe5 21 Nxd7. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up two pawns after 19...Nxh7 20 Qxh5.

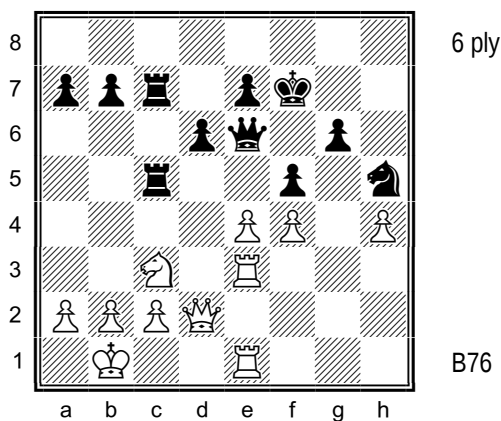


426. Black has just attacked White's Queen. Visualize the position after the moves 28 Rxd5 fxe4¹ 29 Rxd8+ Rxd8 30 Rxe4. What is the material balance?

¹ Black's pawns are shattered after either 28...Qxd5 29 Qxd5 exd5 or 28...exd5 29 Qxf5, when White threatens both 30 Qxf7 and 30 Rd1.

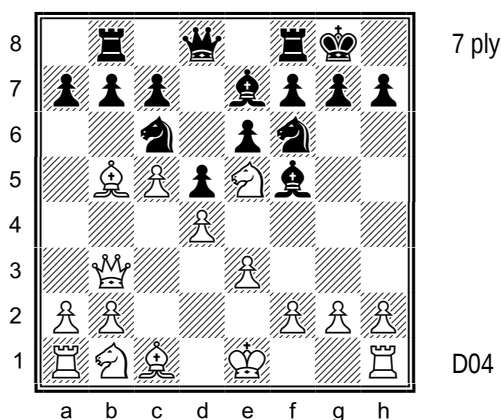


427. Visualize the position after the moves 8 Bxf6 Bxd1 9 Bxe7 Bxc2 10 Bxf8 Rxf8. What is the material balance?

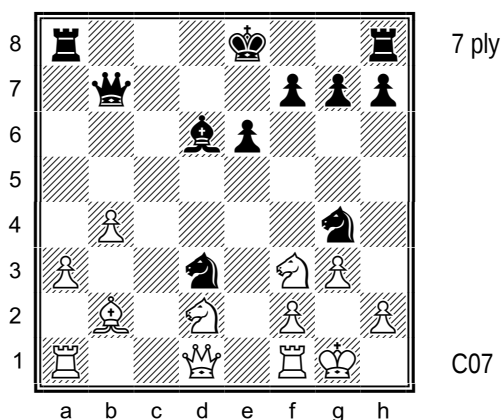


428. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Nd5 Rxc2 24 Nxc7 Rxd2¹ 25 Nxe6 Kxe6. What is the material balance?

¹ Black is down the exchange for a pawn after 24...Rxc7, but the Queens are still on the board.

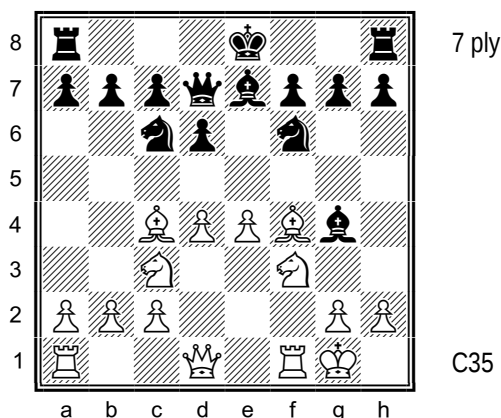


429. Visualize the position after the moves 9 Bxc6 bxc6 10 Nxc6 Rxb3 11 Nxd8 Rb8 12 Nc6. What is the material balance?



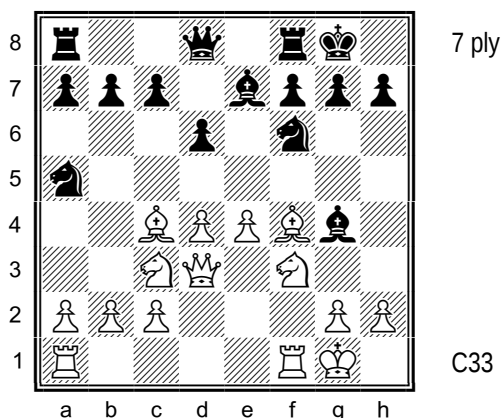
430. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Nc4 Nxb2¹ 19 Nxd6+ Ke7 20 Nxb7 Nxd1 21 Rfxd1². What is the material balance?

¹ White is up two pieces after 18...Ndx2 19 Nxd6+ Ke7 20 Nxb7 Nxd1 21 Rfxd1. ² Black resigned here.



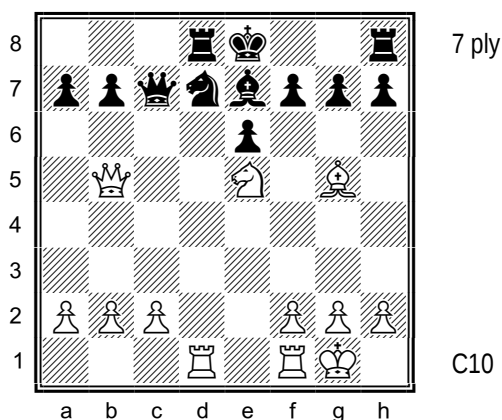
431. Visualize the position after the moves 9 d5 Bxf3¹ 10 dxc6 Qxc6² 11 Bxf7+ Kxf7 12 Qxf3. What is the material balance?

¹ 9...Ne5 is best. 9...Na5 loses material to 10 Bd3 (threatening 11 b4) when 10...b6 11 b4 Nb7 loses the Queen to 12 Bb5. ² White is up a piece for a pawn after 10...Bxd1 11 cxd7+ Nxd7 12 Raxd1.



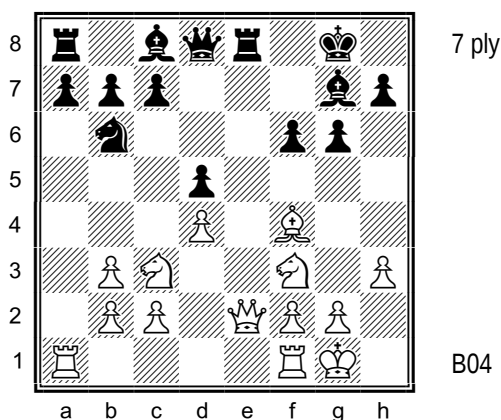
432. Visualize the position after the moves 10 e5 Nxc4¹ 11 exf6² Nxb2 12 fxe7³ Qxe7⁴ 13 Qb5. What is the material balance?

¹ Playing 10...dxe5 11 Nxe5 first, before 11...Nxc4, takes White's e-pawn out of the picture. ² Now two of Black's pieces are under attack. ³ Black resigned here. ⁴ White has two pieces for two pawns after 12...Nxd3 13 exd8=Q Raxd8 14 cxd3.



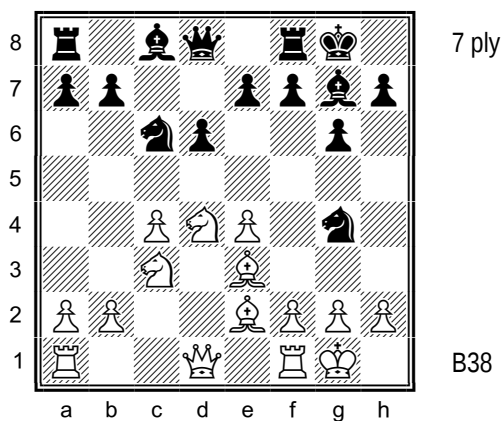
433. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Rxd7 Rxd7 17 Rd1 a6 18 Rxd7 axb5 19 Rxc7¹. What is the material balance?

¹ 19...Bxg5 20 Nxf7 wins back the piece.



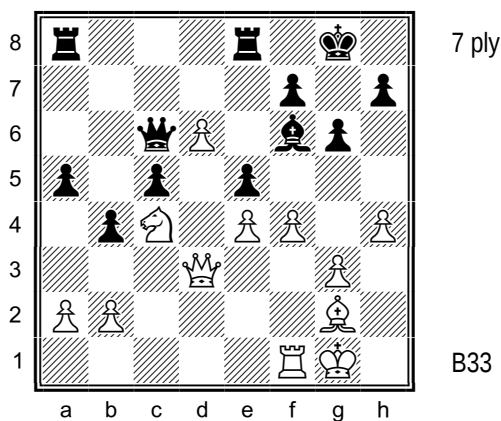
434. White's Queen is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxc7 Rxe2¹ 16 Bxd8² Re6 17 Bxb6³ Rxb6 18 Nxd5. What is the material balance?

¹ 15...Qd7 can be met by 16 Qb5, when White retains his extra pawn. ² White threatens to win Black's Knight with 17 Bxb6. ³ Black resigned here.



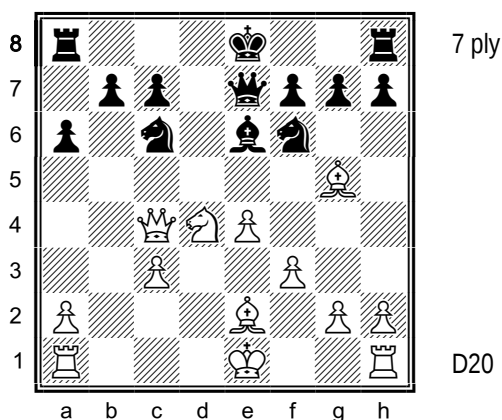
435. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxg4 Bxg4¹ 11 Nxc6 Bxd1 12 Nxd8 Rfxd8² 13 Nxd1. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a piece after 10...Nxd4 11 Bxc8 Rxc8 12 Bxd4. ² The actual game continued 12...Bxc3 13 Rfxd1 (1-0), when White is up a piece for a pawn after Bxb2 14 Rab1 Rfxd8 15 Rxb2.



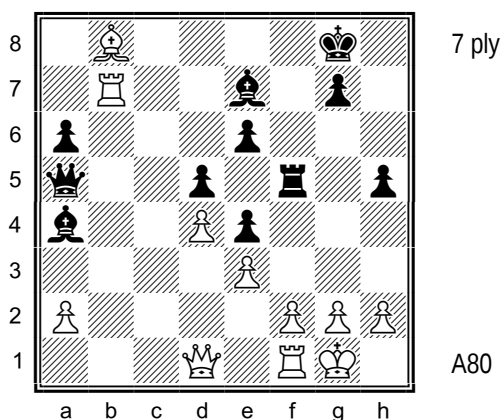
436. White is down the exchange, but has a passed pawn and an active position. Visualize the position after the moves 25 d7 Red8 26 fxe5¹ Rxd7² 27 Rxf6 Rxd3 28 Rxc6. What is the material balance?

¹ This attacks Black's Bishop and opens up the f-file. ² 26...Be7 27 Bh3 is also good for White.



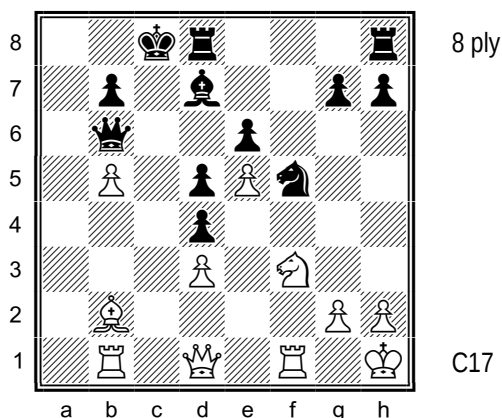
437. White's Queen is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Nxc6 Bxc4 14 Nxe7 Bxe2 15 Bxf6¹ Bc4² 16 Bh4³. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a piece after 15 Nf5 Bc4 16 Nxc7+ Kf8 17 Bxf6. ² The actual game continued 15...gxf6 16 Nd5 (1-0), when White threatens both 17 Kxe2 and 17 Nxc7+. ³ White can also play 16 Bxc7 Kxe7 17 Bxh8 Rxb8, when he is up the exchange and a pawn.



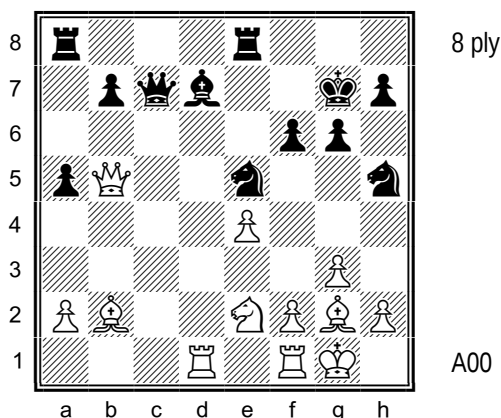
438. White is up the exchange, but his Queen is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 27 Bc7¹ Qb4² 28 Rxb4 Bxd1 29 Rb8+³ Kh7 30 Rxd1. What is the material balance?

¹ 27 Qb1 is also good. ² Two of Black's pieces are under attack after 27...Bxd1 28 Bxa5 Be2 29 Re1. Relatively best is 27...Qxc7 28 Rxc7 Bxd1 29 Rxd1, when White remains up the exchange. ³ Black resigned here.



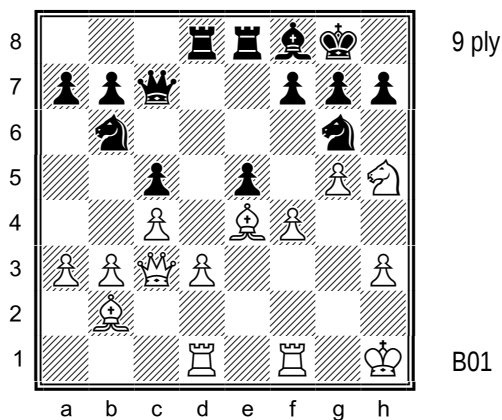
439. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 21 g4 Ne3 22 Bxd4 Nxd1 23 Bxb6¹ Nc3 24 Rfc1 Rdf8² 25 Rxc3. What is the material balance?

¹ Two of Black's pieces are under attack. ² The actual game continued 24...d4 25 Nxd4 Bc6+ (White is up a piece and a pawn after 25...Kb8 26 Rxc3 Rc8) 26 Nxc6 Rxd3 27 Nb4 (1-0), when White will win a second piece after 27...Rf3 28 Rb3.



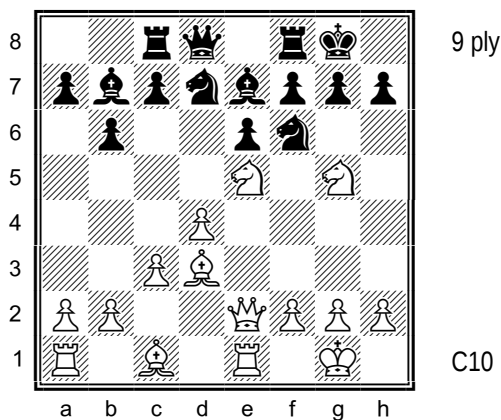
440. White's Queen is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Bxe5 Bxb5 24 Bxc7 Bxe2¹ 25 Rd7+ Kh8 26 Rb1 b5. What is the material balance?

¹ The actual game continued 24...Re7 25 Bd6 Bxe2 26 Bxe7 (1-0, 29), when White will be up a piece after 26...Bxf1 27 Kxf1.



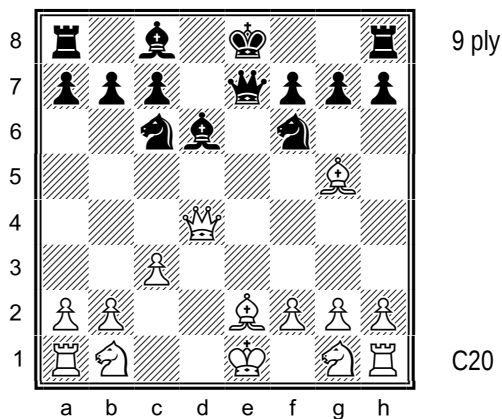
441. Visualize the position after the moves 25 f5 Nf4 26 Nxg7 Ne2¹ 27 Nxe8 Nxc3 28 Nxc7 Nxd1 29 Rxd1. What is the material balance?

¹ 26...Bxg7 27 Rxf4 White is up a pawn with the better position.



442. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Nxf7 Rxf7 14 Qxe6 Bd5¹ 15 Nxf7 Bxe6 16 Nxd8 Rxd8 17 Rxe6. What is the material balance?

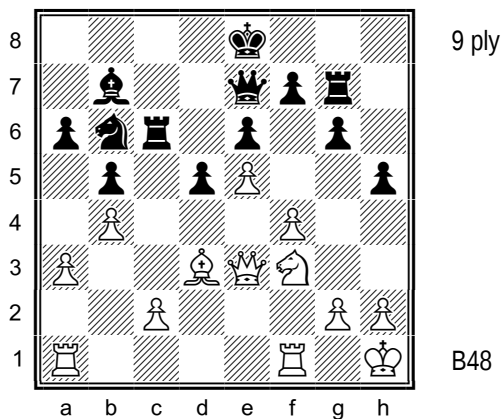
¹ White is up the exchange and two pawns after 14... Qf8 15 Nxf7 Qxf7 16 Qxe7.



443. White's Queen is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxf6 Nxd4 11 Bxe7 Nc2+ 12 Kd2 Nxa1¹ 13 Bxd6 Bf5² 14 Bxc7. What is the material balance?

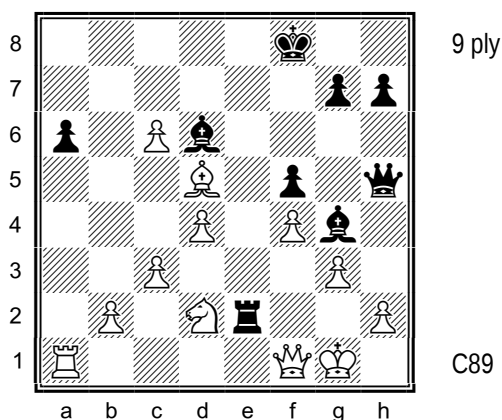
¹ White is up a piece after 12...Bxe7 13 Kxc2.

² White has two Knights for a Rook and pawn after 13...cxd6 14 Na3 Be6 15 Nf3 Nb3+ 16 axb3 Bxb3.



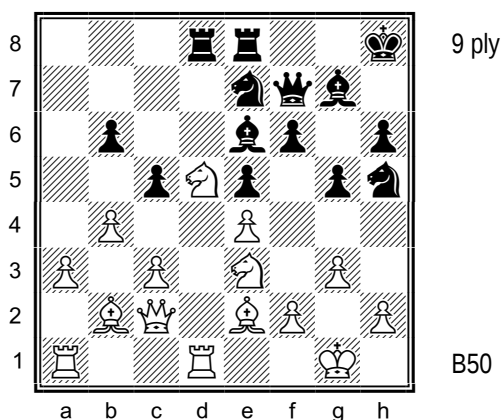
444. Visualize the position after the moves 31 Nd4 Nc4¹ 32 Nxc6 Nxe3 33 Nxe7 Nxf1 34 Nxd5 Bxd5 35 Rxf1. What is the material balance?

¹ 31...Rc7 or 31...Rc8 loses a couple of pawns to 32 Nxb5, for example, 32...axb5 (32...Rc6 to prevent Nd6 can be met by 33 Na7) 33 Qxb6 with 34 Bxb5 or 34 Qxb5 to follow.



9 ply

C89



9 ply

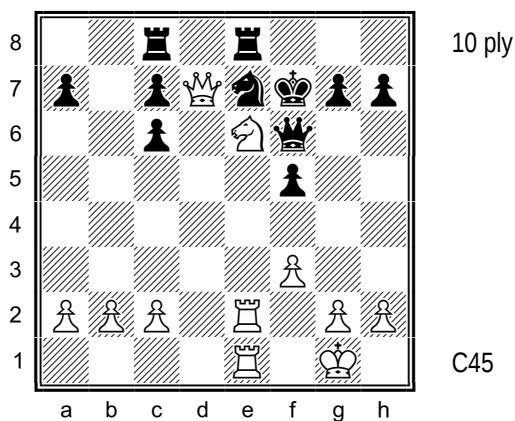
B50

445. Black has active pieces for his three-pawn deficit. Visualize the position after the moves 25 h3 Bxh3¹ 26 Bf3 Bxf1 27 Bxh5² Rxd2 28 Kxf1 Rxb2 29 Rxa6. What is the material balance?

¹ 25...Qxh3 is senseless, as it allows White to trade Queens, e.g., 26 Qxh3 Bxh3 27 Nc4. ² Two of Black's pieces are under attack.

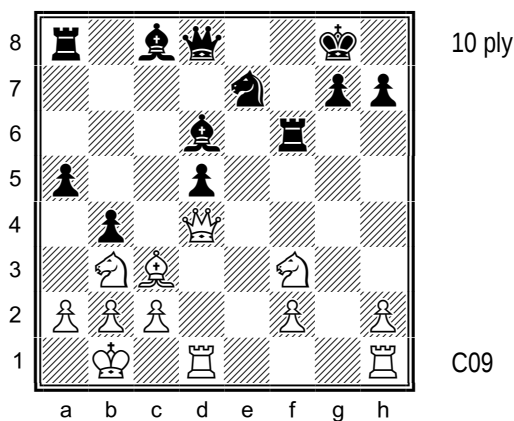
446. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Nc7 Bb3 26 Bxh5 Bxc2 27 Bxf7 Rxd1+¹ 28 Nxd1 Rc8 29 Nd5. What is the material balance?

¹ After 27...Bxd1 28 Nxe8 Bf3 29 Nxg7 Kxg7 30 Bd5, when Black can't win a pawn with 30...Nxd5 31 exd5 Bxd5 because of 32 Rd1.



10 ply

C45



10 ply

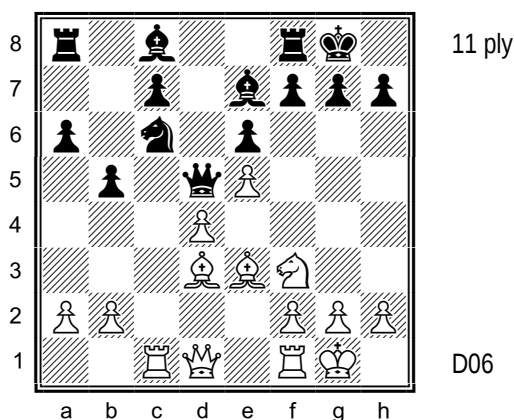
C09

447. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nxc7 Rcd8¹ 20 Nxe8 Rxd7 21 Nxf6 Kxf6 22 Rxe7² Rxe7 23 Rxe7 Kxe7. What is the material balance?

¹ 19...Red8 loses to 20 Rxe7+ Kg6 21 Rxg7+ Qxg7 22 Re6+. ² 22 Re6+ Kf7 is also good, as Black's pieces are all tied up.

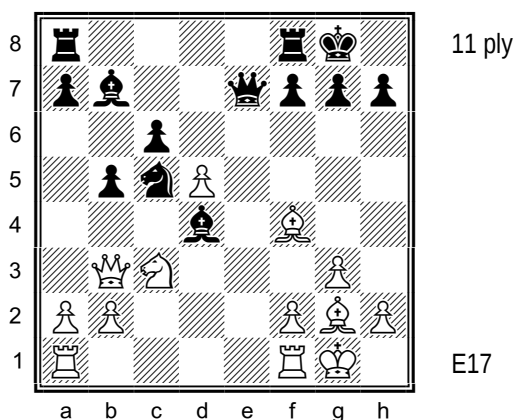
448. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rhg1 Ng6¹ 22 Qxd5+ Be6 23 Bxf6 Bxd5 24 Bxd8 Bxb3² 25 Rxd6 Bf7. What is the material balance?

¹ 21...bxc3 loses the exchange to 22 Qxf6 while 21...Kf8 loses a pawn to 22 Rxg7. ² The actual game continued 24...Nf4 25 Bg5 (1-0), with the same material balance as in the main line.



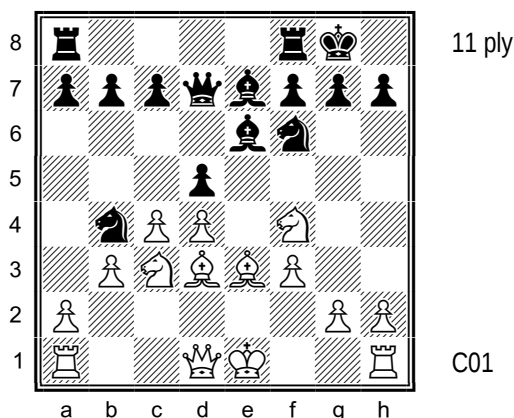
449. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Qc2 Nb4 14 Bxh7+ Kh8 15 Be4 Nxc2 16 Bxd5 Nxe3¹ 17 Bxa8 Nxf1 18 Kxf1. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a pawn after 6...exd5 17 Rxc2.



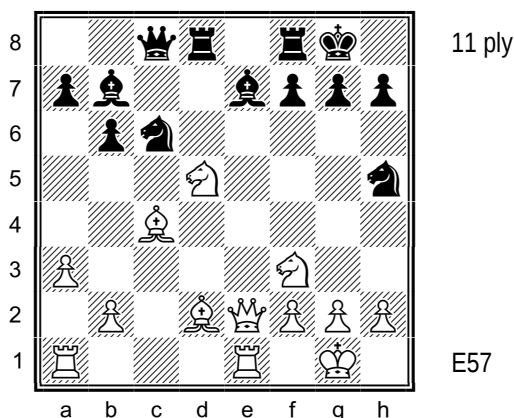
450. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Qb4 Bxc3¹ 19 bxc3 a5² 20 d6 Qe5³ 21 Bxe5 axb4 22 cxb4 Nd3 23 Bc3. What is the material balance?

¹ 18...Bf6 loses a piece to 19 d6 Qd7 20 Qxc5. ² 19... Rfe8 20 d6 wins a piece, e.g., 20...Nd3 21 dxe7 Nxb4 22 cxb4. ³ White is up a pawn after 20...axb4 21 dxe7 Rfe8 22 Bd6 Ne6 23 cxb4.



451. Visualize the position after the moves 12 0-0 Nxd3 13 Nxe6 Nb2¹ 14 Nxf8 Nxd1 15 Nxd7 Nxe3 16 Rfe1² Nxd7³ 17 Rxe3. What is the material balance?

¹ 13...Qxe6 14 Qxd3 is equal. ² Black has compensation for the exchange after 16 Nxf6+ Bxf6 17 Rfc1 Bxd4 18 Kh1 dxc4. ³ White is up a couple of pawns after 16...Nc2 17 Rxe7 Nxa1 18 Nxf6+ gxf6 19 Nxd5.



452. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Ng5¹ Bxg5² 19 Bxg5 Nd4³ 20 Ne7+ Kh8 21 Nxc8 Nxe2+ 22 Bxe2 Rxc8⁴ 23 Bxh5. What is the material balance?

¹ 18 Nxe7 18 Nxe7 Nxe7 19 Bg5 also wins material. ² White is up the exchange and a pawn after 18...Nf6 19 Nxe7+ Nxe7 20 Nxf7 Rxf7 21 Bxf7 22 Qxe7+. Relatively best for Black is to give up the exchange with 18...Rxd5 19 Bxd5 Nf6. ³ White is up a piece after 19...Rde8 20 Qxh5 and threatens 21 Ne7+. ⁴ 22...Nf6 23 Nxa7 is worse for Black.

CHAPTER 16. DESPERADO QUEENS

This chapter contains exercises that feature a desperado Queen, that is, a Queen that voluntarily captures a defended enemy piece of lesser value. Such a desperado can be utilized to gain either a material or positional advantage, or to minimize your opponent's advantage.

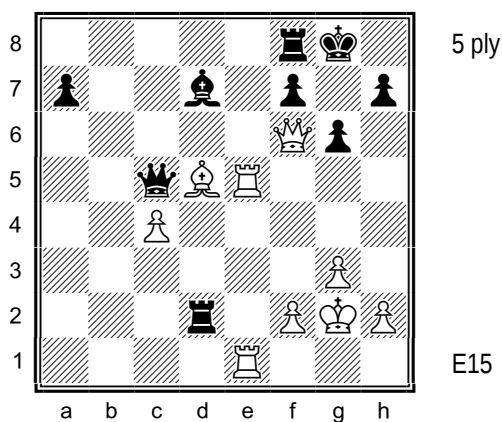
The Queen typically gives herself up in one of three ways – by capturing a piece with check, capturing a piece without check, or giving check without capturing a piece:

- ✧ Capturing a piece with check – see exercises 453, 454, 455, 461, 463, 464, 465, 466, 467, 468, 472, 473, 474, 475, and 478;
- ✧ Capturing a piece without check – see exercises 456, 457, 458, 459, 460, 462, 470, 471, 479, and 480; and
- ✧ Giving check without capturing a piece – see exercises 469 and 476.

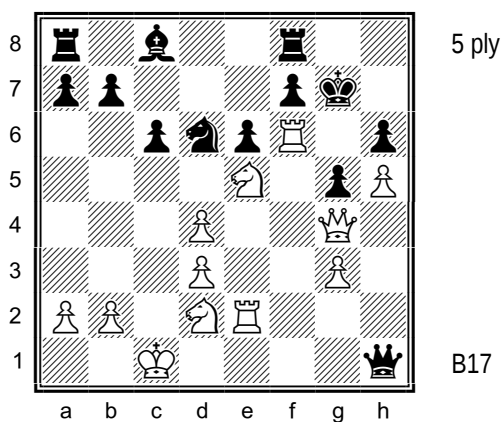
When the enemy Queen is defended, a desperado can be used to gain a material advantage if the desperado Queen can capture the piece of greater value than the piece used to capture the enemy Queen – see exercises 461, 462, 463, 464, 471, 473, and 476. On the other hand, capturing the Queen with a piece of equal value will not win material, but it can be used to break up your opponent's pawn structure – see exercises 457, 458, 459, and 475.

This chapter contains twenty-eight exercises ranging in depth from five to eleven half-moves, as seen in the following table:

Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13⁺	TOTAL
Exercises:	-	4	6	8	4	4	-	2	-	-	28

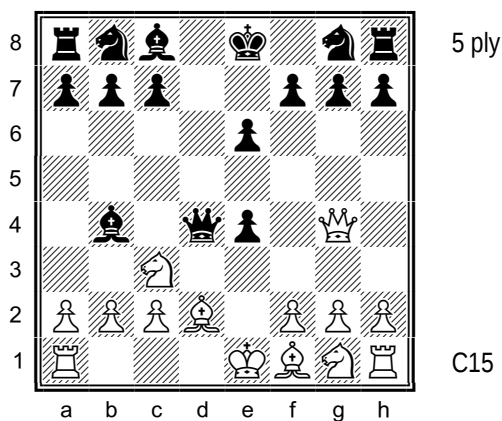


453. Visualize the position after the moves 32 Bxf7+ Rxf7 33 Qxf7+ Kxf7 34 Rxc5. What is the material balance?



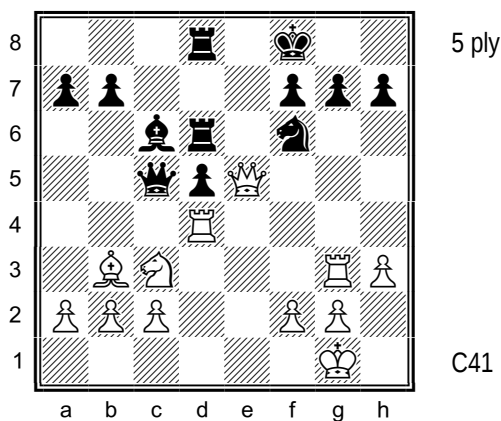
454. White is down a pawn, his King is in check, and his Rf6 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Rf1 f5¹ 26 Qxg5+ hxg5 27 Rxh1. What is the material balance?

¹ Black remains a pawn up after 25...Qd5.



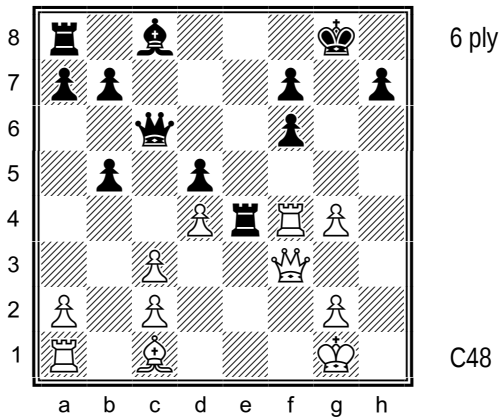
455. Black is up two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 6 Nf3 h5¹ 7 Qxe6+ Bxe6 8 Nxd4. What is the material balance?

¹ Black remains a pawn up after 6...Qf6 7 Qxe4.



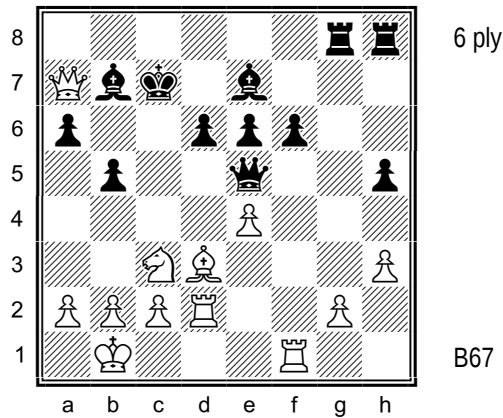
456. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Ne4 Re6¹ 23 Qxf6² Rxf6 24 Nxc5. What is the material balance?

¹ 22...Re8 loses a Rook to 23 Qxe8+ and 24 Nxc5. Relatively best 22...Qxd4 23 Qxd4 dxe4, when Black has a Rook and Bishop for Queen and pawn after 24 Qxa7. ² 23 Qxe6 allows 23...Qxd4.



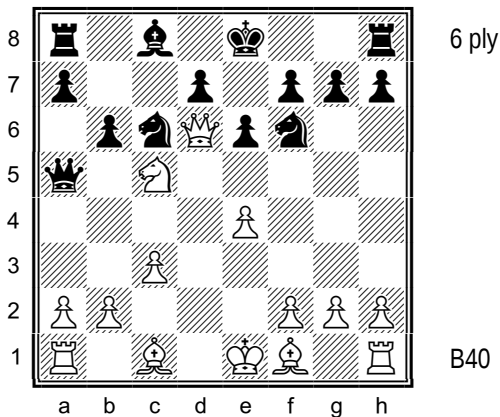
457. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Rxf6 Bxg4 20 Qxe4 dxe4¹ 21 Rxc6 bxc6. What is the material balance?

¹ 20...Qxf6 loses a piece to 21 Qxg4+.



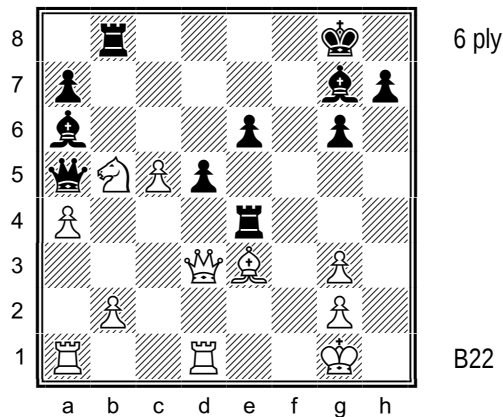
458. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Rf5 Ra8¹ 23 Qxa8 Bxa8² 24 Rxe5 dxe5. What is the material balance?

¹ Black has nothing to fear by taking the Rook, e.g., 22...exf5 23 Nd5+ Kc8 24 Nb6+ Kc7, when White is down a Rook and has to repeat the position with 25 Nd5+. ² 23...Rxa8 doesn't change anything.



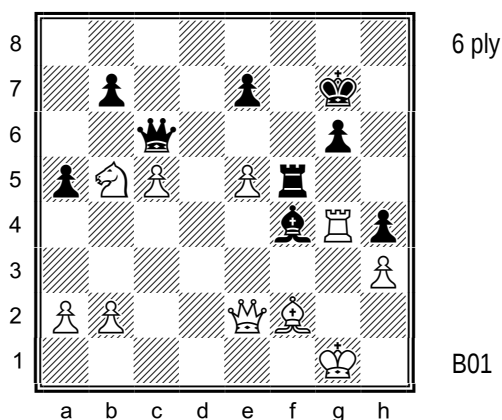
459. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Nb3¹ 12 Nxe4² 13 Qxc6 dxc6 14 Nxa5 bxa5³. What is the material balance?

¹ Also possible is 11 e5 bxc5 (11...Qxc5 is similar) 12 exf6 gxf6 (but not 11...Ng4 12 b4, e.g., 12...Nxb4 13 Nb3 Nc2+ 14 Kd2, when two of Black's pieces are under attack). ² Moving the Queen allows White to save his pawn, e.g., 11...Qe5 12 Qxe5 Nxe5 13 f3 or 11...Qh5 12 Qg3 00 13 f3. ³ White has compensation for his pawn.



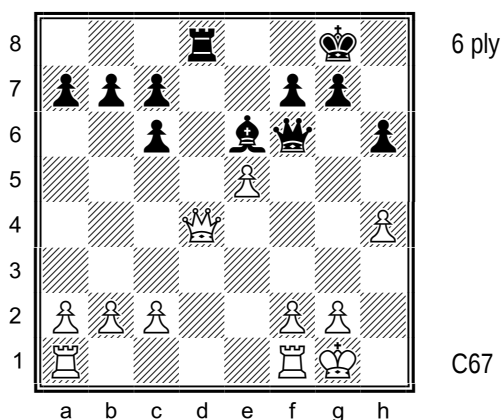
460. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Bd2 Bxb5¹ 24 Qxe4 dxe4 25 Bxa5 Bd3. What is the material balance?

¹ This gives Black compensation for his material, but 23...Qd8 is also good.



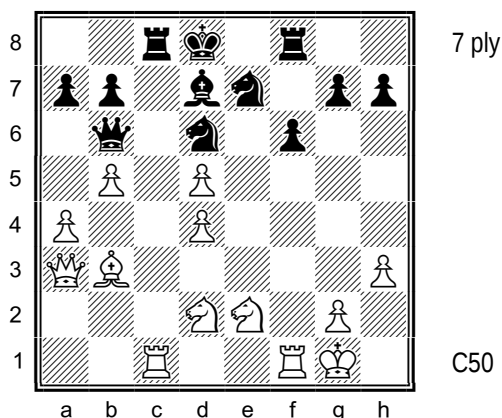
461. White is up a piece. Visualize the position after the moves 30 Nd4 Rxe5¹ 31 Qxe5+ Bxe5 32 Nxc6 bxc6. What is the material balance?

¹ 30...Qd7 loses the exchange to 31 Nxf5 Qxf5.



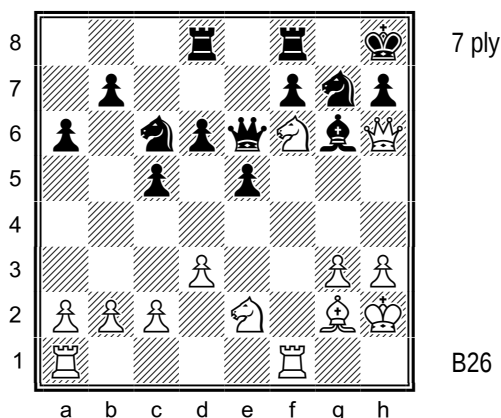
462. White is up the exchange. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Qe4 Bd5¹ 19 Qxd5² Rxd5³ 20 exf6 gxf6. What is the material balance?

¹ This gets Black into trouble. Moving the Queen is better. 18...Bf5 can be met by 19 exf6 Bxe4 20 Rfe1 Bxc2 21 Re7. ² Black resigned here. ³ Slightly better is 19...Qxf2+ 20 Rxf2 cxd5.



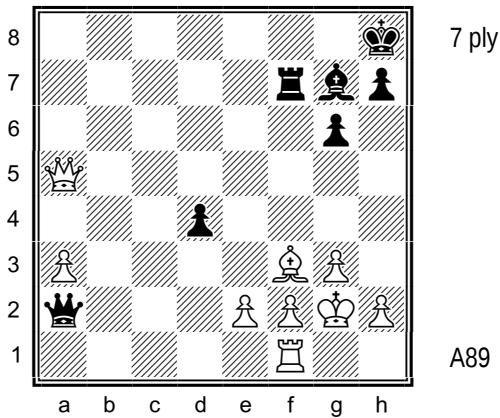
463. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 32 a5 Nxb5¹ 33 Qxe7+² Kxe7 34 axb6 axb6. What is the material balance?

¹ 32...Qxb5 unprotects the Nd6. ² Also possible is 33 Rxc8+ Kxc8 34 Qxe7 Qd8 35 Qc5+, although the Queens stay on the board in this line.



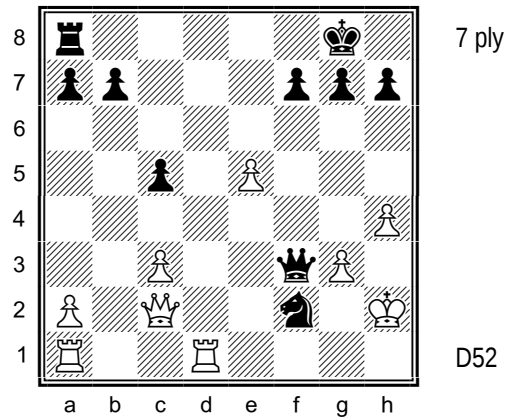
464. White is down a pawn, but Black's pawn on h7 is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Bd5¹ Nf5² 21 Qxf8+ Rxf8 22 Bxe6 fxe6 23 Ne4. What is the material balance?

¹ To drive the Queen away from f5. The immediate 20 Be4 can be met by 20...Nf5. ² Best. 20...Qe7 loses to 21 Be4, when White cashes in on h7, for example, 21...Nd4 22 Bxg6 fxg6 23 Qxh7, mate.



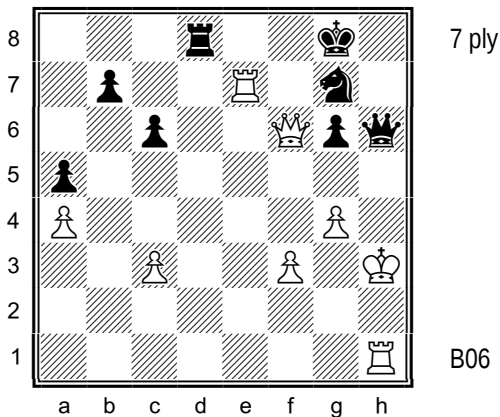
465. White is up two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 37 Bd5 Rf5 38 Qd8+ Rf8 39 Qxf8+ Bxf8 40 Bxa2¹. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here.



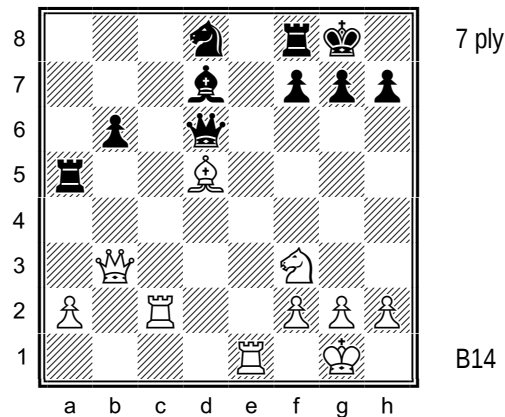
466. White is up the exchange for a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 27 Rf1 Ng4+ 28 Kh3 Ne3 29 Qxh7+¹ Kxh7 30 Rxf3². What is the material balance?

¹ White can also trap Black's Knight with 29 Rxf3 Nxc2 30 Rc1 Na3 31 c4. ² Black resigned here.



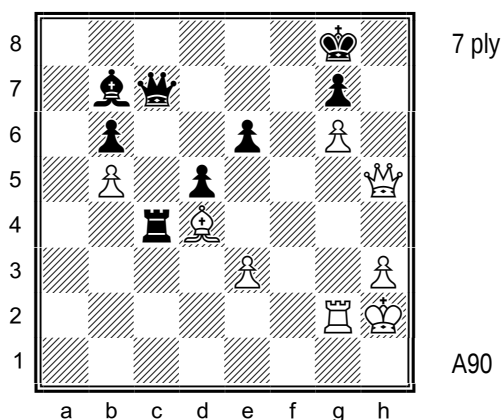
467. White is up the exchange and his King is in check, but Black's Queen is tied to the defense of his Ng7. Visualize the position after the moves 36 Kg3 Rf8¹ 37 Qxf8+ Kxf8 38 Rxb6 Kxe7 39 Rxb6. What is the material balance?

¹ Black's Queen can't move because of 37 Qxg7, mate.



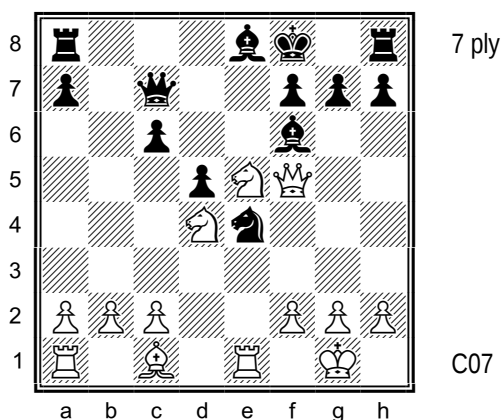
468. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Rd2 Ba4¹ 23 Bxf7+ Nxf7² 24 Qxf7+ Kxf7 25 Rxd6. What is the material balance?

¹ 22...Qc7 is met by 23 Re7 with pressure. ² White is up a Bishop and a pawn after 23...Kh8 24 Rxd6 Bxb3 25 Bxb3.



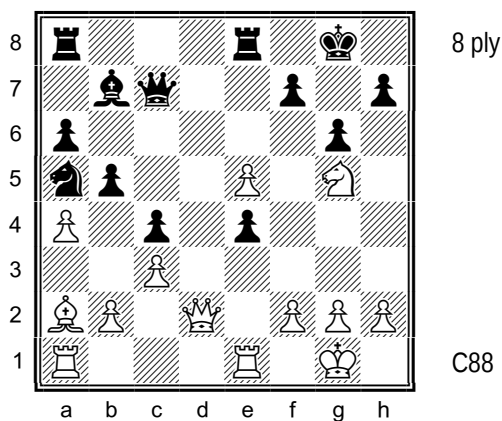
469. Visualize the position after the moves 48 Be5 Rh4¹ 49 Qh7+² Rxh7³ 50 gxh7+ Kxh7 51 Bxc7. What is the material balance?

¹ 48...Qd7 allows White to set up a mating net with 49 Rf2. ² This is better than winning the exchange with 49 Qxh4 Qxe5 50 Qg3. ³ 49...Kf8 loses to 50 Rf2+ Ke8 51 Qg8+ Kd7 52 Rf7, mate.



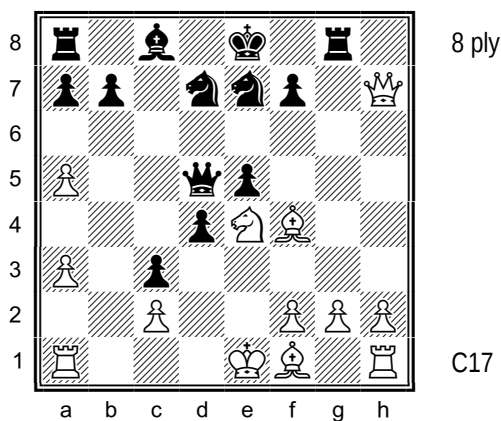
470. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bf4 g6¹ 17 Nxg6+ hxg6 18 Qxf6² Nxf6 19 Bxc7. What is the material balance?

¹ Better is 16...Qb6, sidestepping the discovered attack and attacking both d4 and b2. ² Black is up a piece for a pawn after 18 Bxc7 gxf5.



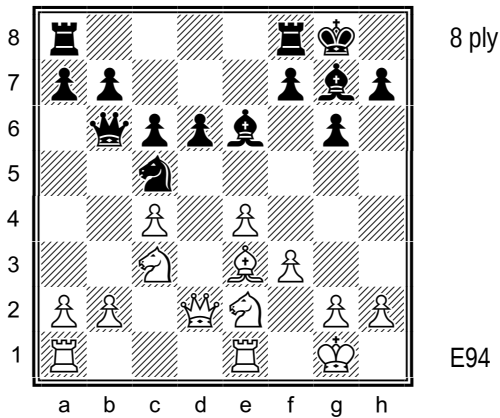
471. Visualize the position after the moves 22 e6 Rad8¹ 23 exf7+ Qxf7 24 Qxd8 Rxd8 25 Nxf7 Kxf7. What is the material balance?

¹ Black can keep the advantage with 22...f6 23 Nxe4 Rxe6 24 Ng3 Qc6 25 f3 Rae8.



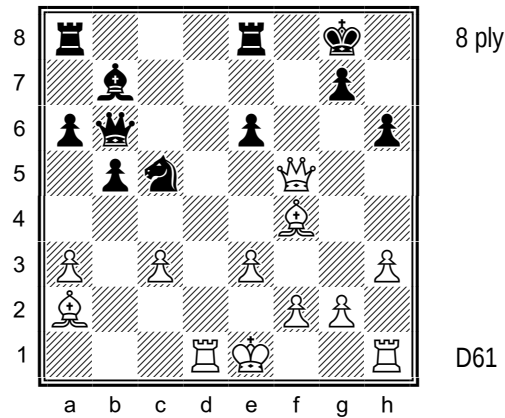
472. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bc4 Rg7¹ 17 Qh8+² Rg8 18 Qxg8+ Nxg8 19 Bxd5 exf4. What is the material balance?

¹ To drive White's Queen away from e4. ² 17 Qxg7 loses two pieces for a Rook after Qxe4 18 Kf1 Qxf4, although White can improve with 18 Be3, e.g., 18... dxe3 19 Qxf7+ Kd8 20 0-0-0.



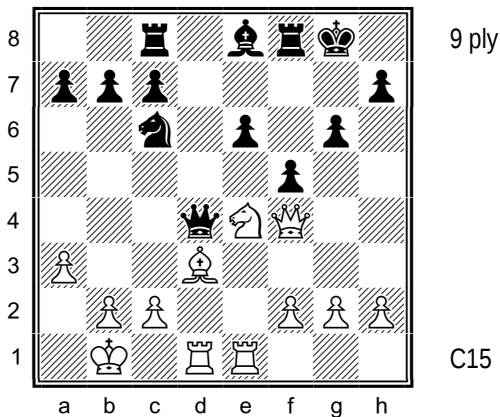
473. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Qxd6¹ Nxe4 19 Qxf8+ Bxf8² 20 Bxb6 Nxc3 21 Nxc3 axb6. What is the material balance?

¹ This attacks Black's Knight on c5. ² In the game Black played 19...Kxf8, but resigned after 20 Bxb6, since White is up a Rook after either 20...axb6 21 fxe4 or 20...Nxc3 21 Bc5+ Kg8 22 Nxc3.



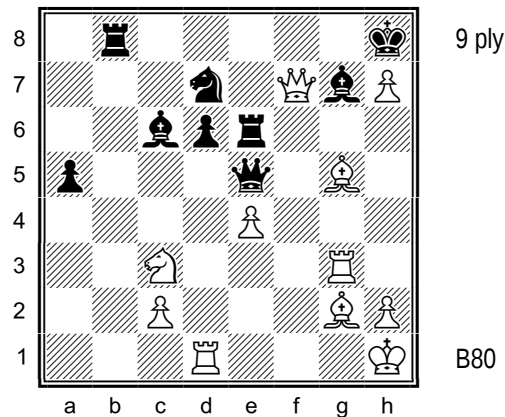
474. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rd6 Be4¹ 22 Bxe6+² Rxe6³ 23 Qxe6+ Nxe6 24 Rxb6 Bxg2. What is the material balance?

¹ 21...Qa7 gives White another pawn and a dominant position in the center after 22 Bxe6+. ² White can remain a pawn up after 22 Rxb6 Bxf5, but sees a better move. ³ Two of Black's pieces under attack after 22...Nxe6 23 Qxe4, while White is up a piece and a pawn after 22...Kh8 23 Rxb6 Bxf5 24 Bxf5.



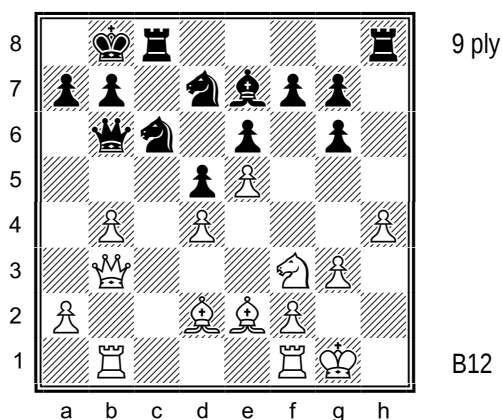
475. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bc4 fxe4¹ 19 Bxe6+ Kg7 20 Qxf8+ Kxf8 21 Rxd4 Nxd4 22 Bxc8. What is the material balance?

¹ Both Queens are now under attack.

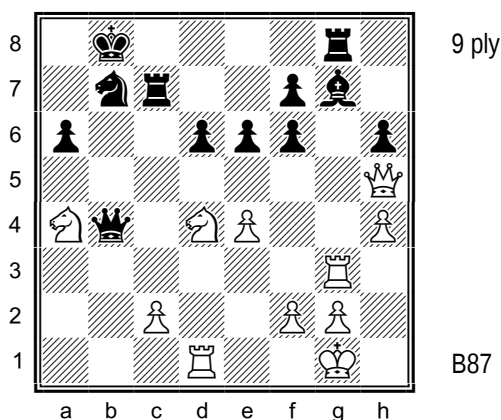


476. White is up two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 42 Bf4 Re7¹ 43 Qg8+ Rxg8 44 hxg8=Q+ Kxg8 45 Bxe5 Nxe5 46 Rxd6. What is the material balance?

¹ 42...Qf6 43 Rxg7 wins a piece after either 43...Qxg7 44 Qxe6 or 43...Qxf7 44 Rxf7.

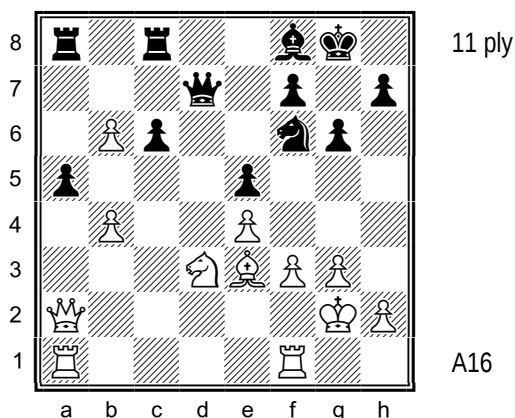


477. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Qa4 Nxd4 20 Nxd4 Qxd4 21 Be3 Nb6 22 Qxa7+ Kxa7 23 Bxd4. What is the material balance?



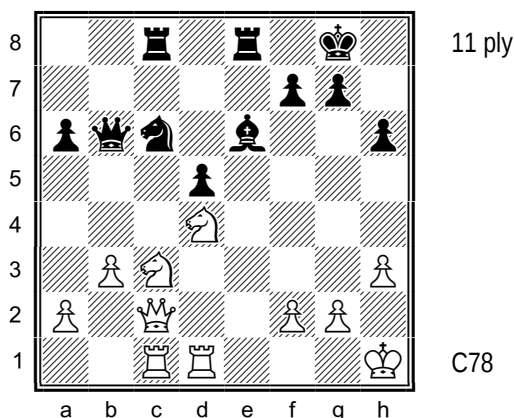
478. Black is up a pawn, but his Rg8 is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Nc6+ Rxc6 24 Qxf7¹ Rgc8² 25 Rb3 R6c7³ 26 Qxc7+ Rxc7 27 Rxb4. What is the material balance?

¹ This is better than winning a pawn with 23 Qxf7.
² 24...Rcc8 can be met by 25 Rb3. ³ 25...Qxa4 26 Qxb7 is mate.



479. Visualize the position after the moves 26 Nxe5 axb4¹ 27 Qxa8 Rxa8 28 Nxd7² Rxa1 29 Nxf6+ Kg7 30 Ne8+ Kh8 31 Rxa1. What is the material balance?

¹ 26...Qe7 can be met by 27 bxa5, when 27...Qxe5 loses the exchange to 28 b7. ² Black resigned here.



480. White's Knight on d4 is under attack and Black's Rook opposes White's Queen on the c-file. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Na4 Nxd4¹ 25 Qxc8 Bxc8² 26 Nxb6³ Nxb3 27 Rxc8 Rxc8 28 Nxc8 Nc5 29 Rxd5. What is the material balance?

¹ The count is 3-2 on c6. ² 25...Rxc8 26 Rxc8 Bxc7 27 Nxb6 is similar to the game continuation. ³ Black resigned here. Two of his pieces are under attack.

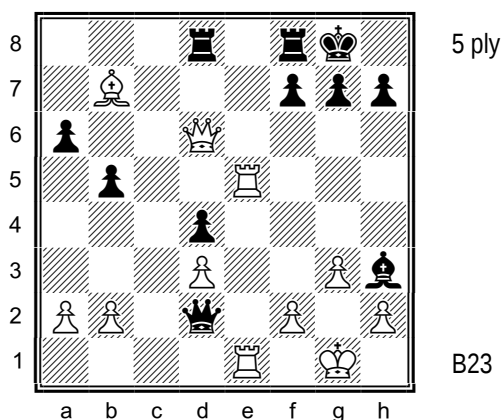
CHAPTER 17. DOUBLE DESPERADOS

This chapter features exercises that contain two desperado Queens, each of which voluntarily capture a defended enemy piece of lesser value. A double desperado can arise only when the first desperado is executed without check. This is followed by a second desperado, usually executed with check – see exercises 482, 496, 497, 499, and 500.

A common sub-theme often seen in double-desperado positions involves a Queen of limited mobility, one that is either tied to the defense of a friendly piece of lesser value or hemmed in by its own or other pieces on the board – see exercises 484, 485, 489, 491, and 492.

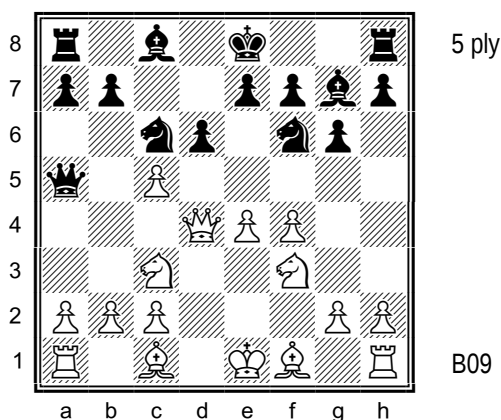
This chapter contains twenty exercises ranging in depth from five to eleven half-moves, as seen in the following table:

Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13 ⁺	TOTAL
Exercises:	-	4	2	6	2	4	-	2	-	-	20



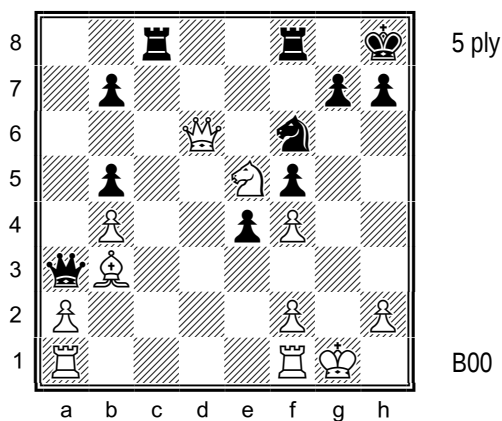
481. White's Queen is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 28 Qxd8 Qxe1+¹ 29 Rxe1 Rxd8 30 Bxa6. What is the material balance?

¹ 28...Rxd8 allows a back rank mate.



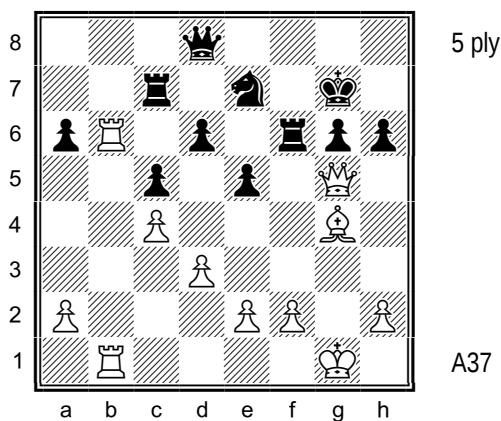
482. White is up a pawn but his Queen is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 8 Bb5 Qxb5 9 Qxf6¹ Bxf6 10 Nxb5. What is the material balance?

¹ 9 Nxb5 Nxd4 10 Nfxd4 (White remains a piece down after 10 Nc7+ Kd8 11 Nxa8 Nxc2+ 12 Kd1 Nxa1) 10...Nxe4, attacking White's Knight on d4, is about equal.



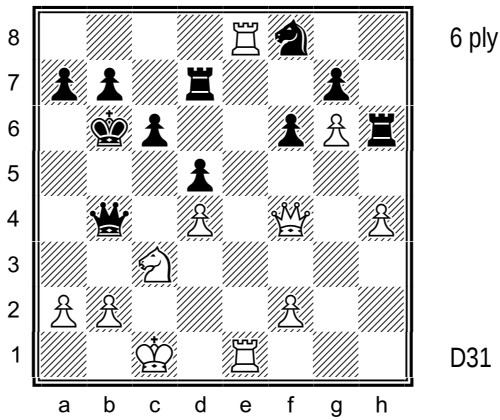
483. White is up a piece for a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 26 Rac1 Qxc1 27 Qxf8+¹ Rxf8 28 Rxc1. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a Queen for a Rook and pawn after 27 Rxc1 Rxc1+ 28 Kg2 Rcc8 29 Nf7+ Rxf7 30 Bxf7. Black can't play 28...Rfc8 because of 29 Nf7+ Kg8 30 Nd8+, when White has a forced mate: a) 30...Kh8 31 Qf8+ Ng8 32 Qxg8, mate or 30...R1c4 31 Qe6+ Kh8 32 Nf7+ Kg8 33 Nh6+ Kh8 34 Qg8+ Rxc8 35 Nf7, mate.



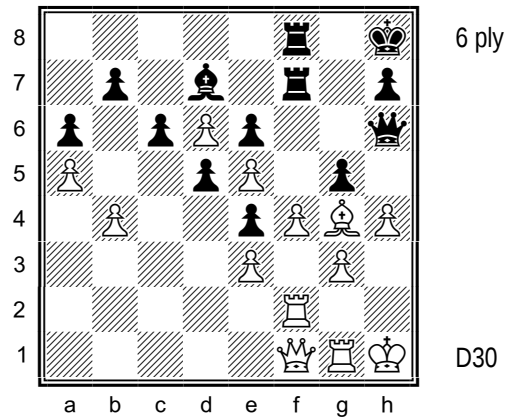
484. White's Queen is under attack, but Black's Queen is trapped. Visualize the position after the moves 31 Rb8 Qxb8¹ 32 Qxf6+ Kxf6 33 Rxb8. What is the material balance?

¹ Black can also play 31...Nc8, for example, 32 Qh4 h5 33 Bxc8 Rxc8 34 R1b7+ Kh6 35 Rxc8 Qxc8 36 Qxf6 Qxb7 with a Queen ending.



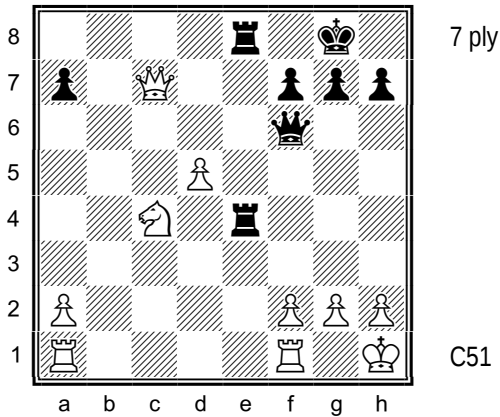
485. White's g-pawn is about to fall, while Black's Queen is tied to the defense of his Nf8. Visualize the position after the moves 30 a3 Nxc6¹ 31 Qxh6 Qxc3+ 32 bxc3 gxh6. What is the material balance?

¹ 30...Qd6 loses a piece to 31 Qxd6 Rxd6 32 Rxf8.



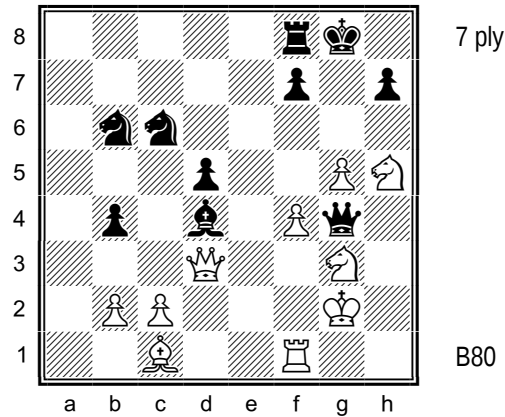
486. Black has just played 32...g5. Visualize the position after the moves 33 fxg5 Rxf2 34 Qxf2 Qxh4+¹ 35 gxh4 Rxf2. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a pawn after 34...Rxf2 35 gxh6.



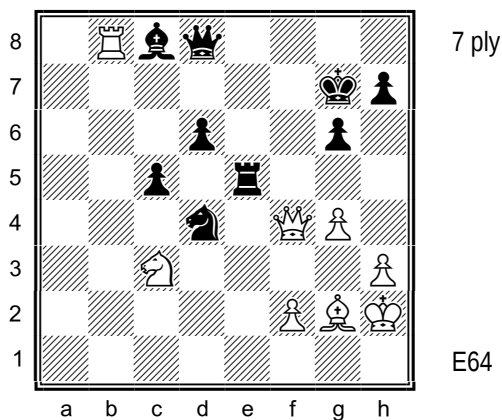
487. White is up a piece and a pawn, but Black threatens 21...Qxa1 22 Rxa1 Re1, mate. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Nd6¹ Qxa1² 22 Qxf7+ Kh8 23 Qxe8+ Rxe8 24 Rxa1. What is the material balance?

¹ Not only forking Black's Rook, but also hitting Black's f-pawn. ² 21...R4e7 loses the exchange to 22 Nxe8 Rxc7 23 Nxf6+ 23 gxf6, when White is up a Rook.



488. White wants to play Nf6+, winning Black's Queen, but has to get rid of Black's Bishop on d4 first. Visualize the position after the moves 29 Qxd4 Qxg3+¹ 30 Nxg3 Nxd4 31 Be3 Nxc2 32 Bxb6. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a piece for a pawn after 29...Nxd4 30 Nf6+ Kg7 31 Nxg4 Nxc2.

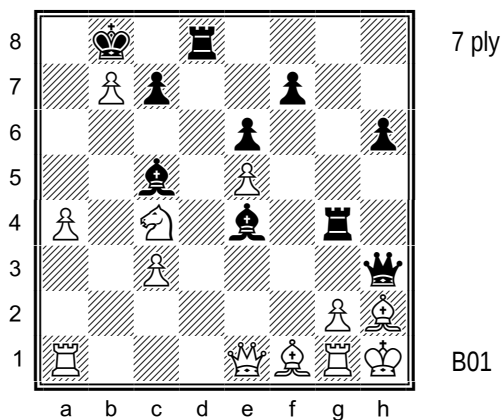


7 ply

E64

489. White is down a pawn, but Black's Bishop on c8 is pinned. Visualize the position after the moves 37 Bb7 Ne6 38 Rxc8 Qxc8¹ 39 Qxe5+ dxe5 40 Bxc8². What is the material balance?

¹ 38...Nxf4 leaves White up a piece for a pawn after 39 Rxd8. ² Black resigned here.

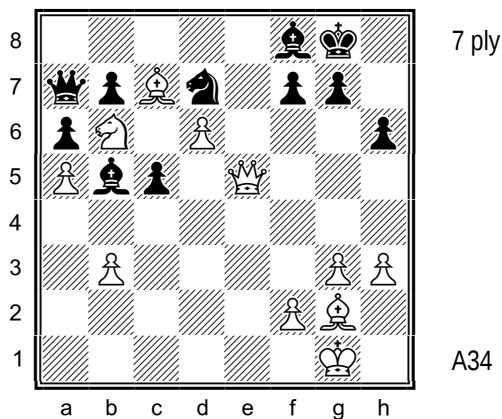


7 ply

B01

490. White is up a piece and pawn. Black seems to have an attack, but his Rook is overworked. Visualize the position after the moves 29 Qxe4 Qxh2+ 30 Kxh2 Rxe4 31 g3¹ Bxg1+ 32 Kxg1. What is the material balance?

¹ 31 Rh1 loses the Rook to 31...Rh4+ 32 Kg3 Rxh1.

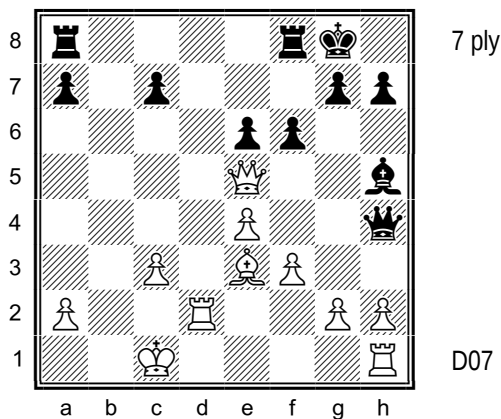


7 ply

A34

491. Visualize the position after the moves 34 Qe8 Nxb6¹ 35 axb6 Qxb6² 36 Qxf8+ Kxf8 37 Bxb6. What is the material balance?

¹ White's Queen is under attack. ² 35...Bxe8 loses to 36 bxa7 when the pawn queens.

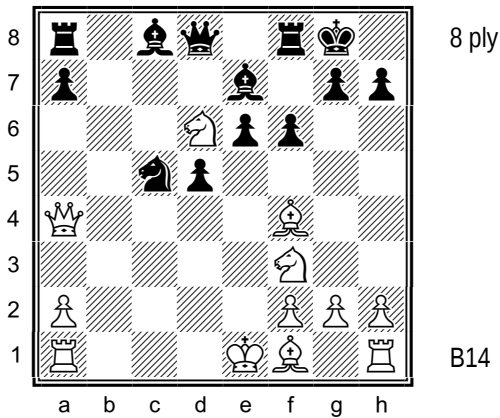


7 ply

D07

492. White's Queen is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bf2¹ Qxf2² 19 Qxe6+ Bf7 20 Qxf7+ Kxf7 21 Rxf2. What is the material balance?

¹ White can also just take the e-pawn, for example, 18 Qxe6+ Bf7 19 Qf5. ² Black can also play 18... fxe5 or 18... Qg5, but both moves break up his pawn structure: 18... Qg5 19 Qxg5 fxg5 or 18... fxe5 19 Bxh4 Rfb8 20 Bg3 Rb5.

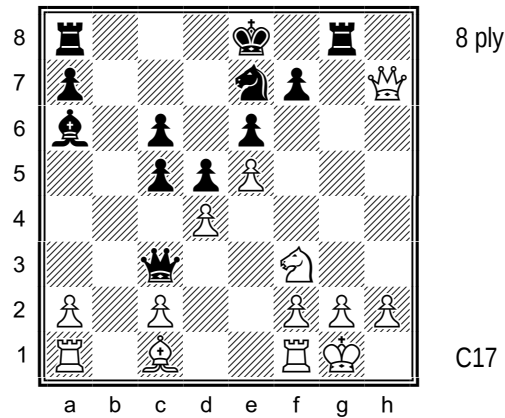


8 ply

B14

493. White is up a piece for two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Qc6 Qa5+ 16 Bd2¹ Bd7 17 Qxd7 Qxd2+ 18 Nxd2 Nxd7. What is the material balance?

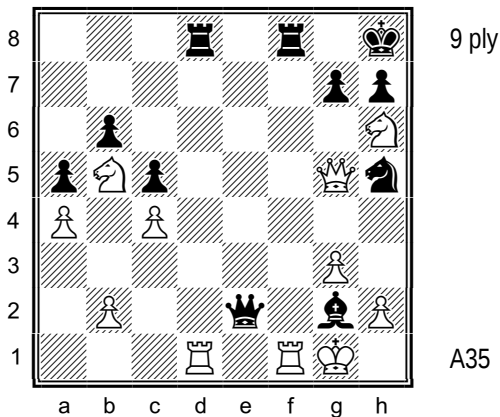
¹ Two of Black's pieces are under attack.



8 ply

C17

494. Both of White's Rooks are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bd2 Qxf3 14 Qxg8+ Nxg8 15 gxf3 Bxf1 16 Kxf1 cxd4. What is the material balance?

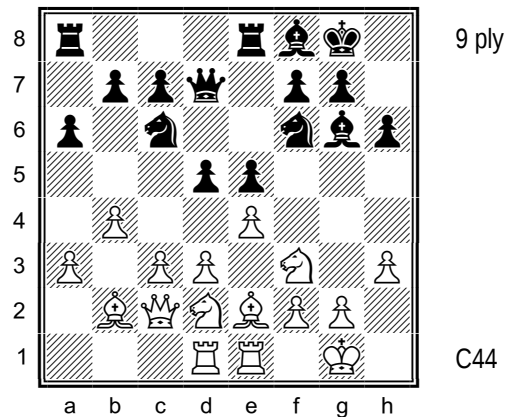


9 ply

A35

495. Black has a 3-2 advantage on f1. White can force a perpetual check here with 33 Nf7+ Kg8 34 Nh6+, but has more. Visualize the position after the moves 33 Qxd8 Qxf1+¹ 34 Rxf1 Rxd8 35 Nf7+ Kg8² 36 Nxd8 Bxf1 37 Kxf1. What is the material balance?

¹ The only move. ² Black resigned here without waiting for White's reply.



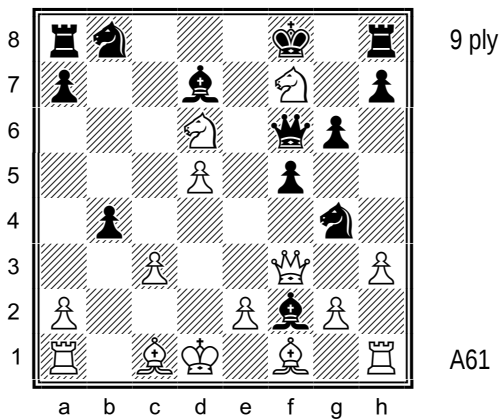
9 ply

C44

496. The count is 3-3 on e4, but White pulls his Knight away to open the d-file. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nf1 dxe4 16 dxe4 Bxe4 17 Qxe4¹ Qxd1² 18 Bxd1 Nxe4 19 Rxe4. What is the material balance?

¹ Material is even after 17 Rxd7 Bxc2 18 Rxc7 Nd8.

² 17...Nxe4 18 Rxd7 gives White a piece for a pawn.

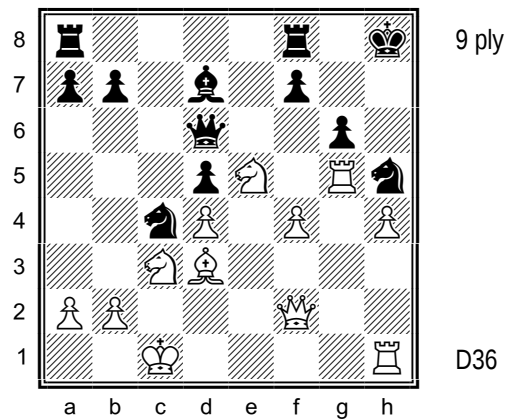


9 ply

A61

497. White is up a pawn, but Black is threatening to win White's Queen with 19...Ba4+ 20 Kd2 bxc3 21 Qxc3 Be1+. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Bg5 Ba4+ 20 Kc1¹ Be3+ 21 Qxe3 Qxd6 22 Nxd6 Nxe3 23 Bxe3. What is the material balance?

¹ 20 Kd2 bxc3+ 21 Qxc3 is also good for White.

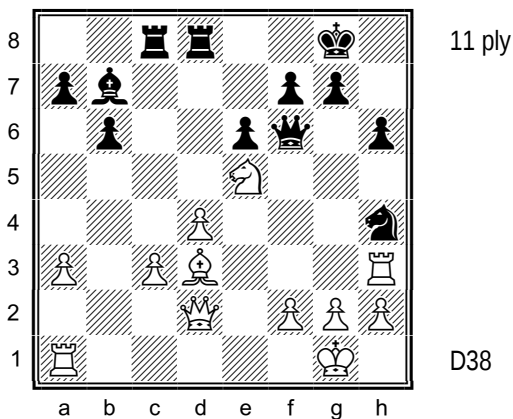


9 ply

D36

498. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Bxg6 Nxf4¹ 25 Qxf4 fxg6 26 Nxg6+ Qxg6² 27 Qxf8+ Rxf8 28 Rxg6. What is the material balance?

¹ 24...fxg6 is met by 25 Nxg6+, when both the Rf8 and the Nh5 are under attack. ² 26...Kh7 27 Nxf8+ Qxf8 loses to 28 Rh5+ Kg8 29 Rg1+, etc.

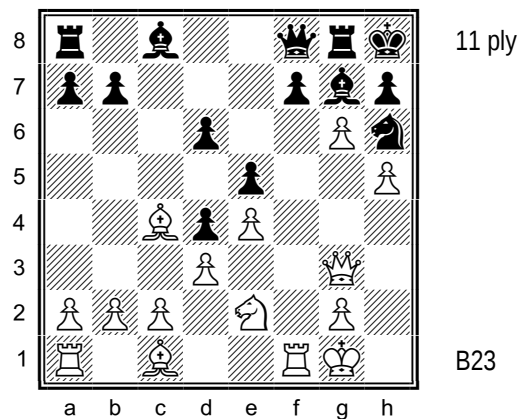


11 ply

D38

499. Black has two pieces attacking g2. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rg3 Bxg2¹ 21 Rxg2 Qxe5 22 Qxh6² Ng6³ 23 dxe5 gxh6 24 Bxg6 fxg6 25 Rxg6+. What is the material balance?

¹ Black's idea is to play ...Qxe5 and ...Nf3+. ² Black is up a pawn after 22 dxe5 Nf3+ 23 Kh1 Nxd2. ³ 22... Nf3+ 23 Kf1 Nxh2+ 24 Qxh2 Qxh2 25 Rxh2 Rxc3 leaves Black down a piece for two pawns.



11 ply

B23

500. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxh6 Bxh6 18 Rxf7¹ Be3+ 19 Qxe3² Qxf7 20 gxf7³ Bd7⁴ 21 fxg8=Q+ Rxg8 22 Qh6. What is the material balance?

¹ White threatens both 19 Rxf8 and 19 Rxh7, mate. ² 19 Kh1 is also good. ³ Black resigned here since taking White's Queen allows 21 fxg8=Q, mate. ⁴ 20...Rf8 is met by 21 Qh6 with 22 Qf6, mate.

CHAPTER 18. PINS TO THE QUEEN

This chapter features exercises in which a Queen is captured by a piece of lesser value as the result of a pin to the Queen. There are times when either player – the player with the pin or the player under the pin – can gain an advantage or break the pin without detriment.

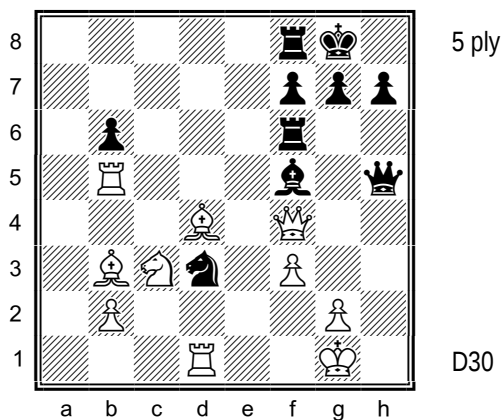
The player with the pin can often gain an advantage by capturing a piece of less value that is defended by the pinned piece – see exercises 501, 502, 503, 509, 510, 511, 512, 513, 523, and 524.

The player under the pin can sometimes gain an advantage by voluntarily moving his pinned piece out from under the pin, thereby exposing his Queen to capture. Such an idea can be feasible if the pinned piece attacks the enemy Queen or creates some other type of strong threat. Typical scenarios involve the following:

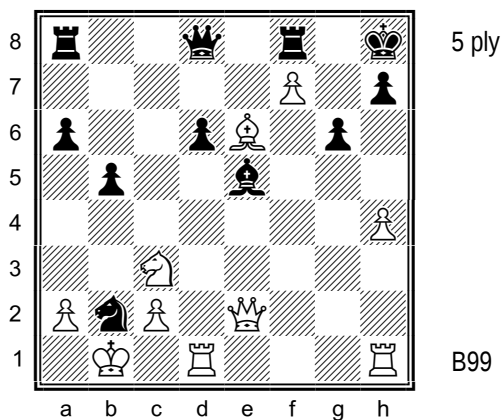
- ✧ A White Bishop on g5 pins a Knight on f6 to a Queen on d8 (or *vice versa* for Black) – see exercises 505, 514, 515, 516, 517, 518, 527, and 528; and
- ✧ Pins involving pieces other than Bishops and Knights – see exercises 507, 519, 521, 522, 525, and 526.

This chapter contains twenty-eight exercises ranging in depth from five to eleven half-moves, as seen in the following table:

Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13⁺	TOTAL
Exercises:	-	8	-	6	2	8	2	2	-	-	28

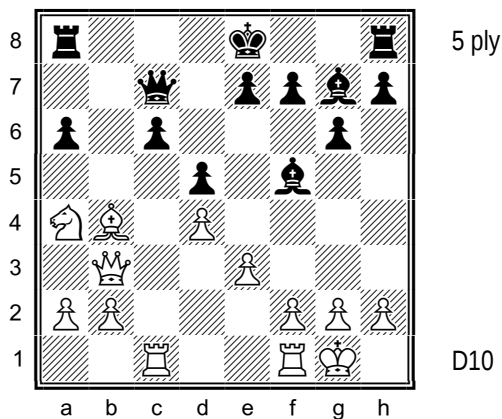


501. White is up a piece for a pawn. Black is threatening 32...Nxf4 and 32...Rh6, but the Bishop on f5 is pinned. Visualize the position after the moves 32 Rxd3 Bxd3 33 Qxf6 gxf6 34 Rxh5. What is the material balance?

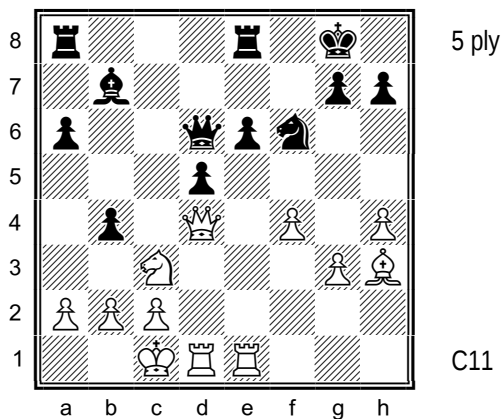


502. Black has just taken White's pawn on b2. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Qxe5+¹ dxe5 25 Rxd8 Raxd8 26 Kxb2. What is the material balance?

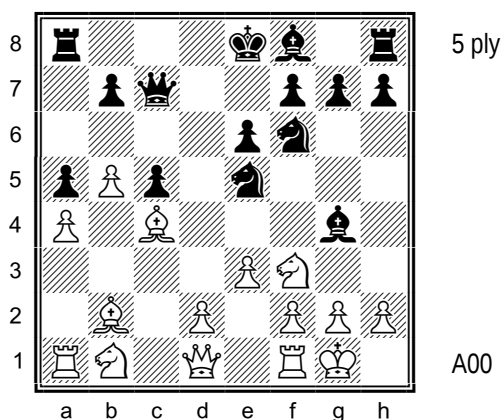
¹ 24 Kxb2 can be met by 24...b4, 24...Qa5, or 24...Qf6, winning back the piece.



503. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Qxd5 Qxh2+ 18 Kxh2 cxd5 19 Rc7. What is the material balance?

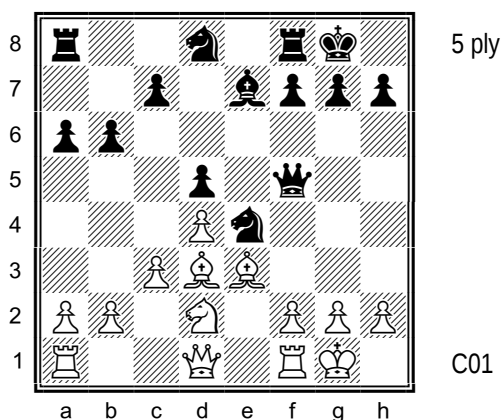


504. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Ne4 Nxe4 20 Qxe4 dxe4 21 Rxd6. What is the material balance?

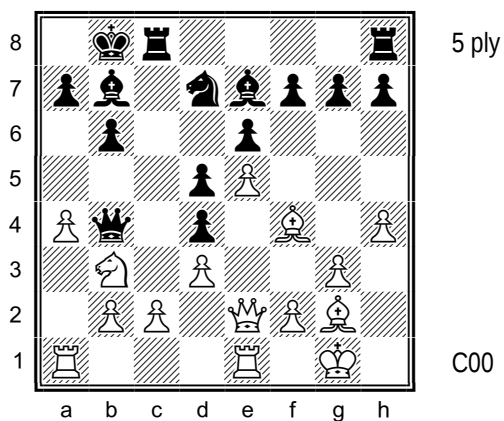


505. Black's Knight on e5 is exerting pressure on c4 and f3. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxe5 Qxe5 14 Nxe5 Bxd1 15 Rxd1¹. What is the material balance?

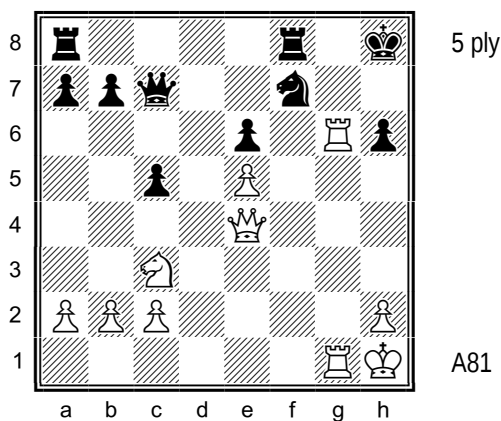
¹ Black resigned here.



506. Visualize the position after the moves 15 f3 Nxc3 16 Bxf5 Nxd1 17 Rfxd1. What is the material balance?



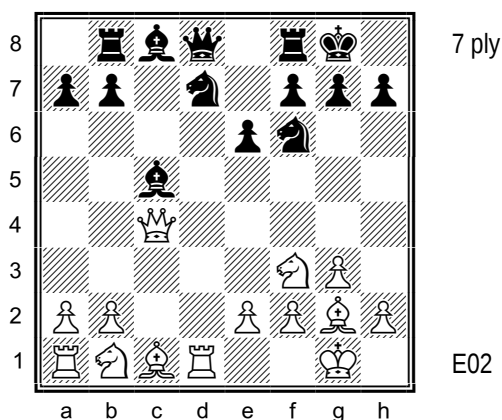
507. Black's Queen is trapped. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bd2 Rxc2 19 Bxb4 Rxe2 20 Bxe7. What is the material balance?



508. Visualize the position after the moves 31 Rg7¹ Ng5 32 Rxc7 Nxe4 33 Nxe4². What is the material balance?

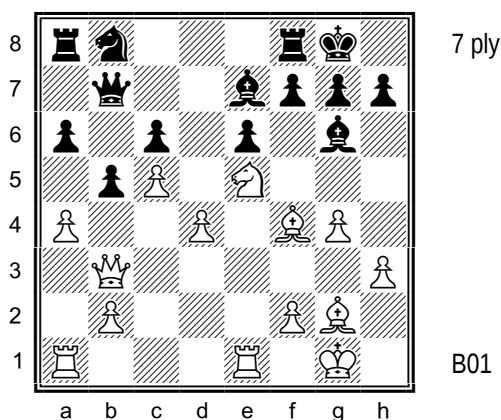
¹ The threat of 32 Qh7, mate, forces Black's reply.

² Black resigned here.



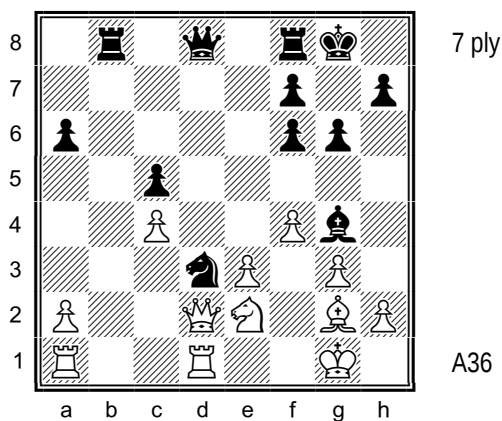
509. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bf4 b5¹ 12 Qxc5 Nxc5 13 Rxd8 Rxd8 14 Bxb8. What is the material balance?

¹ White has the better position after 11...Ra8.



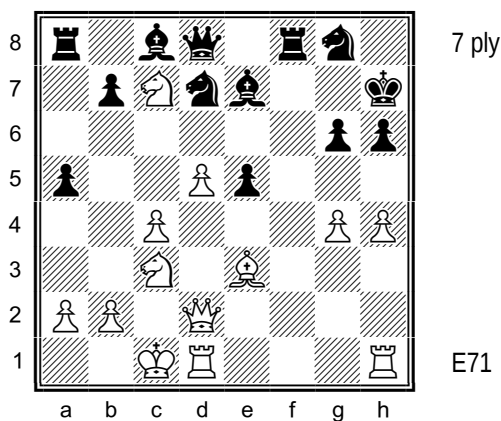
510. Visualize the position after the moves 19 axb5 axb5¹ 20 Rxa8 Qxa8 21 Qxb5 cxb5 22 Bxa8. What is the material balance?

¹ 19...Qxb5 loses a Rook to 20 Qxb5, since both of Black's pawns are pinned.



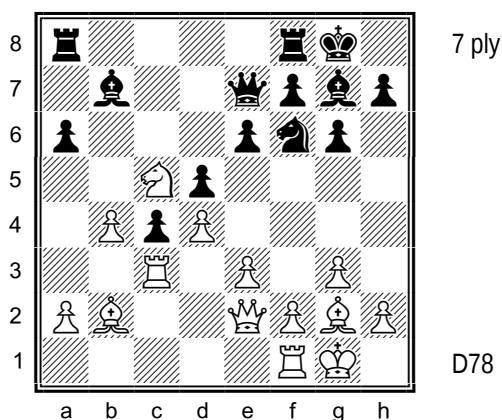
511. Visualize the position after the moves 19 h3¹ Rb2² 20 Qxb2 Nxb2 21 Rxd8 Rxd8 22 hxg4. What is the material balance?

¹ 19 Qxd3 Qxd3 20 Rxd3 Bxe2 amounts to an even exchange of pieces. ² Now 19...Bxe2 20 Qxe2 drops a piece, as does 19...Be6 20 Qc3.



512. White is down a piece for a pawn, but can win Black's Rook on a8 or the exchange with Ne6. Instead White takes a different path. Visualize the position after the moves 22 d6 Bxd6¹ 23 Qxd6 Rf6 24 Qxe5 Nxe5 25 Rxd8. What is the material balance?

¹ 22...Bf6 can be met by either 23 Nxa8 or 23 g5 Rb8 24 Ne6 Qe8 25 Nxf8+ Qxf8 26 Rdf1, when White has three pieces for a Rook and pawn.



7 ply

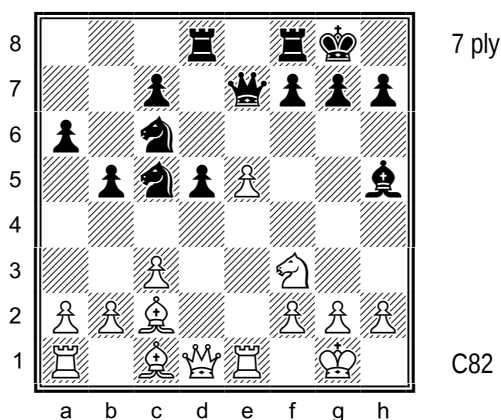
D78

513. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nxb7 Qxb7 21 Qxc4¹ dxc4² 22 Bxb7 Rab8³ 23 Bxa6. What is the material balance?

¹ 21 Rxc4 Qb5 22 Rc2 Qxb4 keeps the material even.

² Best for Black may be 21...Rfb8 22 Qd3 Qxb4.

³ White is up two pawns after 22...Ra7 23 Bc6 Rc8 24 Rxc4.

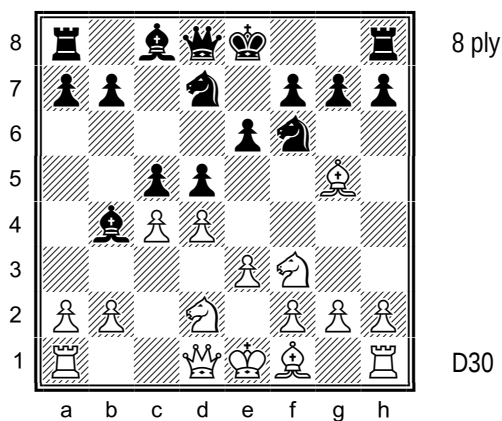


7 ply

C82

514. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bg5 Qxg5 18 Nxc5 Bxd1 19 Bxh7+ Kh8 20 Raxd1¹. What is the material balance?

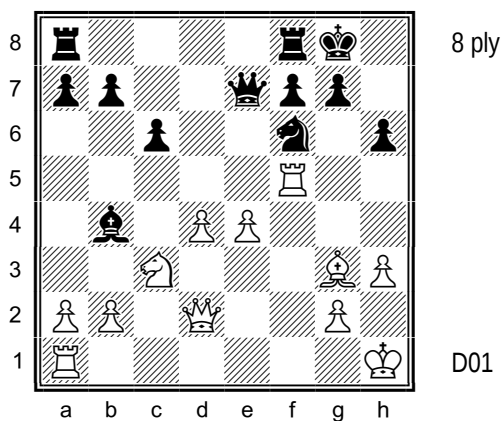
¹ White doesn't have to worry about 20...g6, which is met by 21 e6, when the threat of 22 e7 forces Black to play 21...Nxe6, when White is up a pawn after 22 Nxe6 fxe6 23 Rxe6 Kxh7 24 Rxc6.



8 ply

D30

515. Visualize the position after the moves 7 a3 Bxd2+ 8 Qxd2 Ne4 9 Bxd8 Nxd2 10 Nxd2 Kxd8. What is the material balance?

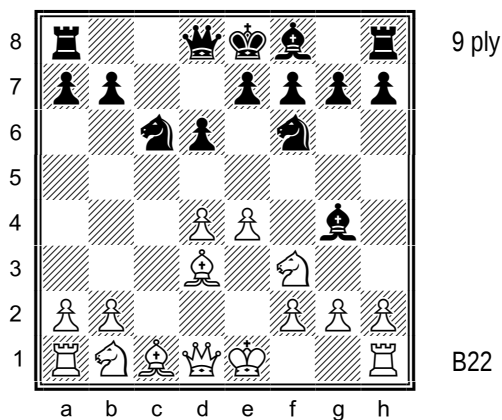


8 ply

D01

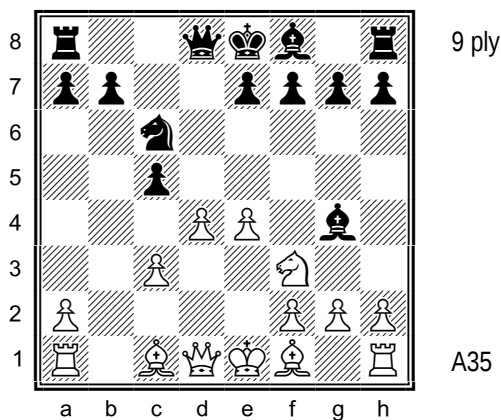
516. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Bh4 Bxc3 21 bxc3 Nxe4¹ 22 Bxe7 Nxd2 23 Bxf8 Kxf8. What is the material balance?

¹ 21...g5 22 Bxg5 hxg5? 23 Qxg5+ Kh8 24 Qxh4+, when the threat of mate wins Black's Queen (e.g., 24...Nh7 25 Qxe7).



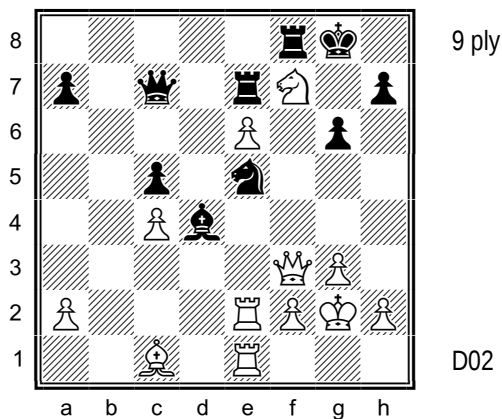
517. Visualize the position after the moves 7 d5 Ne5 8 Nxe5 Bxd1¹ 9 Bb5+ Nd7 10 Bxd7+ Qxd7 11 Nxd7. What is the material balance?

¹ 8...dxe5 is the only move.

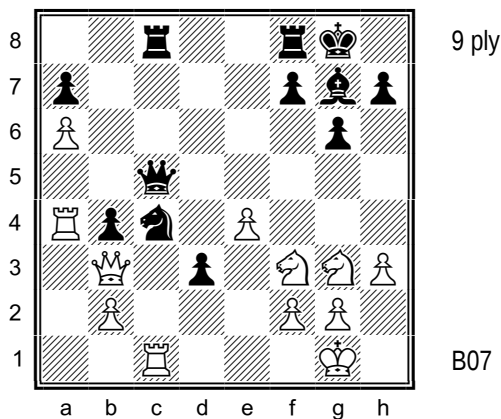


518. Visualize the position after the moves 8 d5 Ne5¹ 9 Nxe5 Bxd1 10 Bb5+ Qd7 11 Bxd7+ Kd8 12 Kxd1². What is the material balance?

¹ This loses. 8...Bxf3 or 8...Nb8 are better. ² Black resigned here.

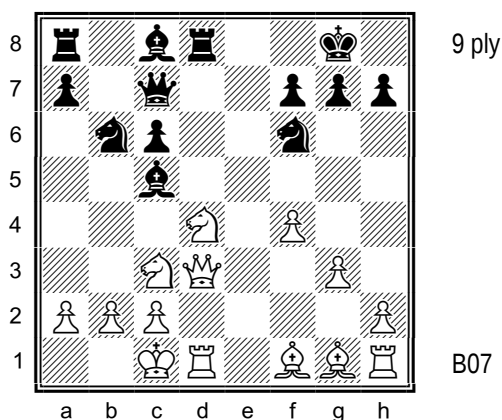


519. White is up two pawns. His Nf7 is pinned, but he has a 3-2 advantage on e5. Visualize the position after the moves 28 Rxe5 Bxe5 29 Rxe5 Qxe5 30 Nxe5 Rxf3 31 Kxf3 Rxe6 32 Ke4. What is the material balance?



520. Visualize the position after the moves 27 Rxb4¹ d2 28 Nxd2 Nxd2 29 Rxc5 Nxb3 30 Rxc8 Rxc8 31 Rxb3. What is the material balance?

¹ The count on c4 is now 3-2.

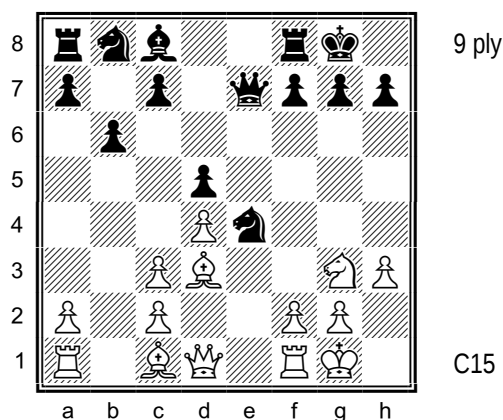


9 ply

B07

521. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Ndb5 Rxd3 16 Nxc7¹ Rxd1+ 17 Nxd1 Bxg1² 18 Nxa8 Nxa8³ 19 Rxcg1. What is the material balance?

¹ Three of Black's pieces are under attack. ² 17... Rb8 18 Bxc5 gives White a piece and a pawn. ³ 18... Bxb2 is met by 19 Nxb6, attacking Black's Bishop on c8.

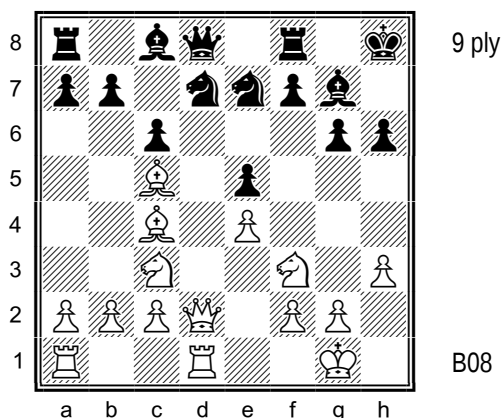


9 ply

C15

522. White's pawn on c3 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Re1 Nxc3 12 Rxe7 Nxd1 13 Ba3 Nc3¹ 14 Rxc7² Re8 15 Rxc3. What is the material balance?

¹ In the actual game Black played the correct 13... Nxf2, although White was up a piece for two pawns after 14 Kxf2 (1-0, 23). ² Two of Black's pieces are under attack.

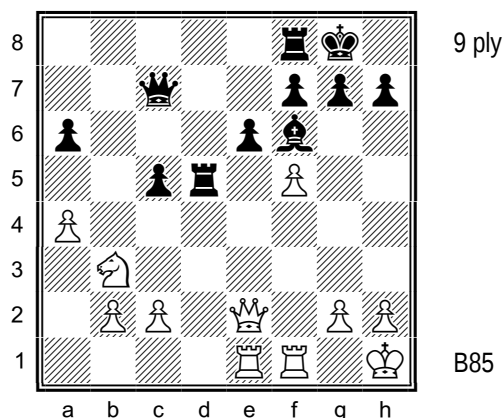


9 ply

B08

523. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Qd6 Bf6¹ 15 Qxf6+ Nxf6 16 Rxd8² Rxd8 17 Bxe7 Re8 18 Bxf6+. What is the material balance?

¹ 14...Re8 drops the f-pawn. The only alternative is the passive 14...Ng8. ² Black resigned here.

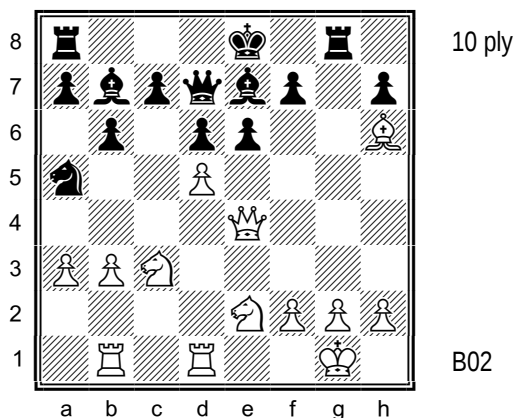


9 ply

B85

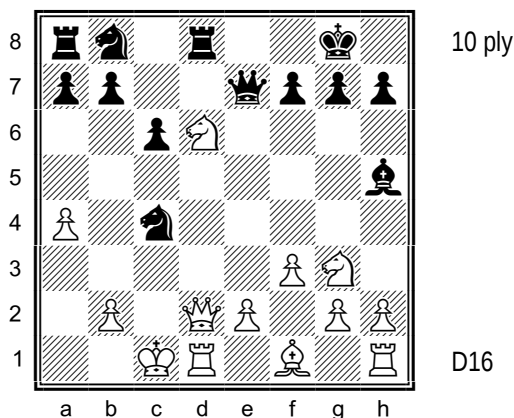
524. Visualize the position after the moves 21 fxe6 Re5¹ 22 exf7+ Qxf7² 23 Qxe5 Bxe5 24 Rxf7 Rxf7 25 Nxc5. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up two pawns after 21...fxe6 22 Qxe6 Qf7 23 Qxa6. Relatively best for Black is to hold the a-pawn with 21...Qd6, although Black can also try 21...c4 22 Nd2 c3 23 Ne4 Re5 24 Nxf6+ gxf6, etc. ² Other moves drop the a-pawn.



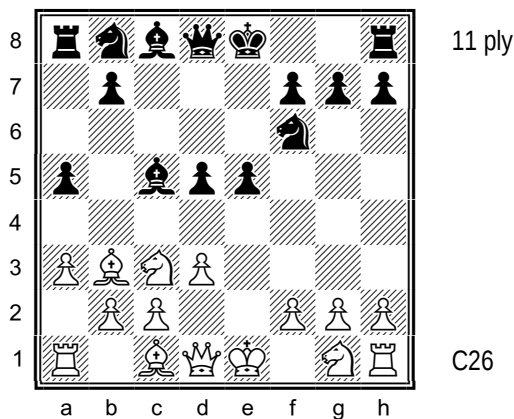
525. White is down a pawn, but Black's Knight on a5 has no moves. Visualize the position after the moves 19 b4¹ f5² 20 dxe6 Bxe4 21 exd7+ Kxd7 22 Nxe4 fxe4 23 bxa5 bxa5. What is the material balance?

¹ Black is up two pawns after 19 dxe6 Qxe6 (19... dxe6 is also good for Black) 20 Qxe6 Rxe6+ 21 Kf1 fxe6. ² 19...exd5 is met by 20 Qxh7, when two of Black's pieces are under attack.



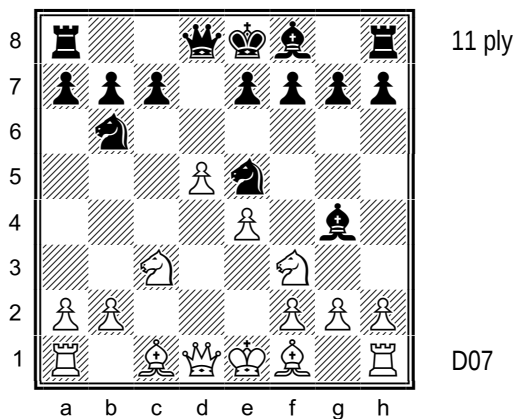
526. White's Nd6 is pinned and his Queen is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Ndf5¹ Nxd2² 17 Nxe7+ Kf8 18 Rxd2³ Rxd2 19 Kxd2 Kxe7 20 Nxh5. What is the material balance?

¹ 16 Ngf5 can be met by Qf6. ² White is up a piece after 16...Rxd2 17 Nxe7+ Kf8 18 Rxd2 Nxd2 19 Kxd2 Kxe7 20 Nxh5. ³ Black resigned here.



527. Visualize the position after the moves 8 Bg5 Bxf2¹ 9 Kxf2 Ng4+ 10 Qxg4 Qb6+ 11 Be3 Qxe3+² 12 Kxe3 Bxg4 13 Nxd5. What is the material balance?

¹ This loses. ² White is down two pieces for a pawn after 11...Qf6+ 12 Qf3.



528. Visualize the position after the moves 8 Nxe5 Bxd1 9 Bb5+ c6 10 dxc6¹ a6 11 c7+ axb5 12 cxd8=Q+ Rxd8 13 Nxd1. What is the material balance?

¹ In the game Black played 10...Ba4 11 Nxa4 Qc7 (11...bxc6 12 Bxc6+ Nd7 13 Bxd7+ Qxd7 14 Nxd7 Kxd7 White is up a piece and a pawn) 12 cxb7+ and was mated after 12...Kd8 13 Nxf7 (1-0).

SECTION 5. RABID PIECES AND PAWNS

This section contains exercises that feature an excursion by a rabid piece or pawn into enemy territory, gobbling up any pieces and pawns that lie in its path. A rabid piece is one that captures or threatens to capture an enemy piece or pawn on three or more moves in succession. Most of the exercises in this section are of the “two-way street” variety, where both sides are playing in his opponent’s half of the board.

This section contains the following four chapters:

CHAPTER 19. RABID KNIGHTS

CHAPTER 20. RABID BISHOPS

CHAPTER 21. RAPID PAWNS

CHAPTER 22. RAPID PASSED PAWNS

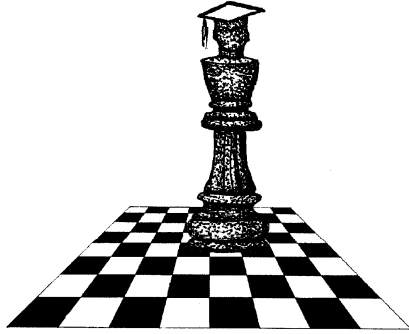
CHAPTER 19, RABID KNIGHTS, features the raid of a rabid Knight into enemy territory, usually with the intent to win an enemy Rook on the back rank. Typical raids include Nc3-b5-c7-a8/e8 and Nf3-g5-e6-d8/f8.

CHAPTER 20, RABID BISHOPS, features the raid of a rabid Bishop into enemy territory, often with the intent to win an enemy Rook on the back rank. Typical raids include Bc6-b7-a8 and Bf6-e7-d8/f8.

CHAPTER 21, RAPID PAWNS, features the raid of a rabid pawn into enemy territory, such as Pe5-f6-e7/g7, followed by the threat to capture a piece on d8/f8 or Pb5-c6-b7/d7, which is then followed by the threat to capture a piece on a8/c8/e8.

CHAPTER 22, RAPID PASSED PAWNS, is similar to the previous chapter, except that here the rabid pawn makes it all the way to the back rank, where it captures an enemy piece and simultaneously promotes.

CHESS VISUALIZATION
COURSE



CHAPTER 19. RABID KNIGHTS

This chapter features the raid of a rabid Knight into enemy territory, usually with the intent to win an enemy Rook situated on the back rank. Some of the typical Knight maneuvers for White seen in this chapter include the following:

- ✧ The maneuver Nc3-b5-c7, with subsequent capture of a Rook on a8 or e8 – see exercises 530, 533, 536, 542, 547, 551, 556, and 562;
- ✧ The maneuver Nc3-b5-c7, with a subsequent Nxe6 and Nxf8 – see exercises 535 and 543;
- ✧ The maneuver Nf3-g5-e6, with the subsequent capture of a piece on d8 or f8 – see exercises 538, 544, 555, 558, and 560;
- ✧ The maneuver Nf3-g5-e6-c7, with subsequent capture of a Rook on a8 or e8 – see exercises 534, 545, 546 and 563; and
- ✧ The maneuver Nf3-e5-d7, with the subsequent capture of a Rook on f8 – see exercises 537 and 557.

The maneuvers Nf3-g5-f7 and Nc3-b5-d6 involve an attack on Black's King and will be covered in a subsequent volume.

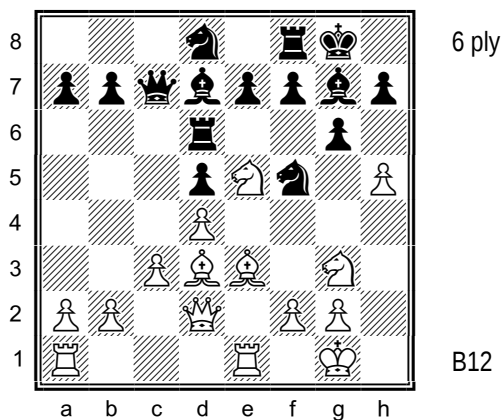
Other pieces often support these raids. The raid Nc3-b5-c7, for example, can be supported by a pawn on d6 (see exercises 556 and 562), a Bishop on g3 or f4 (see exercises 530, 535, and 551), a Knight on d5 (533), or a Rook or Queen along the c-file (543).

The move Nf3-e5 or Nf3-g5 is often played in conjunction with a discovered attack, such as a discovered attack by a White Bishop on g2 against a Black Knight on d5 (see exercises 553, 559 and 561) or by a White Bishop on e2 against a Black Knight on h5 (see exercise 557).

Black often meets the raid of a rabid Knight with a raiding Knight of his own (see exercises 529, 548, 550, 559, 560, 561 and 564). A typical idea for defending against the Nc3-b5-c7 raid is to attack a supporting Bishop on f4 with ...Nh5 or ...Ne6 (see exercise 530).

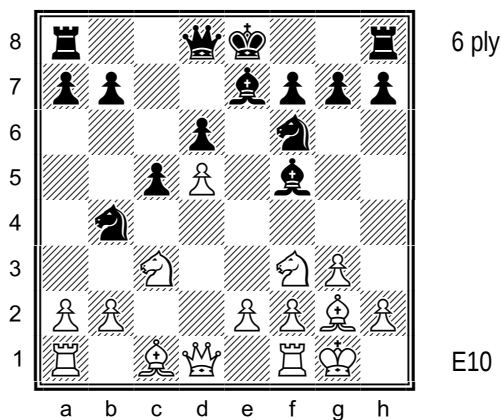
This chapter contains thirty-six exercises ranging in depth from six to eleven half-moves, as seen in the following table:

Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13 ⁺	TOTAL
Exercises:	-	-	2	4	10	6	8	6	-	-	36

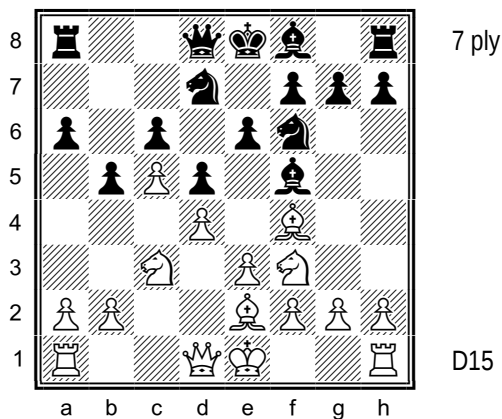


529. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nxd7 Nxe3¹ 20 Nxf8 Nxf8² 21 Kxg2³ Bxf8. What is the material balance?

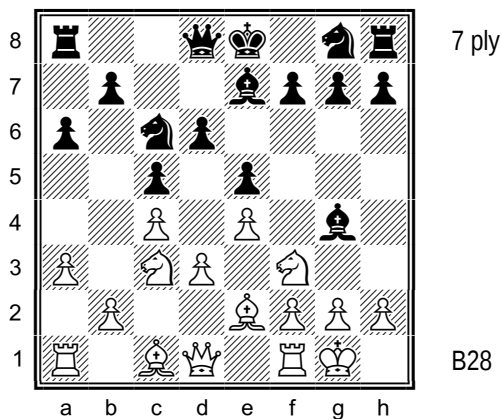
¹ White has the better position after 19...Qxd7 20 Nxf5 gxf5. ² White is up the exchange and a pawn after 20...Nc4 21 Bxc4 dxc4 22 Nxf7 Kxf7. ³ In the actual game White played 21 Nxf7, when material is even after 21...Nxe1 22 Rxe1 Kxf7 (1-0, 30).



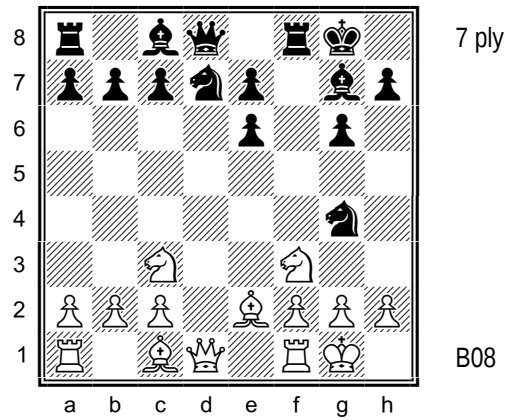
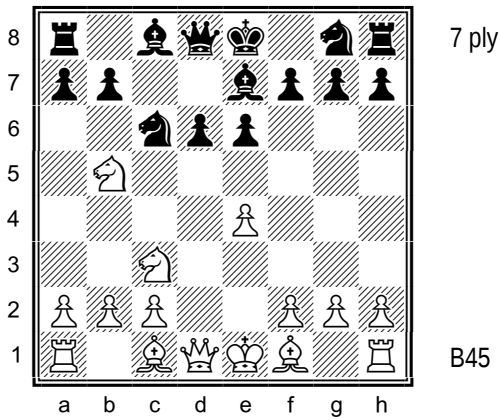
530. Visualize the position after the moves 10 a3 Nc2 11 Nh4 Nxa1 12 Nxf5, with Qxa1. What is the material balance?



531. Visualize the position after the moves 9 Nh4 Ne4 10 Nxf5 Nxc3 11 Nxf7+ Bxf7 12 bxc3. What is the material balance?



532. Visualize the position after the moves 9 Nxe5 Bxe2 10 Nxc6 Bxd1 11 Nxd8 Bc2 12 Nxb7. What is the material balance?

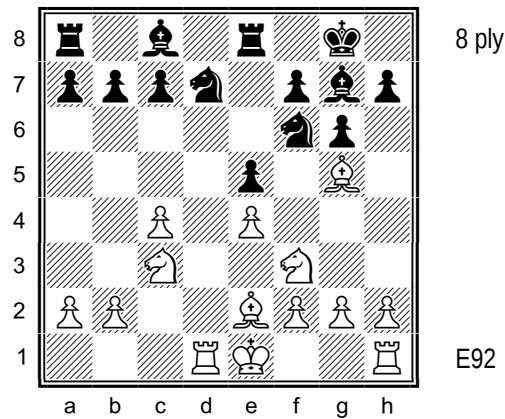
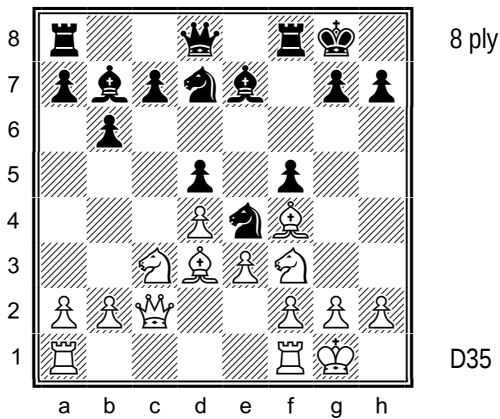


533. Visualize the position after the moves 7 Bf4 e5¹ 8 Nd5² exf4³ 9 Nbc7+ Kf8 10 Nxa8. What is the material balance?

¹ 7...Ne5 drops a pawn to 8 Qd4, e.g., 8...f6 9 0-0-0 with 10 Nxd6. ² 8 Be3 is also playable. ³ 8...Rb8 allows 9 Nxe7, when Black has to choose between defending his d-pawn with 9...Kxe7 or losing a pawn to 9...Ngxe7 10 Nxd6+ Kf8 11 Bg5.

534. White has given up a pawn to create a weakness on e6. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Ng5 Nge5 11 Nxe6 Qe8 12 Nxc7 Qd8 13 Nxa8¹. What is the material balance?

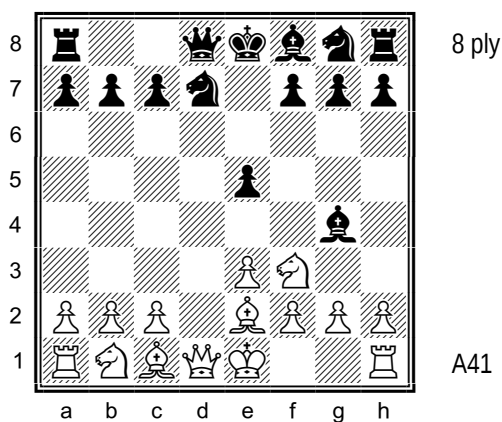
¹ This is better than winning the exchange with 13 Ne6, as White's Knight on a8 can get out safely. See the answer key for details.



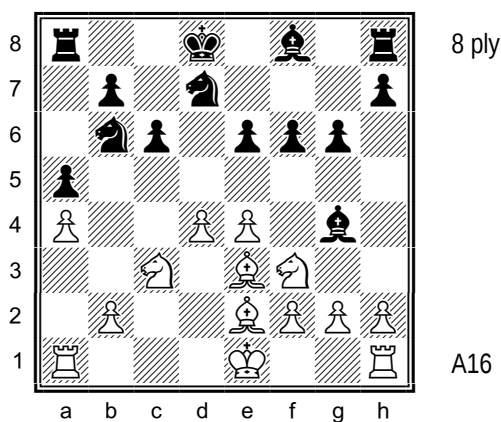
535. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Nb5 c6 13 Nc7 Rc8 14 Ne6 Qe8 15 Nxf8 Nxf8. What is the material balance?

536. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Nb5 Nxe4¹ 12 Nxc7 h6 13 Nxe8² hgx5 14 Nxg7 Kxg7. What is the material balance?

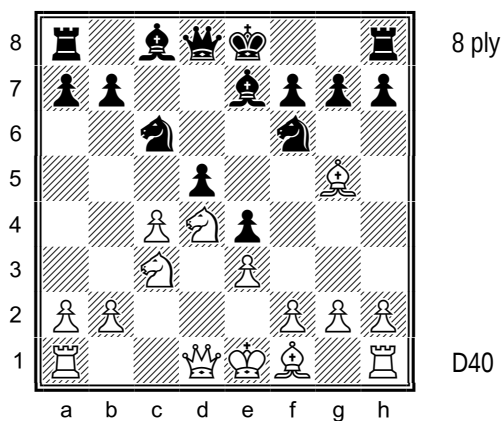
¹ After 11...Rb8 12 Nxc7 Rf8 13 Nd5, Black can't play 13...Nxe4 because of 14 Ne7+ Kh8 15 Nxc8 Rbxc8 16 Rxd7. ² 13 Be3 wins a Rook.



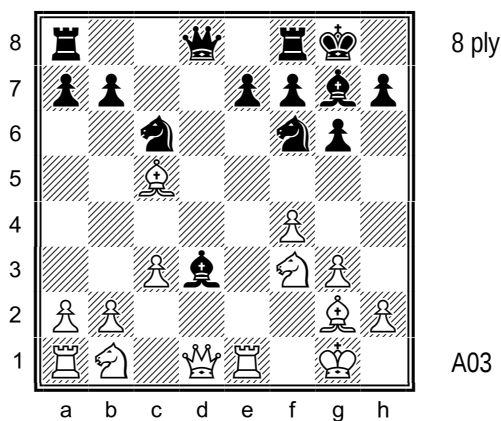
537. Visualize the position after the moves 6 Nxe5 Bxe2 7 Qxd7+ Qxd7 8 Nxd7 Bb5 9 Nxf8 Kxf8. What is the material balance?



538. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Ng5 Bxe2 14 Nxe6+ Ke7 15 Nxf8 Ba6 16 Nxd7 Kxd7. What is the material balance?

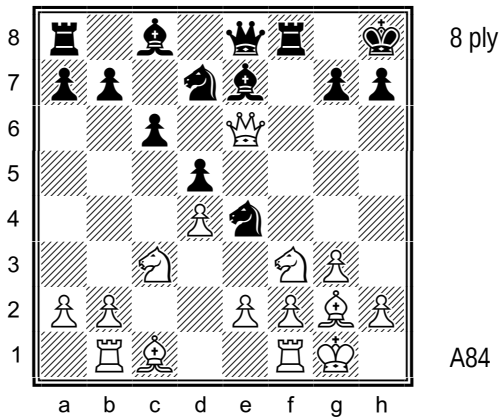


539. Visualize the position after the moves 10 cxd5 Nxd5 11 Bxe7 Nxc3¹ 12 Bxd8 Nxd1 13 Rxd1 Nxd8. What is the material balance?



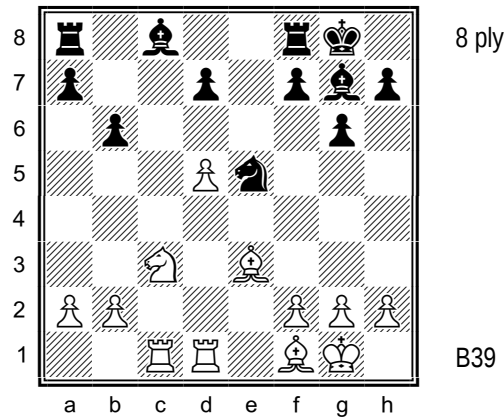
540. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Nd4 Bxb1 13 Nxc6 Qxd1 14 Nxe7+ Kh8 15 Rxd1 Be4. What is the material balance?

¹ 11...Ncxe7 drops the e-pawn. 11...Ndx7 is even worse, as it gives up the d-file after 12 Nxc6 e.g., 12...Qxd1+ 13 Rxd1 Nxc6 14 Nxe4 or 12...Nxc6 13 Qxd8+ Nxd8 14 Bb5+ Bd7 15 Bxd7+ Kxd7 16 Nxe4.



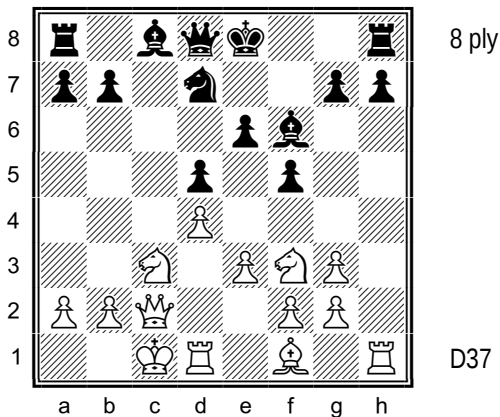
541. White is up a pawn, but his Queen is in danger of becoming trapped. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Nxe4 Nc5¹ 14 Nxc5 Bxe6 15 Nxe6 Qg6 16 Nxf8 Rxf8². What is the material balance?

¹ White remains up a pawn after 13...Nb6 14 Nd6 Bxe6 15 Nxe8 Raxe8. ² 16...Qxb1 can be met by 17 Bg5 Qe4 18 Nh4 Qxe2 19 Bxe7, when 19...Qxe7 loses the Queen to 20 Nfg6+.



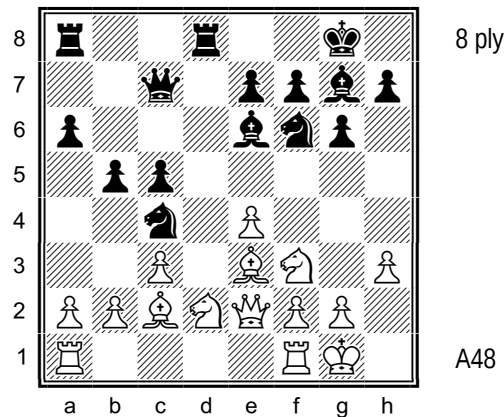
542. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nb5 Ba6¹ 20 Nc7 Bxf1 21 Nxa8 Bxg2 22 Kxg2 Rxa8. What is the material balance?

¹ 19...Rb8 drops a pawn, as does 19...Bb7 20 Rc7 Ba6 21 Nxa7. In this line, 20...Rfb8 isn't possible, as it loses the Bishop to 21 Nd6 Bc8 22 Rdc1.



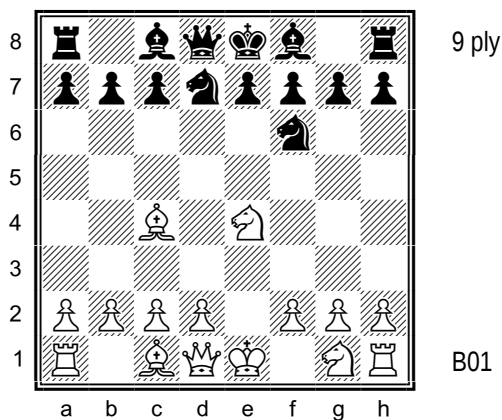
543. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Nb5 0-0¹ 14 Nc7 Rb8 15 Nxe6 Qa5 16 Nxf8 Nxf8². What is the material balance?

¹ The Rook is vulnerable on f8. 13...Rb8 drops the a-pawn. The only other option is 13...Kf7. ² In the actual game Black played 16...Qxa2 and resigned after 17 Nxh7 (1-0).



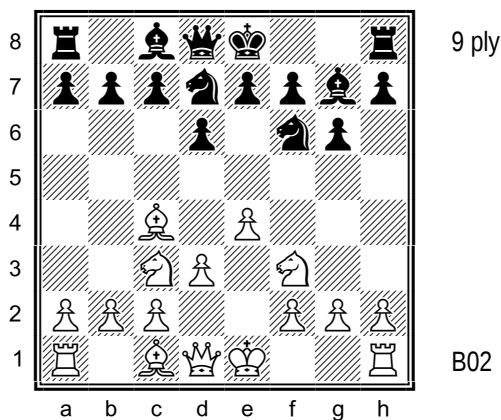
544. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Ng5 Nxe3¹ 17 Nxe6 Qd7² 18 Nxd8 Nxf1 19 Nxf1 Rxd8. What is the material balance?

¹ White has compensation for the pawn after 16...Nxb2 17 Nxe6 fxe6 18 Rab1. ² 17...fxe6 18 Qxe3 breaks up Black's pawn structure.



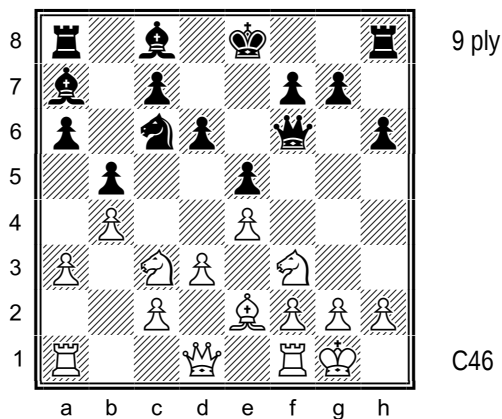
545. Visualize the position after the moves 5 Bxf7+ Kxf7 6 Ng5+ Kg8¹ 7 Ne6 Qe8 8 Nxc7 Qd8 9 Nxa8. What is the material balance?

¹ Black's King is more open after 6...Kg6 7 Ne6 Qe8 8 Nxc7.



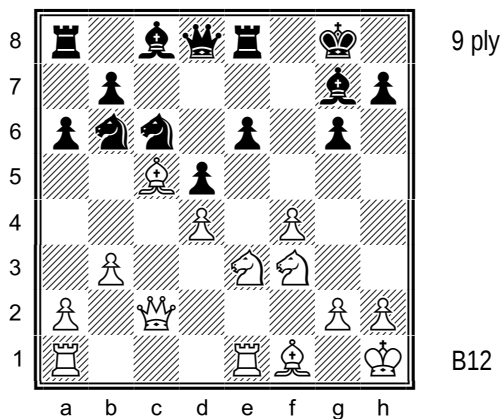
546. Visualize the position after the moves 6 Bxf7+ Kxf7¹ 7 Ng5+ Kg8² 8 Ne6 Qe8 9 Nxc7 Qd8 10 Nxa8. What is the material balance?

¹ White has both a material and a positional advantage after 6...Kf8 7 Ng5 Nc5 8 Bc4 Qe8. ² Other moves drop the Queen.



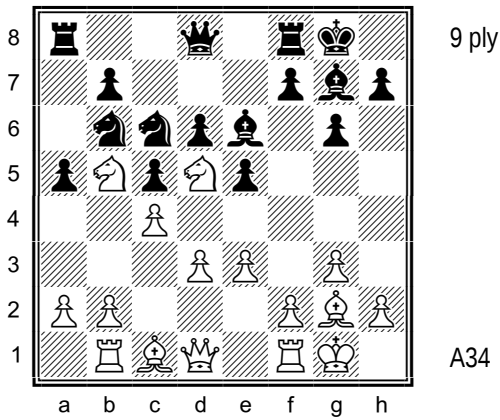
547. Visualize the position after the moves 11 a4 Nxb4 12 axb5 axb5¹ 13 Nxb5 Nc6 14 Nxc7+ Kd7 15 Nxa8. What is the material balance?

¹ 12...0-0 avoids the coming Knight fork.



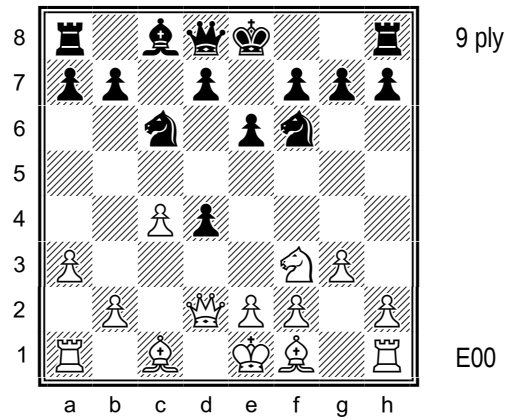
548. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Bxb6 Qxb6 22 Nxd5 Nb4¹ 23 Nxb6 Nxc2 24 Nxa8 Nxa1 25 Rxa1. What is the material balance?

¹ 22...Qd8, intending to take on d4 if White moves his Knight on d5, can be met by 23 Qe4.



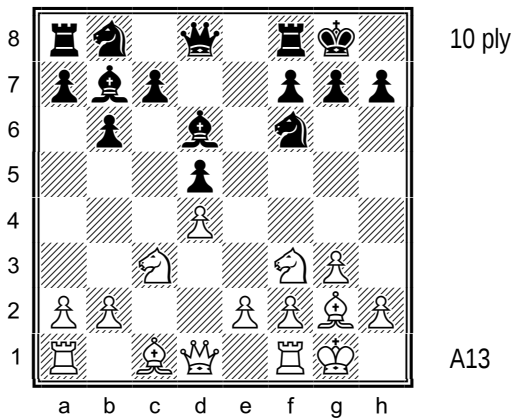
549. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Nxd6¹ Nxd5² 14 Nxb7 Nxe3³ 15 Nxd8 Nxd1 16 Nxc6 Ra6 17 Rxd1. What is the material balance?

¹ 13 Nxb6 Qxb6 14 Nxd6 allows 14...Rad8 and 15...Bxc4. ² Material is even after 13...Qxd6 14 Nxb6 Rad8 and 15...Qxd3. ³ White is up a pawn after 14...Qb6 15 cxd5 Bxd5 16 Bxd5 Qxb7.

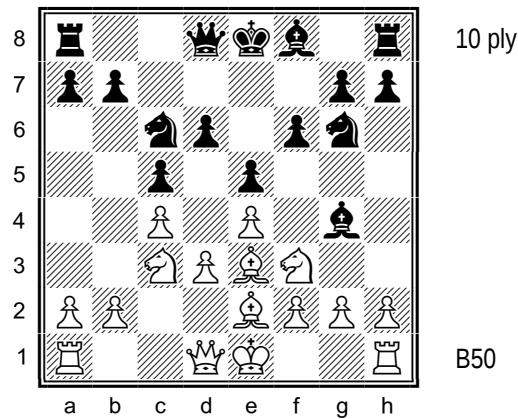


550. Black is temporarily up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 8 Nxd4 Ne4¹ 9 Nxc6 Nxd2² 10 Nxd8 Nxf1³ 11 Nxf7 Kxf7⁴ 12 Rxf1. What is the material balance?

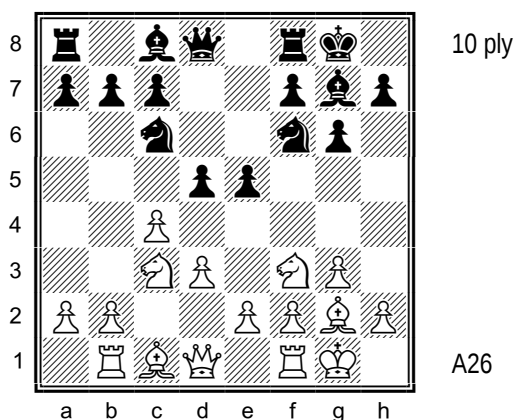
¹ 8...Qb6 may be better. ² 9...bxc6 is also possible. ³ Material is even after 10...Nxc4 11 b3 Nb6 12 Nxf7 Kxf7. ⁴ White is up a piece after 11...Nxc3 12 Nd6+ Ke7 13 Nxc8+ Raxc8 14 hxg3.



551. Visualize the position after the moves 9 Nb5 Be7 10 Bf4 c6 11 Nc7 Nh5 12 Nxa8 Nxf4 13 gxf4 Bxa8. What is the material balance?

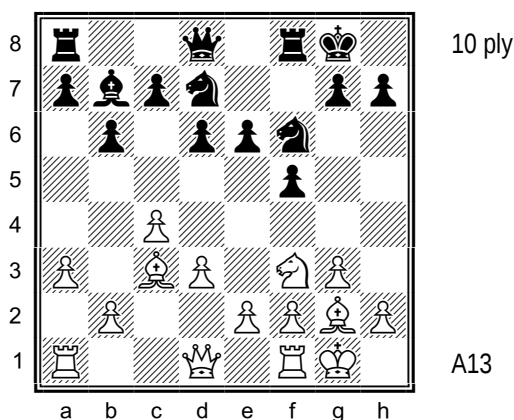


552. Visualize the position after the moves 9 Nxe5 Bxe2 10 Nxc6 Bxd1 11 Nxd8 Bg4 12 Nxb7 Rb8 13 Na5 Rxb2. What is the material balance?



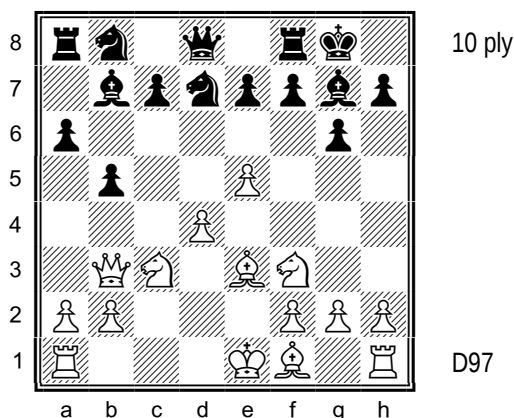
553. Visualize the position after the moves 9 cxd5 Nxd5 10 Nxe5 Nxc3 11 Nxc6 Nxe2+¹ 12 Qxe2 bxc6 13 Bxc6 Rb8. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a pawn after 11...Nxd1 12 Nxd8 Rxd8 13 Rxd1.



554. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Nd4 Bxg2 12 Nxe6 Qe7 13 Nxf8 Bxf1 14 Nxd7 Bh3¹ 15 Nxf6+ gxf6. What is the material balance?

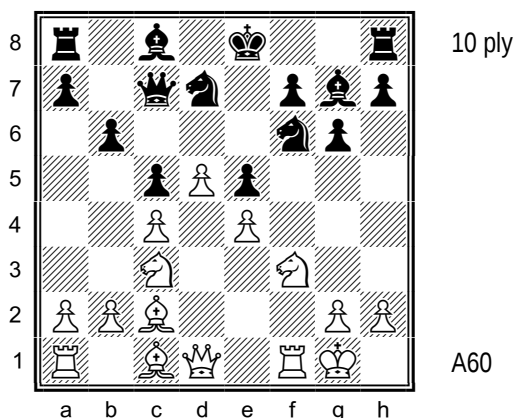
¹ 14...Qxd7 15 Qxf1 Ng4 keeps Black's pawn structure intact, but the move in the game allows Black to keep his strong light-squared Bishop on the board.



555. Visualize the position after the moves 11 e6 fxe6¹ 12 Ng5 Nf6² 13 Nxe6 Bd5 14 Nxd5 Qxd5 15 Nxf8 Kxf8³. What is the material balance?

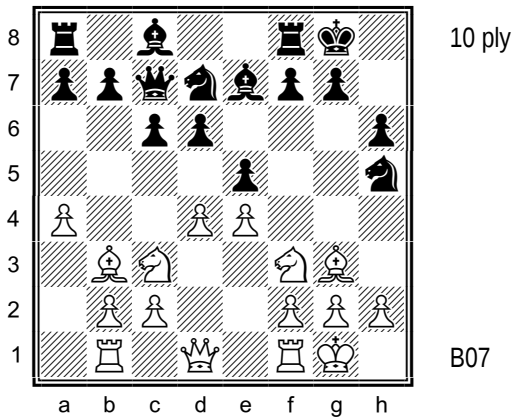
¹ Better is 11...Bxf3 12 gxf3 fxe6 with an even game.

² 12...Re8 allows a smothered mate after 13 Qxe6+; 12...Qc8 loses the exchange to 13 Qxe6+ Kh8 14 Nf7+. ³ 15...Qxb3 allows White to win an extra pawn after 16 axb3 Bxf8 17 Bxb5.



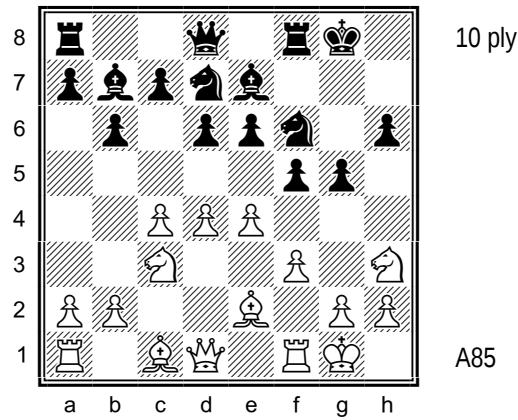
556. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Nb5 Qb8¹ 13 d6 0-0 14 Nc7 Ne8 15 Nxa8 Nxd6, with a subsequent Nxb6 axb6. What is the material balance?

¹ 12...Qd8 lets White pile up on the f-pawn, then free up d5 for his Queen: 13 Nd6+ Ke7 14 Ng5 Rf8 15 Ndx7 Rxf7 (moving the Queen is worse: 15... Qe8 16 d6 is mate, while 15...Qc7 16 d6+ wins Black's Queen) 16 d6+ Ke8 17 Nxf7 Kxf7 18 Qd5+, winning Black's Rook on a8.



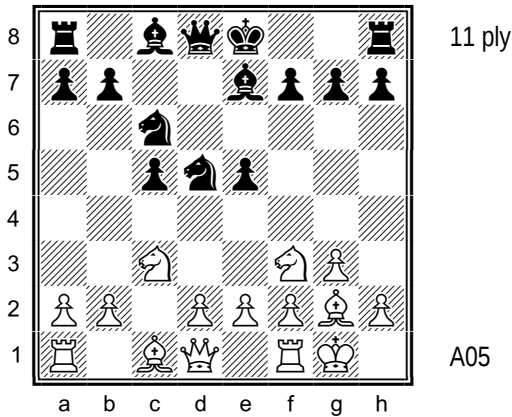
557. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Nxe5 Nxc3 15 Nxd7 Nxf1 16 Nxf8 Nxc2 17 Ng6 Ng4 18 Nxe7+¹ Qxe7. What is the material balance?

¹ The actual game continued 18 f3 Nf6 19 e5 dxe5 20 dxe5 (1-0, 66), when 20...Bc5 (instead of 20... Nh7 21 Qd4) gives Black an advantage.

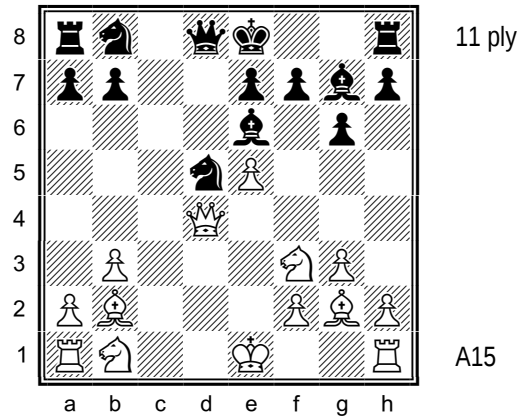


558. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bxc3 Qc8² 18 Nxf8 Qxf8. What is the material balance?

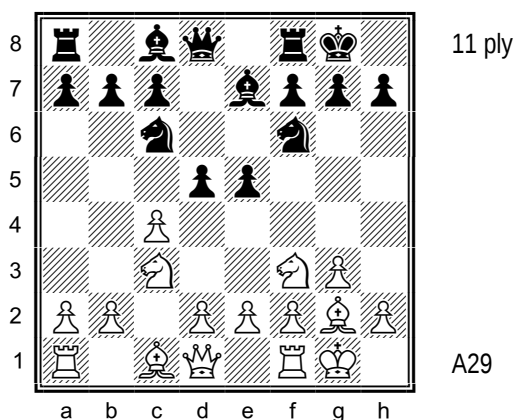
¹ White is up four pawns for a piece after 15...Qc8 16 Nxe6 Rf7 17 exf5. ² The actual game continued 17...Qe8 18 Nxc7 Qg6 19 Nxa8 Bxa8 (1-0, 82), when White has won an extra pawn compared to the line with 17...Qc8.



559. Visualize the position after the moves 8 Nxe5 Nxc3 9 Nxc6 Nxd1 10 Nxd8 Nxf2 11 Nxf7 Nh3+ 12 Kh1 Rf8 13 Ne5. What is the material balance?



560. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Ng5 Nc6 13 Nxe6 Nxd4 14 Nxd8 Nc2+ 15 Kd1 Nxa1 16 Nxb7 Nb4 17 Bxa1. What is the material balance?

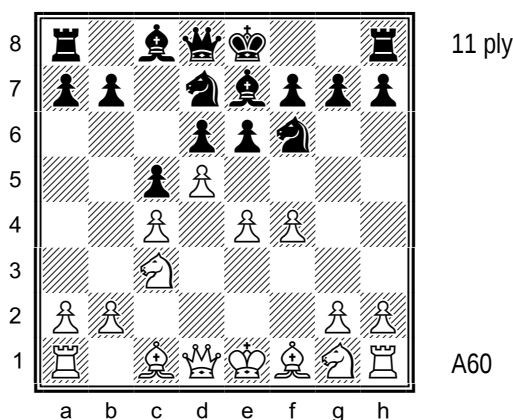


11 ply

A29

561. Visualize the position after the moves 7 cxd5 Nxd5 8 Nxe5 Nxc3 9 Nxc6 Nxd1 10 Nxd8 Nxf2¹ 11 Nxb7 Nh3+ 12 Kh1². What is the material balance?

¹ 10...Rxd8 11 Rxd1 keeps Black's pawn structure intact. ² Black's pieces are well-placed after 12 Bxh3 Bxh3.

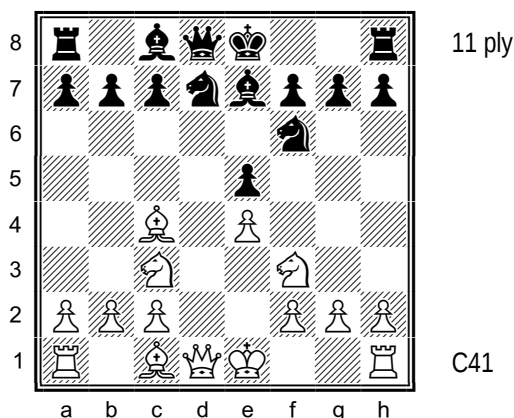


11 ply

A60

562. Visualize the position after the moves 7 e5 dxe5 8 d6 Bf8 9 Nb5 Nb6¹ 10 Nc7+ Kd7 11 Nxa8 Nxa8 12 fxe5. What is the material balance?

¹ This gives Black's King an escape square. 9...exf4 allows 10 Nc7+, when Black has to give up his Queen to stop the mate.

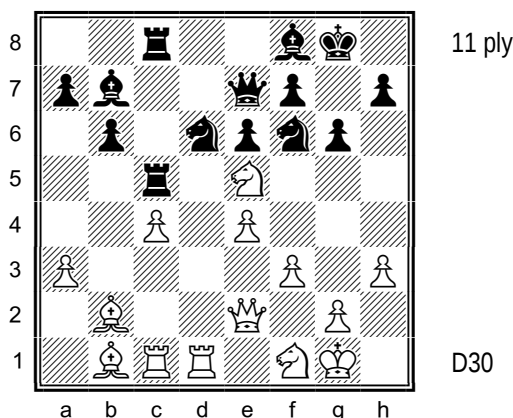


11 ply

C41

563. Visualize the position after the moves 7 Bxf7+¹ Kxf7 8 Ng5+ Kg8 9 Ne6 Qe8 10 Nxc7 Qg6 11 Nxa8 Qxg2 12 Rf1. What is the material balance?

¹ Even better is 7 Ng5 0-0 8 Bxf7+ Rxf7 9 Ne6 Qe8 10 Nxc7 Qd8 11 Nxa8, when White is up the exchange and two pawns.



11 ply

D30

564. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Nd3¹ Nxc4 23 Nxc5 Nxb2 24 Nxb7² Nxd1³ 25 Rxc8 Qxb7 26 Rxf8+ Kxf8 27 Qxd1. What is the material balance?

¹ White is threatening both 23 Nxc5 and 23 e5.

² White is up the exchange for a pawn after 24 Qxb2 Rxc5, but Black has control over the dark squares.

³ Black is down a Rook for two pawns after 24... Rxc1 25 Rxc1 Qxa3.

CHAPTER 20. RABID BISHOPS

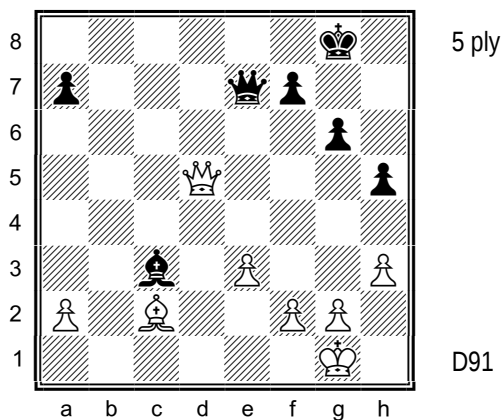
This chapter features the raid of a rabid Bishop into enemy territory, often with the intent to win an enemy Rook situated on the back rank. Typical raids include the following:

- ✧ Raids on the kingside light squares (e.g., e6/g6-f7-e8-d7) – see exercises 565, 574, 575, 576, 581, 583, 584, and 585;
- ✧ Raids on the kingside dark squares (e.g., f6-e7-d8/f8) – see exercises 570, 571, 572, 573, 589, 590, 591, and 595;
- ✧ Raids on the queenside light squares (e.g., c6-b7-a8) – see exercises 578, 579, and 586;
- ✧ Raids on the queenside dark squares (e.g., c5-b6-a7) – see exercises 567 and 568; and
- ✧ Snake-like raids by the Bishop – see exercises 582 and 594.

Many of these raids conclude with a backwards capture by the Bishop, such as a capture of an enemy piece or pawn in the center of the board or even back in the Bishop's own territory (see exercises 565, 573, 575, 576, 580, 581, 587, 588, 590, 591, and 596).

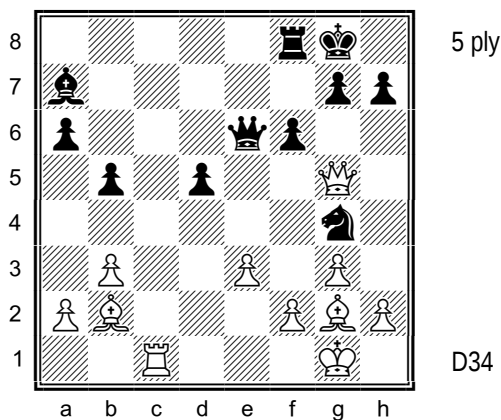
This chapter contains thirty-two exercises ranging in depth from five to eleven half-moves, as seen in the following table:

Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13⁺	TOTAL
Exercises:	-	2	4	10	4	6	2	4	-	-	

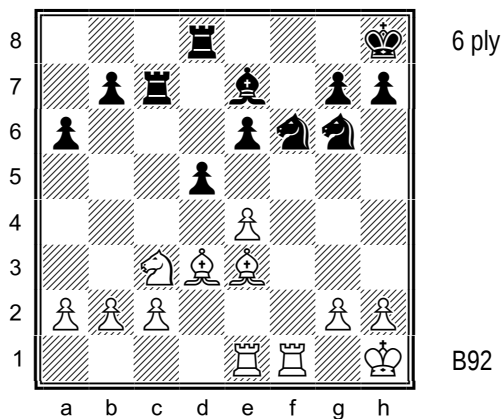


565. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 28 Bxg6 Kg7¹ 29 Bxh5 Be5 30 Bxf7². What is the material balance?

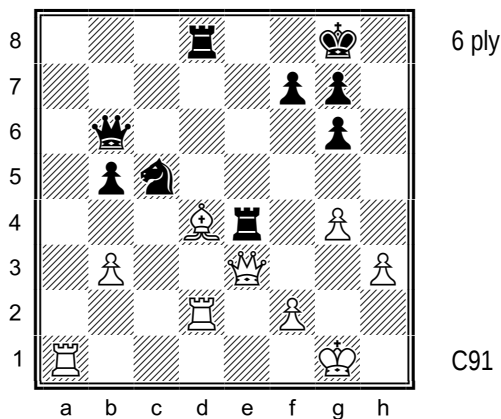
¹ White is up two pawns after 28...h4 29 Bh7+ Kxh7 (29...Kg7 30 Bc2) 30 Qd3+ Kg8 31 Qxc3. ² Black resigned here.



566. White's Queen is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Bxd5 fxg5 23 Bxe6+ Kh8 24 Bxg4. What is the material balance?

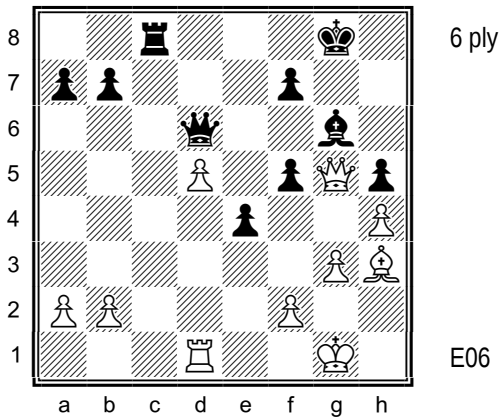


567. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Bb6 Rxc3 23 Bxd8 Rxd3 24 Bxe7 Rd2. What is the material balance?

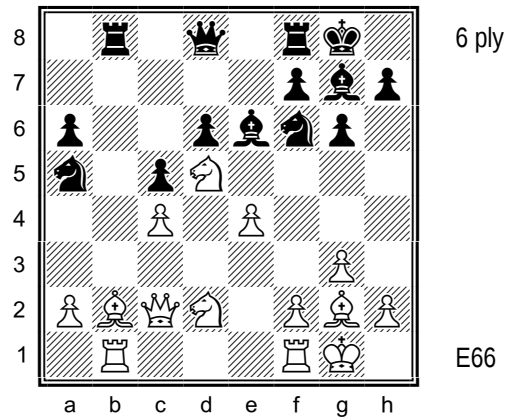


568. White's Queen is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 31 Bxc5 Rxe3¹ 32 Bxb6 Rxd2 33 Bxe3 Rb2. What is the material balance?

¹ 31...Rxd2 transposes after 32 Bxb6 Rxe3 33 Bxe3.

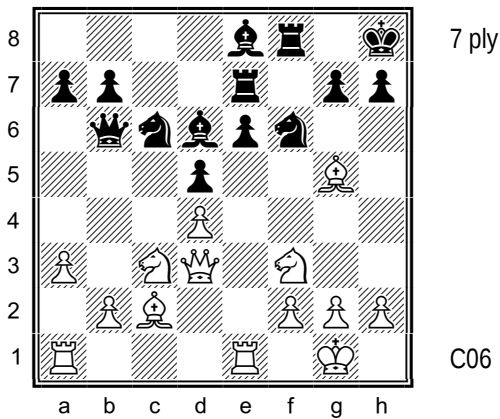


569. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Bxf5 Rc2 26 Bxe4 Rxb2 27 Bxg6 fxg6. What is the material balance?



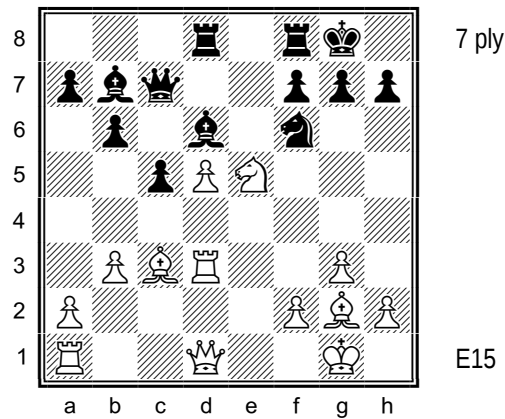
570. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxf6 Rxb1¹ 18 Bxd8 Rxf1+ 19 Bxf1 Rxd8. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a piece after 17...Bxf6 18 Rxb8 Qxb8 19 Nxf6+ Kg7 20 Qc3.



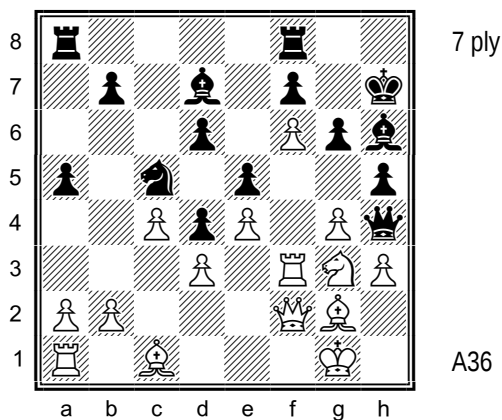
571. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bxf6 Bg6 19 Bxe7 Bxd3 20 Bxf8 Bxf8¹ 21 Bxd3. What is the material balance?

¹ Worse is 20...Bxc2 21 Bxd6, for example, 21...Qxb2 22 Nxd5 Nxd4 23 Nxd4 Qxd4 24 Rac1 Qxd5 25 Rxc2 h6 26 Be5.



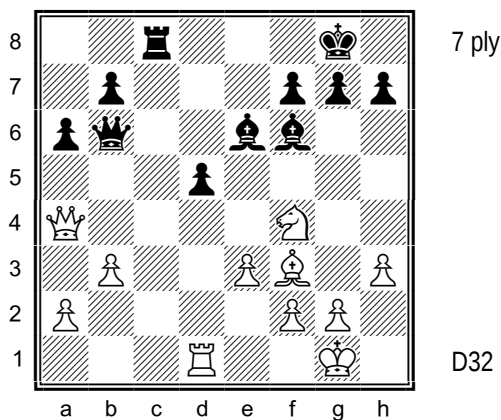
572. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nc6 Nxd5 21 Bxg7¹ Bxc6² 22 Bxf8 Bxf8 23 Bxd5. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up the exchange for a pawn after 21 Nxd8 Nxc3 22 Rxc3 Rxd8. 21 Bxd5 gives Black a 2-1 advantage on c6. ² White is up the exchange after 21...Kxg7 22 Nxd8 Rxd8 23 Bxd5.



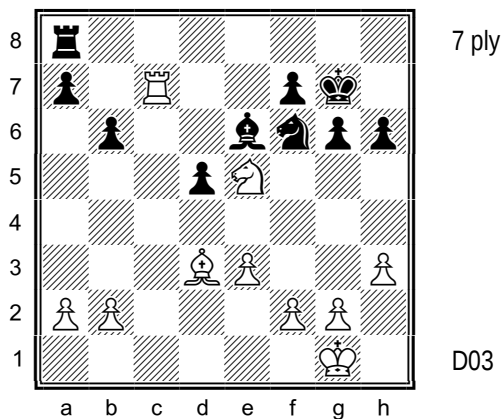
573. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Bxh6 hxg4¹ 21 Bxf8 gxf3 22 Bxd6 fxe2² 23 Bxc5. What is the material balance?

¹ 20...Kxh6 loses the Queen to 21 Nf5+. ² White is up a piece for a pawn after 22...Nxd3 23 Qxf3 Nxb2, for example, 24 Qb3 Bxh3 25 Bxe5.



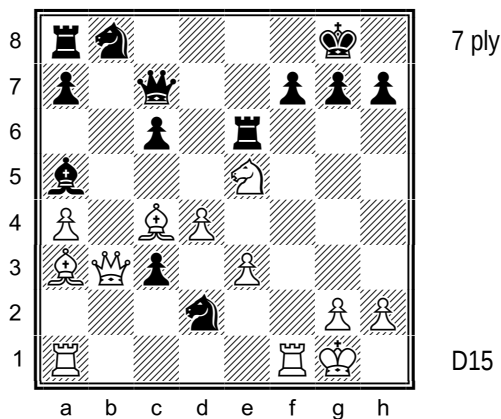
574. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Nxd5 Bxd5 24 Bxd5 g6¹ 25 Bxf7+ Kg7² 26 Bxg6³. What is the material balance?

¹ Better is 24...Qc7, as now Black's Rook is hanging. ² 25...Kxf7 drops the Rook to 26 Qd7+. Relatively best is 25...Kh8. ³ Black resigned here.



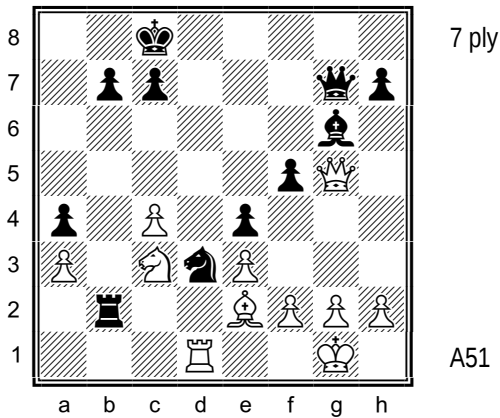
575. Black's g-pawn is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 26 Bxg6 Nd7 27 Bxf7 Nxe5¹ 28 Bxe6+ Kf6 29 Bxd5. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up three pawns after 27...Bxf7 28 Rxd7 Rf8 29 Rxa7.



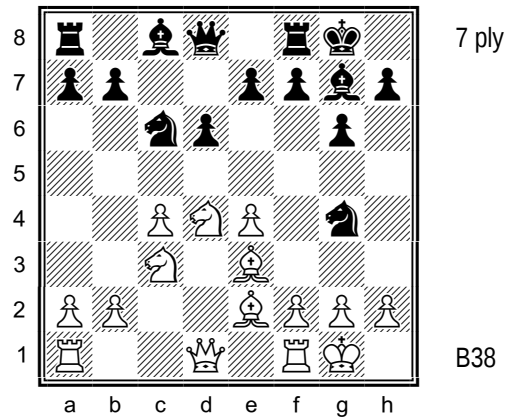
576. White is down a pawn and his Queen and Rook are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rxf7¹ Qxf7² 21 Bxe6 Nxb3 22 Bxf7+ Kh8 23 Bxb3³. What is the material balance?

¹ 20 Bxe6 Nxb3 21 Rxf7 transposes. ² 20...Nxb3 loses to 21 Rf8, mate. ³ Black resigned here.



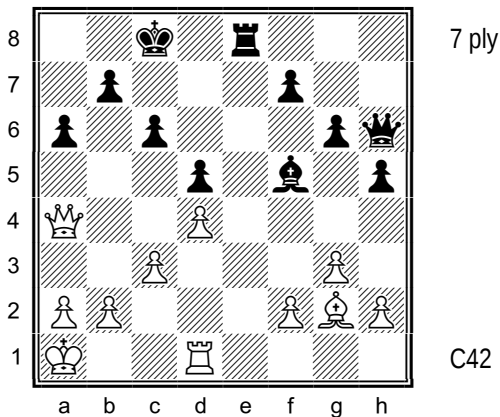
577. White's Knight on c3 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 28 Bxd3 Qxc3 29 Bxe4¹ Rd2 30 Bxf5+ Kb8² 31 Rb1. What is the material balance?

¹ White's threat is 30 Qd8, mate. ² 30...Bxf5 allows White to defend both of his queenside pawns after 31 Qxf5+ Kb8 32 Qf8+ Ka7 33 Qc5+ Kb8 34 Rf1.



578. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxg4 Bxd4¹ 11 Bxc8 Bxe3 12 Bxb7 Qb6 13 Bxa8. What is the material balance?

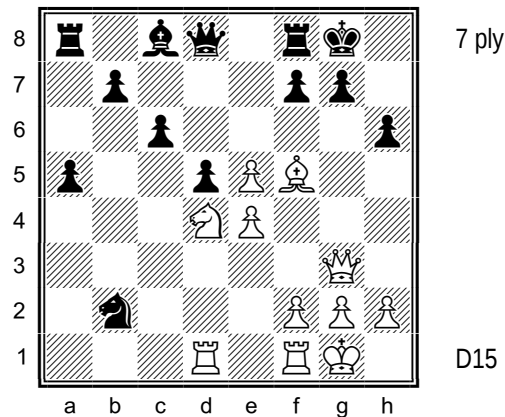
¹ White is up a piece after 10...Bxg4 11 Nxc6 Bxd1 12 Nxd8.



579. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Bxd5 Re2¹ 24 Bxc6 Bc2 25 Bxb7+ Kxb7² 26 Qd7+. What is the material balance?

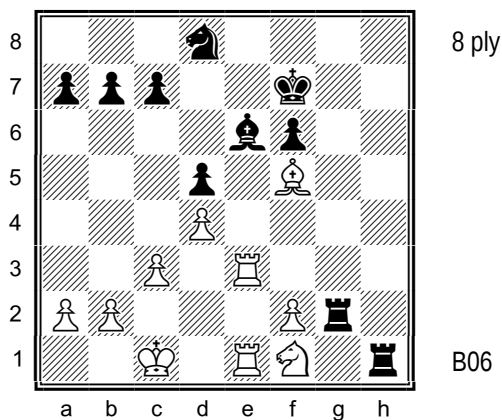
¹ White is up a pawn after 23...Bc2 24 Qxc2 cxd5.

² In the game Black chose 25...Kb8 26 Qb4 Bxd1, but this allows mate in three, beginning with 27 Bc6+ (1-0).



580. White is down two pawns and his Rook is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Bxc8 Nxd1¹ 22 Bxb7 Rb8 23 Bxc6 Nb2 24 Bxd5. What is the material balance?

¹ 21...Qxc8 loses to 22 Nf5, with the dual threat of 23 Qxg7 and 23 Ne7+, winning Black's Queen; 21...Rxc8 can be met by 22 Rb1 Nc4 23 Nf5, when White has compensation for his pawns, for example 23...g6 24 Nxh6+, etc.

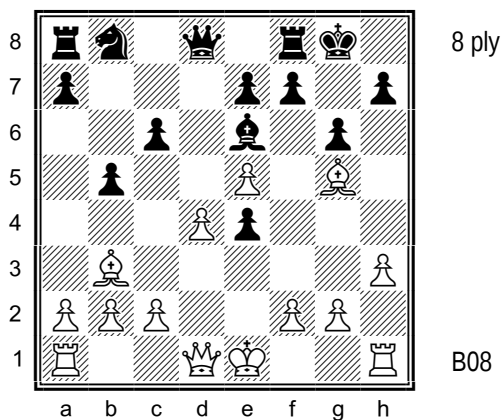


8 ply

B06

581. Visualize the position after the moves 26 Rxe6 Nxe6¹ 27 Bxe6+ Kg6 28 Bxd5 Rgg1 29 Bxh1 Rxh1. What is the material balance?

¹ Better is 26...Rxf1, for example, 27 Re7+ Kf8 28 Rxf1 Kxe7 29 Re1+ Kf8 30 Re2, when White retains a slight edge.

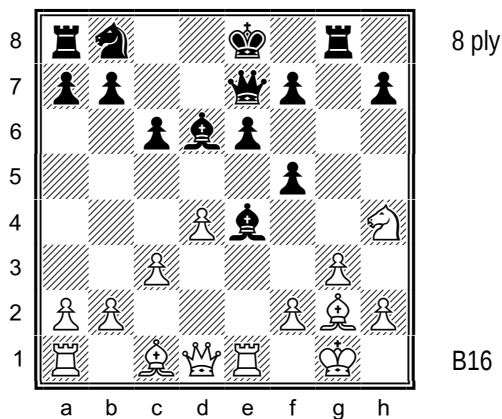


8 ply

B08

582. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bh6 Bxb3¹ 15 Bxf8 Bxc2 16 Bxe7 Bxd1 17 Bxd8² Bc2. What is the material balance?

¹ 14...Re8 15 Bxe6 fxe6 gives Black tripled pawns on the e-file. ² Black resigned here.

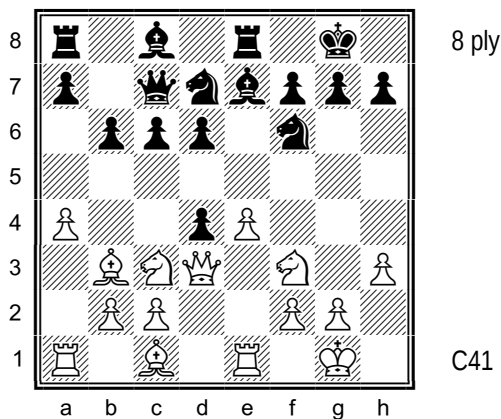


8 ply

B16

583. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxe4 Qxh4¹ 14 Bxf5 Nd7² 15 Bxe6 0-0-0³ 16 Bxd7+ Kxd7. What is the material balance?

¹ 13...fxe4 14 Rxe4 defends the Nh4. ² 14...Qf6 can be met by 15 Qb3 b6 16 Bxe6 and 14...Qe7 by 15 Qh5 (threatening 16 Rxe6) Kd8 16 Qxh7. ³ 15...fxe6 16 Rxe6+ Be7 17 Qe2 with 18 Kh1 wins a piece, as 17...Rg7 can be met by 18 Bh6, when Black's Rook can't leave the g-file.

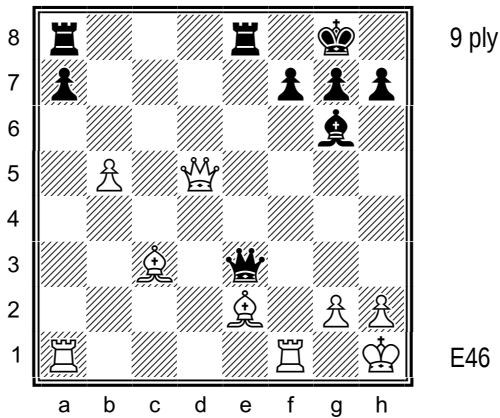


8 ply

C41

584. Black has just played 11...exd4. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxf7+ Kf8¹ 13 Bxe8 dxc3 14 Bxd7 cxb2 15 Bxb2 Bxd7. What is the material balance?

¹ Black could try 12...Kxf7 13 Ng5+ Kg8 14 Qc4+ d5 15 Nxd5 Nxd5 16 exd5 Ne5, when the onus is on White to demonstrate that he has compensation for the piece.

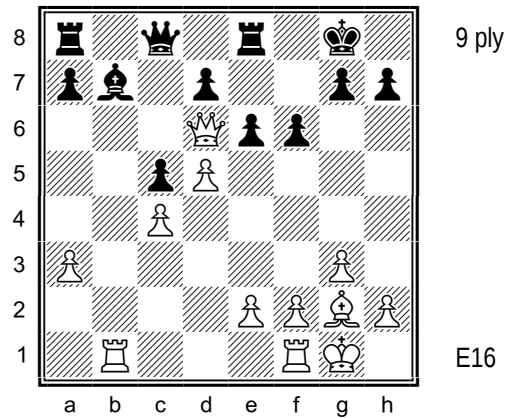


9 ply

E46

585. White is up a piece for a pawn, but two of his pieces are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Bh5 Rad8¹ 24 Bxg6 Rxd5 25 Bxf7+ Kh8² 26 Bxe8 Qxe8 27 Rxa7. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a pawn after 23...Bxh5 24 Qxh5 Qxc3 25 Qxf7+ Kh8 26 Rxa7. ² 25...Kf8 can be met by 26 Bb4+, winning both of Black's Rooks.

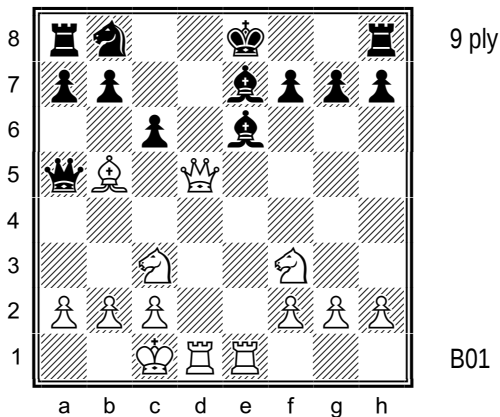


9 ply

E16

586. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Rb5 exd5¹ 25 Rxb7 Qxb7 26 Bxd5+ Re6 27 Bxb7 Rxd6 28 Bxa8. What is the material balance?

¹ White gains control of the 7th rank after 24...Ba6 25 Rxc5 Qb7 26 Rc7 with 27 Qxd7, while 24...a6 25 Rxc5 Qd8 26 Rc7 Bc8 allows 26 dxe6 Rxe6 27 Bd5, pinning Black's Re6.

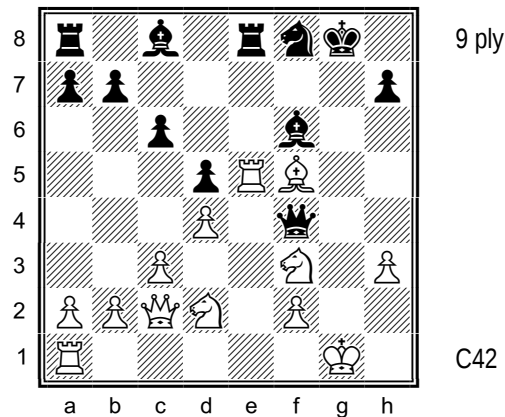


9 ply

B01

587. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Rxe6 0-0¹ 14 Bxc6 Qxd5 15 Bxd5 fxe6 16 Bxb7 Na6 17 Bxa6. What is the material balance?

¹ 13...cxb5 allows mate in three: 14 Rxe7+ Kxe7 15 Qd6+ Ke8 16 Re1, mate, while 13...fxe6 can be met by 14 Qxe6, threatening 15 Ng5 and 16 Qf7, mate.

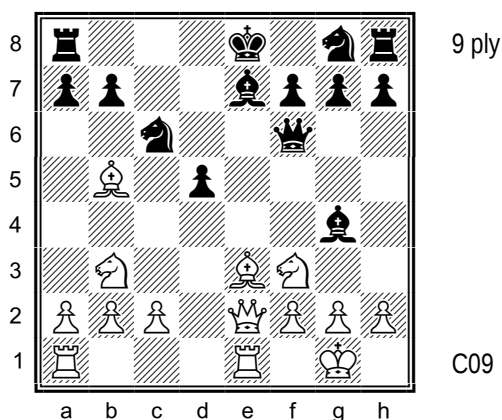


9 ply

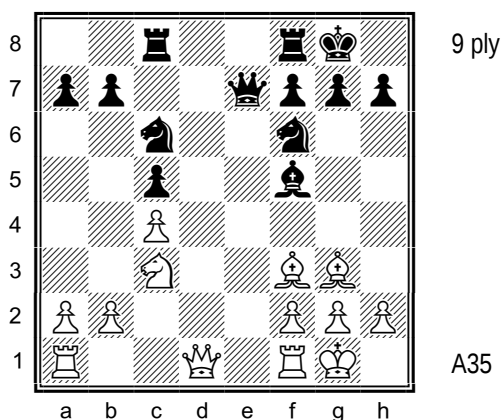
C42

588. White is up a pawn, but his Rook is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Bxc8¹ Bxe5 20 Bxb7 Rab8 21 Bxc6 Re7² 22 Bxd5+ Kh8 23 dxe5. What is the material balance?

¹ White has two Rooks and a pawn for the Queen after 19 Rxe8 Bxf5 20 Qxf5 Qxf5 21 Rxa8. ² The actual game continued 21...Re6 22 Bxd5 Kh8 23 Bxe6 Nxe6, when White is up four pawns (1-0, 25).

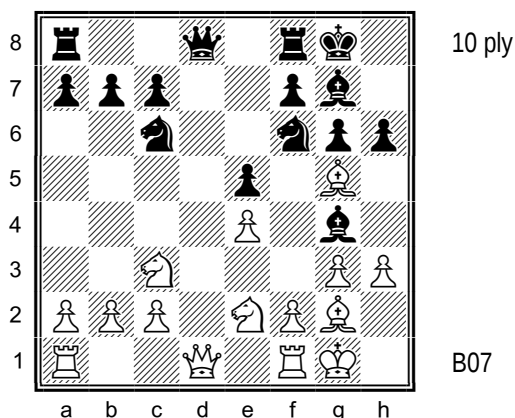


589. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bd4 Bxf3 14 Bxf6 Bxe2 15 Bxc6+ bxc6 16 Bxg7 Bh5 17 Bxh8. What is the material balance?



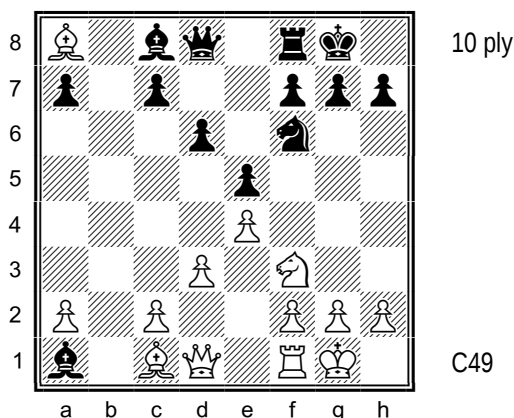
590. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bd6 Bc2 17 Bxe7 Bxd1 18 Bxc6 bxc6 19 Bxf8 Bc2¹ 20 Bxc5. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a Rook after 19...Rxf8 20 Raxd1.



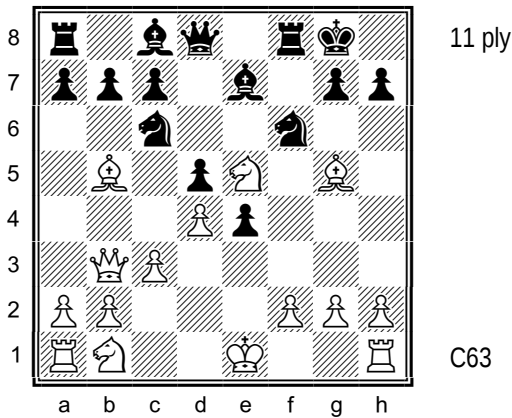
591. Both Bishops are under attack in this nearly symmetrical position. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Qxd8 Nxd8¹ 12 Bxf6 Bxe2 13 Bxg7 Bxf1 14 Bxf8 Bxg2 15 Bxh6 Bxh3. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a pawn after 11...Raxd8 12 Bxf6 Bxe2 13 Bxd8 Bxf1 14 Bxc7 Bc4.



592. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bg5 Bg4 11 Qxa1 Qxa8 12 Bxf6 Bxf3 13 Bxe5 dxe5¹ 14 gxf3 Re8. What is the material balance?

¹ Worse is 13...Bxe4 14 Bxg7 Bxg2 15 Bxf8, when the threat of mate wins material, e.g., a) 15...Bxf1 16 Qg7 is mate (1-0); b) 15...Qxf8 16 Kxg2 leaves White up a Rook; or c) 15...Kxf8 16 Qh8+ Ke7 17 Re1+ Kd7 18 Qxh7, when White is up the exchange and a pawn.

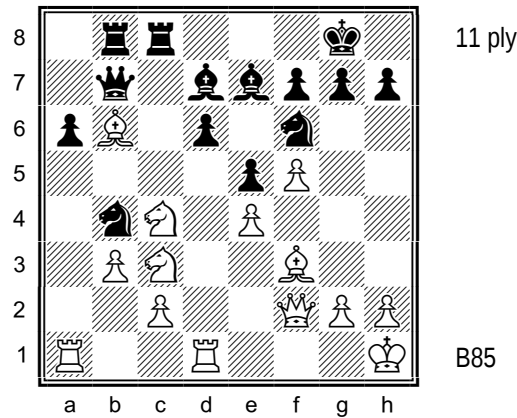


11 ply

C63

593. Visualize the position after the moves 9 Nxc6 bxc6 10 Bxc6 Ba6 11 Bxf6¹ Bc4² 12 Bxe7 Qxe7³ 13 Bxd5+ Bxd5 14 Qxd5+. What is the material balance?

¹ 11 Bxa8 Qxa8 is also good for White. ² White is up the exchange and two pawns after 11...Bxf6 12 Qxd5+ Kh8 13 Bxa8 Qxa8 14 Qxa8 Rxa8. ³ White is up two pieces and a pawn after 12...Bxb3 13 Bxe8 Raxd8 14 axb3.

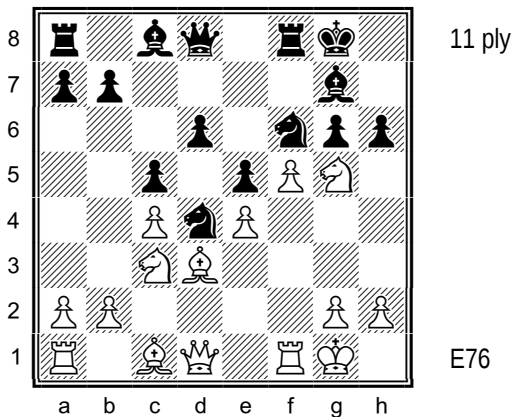


11 ply

B85

594. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Ba7 Nxc2¹ 24 Bxb8 Nxa1 25 Bxd6 Nxb3² 26 Bxe7 Rxc4 27 Bxf6 gxf6³ 28 Nd5. What is the material balance?

¹ 23...Ra8 can be met by 24 Bb6 (24 Nb6? Qxa7) Rb8 with a possible repetition after 25 Ba7. ² 25...Bxd6 drops the exchange to 26 Nxd6. ³ White is winning after 27... Rxc3 28 Qg3 g6 29 Qxe5, for example, 29...Rc8 30 Bh8 f6 31 Qxf6 Bc6 32 e5, with the threat of 33 Rd8+ Rxd8 34 Qxd8+ Kf7 35 e6, mate.

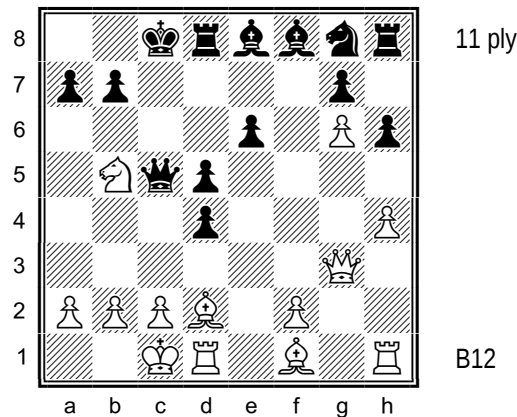


11 ply

E76

595. White's Knight on g5 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 13 fxg6 hxg5 14 Bxg5 Bg4¹ 15 Bxf6 Qd7² 16 Bxg7 Bxd1 17 Bxf8 Rxf8 18 Raxd1. What is the material balance?

¹ 14...Be6 may be better. ² White is up two pawns after 15...Bxf6 16 Qxg4. White is up a pawn and has connected passed pawns on the Kingside after 15...Bxd1 16 Bxd8 Rxf1 17 Bxf1 Bh6 18 Bc7 Bf8 and ...Bxg6.



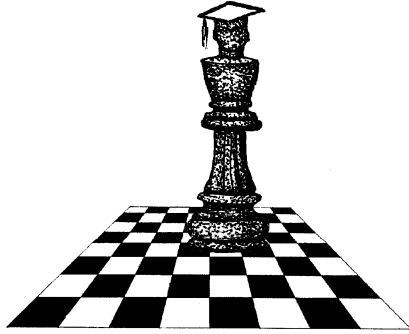
11 ply

B12

596. Black has a 2-1 advantage n b5, but Black's Queen is tied to the defense of c7. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Bb4 Qb6¹ 21 Bxf8 Bxb5 22 Bxg7 Bxf1 23 Bxh8 Be2 24 Bxd4 Qa6 25 Rde1. What is the material balance?

¹ 20...Qxb4 allows 21 Qc7, mate.

CHESS VISUALIZATION
COURSE



CHAPTER 21. RABID PAWNS

This chapter contains exercises that feature the raid of a rabid pawn into enemy territory, usually winning enemy pieces situated on the sixth and seventh ranks, with a threat to capture a piece on the back rank. Typical raids include the captures Pe5-f6-e7/g7, with the threat to capture a piece on d8/f8/g8, or the captures Pd5/b5-c6-b7/d7, with the threat to capture a piece on a8/c8/e8. Rabid pawns can appear on other squares as well, such as a White pawn on h5 capturing on g6 and f7/h7, with the threat to capture another piece on e8/g8.

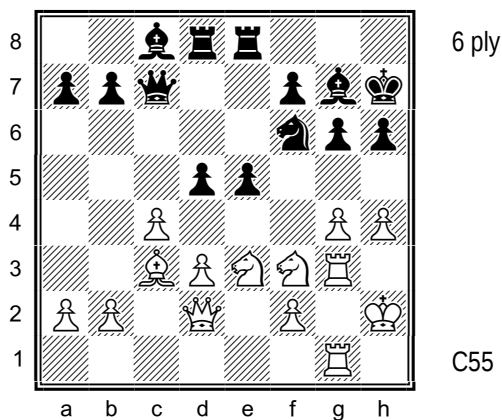
Most of the exercises in this chapter are of the “two-way street” variety, where both sides alternate capturing pieces and making threats in each other’s half of the board. Typical features include the following:

- ✧ Both sides have a rabid pawn – see exercises 597, 599, 600, 606, 612, 616, 618, 620, 623, and 624;
- ✧ A rabid White pawn is met with ...Bb4, ...Qa5, and ...Bxc3 against White’s uncastled King – see exercises 607, 613, and 615; and
- ✧ Black counters the rabid pawn with a rabid Knight – see exercise 603.

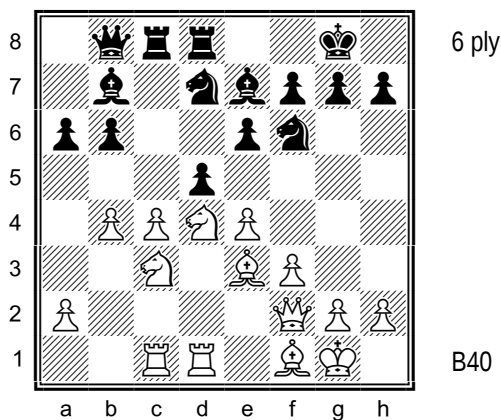
For exercises that show when the second player to capture gains the advantage, see exercises 597 and 600.

This chapter contains twenty-eight exercises ranging in depth from six to eleven half-moves, as seen in the following table:

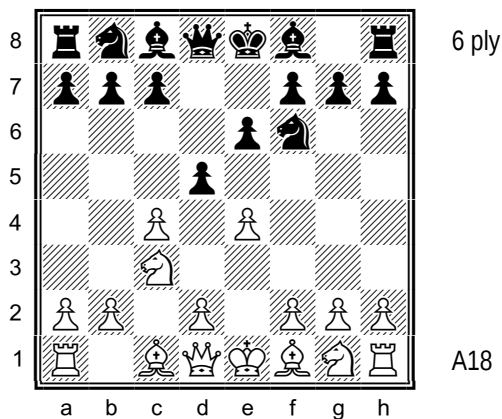
Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13 ⁺	TOTAL
Exercises:	-	-	4	8	6	6	2	2	-	-	28



597. Visualize the position after the moves 23 g5 d4 24 gxf6 dxc3 25 bxc3 Bxf6. What's the material balance?

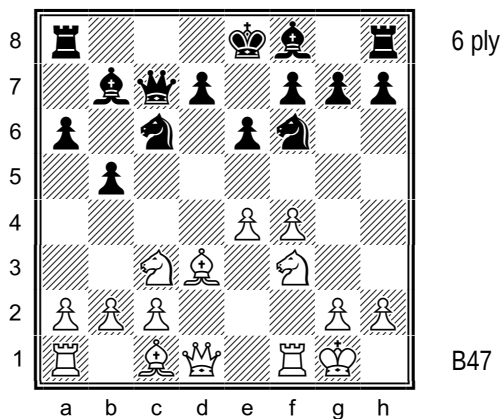


598. Visualize the position after the moves 17 cxd5 Bxb4 18 dxe6 Rxc3 19 exd7 Nxd7. What is the material balance?



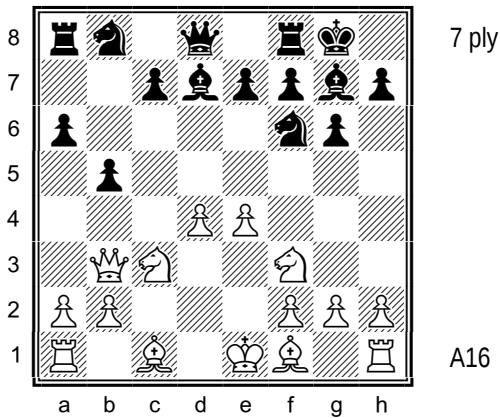
599. Visualize the position after the moves 4 e5 d4 5 exf6 dxc3 6 bxc3¹ Qxf6. What is the material balance?

¹ Material is even after 6 fxg7 cxd2+ 7 Bxd2 Bxg7 Qc2.



600. Visualize the position after the moves 10 e5 b4 11 exf6 bxc3 12 bxc3¹ gxf6. What is the material balance?

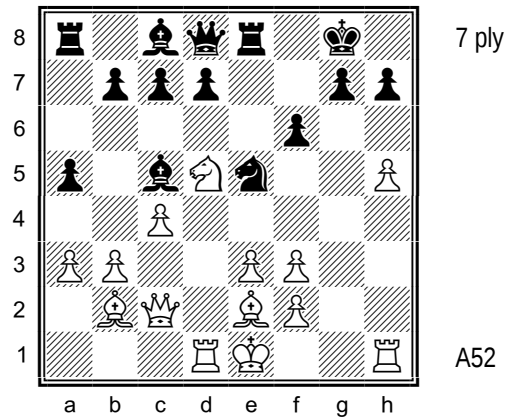
¹ Taking on g7 only helps Black: 12 fxg7 Bxg7 13 bxc3 Bxc3, when material is even, but Black has a strong Bishop on c3.



7 ply

A16

601. Visualize the position after the moves 10 e5 Be6 11 exf6 Bxb3 12 fxg7 Kxg7 13 axb3. What is the material balance?

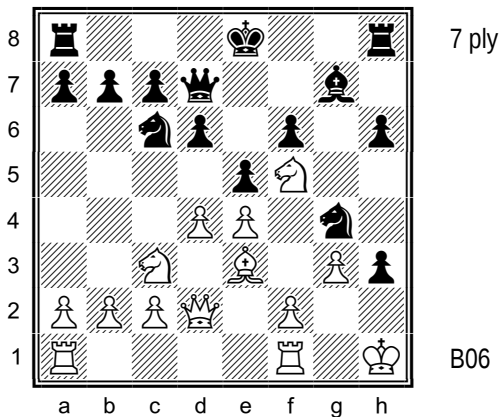


7 ply

A52

602. Visualize the position after the moves 19 f4 c6 20 fxe5 cxd5 21 exf6 gxf6¹ 22 Rxd5². What is the material balance?

¹ 21...bxc4 loses to 22 Bxc4+ Kf8 23 fxg7+ Ke7 24 Qe4, mate. ² The actual game continued 22 Rg1+ Kh8 23 Rxd5 d6 24 Rdg5 Be6 25 Rg7 Bg8 26 Rd7 (1-0).

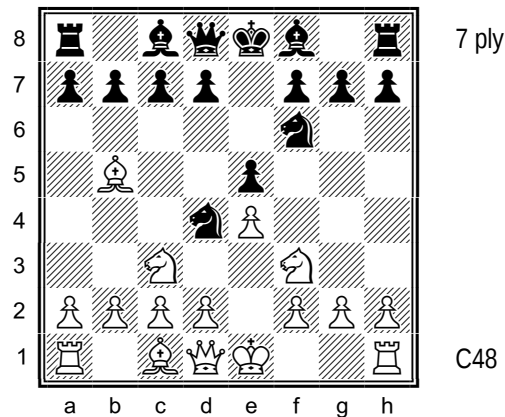


7 ply

B06

603. Visualize the position after the moves 17 d5 Nxe3¹ 18 dxc6 Nxf1 19 cxd7+ Kxd7 20 Rxf1². What is the material balance?

¹ Moving the Knight is better. ² Black resigned here.

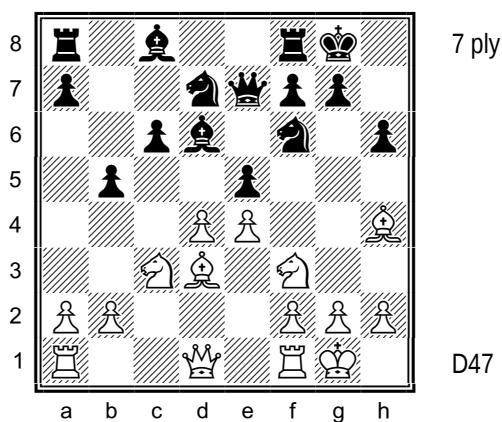


7 ply

C48

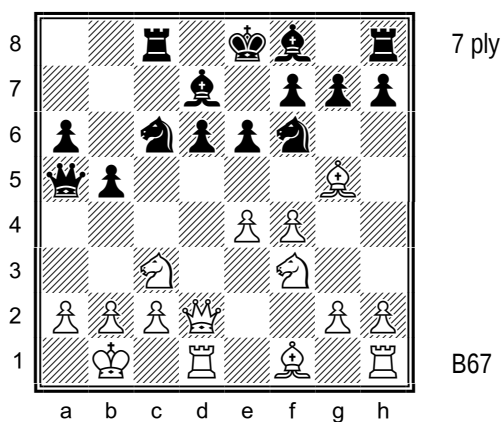
604. Visualize the position after the moves 5 Nxd4 exd4 6 e5 dxc3 7 exf6 Qxf6¹ 8 dxc3. What is the material balance?

¹ Black is up a pawn after 7...cxd2+ 8 Bxd2 Qxf6, but White has compensation after 9 0-0.



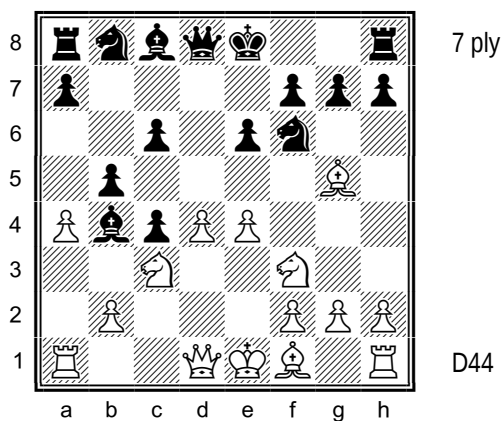
605. Visualize the position after the moves 13 d5 b4 14 dxc6 bxc3 15 cxd7 Bxd7¹ 16 bxc3. What is the material balance?

¹ 15...cxb2 drops a piece to 16 dxc8=Q bxa1=Q 17 Qxf8+ Rxf8 18 Qxa1 or 16...Rfxc8 17 Rb1.



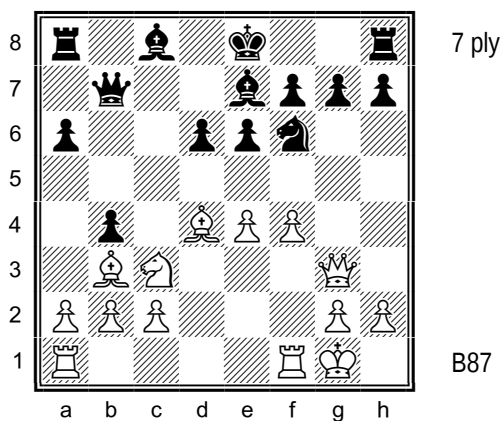
606. Visualize the position after the moves 12 e5 b4¹ 13 exf6 bxc3 14 fxg7 Bxg7² 15 Qxd6. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a pawn after 12...Nd5 13 Nxd5 Qxd2 14 Rxd2 exd5 15 Rxd5. ² The actual game continued 14...cxd2 15 gxh8=Q, when White is up a Rook (1-0, 25).



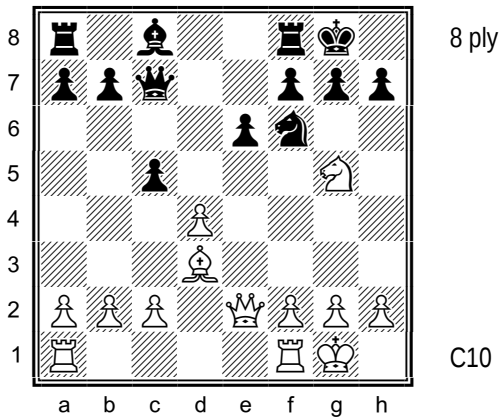
607. Black is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 8 e5 h6¹ 9 exf6² hxg5 10 fxg7 Rg8 and 11...Rxd7. What is the material balance?

¹ Two of Black's pieces are under attack after 8...Qa5 9 axb5 Bxc3+ 10 bxc3 Qxc3+ 11 Bd2. ² Black remains up a pawn after 9 Bh4 g5 10 exf6 gxh4 11 Nxh4 Qxf6, but White can also play 10 Nxd5, when the game might continue 10...Bxc3+ 11 bxc3 Qa5.



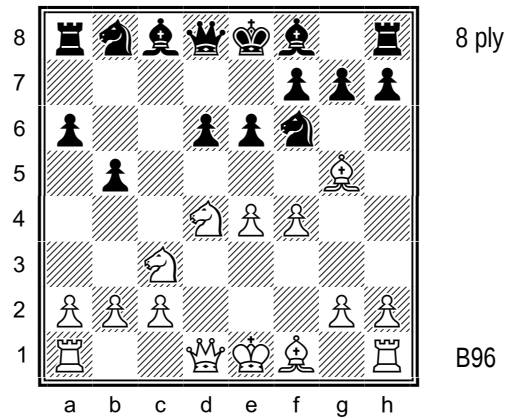
608. Visualize the position after the moves 14 e5 bxc3 15 Qxd7 Rf8¹ 16 exf6 Bd8 17 bxc3. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up the exchange after 15...cxb2 16 Qxd7 Bf8 17 Rab1, while 15...Rg8 can be met by 16 exf6, for example, 16...Rxd7 17 fxg7 and the pawn queens or 16...Bxf6 17 Qxd7, which not only wins Black's Rook, but the Bf6 as well, e.g., 17...Ke7 18 Bxf6, when 18...Kxf6 loses to 19 Qg5, mate.



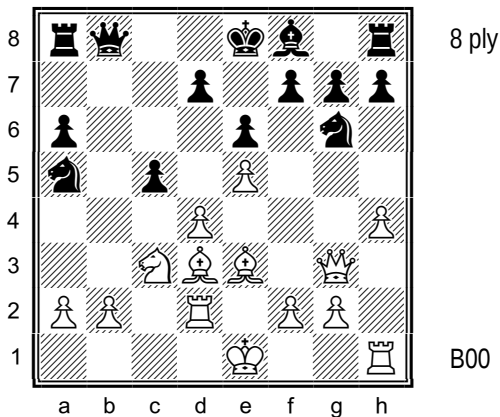
609. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Qe5¹ Qxe5 14 dxe5 h6 15 exf6 hxg5 16 fxg7 Kxg7. What is the material balance?

¹ The double attack on Black's Queen and pawn on c5 forces Black's reply.



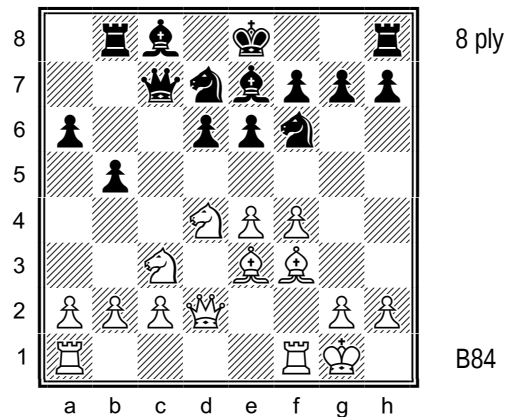
610. Visualize the position after the moves 8 e5 dxe5¹ 9 fxe5 Qc7 10 exf6 Qe5+ 11 Be2 Qxg5. What's the material balance?

¹ Black's kingside pawns are broken up after 8...h6 9 Bh4 dxe5 10 fxe5 g5 11 exf6 gxh4.



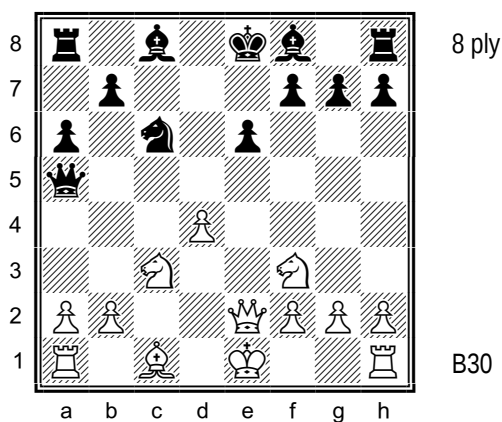
611. Visualize the position after the moves 15 h5 c4 16 hxg6 cxd3 17 Rxh7 Rg8¹ 18 gxf7+ Kxf7. What's the material balance?

¹ 17...Rxh7 loses to 18 gxh7, and the pawns queens.



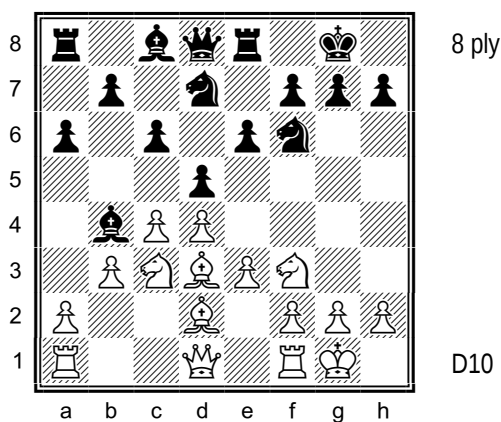
612. Visualize the position after the moves 12 e5 b4 13 exf6 bxc3 14 fxg7 Rg8¹ 15 bxc3 and ...Rxg7. What is the material balance?

¹ 14...cxd2 loses a Rook to 15 gxh8+Q.



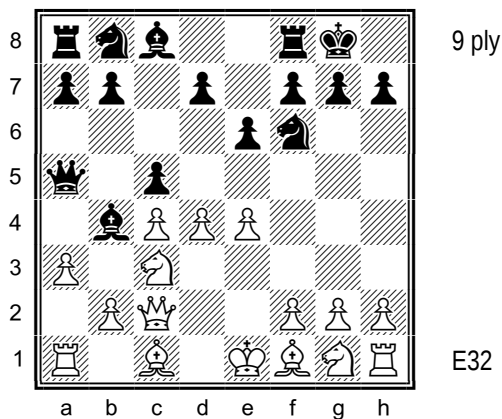
613. Visualize the position after the moves 12 d5 Bb4 13 dxc6¹ Bxc3+ 14 bxc3 Qxc3+ 15 Qd2 Qxa1. What's the material balance?

¹ The position is level after 13 0-0 Ne7 14 dxe6 Bxe6 15 Bd2. 13 Bd2 loses a pawn to 13...Bxc3 14 dxc6 (14 Bxc3 Qxd5) Bxd2+ 15 Nxd2 bxc6.

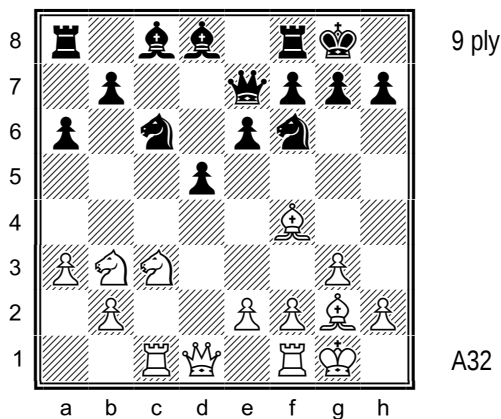


614. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Nxd5 Nxd5¹ 11 cxd5 Bxd2 12 dxc6 Ba5 13 cxd7 Bxd7. What is the material balance?

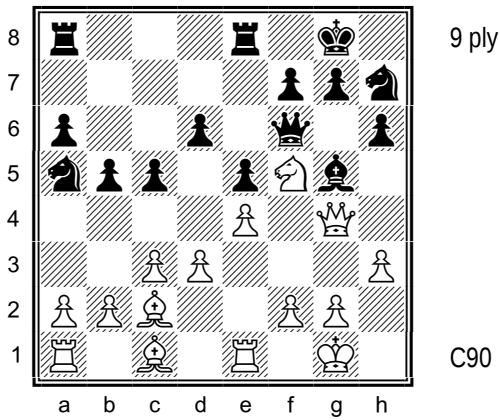
¹ White is up a pawn after either 10...exd5 11 Bxb4 or 10...Bxd2 11 Nxf6+ Qxf6 12 Nxd2.



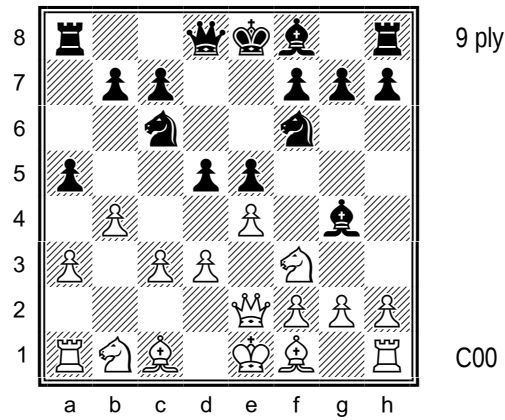
615. Visualize the position after the moves 7 e5 cxd4 8 exf6 dxc3 9 axb4 Qxa1 10 fxg7 Re8 11 bxc3. What is the material balance?



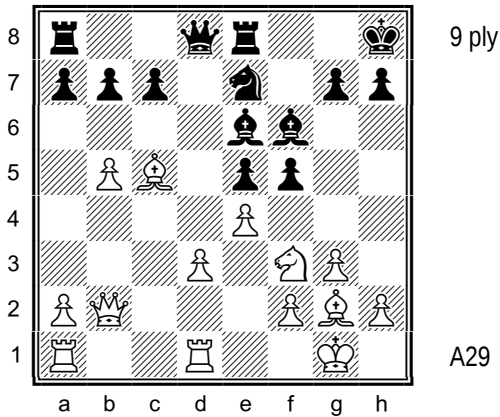
616. Visualize the position after the moves 15 e4 e5 16 exd5 exf4 17 dxc6 fxg3 18 hxg3 bxc6. What is the material balance after White wins Black's pawn on c6?



617. Black's Bishop on g5 can become trapped. Visualize the position after the moves 18 f4 exf4 19 h4 g6 20 hxg5 gxf5 21 gxf6+ fxg4 22 Bxf4. What's the material balance?

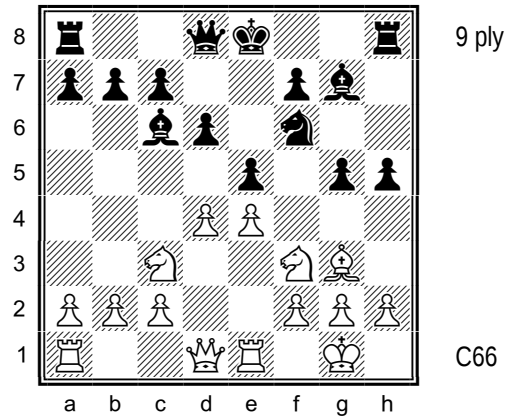


618. Visualize the position after the moves 8 b5 dxe4 9 bxc6 exf3 10 gxf3 Be6 11 cxb7 Rb8, and ...Rxb7. What is the material balance?



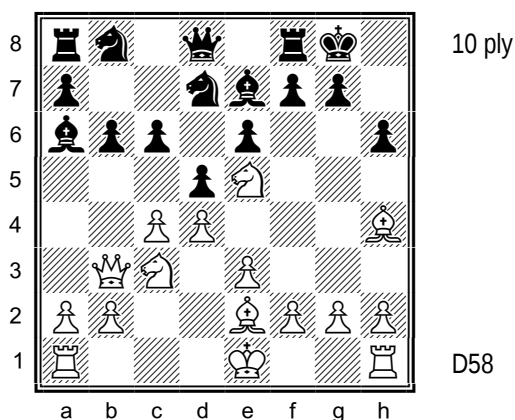
619. White wants to open up the d-file. Visualize the position after the moves 18 d4¹ fxe4² 19 dxe5 Nd5 20 exf6 exf3 21 fxg7+ Kg8 22 Bxf3. What's the material balance?

¹ White's threat is 19 dxe5. ² 18...exd4 is met by 19 e5, winning the trapped Bishop on f6.



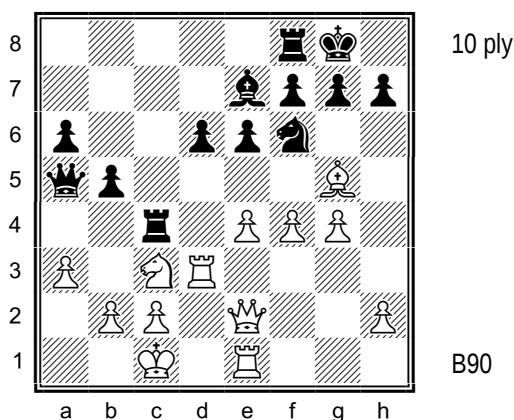
620. Visualize the position after the moves 12 dxe5 h4¹ 13 exf6 hxg3 14 fxg7 gxh2+ 15 Nxh2 Rg8 and ...Rxb7. What's the material balance?

¹ White is up a pawn after 12...Ng4 13 h4 Nxe5 14 Nxg5. Less clear is 13 exd6 h4 14 dxc7 Qxd1 15 Rxd1 hxg3, which gives up a piece for three pawns.



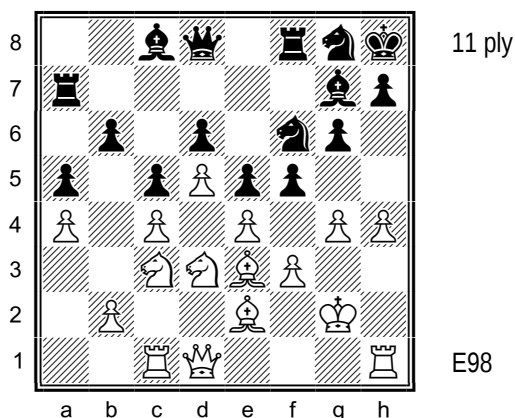
621. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxe7 Qxe7 12 Nxd7 Nxd7 13 cxd5 Bxe2 14 dxe6¹ Ba6² 15 exd7 Qxd7. What is the material balance?

¹ Two of Black's pieces are under attack. ² 14...Qxe6 15 Qxe6 fxe6 16 Kxe2 leaves White up a pawn, while White is up two pawns after 14...Nf6 15 exf7+ Rxf7 16 Nxe2.



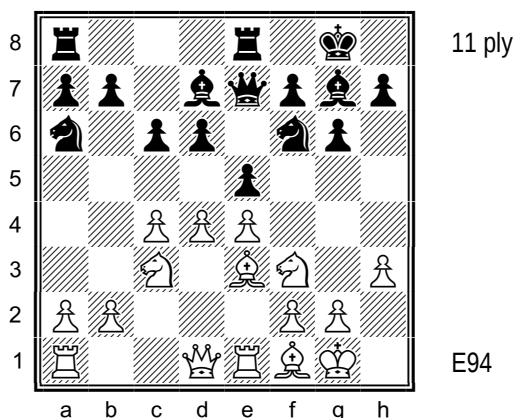
622. Black's threat of 19...b4 gives him an advantage. Watch the fifth rank. Visualize the position after the moves 20 e5 dxe5 21 fxe5 b4 22 exf6 Qxg5+ 23 Kb1 bxc3¹ 24 fxe7 Qxe7. What's the material balance?

¹ 23...Qxf6 is also possible.



623. Visualize the position after the moves 21 exf5 gxf5 22 g5¹ e4 23 gxf6 exd3 24 fxg7+ Rxf7 25 Kf2 dxe2 26 Nxe2. What's the material balance?

¹ 22 gxf5 22...Ne7, intending 23...Nxf5 and 24...Rg8, just helps Black.



624. Visualize the position after the moves 12 c5 exd4¹ 13 cxd6 Qxd6 14 e5 Qc7 15 exf6 dxe3 16 fxg7 exf2+ 17 Kxf2². What's the material balance?

¹ Black's Knight is trapped after 12...dxc5 13 dxe5 Nh5 14 g4. ² Black can't take the g-pawn because of 18 Qd4+ Kg8 19 Ne4, with the threat of Nf6+, followed by either Nxe8 or Nxd7.

CHAPTER 22. RABID PASSED PAWNS

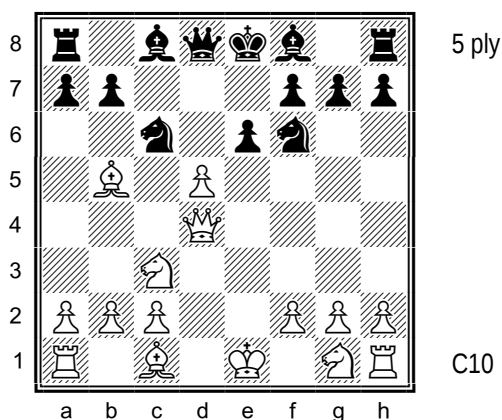
This chapter contains exercises that feature the raid of a rabid pawn into enemy territory, a raid that ends with the pawn capturing an enemy piece on the back rank and simultaneously promoting to a Queen. This “capture plus promotion” move is one of the most powerful in chess because it enables a player to gain two pieces in a single move; that is, if White’s pawn captures a Black Rook on the back rank and simultaneously promotes to Queen, then White will gain a Queen and a Rook for a pawn. The startling power of this idea is seen in exercise 637.

Typical raids found in these exercises include the following:

- ✧ The captures Pd5-c6-b7-a8/c8 – see exercises 625, 631, 647, 652, and 659;
- ✧ The captures Pe5-f6-g7-h8/f8 – see exercises 627, 630, 632, 642, 641, 644, and 648; and
- ✧ The captures Pe5-d6-c7/e7-b8/d8/f8 – see exercises 629, 633, 634, 635, 639, and 655.

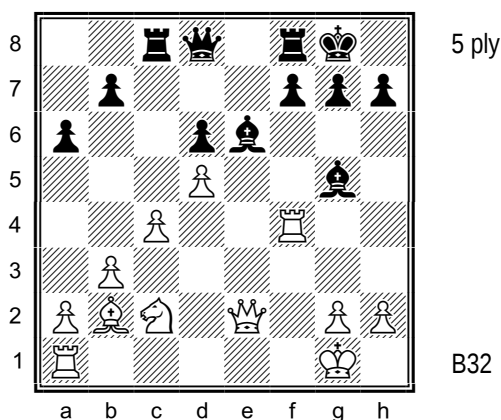
This chapter contains thirty-six exercises ranging in depth from five to eleven half-moves, as seen in the following table:

Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13⁺	TOTAL
Exercises:	-	2	6	6	4	12	4	2	-	-	36



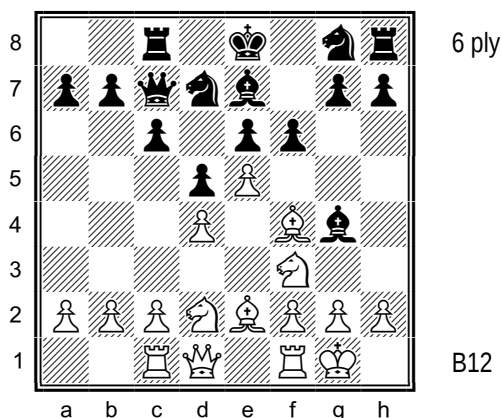
625. White is up a pawn. Black just played 6...Nc6, thinking that White's d-pawn is pinned. Visualize the position after the moves 7 dxc6 Qxd4¹ 8 cxb7+ Bd7 9 bxa8=Q+. What is the material balance?

¹ 7...bxc6 8 Bxc6+ Bd7 9 Bxa8 Qxa8 leaves White up a Rook and a pawn.

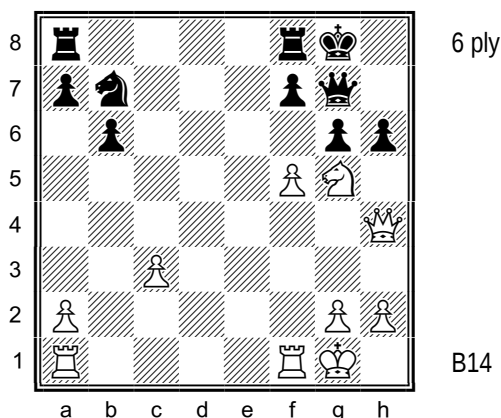


626. White's Rook is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 19 dxe6 Bxf4 20 e7¹ Qd7² 21 exf8=Q+ Rxf8. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here. ² 20...Qb6+ is answered by 21 Bd4, when two of Black's pieces are still under attack.

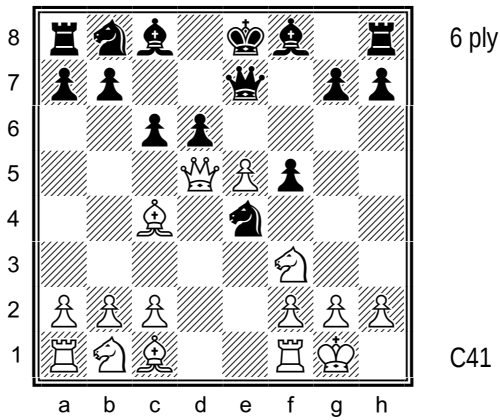


627. Visualize the position after the moves 11 exf6 Qxf4 12 fxg7 Bf6 13 gxh8=Q Bxh8. What is the material balance?



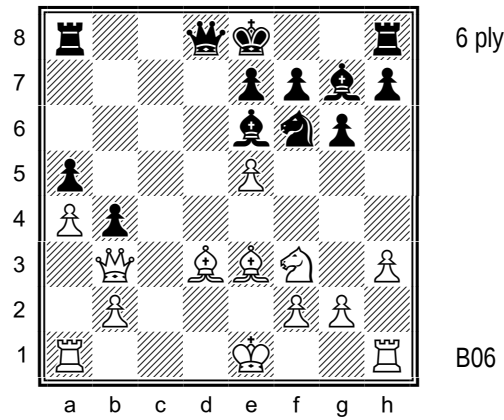
628. Visualize the position after the moves 23 f6 hxg5¹ 24 fxg7 gxh4 25 gxf8=Q+ Rxf8. What is the material balance?

¹ Black's Queen is buried after 23...Qh8 24 Ne4, when 24...g5? loses to 25 Nxg5 hxg5 26 Qxg5+ Kh7 27 Rf3.



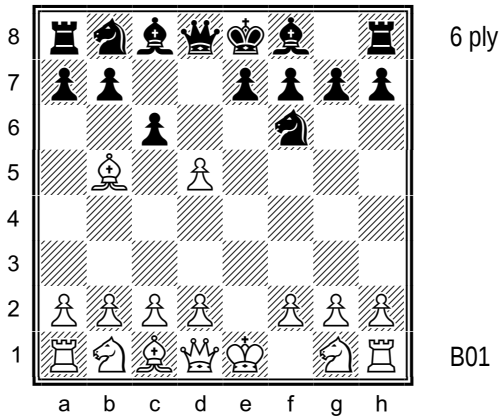
629. White's Queen is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 8 exd6 cxd5¹ 9 dxe7 dxc4² 10 exf8=Q+ Kxf8. What is the material balance?

¹ White is better after 8...Nxd6, for example, 9 Qd4 Qd7 10 Re1+. ² White is up a pawn after 9...Bxe7 10 Bxd5.



630. White's Queen is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 16 exf6 Bxb3 17 fxg7 Kd7¹ 18 gxh8=Q Qxh8². What is the material balance?

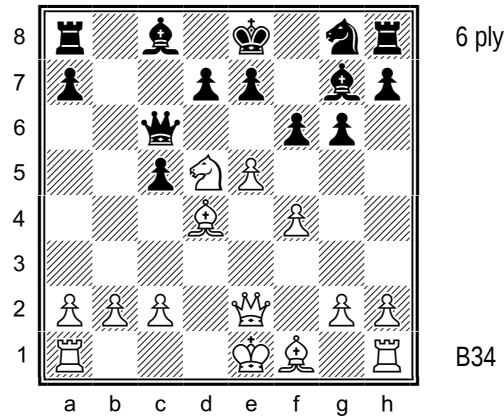
¹ 17...Rg8 loses the Queen to 18 Bb5+. ² In the actual game White played some tempo moves before winning Black's Rook on h8: 18 Bb5+ Kd6 19 Bf4+ Ke6 20 gxh8=Q Qxh8 (1-0, 23).



631. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 4 dxc6 Qa5¹ 5 cxb7+ Kd8² 6 bxa8=Q Qxb5. What is the material balance?

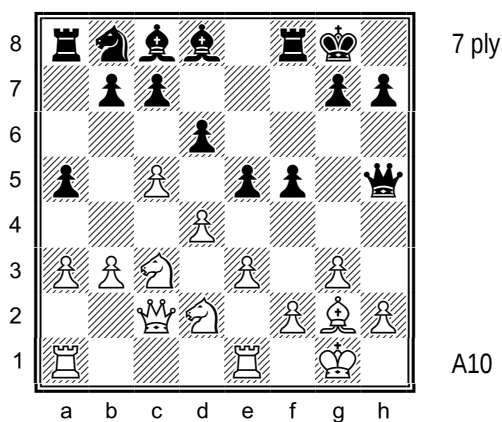
¹ White remains up a pawn after 4...Nxc6 or 4... bxc6.

² In the actual game Black chose 5...Qxb5, which was met by 6 bxc8=Q, mate (1-0).



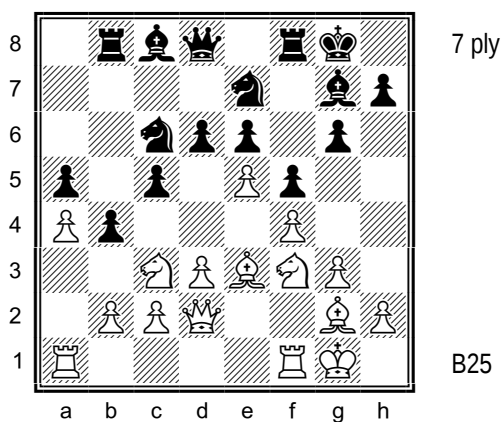
632. Two of White's pieces are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 13 exf6 Qxd5¹ 14 fxg7 Qxd4 15 gxh8=Q Qxh8. What is the material balance?

¹ Two alternatives: a) 13...Bxf6 14 Bxf6 Qxd5 (14...Nxf6 allows 15 Qxe7 is mate) 15 Bxh8 leaves White up a Rook; b) 13...Bf8 14 fxe7 cxd4 (14... Qxd5 drops the Rook to 15 exf8=Q+ Kxf8 16 Bxh8) 15 exf8=Q+ Kxf8 16 Qe5, when White is up a pawn and has the better position.



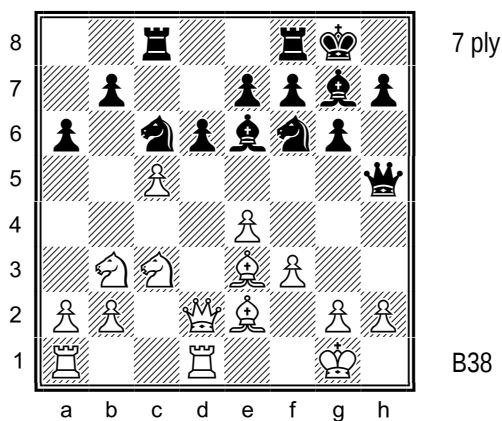
633. Visualize the position after the moves 16 cxd6 exd4¹ 17 dxc7 dxc3 18 cxd8=Q Rxd8 19 Qxc3. What is the material balance?

¹ White wins a pawn after 16...cxd6 17 Nb5 Be7 (17...Qg6 18 Qxc8) 18 Qc7.



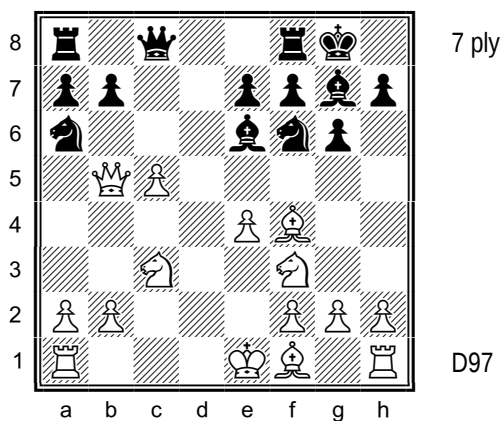
634. Visualize the position after the moves 14 exd6 bxc3¹ 15 dxe7 cxd2² 16 exd8=Q Rxd8 17 Nxd2. What is the material balance?

¹ Material is even after 14...Qxd6 15 Nb5 Qd7 16 Bxc5 Bxb2. ² White is up a pawn after 15...Qxe7 16 bxc3.



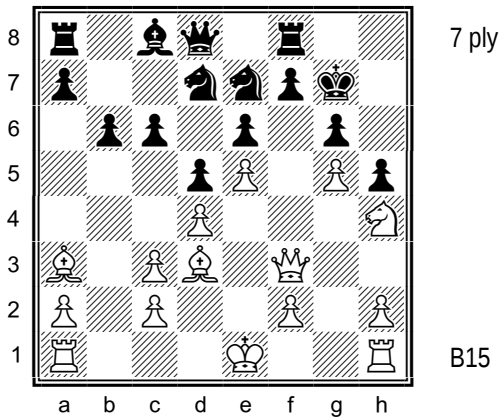
635. Visualize the position after the moves 15 cxd6 Bxb3¹ 16 dxe7 Bxd1 17 exf8=Q+ Bxf8 18 Rxd1. What is the material balance?

¹ After 15...Rfd8 White can save the pawn with 16 f4 Bg4 17 e5.



636. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 11 c6 Nc7 12 cxb7 Nxb5 13 bxc8=Q Raxc8¹ 14 Bxb5. What is the material balance?

¹ In the actual game Black played 13...Nxc3, allowing White to save his Queen with 14 Qxc3 (1-0, 15).

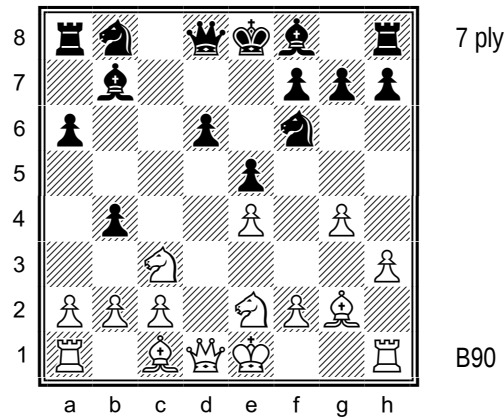


7 ply

B15

637. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Qf6+ Nxf6¹ 14 gxf6+ Kh7 15 fxe7 Qxe7² 16 Bxe7. What is the material balance?

¹ Other moves drop a piece to 14 Qxe7. ² White is up a Rook and two pieces for a pawn after 15... Qe8 16 exf8=Q.

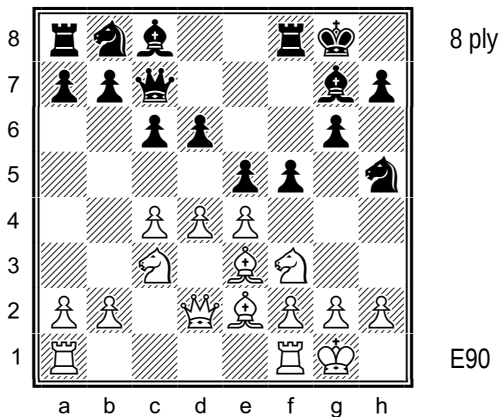


7 ply

B90

638. Visualize the position after the moves 10 g5 bxc3 11 gxf6 cxb2 12 fxg7¹ bxa1=Q² 13 gxh8=Q. What is the material balance?

¹ Black is up a pawn with the better position after 12 Bxb2 Qxf6. ² 12...Bxg7 13 Bxb2 is similar to the game, except there's only one pair of Queens on the board.

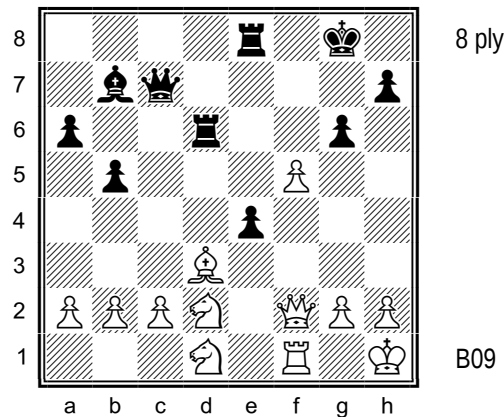


8 ply

E90

639. Visualize the position after the moves 11 dxe5 f4¹ 12 exd6 fxe3 13 dxc7 exd2 14 cxb8=Q Rxb8. What's the material balance after White wins Black's pawn on d2?

¹ 11...dxe5 keeps the material even.

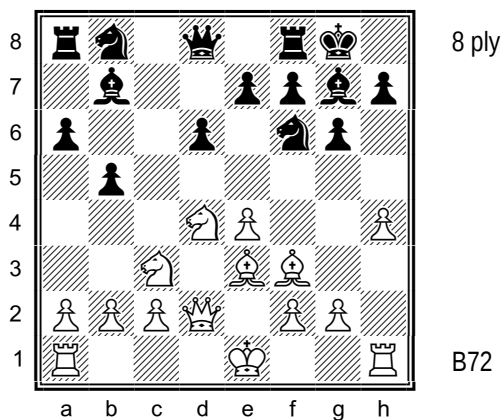


8 ply

B09

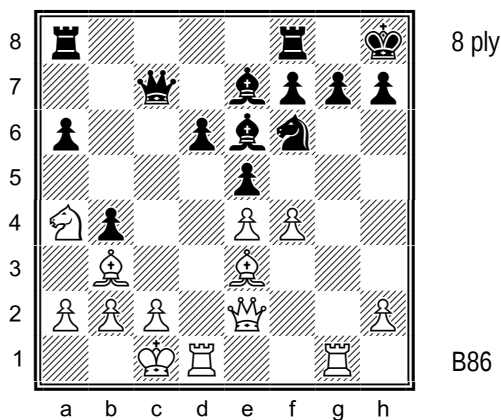
640. White has two pieces and a pawn for a Rook, but his Bd3 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 24 fxg6¹ exd3 25 Qf7+ Qxf7 26 gxf7+ Kf8 27 fxe8=Q+ Kxe8. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here.



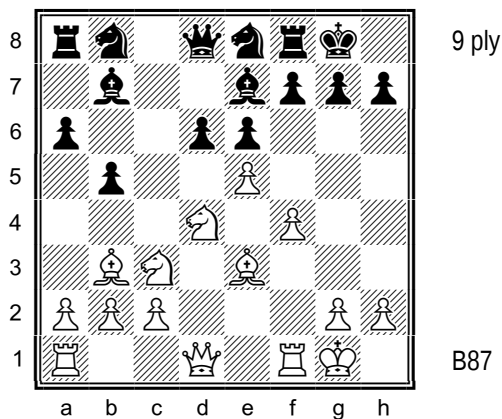
641. Visualize the position after the moves 11 e5 Bxf3¹ 12 exf6 Bxg2² 13 fxg7 Bxh1 14 gxf8=Q+ Kxf8. What is the material balance?

¹ Better is 11...dxe5 12 Bxb7 Ra7, when two of White's pieces are under attack. ² White is up a piece and a pawn after 12...Bxf6 13 Nxf3.

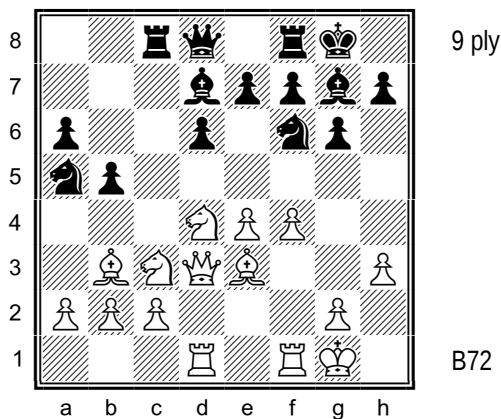


642. Visualize the position after the moves 18 fxe5 Bxb3¹ 19 exf6 Bxa4² 20 fxg7+³ Kg8 21 gxf8=Q+ Kxf8. What is the material balance?

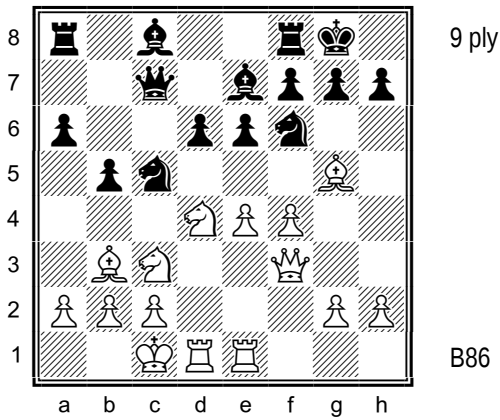
¹ 18...dxe5 19 Bxe6 fxe6 gives White the better position. ² White is up a piece for a pawn after 19...Bxf6 20 axb3. ³ Black has an extra pawn and an attack along the c-file after 20 fxe7 Qxe7.



643. Visualize the position after the moves 12 f5 dxe5 13 fxe6 exd4 14 exf7+ Kh8 15 fxe8=Q Rxe8 16 Bxd4. What is the material balance?



644. Visualize the position after the moves 14 e5 Nxb3 15 exf6 Nc5 16 fxg7 Nxd3 17 gxf8=Q+ Kxf8 18 Rxd3. What is the material balance?

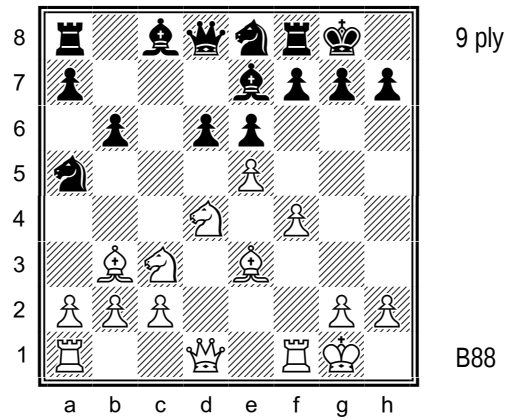


9 ply

B86

645. Visualize the position after the moves 13 e5 Bb7 14 exf6 Bxf3 15 fxe7 Bxd1¹ 16 exf8=Q+ Rxf8 17 Rxd1. What is the material balance?

¹ White has three pieces for the Queen after 15...Rfe8 16 Nxf3.

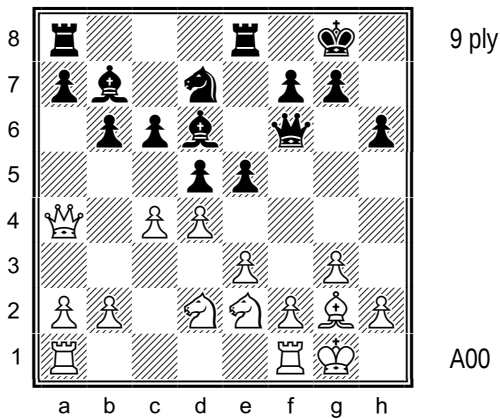


9 ply

B88

646. Visualize the position after the moves 12 f5 dxe5 13 fxe6 exd4¹ 14 exf7+ Kh8 15 fxe8=Q Qxe8 16 Bxd4. What is the material balance?

¹ 13...Nxb3 14 Nc6 Qd6 15 Nxe7+ Qxe7 16 exf7+ Rxf7 17 axb3 gives White only a small advantage.

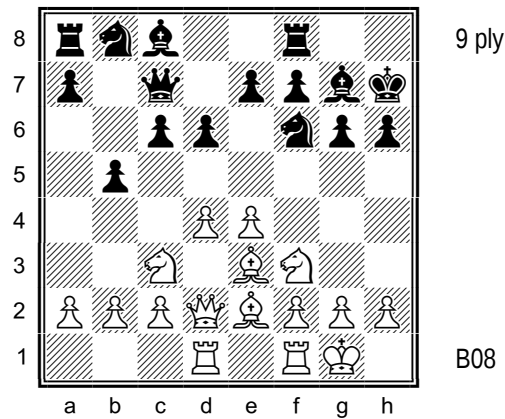


9 ply

A00

647. Black's c-pawn is pinned. Visualize the position after the moves 14 cxd5 exd4¹ 15 dxc6 Nc5 16 cxb7 Nxa4² 17 bxa8=Q Rxa8 18 Bxa8. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a pawn after 14...b5 15 Qb3 cxd5 16 Bxd5. ² White it up a Rook after 15...d3 16 cxb7 dxe2 17 bxa8=Q exf1=Q+ 18 Rxf1 Rxa8 19 Bxa8.

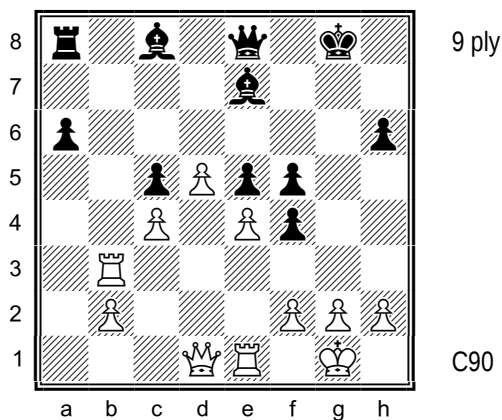


9 ply

B08

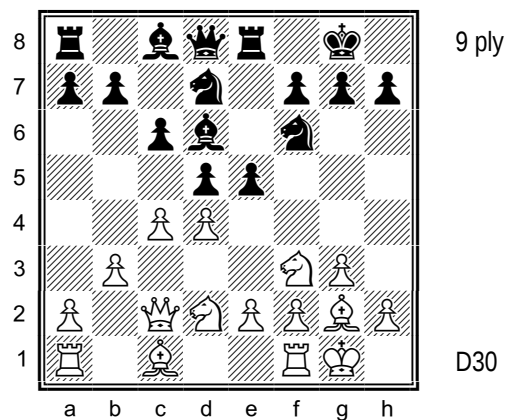
648. Visualize the position after the moves 11 e5 dxe5 12 dxe5 b4¹ 13 exf6 bxc3 14 fxg7² cxd2³ 15 gxf8=Q. What is the material balance?

¹ Better is 12...Ng4. ² Material is even after 14 Qxc3 Bxf6 15 Bd4 Nd7. ³ Black resigned here.



649. Black has two pieces for a Rook and pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 29 d6 Bf6 30 Qd5+ Be6 31 d7 Bxd5¹ 32 dxe8=Q+ Rxe8 33 exd5. What is the material balance?

¹ 31...Qxd7 drops the Ra7, while 31...Qd8 drops the Be6.

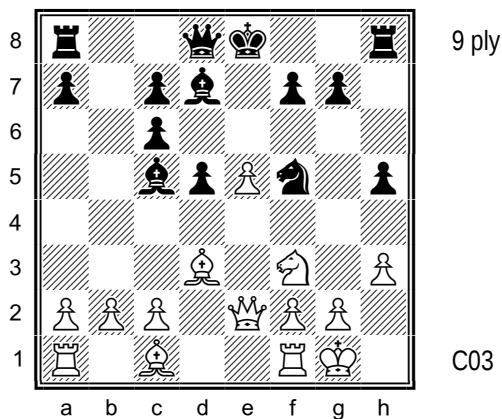


650. Visualize the position after the moves 10 cxd5 e4¹ 11 dxc6 exf3 12 cxd7 fxg2² 13 dxe8=Q+ Qxe8 14 Re1³. What is the material balance?

¹ 10...cxd5 11 dxe5 Nxe5 12 Bb2 is about equal.

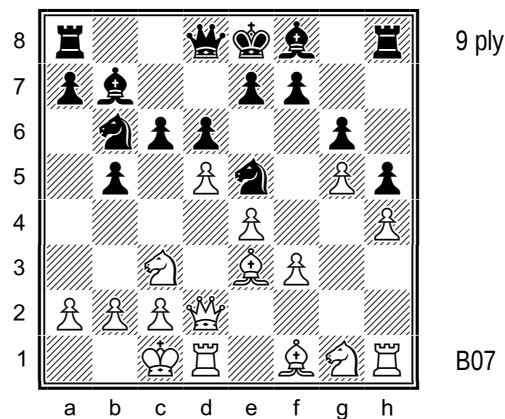
² White is up two pawns after 12...Bxd7 13 Bxf3.

³ 14 Kxg2 drops the e-pawn.



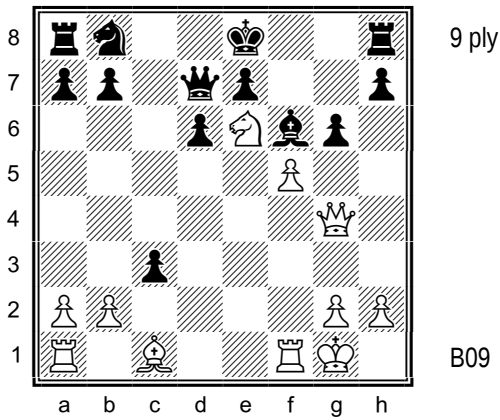
651. Visualize the position after the moves 14 e6 Ng3¹ 15 exd7+ Kf8² 16 Qe8+ Qxe8 17 dxe8=Q+ Rxe8 18 Re1. What is the material balance?

¹ 14...Bxe6 loses a piece to 15 Bxf5. ² White is up a piece for a pawn after 15...Kxd7 16 Qe5 h4 (16...Nxf1 17 Bf5 is mate) 17 Bf5+ Nxf5 18 Qxf5+.



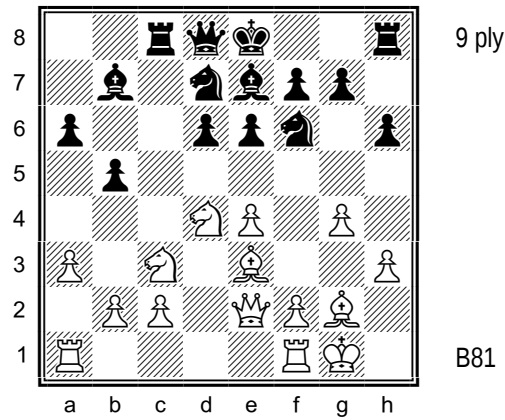
652. Visualize the position after the moves 12 dxc6 Nbc4¹ 13 cxb7 Nxd2² 14 Bxb5+ Nd7 15 bxa8=Q Qxa8 16 Rxd2. What is the material balance?

¹ 12...Bxc6 can be met by 13 Qd4 with the threat of 14 f4. ² 13...Rb8 can be met by 14 Qd4 Rxb7 15 Bxc4 bxc4 16 f4, when White will be up either a Rook or two pieces.



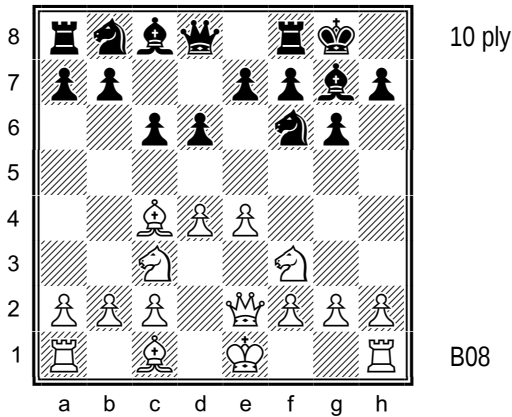
653. White is down two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 16 fxg6 Rg8¹ 17 gxh7 Rxc4 18 h8=Q+² Kf7³ 19 Nd8+⁴ Qxd8 20 Qxd8. What is the material balance?

¹ 16...hxg6 17 Qxg6, mate; 16...h5 17 g7 Rg8 18 Qg6, mate. ² Black resigned here. ³ 18...Bxh8 19 Rf8, mate. ⁴ 19 Nd8+ allows 19...Kg6 20 Qh6, mate.



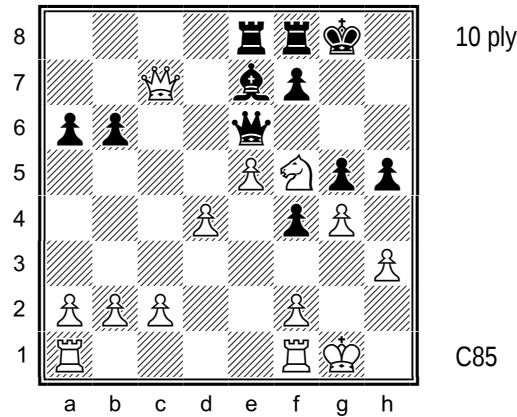
654. Visualize the position after the moves 13 e5 Bxg2 14 exf6 Bxf1¹ 15 fxe7 Bxe2² 16 exd8=Q+ Kxd8 17 Ndxe2. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a piece for a pawn after 14...Bxf6 15 Kxg2. ² 15...Qxe7 16 Rxf1 is similar to the game, except that the Queens remain on the board.



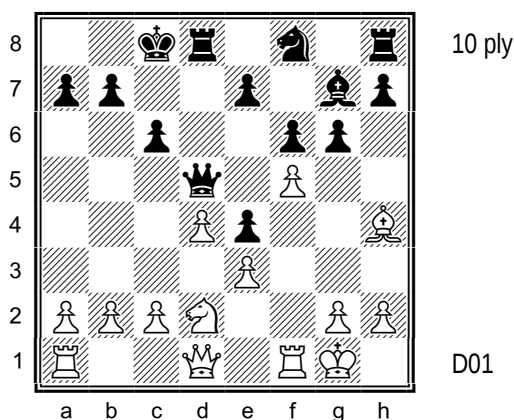
655. Visualize the position after the moves 7 e5 Nd5¹ 8 exd6 Nxc3 9 dxe7 Nxe2 10 exd8=Q Rxd8 11 Kxe2 Bxd4. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a piece for a pawn after 7...d5 8 exf6 exf6 9 Bd3.



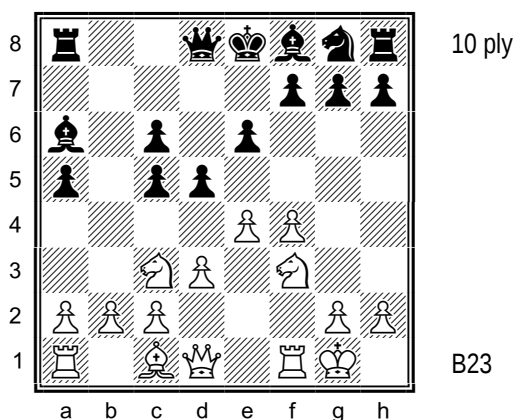
656. White is up two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 25 d5 Bd8¹ 26 dxe6² Bxc7 27 e7 hxg4 28 exf8=Q+ Kxf8 29 hxg4 Bxe5. What is the material balance?

¹ 15...Qxd5 drops a Rook to Nxe7+. ² Black resigned here.



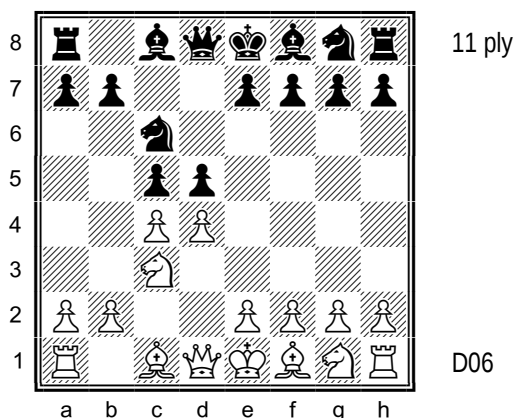
657. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Qg4 e6¹ 17 fxe6² f5³ 18 e7 fxg4⁴ 19 exd8=Q+ Qxd8 20 Bxd8 Kxd8. What is the material balance?

¹ 16...Kb8 drops the e-pawn. ² With a double attack on Black's f-pawn. ³ White is up a pawn with the better position after either 17...Qxe6 18 Qxe6+ Nxe6 19 Nxe4 or 17...Nxe6 18 Bxf6. ⁴ White is up a piece after 18...Re8 19 exf8=Q Rhxf8 20 Qf4.



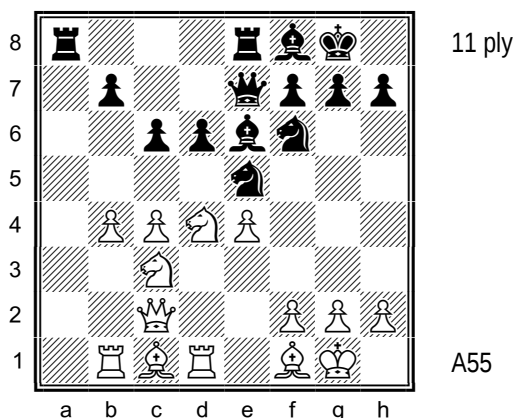
658. Visualize the position after the moves 9 f5 dxe4 10 fxe6 exf3 11 Qxf3¹ Qc7² 12 exf7+ Kd8 13 fxg8=Q Rxg8. What is the material balance?

¹ With the dual threat of 12 Qxf7 mate and 12 Qxc6+. ² 11...Nf6 12 Qxc6+ Ke7 allows 13 Rxf6 Kxf6 (13...gxf6 14 Nd5+ is similar) 14 e7+ Kxe7 15 Nd5+, when Black has to give up his Queen to stop the mate.



659. Visualize the position after the moves 4 cxd5 cxd4¹ 5 dxc6 dxc3 6 Qxd8+ Kxd8 7 cxb7 cxb2² 8 bxc8=Q+ Kxc8 9 Bxb2. What is the material balance?

¹ 4...Nxd4 is better. ² Black is down a pawn after 7... Bxb7 8 bxc3.



660. Visualize the position after the moves 16 f4 Bg4¹ 17 fxe5 Bxd1 18 exf6 Bxc2 19 fxe7 Bxb1² 20 exf8=Q+ Kxf8 21 Nxb1. What is the material balance?

¹ Black's Bishop is trapped after 16...Ned7 17 f5, while his Knight is trapped after 16...Neg4 17 h3 Nh6 18 g4 and 18 g5. ² White is up three pieces for a Rook and pawn after 19...Bxe7 20 Nxc2.

SECTION 6. THREE SECTORS OF THE BOARD

This section contains exercises in which the play typically covers three or more sectors of the board. It includes the following chapters:

CHAPTER 23. THREE SECTORS OF THE BOARD (WHITE TO PLAY)

CHAPTER 24. THREE SECTORS OF THE BOARD (BLACK TO PLAY)

CHAPTER 25. SEEING FARTHER

CHAPTER 26. LONGER VARIATIONS

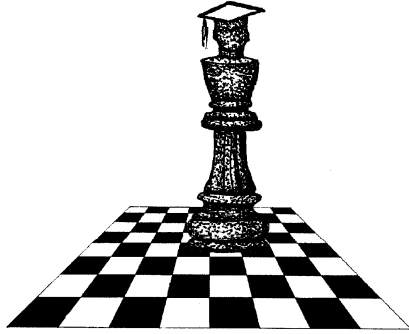
CHAPTER 23, THREE SECTORS OF THE BOARD (WHITE TO PLAY), contains exercises in which the activity covers three or more sectors of the chess board with White to play.

CHAPTER 24, THREE SECTORS OF THE BOARD (BLACK TO PLAY), contains exercises in which the activity covers three or more sectors of the chess board with Black to play.

CHAPTER 25, SEEING FARTHER, contains exercises that simulate situations in which both players envision a series of moves, after which one player can gain a winning position if he has enough foresight.

CHAPTER 26, LONGER VARIATIONS, features exercises that are twelve to nineteen half-moves deep.

CHESS VISUALIZATION
COURSE



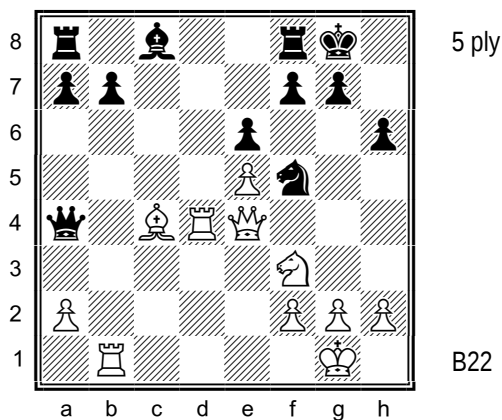
CHAPTER 23. THREE SECTORS OF THE BOARD (WHITE TO PLAY)

This chapter contains exercises in which the activity takes place over three or more sectors of the chess board with White to play. The following are some of the tactics seen in these exercises:

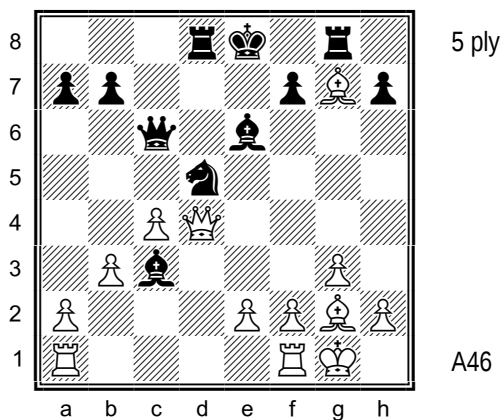
- ✧ File-clearing operations – see exercises 664, 668, 675, 680, 685, 687, 688, and 694;
- ✧ Diagonal-clearing operations– see exercises 662, 665, 669, 691, and 695;
- ✧ Rank-clearing operations – see exercises 661, 678, and 688;
- ✧ Forks – see exercises 674 and 693;
- ✧ Skewers – see exercises 670 and 680;
- ✧ Removing a defender/overworked piece – see exercises 664, 666, 667, 677, 679, 692, 694, and 695;
- ✧ Checks – see exercises 661, 663, 679, 686, 690, 691, and 692;
- ✧ Rabid pawns – see exercises 671, 672, 681, 682, 685, and 692; and
- ✧ Resources against a Queen capture – see exercises 671, 672, 673, 681, 682, and 683.

This chapter contains thirty-six exercises ranging in depth from five to eleven half-moves, as seen in the following table:

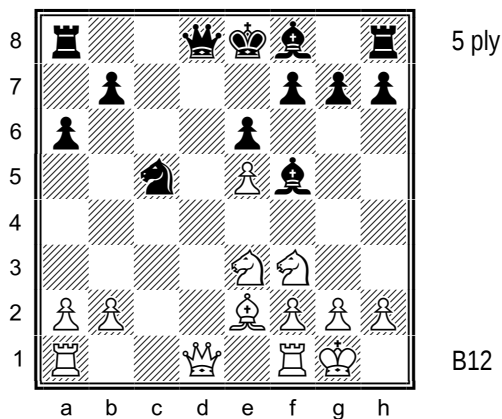
Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13⁺	TOTAL
Exercises:	-	4	-	8	6	10	3	5	-	-	36



661. Black is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Qxf5 exf5 20 Bxf7+ Rxf7 21 Rxa4. What is the material balance?

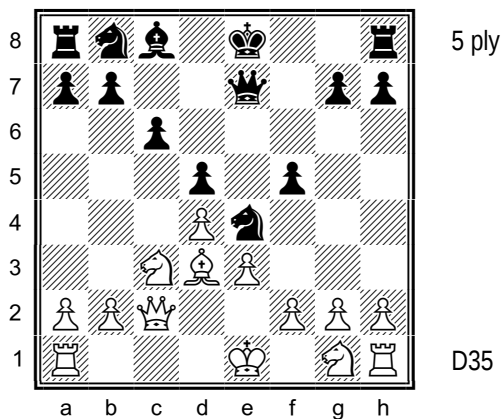


662. White has three pawns for a piece. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Qxc3 Nxc3 18 Bxc6+ bxc6 19 Bxc3. What is the material balance?



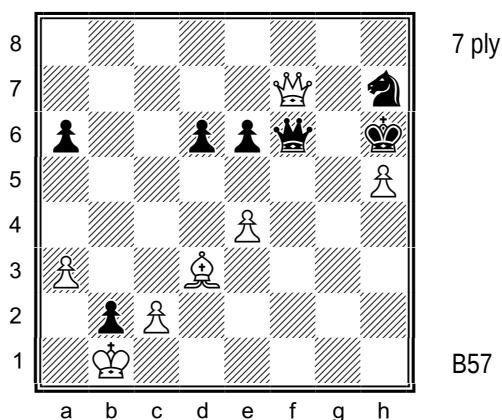
663. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Nxf5 Qxd1¹ 14 Nxg7+ Bxg7 15 Raxd1. What is the material balance?

¹ Black loses a pawn after 13...exf5 14 Qc2 Ne4 15 Bd3 Rc8 16 Qe2.



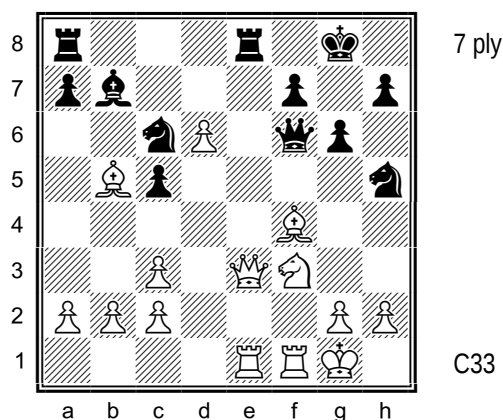
664. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Nxd5 cxd5 11 Qxc8+ Kf7 12 Qxf5+¹. What is the material balance?

¹ 12 Qxh8 allows 12...Qb4+ 13 Kf1 Qxb2 with the dual threat of 14...Qxa1 and 14...Qxf2, mate, although material is even after 14 Bxe4 Qxa1+ 15 Ke2 fxe4.



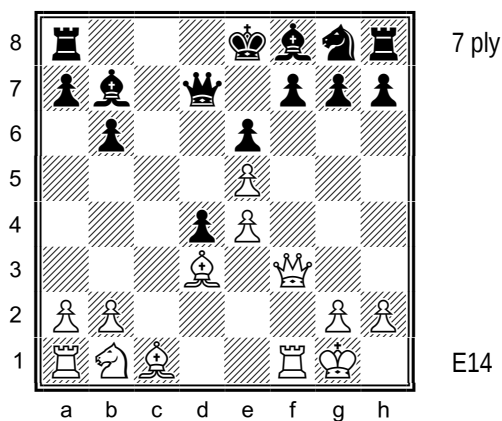
665. Visualize the position after the moves 35 Qxh7+¹ Kxh7 36 e5+ Kg7 37 exf6+ Kxf6 38 Bxa6. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here.



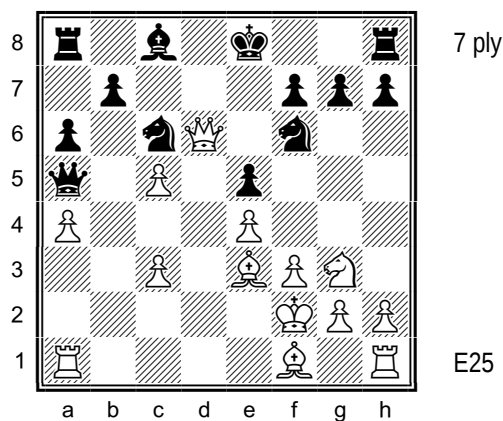
666. White is up two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Qxe8+ Rxe8 19 Rxe8+ Kg7 20 Bxc6¹ Nxf4 21 Bxb7. What is the material balance?

¹ Threatening to play 21 Be5.



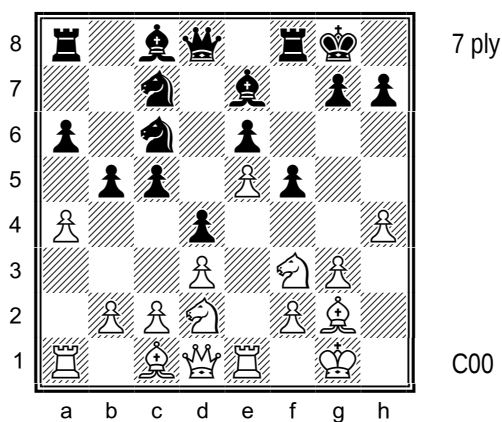
667. Black is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bb5 Qxb5 14 Qxf7+ Kd8 15 Qxb7¹ Bc5² 16 Qxa8+. What is the material balance?

¹ Two of Black's pieces are under attack. ² 15...Rc8 allows 16 Rxf8+, when Black's only move is 16...Qe8.

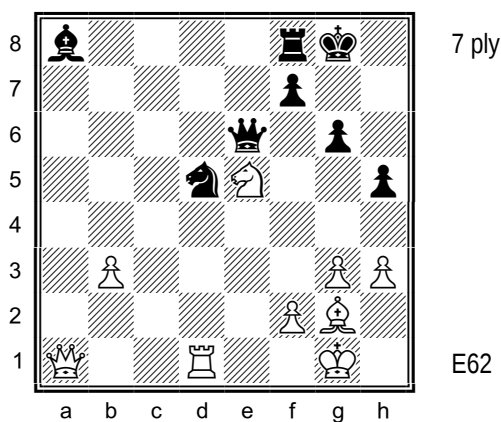


668. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bb5 axb5¹ 17 axb5 Qxa1 18 Rxa1² Rxa1 19 bxc6. What is the material balance?

¹ 16...Bd7 17 Bxc6 isn't good: a) 17...bxc6 18 Qxe5+ wins a second pawn; b) 17...Bxc6 loses to 18 Nf5, when Black can't stop both mates (19 Qe7 or 19 Nxe7). ² Two of Black's pieces are under attack. 18...Na7 is met by 19 c6, threatening 20 Bc5 and 21 Qe7, mate.

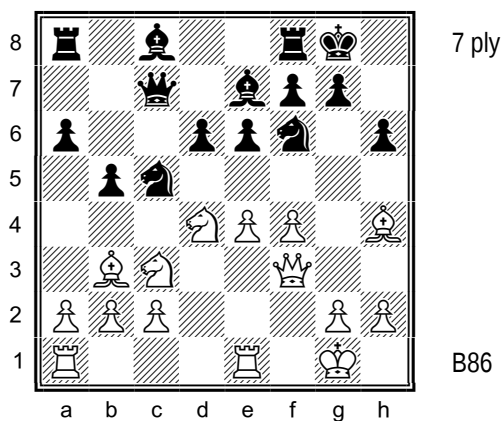


669. Visualize the position after the moves 14 axb5 axb5 15 Rxa8 Nxa8 16 Nxd4 Nxd4 17 Bxa8. What is the material balance?

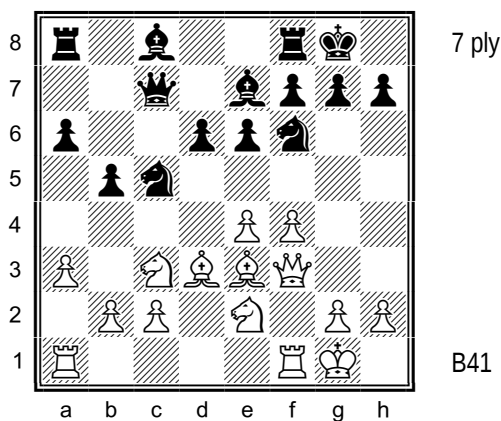


670. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 30 Nxg6 fxg6 31 Qxa8 Rxa8¹ 32 Bxd5 Qxd5 33 Rxd5. What is the material balance?

¹ The actual game continued 31...Nc3 32 Bd5 Rxa8 33 Bxe6+, when White is up two pawns (1-0, 38).

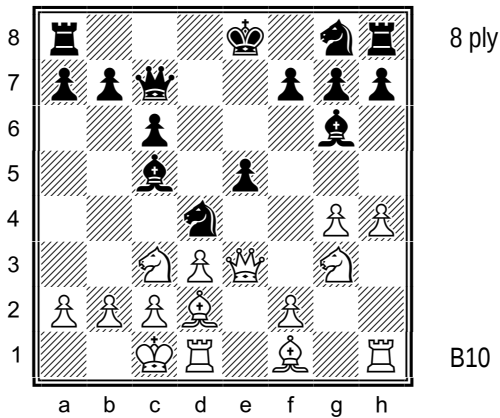


671. Visualize the position after the moves 14 e5 Bb7 15 exf6 Bxf3 16 fxe7 Rfe8 17 Nxf3. What is the material balance?

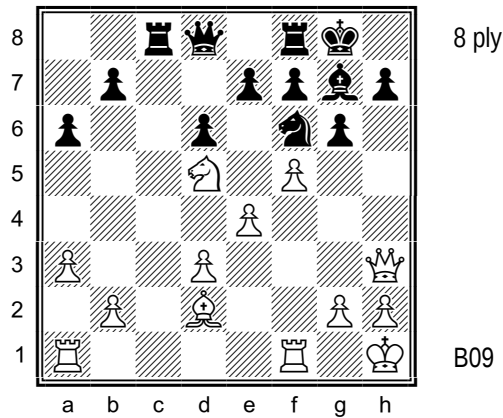


672. Visualize the position after the moves 13 e5 Bb7 14 exf6 Bxf3 15 fxe7 Qxe7¹ 16 Rxf3. What is the material balance?

¹ 15...Bxe2 16 exf8=Q+ Rxf8 17 Bxe2 gives White a Rook and two Bishops for a Queen and pawn.

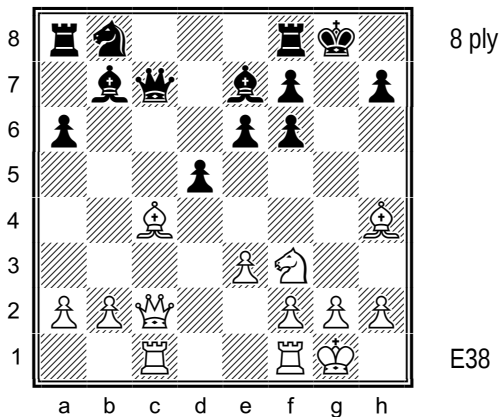


673. Visualize the position after the moves 14 h5 Nb3+ 15 axb3 Bxe3 16 Bxe3 Ne7 17 hxg6 Nxg6. What is the material balance?



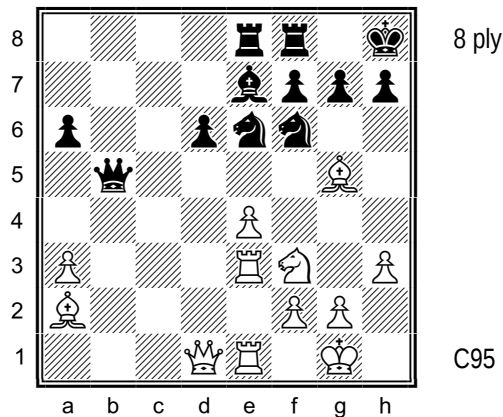
674. Visualize the position after the moves 20 fxc6 hxg6 21 Qxc8 Qxc8 22 Nxe7+¹ Kh8 23 Nxc8 Rxc8. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here.



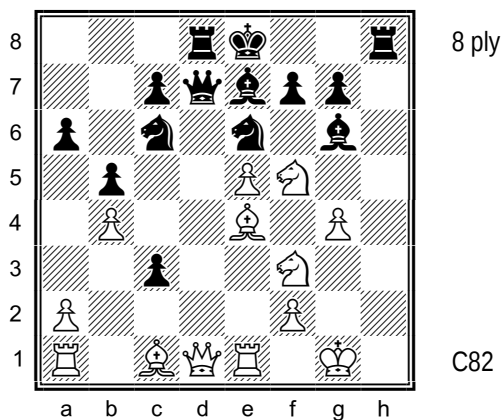
675. White's Bishop on c4 is under attack, but White has play on the c-file. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Qxh7+ Kxh7 17 Bd3+ f5 18 Rxc7 Bxh4 19 Rxb7¹ Bf6. What is the material balance?

¹ 19 Nxh4 Bc6 is also possible.



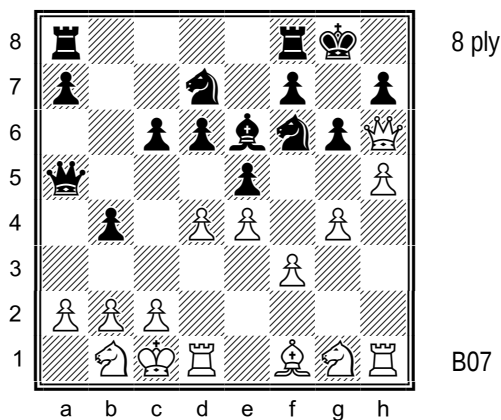
676. Visualize the position after the moves 24 e5 Ng4¹ 25 hxg4 Nxg5 26 exd6 Nxf3+ 27 gxf3 Bg5. What is the material balance?

¹ 24...dxe5 loses a pawn to 25 Rxe5 and 26 Bxe6. 24...Nxg5 25 Nxg5 dxe5 26 Rxe5 gives White a double attack on b5 and e7, when 26...Qb7 can be met by 27 Nxf7+, e.g., 27...Kg8 28 Nxd6+ winning Black's Queen or 27...Rxf7 28 Bxf7 undermining the defense of Black's Bishop on e7.



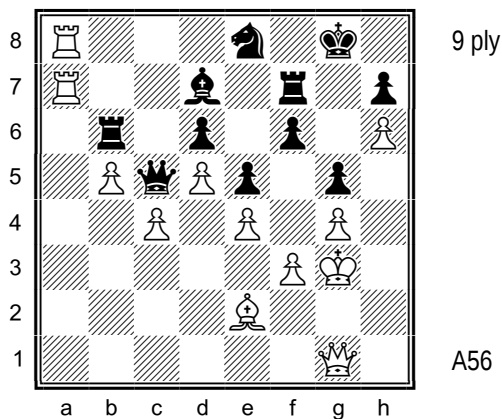
677. Black is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Qxd7+ Kxd7¹ 22 Bxc6+ Kxc6 23 Nxe7+ Kb7 24 Nxg6 fxg6. What is the material balance?

¹ 21...Rxd7 allows 22 Bxc6.

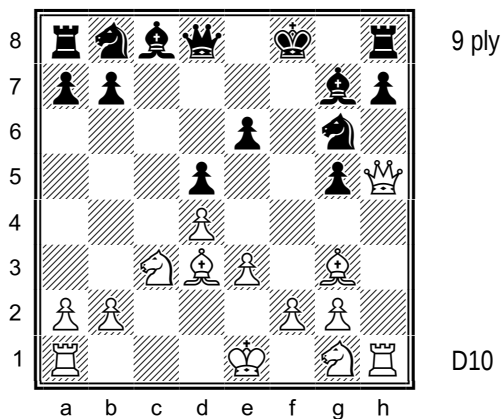


678. Black's f-pawn is overworked. Visualize the position after the moves 14 hxg6 fxg6 15 g5 Nh5¹ 16 Rxh5 gxh5 17 Qxe6+ Rf7. What is the material balance?

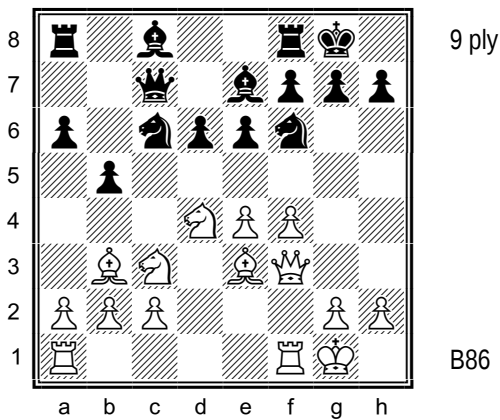
¹ The actual game continued 15...Bxa2 16 gxf6 Nxf6 17 dxe5 dxe5 18 b3 Qc5 19 Bc4+ Kh8 20 Rd7 (1-0).



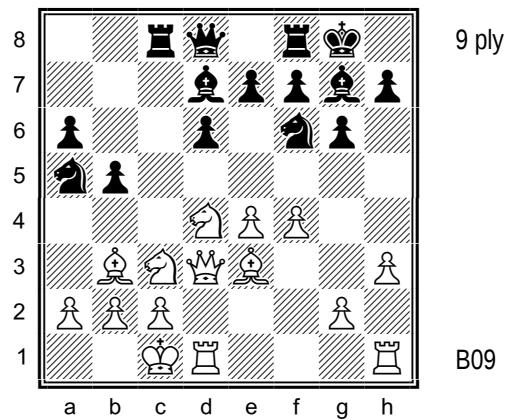
679. White is down a piece for two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 60 Qxc5 dxc5 61 Rxd7 Rxd7 62 Rxe8+ Kf7 63 Rc8 with 64 Rxc5. What is the material balance?



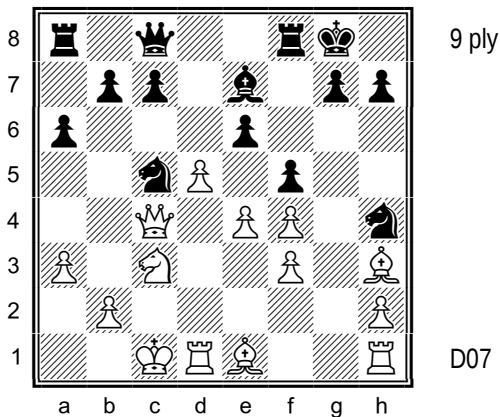
680. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxg6 hxg6 13 Qxh8+ Bxh8 14 Rxh8+ Ke7 15 Rxd8 Kxd8. What is the material balance?



681. Visualize the position after the moves 12 e5 Nxd4 13 Bxd4 Bb7 14 exf6 Bxf3 15 fxe7 Qxe7 16 Rxf3. What is the material balance?

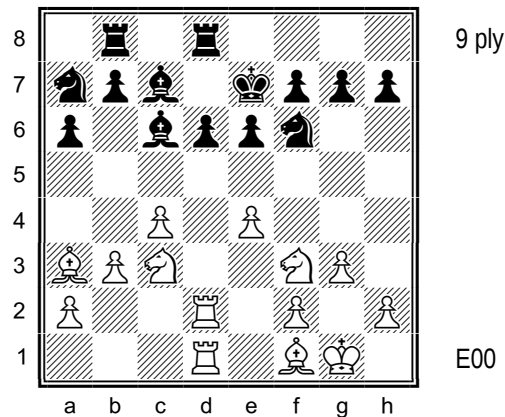


682. Visualize the position after the moves 14 e5 Nxb3+ 15 Nxb3 Bf5 16 exf6 Bxd3 17 fxg7 Kxg7 18 Rxd3. What is the material balance?



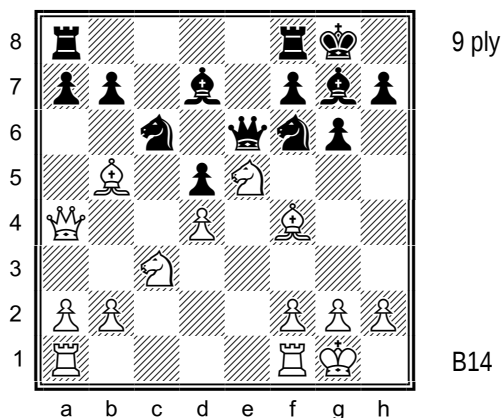
683. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Bxh4 b5 20 Bxe7 bxc4 21 Bxc5 Rf7¹ 22 dxe6 Qxe6 23 Bxf5. What is the material balance?

¹ All of Black's Rook moves have about the same value.



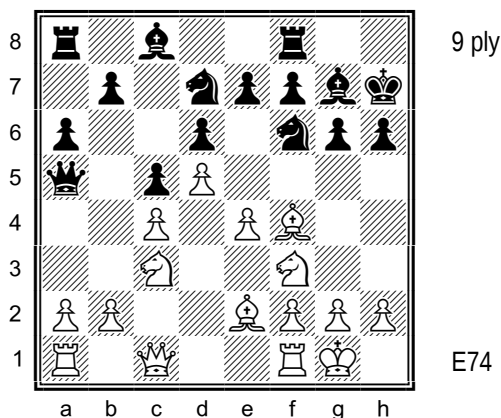
684. White's pawn on e4 is pinned and under attack, but White can get an extra attacker on d6. Visualize the position after the moves 21 e5 Bxf3 22 exd6+¹ Bxd6 23 Bxd6+ Rxd6 24 Rxd6 Bxd1 25 Rxd1. What is the material balance?

¹ Black is up a pawn after 22 exf6+ Kxf6 23 Be2.



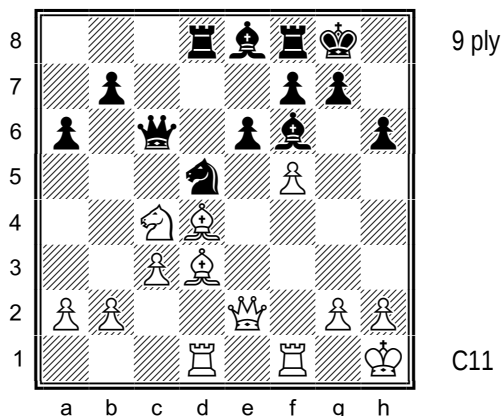
685. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Rae1 Nxe5 15 dxe5 Bxb5 16 Qxb5 Rfe8¹ 17 exf6 Qxe1 18 fxg7². What is the material balance?

¹ 16...Nh5 17 Bg5, threatening 18 Nxd5, gives White the advantage, as 17...Bxe5 can be met by 18 Nxd5, threatening 19 Rxe5 Qxe5 20 Nxe7+ with 21 Qxe5. ² 18...Kxg7 can be met by 19 Nxd5, threatening both 20 Nc7 and 20 Qxb7.



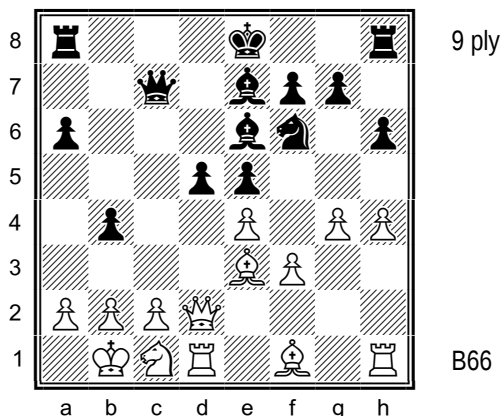
686. Visualize the position after the moves 12 e5 dxe5 13 Nxe5 Nxd5¹ 14 Nxd7 Nxf4² 15 Nxf8+ Bxf8 16 Qxf4³. What is the material balance?

¹ Material is even after 13...Nxe5 14 Bxe5. ² White is up a piece for a pawn after 14...Bxd7 15 Nxd5. ³ Black resigned here.



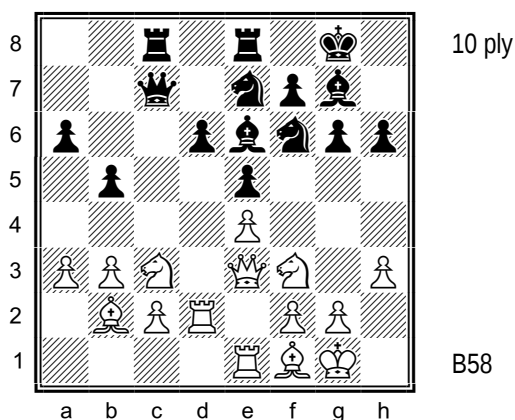
687. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Bxf6 Nxf6¹ 23 fxe6 Qxe6² 24 Qxe6 fxe6 25 Bh7+ Kxh7 26 Rxd8. What is the material balance?

¹ With Black's Bishop on f6 gone, Black's Rook on d8 becomes a target along the d-file. 22...gxf6 creates holes in Black's kingside, but Black may be able to defend, for example, 23 Qg4+ Kh8 24 Qh5 Kg7 25 Rf3 Rh8 26 Rg3+ Kf8 27 Qg4 Bd7, etc. ² 23...fxe6 doesn't change anything.

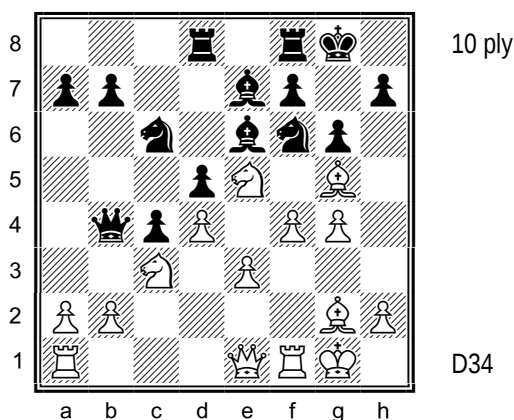


688. Visualize the position after the moves 18 g5 hxg5 19 hxg5 Rxh1 20 gxf6 gxf6¹ 21 Bb5+² axb5 22 Rxh1. What is the material balance?

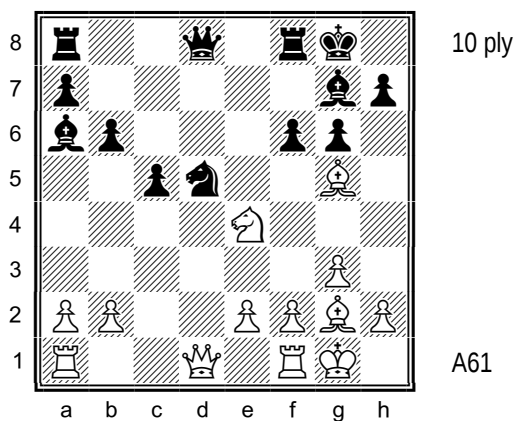
¹ The Bishop has to stay on e7 to hold the b-pawn. White has two pieces for a Rook and pawn after 20...Rh8 21 exd5 (21 fxe7 allows 21...d4) 21 gxf6 22 dxe6 fxe6. ² The actual game continued 21 exd5 Rd8 (better is 21...Bd7, when Black is up the exchange) 22 Bb5+ axb5 23 Rxh1 Rxd5 (1-0, 54).



689. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Bxb5 axb5 23 Nxb5 Qb8 24 Nxd6 Nc6 25 Red1 Nh5 26 Nxe8 Rxe8. What is the material balance?

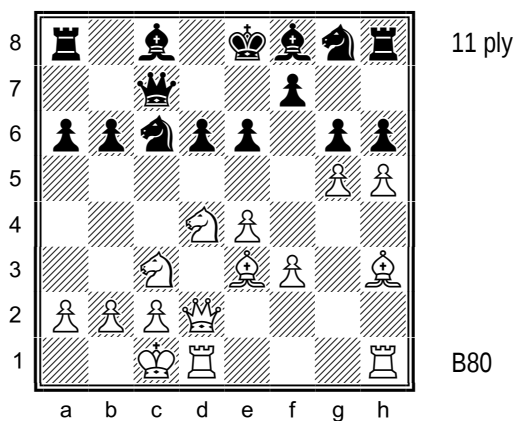


690. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nxc6 bxc6 16 Bxf6 Bxf6 17 Nxd5 Qxe1 18 Nxf6+ Kg7 19 Raxe1 Kxf6. What is the material balance?



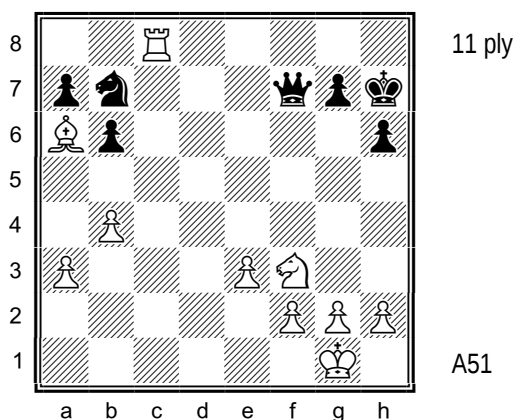
691. Black's Bishop on g5 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Qxd5+ Qxd5 17 Nxf6+ Bxf6 18 Bxd5+¹ Kg7 19 Bxf6+ Kxf6 20 Bxa8 Rxa8. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here.



692. Visualize the position after the moves 15 hxc6 Nxd4¹ 16 gxf7+ Qxf7 17 Bxd4 e5² 18 Bxe5 Bxh3³ 19 Bxh8 Be6 20 gxh6. What is the material balance?

¹ 15...fxg6 drops the e-pawn. ² Better is 17...Rh7, although White is up a pawn after 18 Na4 b5 19 Nb6 Rb8. ³ 18...dxe5 19 Qd8 is mate.

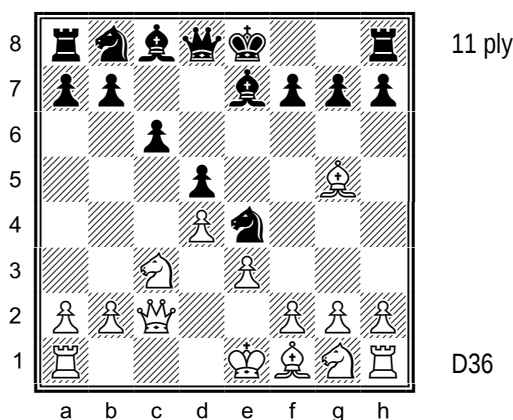


11 ply

A51

693. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Bd3+ g6 26 Ne5 Qe7¹ 27 Nxg6 Qd6² 28 Nf4+ Kg7 29 Rc7+ Kf6³ 30 Rxb7. What is the material balance?

¹ 26...Qg7 loses the Queen to 27 Bxg6+. ² The only square. Moving to a light square (d7, f7 or e6) loses the Queen to a discovered check, while moving to a dark square (f6 or g5) allows 28 Rc7+ Kg8 29 Bc4+, mating. ³ 29...Qxc7 loses the Queen to 30 Ne6+.

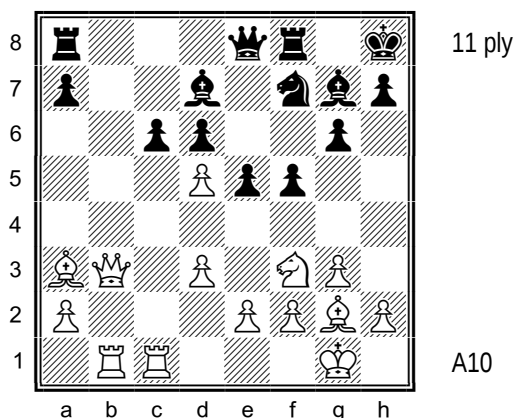


11 ply

D36

694. Visualize the position after the moves 8 Bxe7 Qxe7¹ 9 Nxd5 cxd5 10 Qxc8+ Qd8 11 Bb5+ Nc6² 12 Bxc6+ bxc6 13 Qxc6+. What is the material balance?

¹ Better is 8...Kxe7, although Black is down a pawn after 9 Nxe4 dxe4 10 Qxe4+. ² Black is down three pawns after 11...Ke7 12 Qxb7+ Nd7 13 Qxd5.

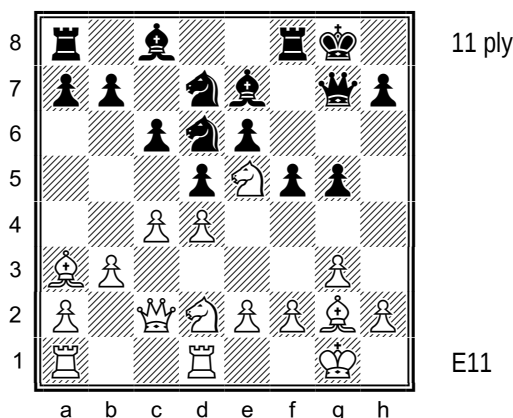


11 ply

A10

695. White can sacrifice the exchange to clear the h1-a8 diagonal. Visualize the position after the moves 17 dxc6 Bxc6 18 Rxc6 Qxc6¹ 19 Nxe5 Qe8 20 Nxf7+ Qxf7² 21 Qxf7 Rxf7 22 Bxa8. What is the material balance?

¹ In the game, Black saw the danger and played 18...e4 19 Rc7 exf3 20 Bxf3, although White's pieces dominate the position (1-0, 21). ² 20...Rxf7 21 Bxa8 is similar.



11 ply

E11

696. Visualize the position after the moves 17 cxd5 exd5¹ 18 Nxc6 bxc6 19 Bxd6 Bxd6 20 Qxc6 Rb8² 21 Qxd5+ Kh8 22 Qxd6. What is the material balance?

¹ 17...cxd5 loses a pawn to 18 Nxd7 Bxd7 19 Qc7 Ne4 20 Qxd7 Bxa3 21 Qxe6+. ² Worse is 20...Rf6 21 Qxd5+ Kh8 22 Qxa8 (1-0), as was played in the game, when White is up a Rook and three pawns for a Bishop.

CHAPTER 24. THREE SECTORS OF THE BOARD (BLACK TO PLAY)

This chapter contains exercises in which the activity takes place over three or more sectors of the board with Black to play. The diagrams are set up with White at the bottom of the board in order to give you the opportunity to practice visualizing positions in which your opponent is the aggressor and most of the action takes place on your side of the board.

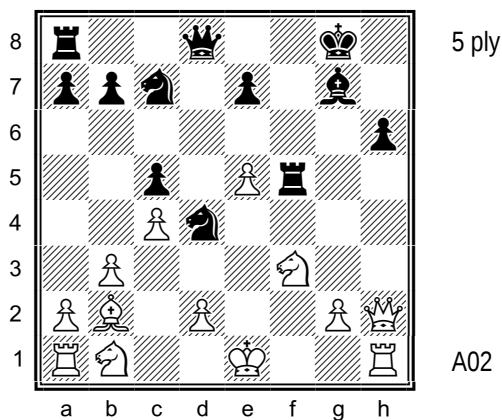
The following are some of the tactics seen in these exercises:

- ✧ File-clearing operations – see exercises 701, 704, 707, 711, 715, 719, and 720;
- ✧ Diagonal-clearing operations – see exercises 698, 699, 702, 709, 711, 712, 714, 720, 721, 723, and 724;
- ✧ Forks – see exercises 697, 713, 714, and 723;
- ✧ Removing a defender – see exercises 697, 698, 699, 701, 703, 704, 705, 709, 715, and 717;
- ✧ Checks – see exercises 703, 708, 713, 717, 720, 721, and 722;
- ✧ Zwischenzugs – see exercises 718, 721, and 722;
- ✧ Desperados – see exercise 706; and
- ✧ Rabid pawns – see exercises 710 and 718.

The diagrams in this chapter were intentionally set up with White at the bottom of the board in order to give you the opportunity to practice visualizing moves from the defender's point of view.

This chapter contains twenty-eight exercises ranging in depth from five to eleven half-moves, as seen in the following table:

Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13⁺	TOTAL
Exercises:	-	4	-	11	1	6	3	3	-	-	

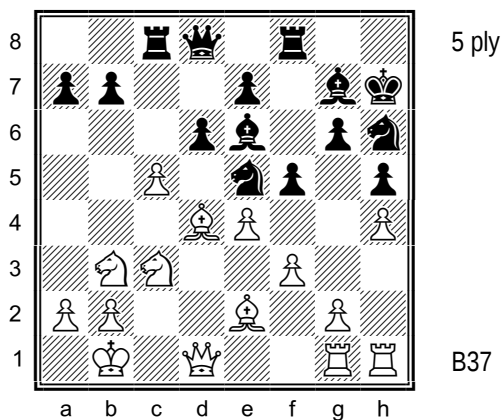


5 ply

A02

697. Black has given up a pawn for development. Visualize the position after the moves 17...Rxf3 18 Bxd4 Qxd4 19 gxf3¹ Qxa1. What is the material balance?

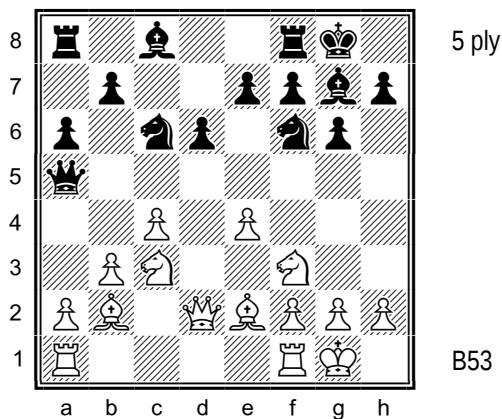
¹ 19 Nc3 allows 19...Rxc3 (29...Qxf2+ is also good), when 20 dxc3 allows mate in five: 20...Qe3+ 21 Kd1 Rd8+ 22 Kc2 Rd2+ 23 Kb1 Qd3+ 24 Kc1 Qc3+ 22 Kb1 Qb2, mate.



5 ply

B37

698. Visualize the position after the moves 20...Bxb3 21 Qxb3 Nxf3 22 Bxf3 Bxd4. What is the material balance?

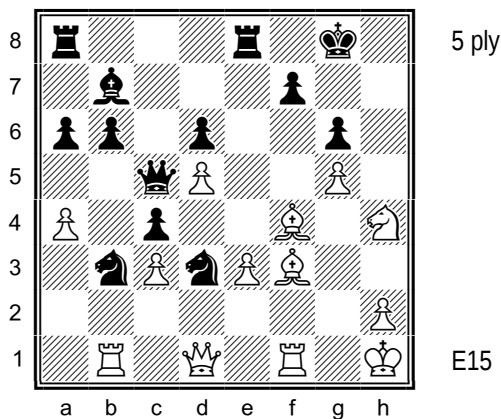


5 ply

B53

699. Visualize the position after the moves 11...Nxe4¹ 12 Nxe4 Qxd2 13 Nxd2 Bxb2. What is the material balance?

¹ Black is attacking White's Queen and has a 3-2 advantage on c3.

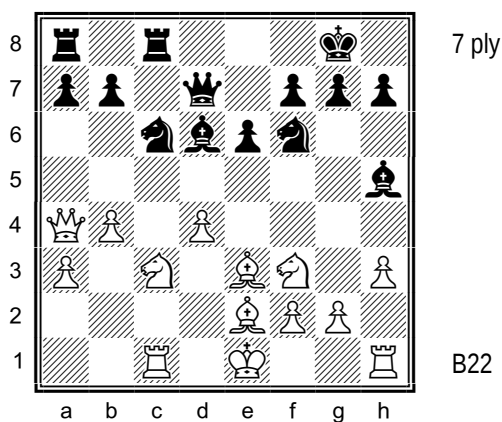


5 ply

E15

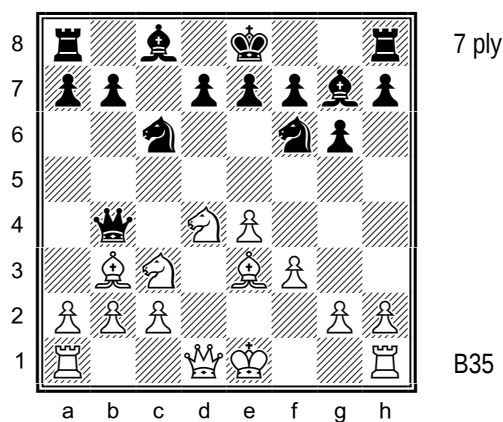
700. Visualize the position after the moves 27...Bxd5 28 Rxb3¹ Nxf4 29 Rb1² Rxe3³. What is the material balance?

¹ Black is up a pawn after 28 Bxd5 Qxd5 29 Qf3 Qxf3 30 Nxf3. ² 29 exf4 drops the exchange to 29... Bxf3+ Rxf3 30 cxb3. ³ 29...Bxf3 drops a piece to 30 Qxf3, since Black's Knight on f4 is pinned to Black's pawn on f7.



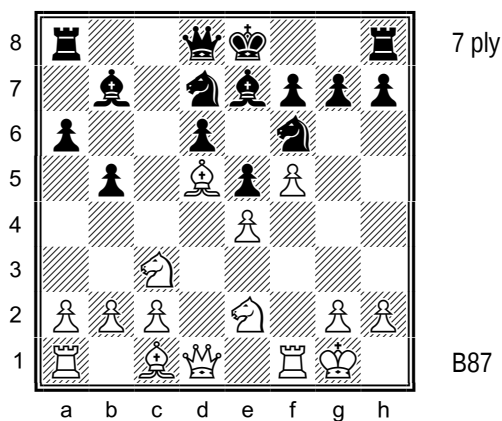
701. Visualize the position after the moves 14...Bxf3 15 Bxf3 Nxd4 16 Bxd4¹ Qxa4 17 Nxa4 Rxc1+. What is the material balance?

¹ 16 Qxd7 Nxf3+ 17 gxf3 Nxd7 concedes a pawn.

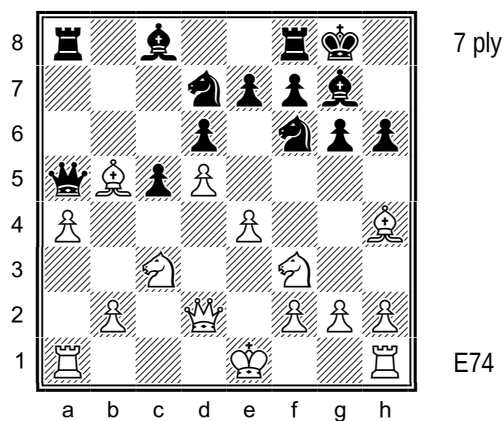


702. Visualize the position after the moves 9...Nxe4 10 Nxc6 Bxc3+ 11 bxc3 Qxc3+ 12 Ke2 dxc6¹. What is the material balance?

¹ Note that 13 fxe4 loses the Queen to 13...Bg4+.

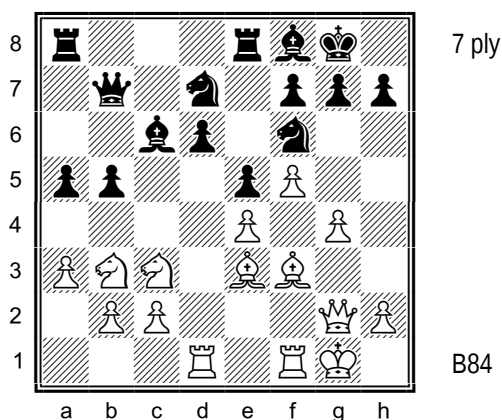


703. Visualize the position after the moves 12...b4 13 Bxb7 Qb6+ 14 Kh1 Qxb7 15 Nd5 Nxe4. What is the material balance?



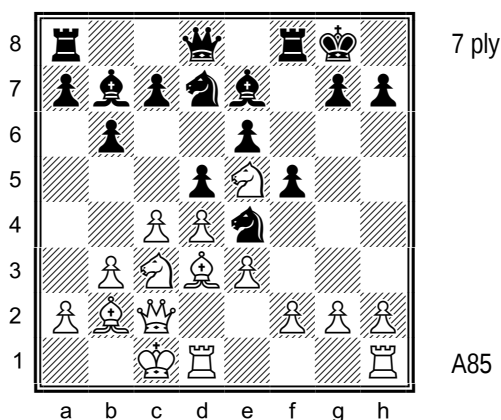
704. Visualize the position after the moves 13...Nxe4 14 Nxe4 Qxb5 15 axb5 Rxa1+ 16 Ke2 Rxh1¹. What is the material balance?

¹ 17 Bxe7 drops a piece to 17...Re8, e.g., 18 Bxd6 Rxe4+.



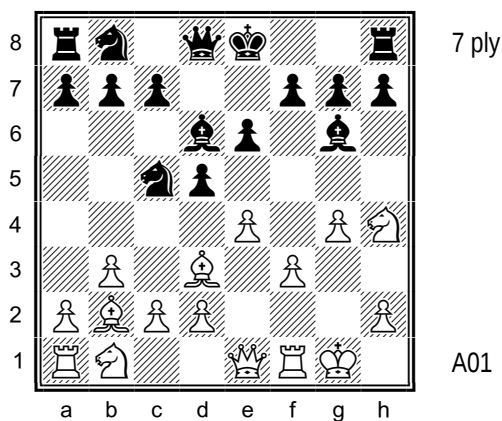
705. Watch the count on e4. Visualize the position after the moves 19...b4 20 g5 bxc3 21 gxf6 Nxf6 22 bxc3 Bxe4¹. What is the material balance?

¹ In the actual game, White tried to complicate with 22 Bh6, but resigned soon after 22...cxb2 23 Rxd6 Bxe4 24 Rd3 Kh8 (0-1, 27).



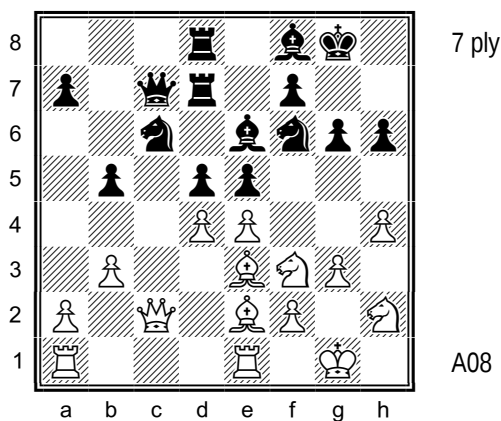
706. Visualize the position after the moves 11...Nxe5 12 Bxe4¹ Nxc4² 13 Bxf5 exf5³ 14 bxc4 dxc4. What is the material balance?

¹ 12 dxe5 keeps the material even. ² Material is even after 12...dxe4 13 dxe5. ³ 13...Nxe3 drops a piece to 14 Bxh7+ Kh8 15 fxe3.



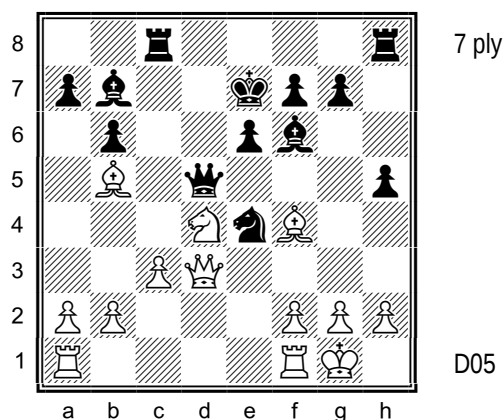
707. Visualize the position after the moves 11...dxe4 12 Bxe4¹ Nxe4 13 Nxg6 hxg6 14 Qxe4 Rxh2. What is the material balance?

¹ Black is up a pawn after 12 fxe4 Bxe4 13 Bxe4 Nxe4, when 14 Bxg7 Rg8 only helps Black.



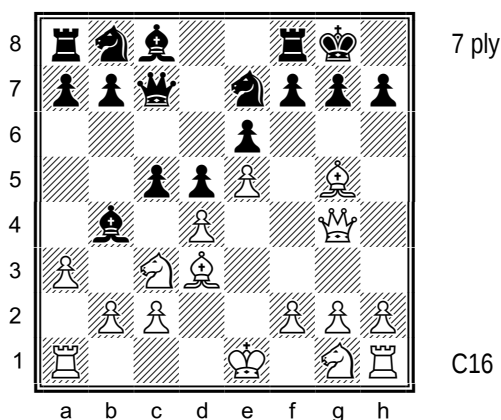
708. Visualize the position after the moves 19...dxe4 20 Nxe5¹ Nxd4 21 Qxc7 Nxe2+ 22 Rxe2 Rxc7. What is the material balance?

¹ Black is up a pawn and has advanced pawns in the center after 20 Bxb5 Nxd4 21 Nxd4 exd4.



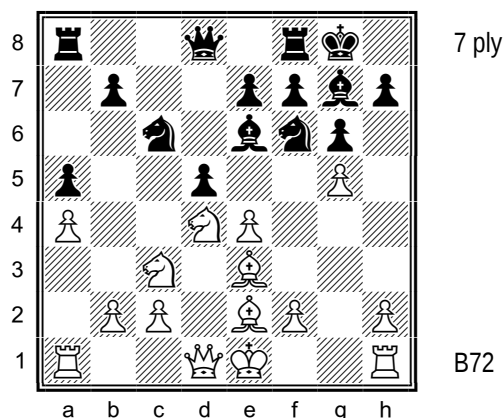
709. Visualize the position after the moves 17...Nxc3 18 Qf3¹ Qxf3 19 gxf3 Bxd4² 20 bxc3 Bxc3. What is the material balance?

¹ Black is up a piece and a pawn after either 18 Qg3 Nxb5 or 18 Nf5+ exf5 19 Rfe1+ Kf8 20 Qxd5 Nxd5.
² 19...Nxb5 20 Nxb5 Bxf3 Black is up two pawns.



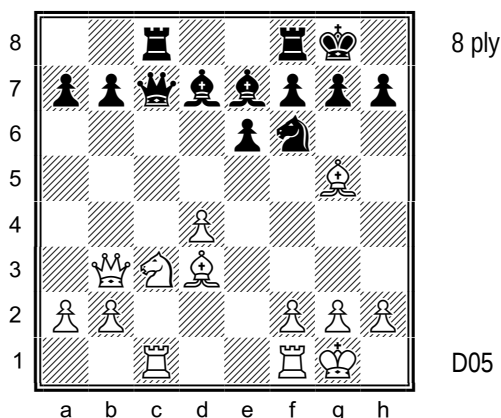
710. Visualize the position after the moves 8...cxd4 9 axb4 dxc3 10 Bxe7¹ cxb2 11 Rb1 Qxe7². What is the material balance?

¹ 10 bxc3 loses a Rook to 10...Qxc3+ while 10 Bh6 can be met by 10...Qxe5+ with 11...Ng6. ² 12 Rxb2 doesn't gain anything after 12...Qc7, with the dual threat of 13...Qxe5+ and 13...Qc3+.



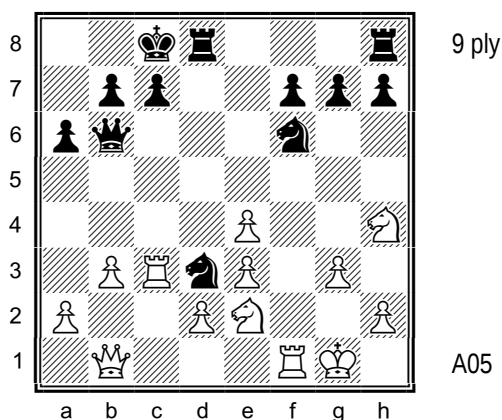
711. Visualize the position after the moves 12...Nxe4 13 Nxe4 Nxd4¹ 14 Bxd4² dxe4³ 15 Bxg7 Kxg7. What is the material balance?

¹ 13...dxe4 14 Nxe6 fxe6 gives Black tripled pawns on the e-file. ² Black is up two pawns after 14 Nc5 Nxe2 15 Nxe6 fxe6 16 Qxe2 Bxb2 17 Rb1 Bc3+.
³ 14...Bxd4 15 Qxd4 dxe4 16 0-0-0 just helps White.



712. Visualize the position after the moves 14...Ng4 15 f4 Bxg5 16 h3 Bxf4 17 hxg4¹ Bxc1 18 Rxc1. What is the material balance?

¹ Black is up a Rook after 17 Rcd1 Be3+ 18 Rf2 Bxf2+. The game continuation 17 Nd5 (0-1, 19) allows 17...Be3+ 18 Rf2 (other moves are met by 18... Qh2, mate) Qxc1+ 19 Bf1 Bxf2+ 20 Kh1 Qxf1, mate.

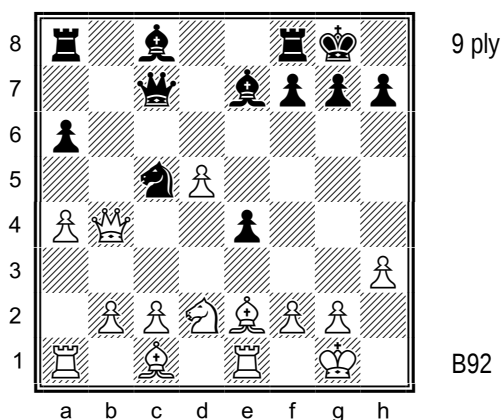


9 ply

A05

713. Black is down a pawn and his Nd3 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 18...Nxe4 19 Rxd3 Nxd2 20 Rxd8+ Rxd8¹ 21 Qf5+ Kb8 22 Re1 Qxe3+. What is the material balance?

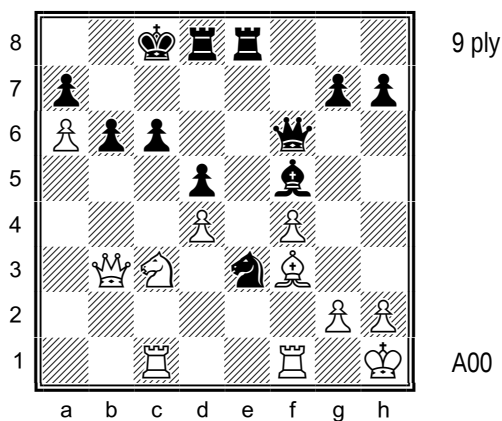
¹ White is up a piece after 20...Kxd8 21 Qd3+ Qd6 22 Qxd6+ cxd6 23 Rxf7.



9 ply

B92

714. Black is down two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 17...Nd3 18 Qxe4 Nxe1 19 d6 Bxd6 20 Qxa8 Bb7 21 Qxf8+ Kxf8. What is the material balance?

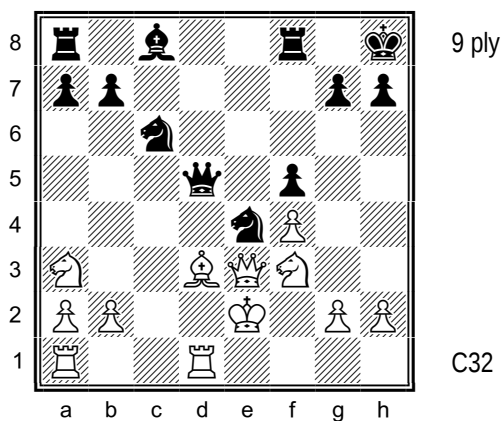


9 ply

A00

715. Black is up a pawn, but White's play on the c-file could become dangerous. Visualize the position after the moves 26...Nxf1 27 Nxd5 Rxd5 28 Qxd5 Ng3¹ 29 hxd3 Re1+ 30 Rxe1² cxd5. What is the material balance?

¹ White resigned here. ² 30 Kh2 loses to 30...Qh6+.

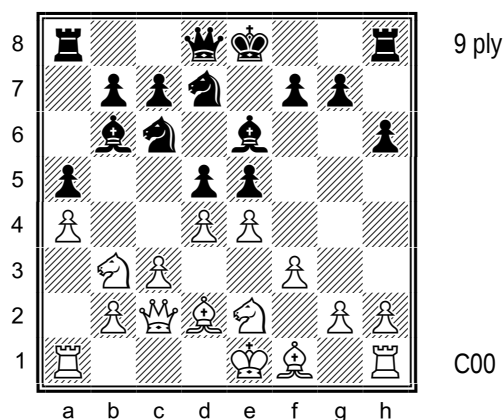


9 ply

C32

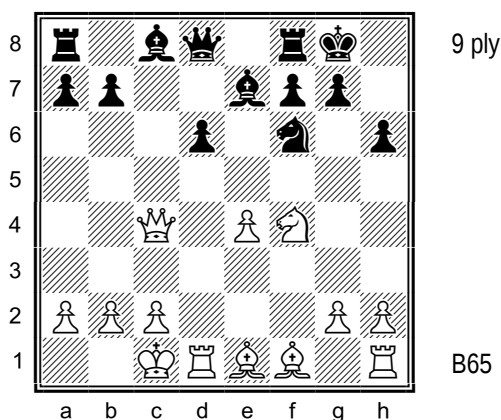
716. Visualize the position after the moves 16...Re8 17 Bxe4 Qxe4 18 Ne5¹ Nxe5² 19 fxe5 Qxg2+ 20 Kd3 Qxb2. What is the material balance?

¹ 18 Qxe4 fxe4 loses the exchange, e.g., 19 Ng5 Bg4+. ² Black can also play 18...Qxg2+ 19 Qf2 Qe4+ with ...Nxe5.



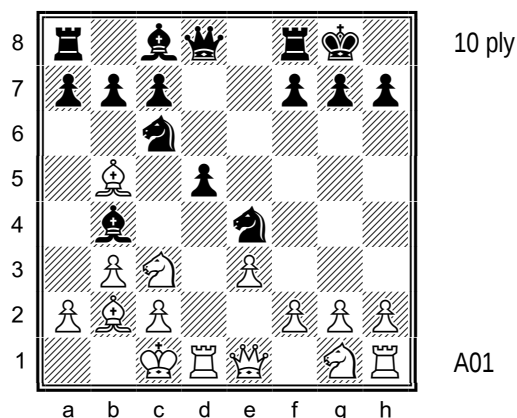
717. Visualize the position after the moves 12...dxe4 13 fxe4 Bxb3 14 Qxb3 exd4 15 cxd4¹ Qh4+ 16 Ng3² Nxd4. What is the material balance?

¹ In the actual game, White conceded the pawn with 15 Ng3 dxc3 16 bxc3 (0-1, 26). ² Black is up a pawn after 16 g3 Qxe4 17 Qe3 (pinning White's Queen is much better than 17 Rg1 Nxd4, when 18 Qd1 can be met by 18...Nf3, mate) Qxe3 18 Bxe3.



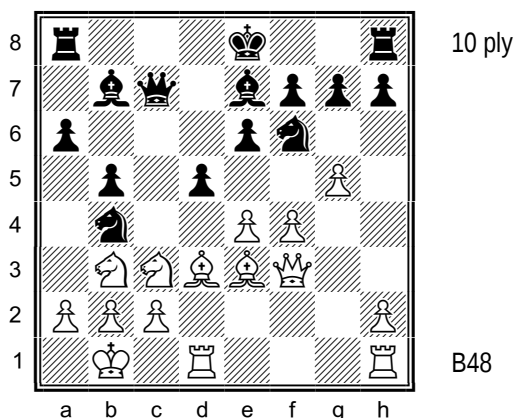
718. Visualize the position after the moves 15...Bg4 16 e5¹ Rc8² 17 Qb3³ Bxd1 18 exf6 Bxc2 19 Qa3⁴ Bxf6. What is the material balance?

¹ Black is counting on his rabid e-pawn, but moving the Rook is better. ² White has two pieces for a Rook and two pawns after 16... Bxd1 17 exf6 Bxf6 18 Kxd1 Bxb2. ³ Two of White's pieces are under attack after 17 Qb5 Qc7 18 Bd3 dxe5. ⁴ 19 Qxc2 gives up a Queen for a Rook and Bishop.



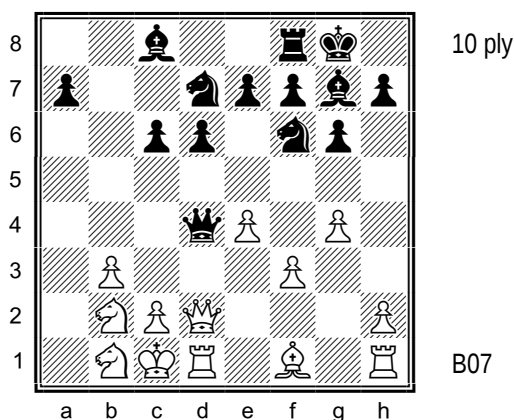
719. Visualize the position after the moves 10...d4 11 Bxc6¹ Nxc3 12 Bxc3 Bxc3 13 Qxc3² dxc3 14 Rxd8 Rxd8 15 Bf3. What is the material balance?

¹ 11 exd4 can be met by 11...Nxc3 12 Bxc3 Qg5+, with 13...Qxb5. ² Black is up a piece after 13 Qe2 bxc6.



720. Black's Knight is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 14...dxe4 15 Nxe4 Nxe4 16 Bxe4 Qxc2+ 17 Bxc2 Bxf3 18 Rhe1 Bxd1¹ 19 Bxd1. What is the material balance?

¹ Also good is the game continuation 18...Nxc2 19 Kxc2 Rc8+ 20 Kb1 Bxd1 (0-1) 21 Rxd1.

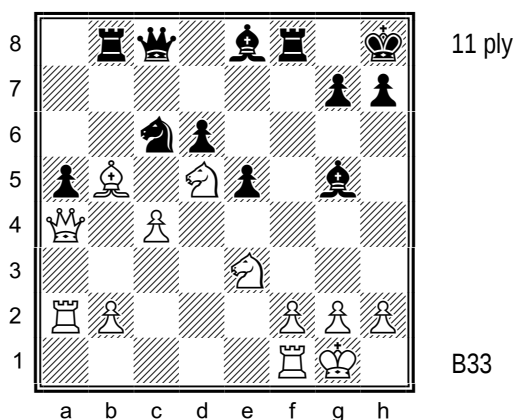


10 ply

B07

721. Black is down the exchange for a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 17...Qxb2+ 18 Kxb2 Nxe4+ 19 Qd4¹ Nf2² 20 Qxg7+³ Kxg7 21 Be2 Nxh1 22 Rxh1. What is the material balance?

¹ Better is 19 Kc1 Nxd2 20 Nxd2, when White has the exchange for two pawns. ² White resigned here. ³ 20 Bg2 Bxd4+ 21 Rxd4 Nxh1 22 Bxh1 is similar to the game.

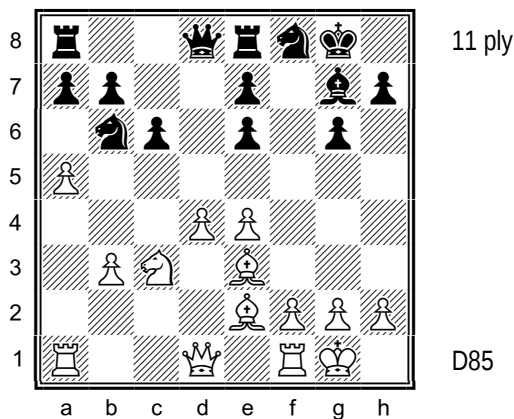


11 ply

B33

722. Visualize the position after the moves 25...Nb4 26 Nxb4¹ Bxe3 27 fxe3² Rxf1+ 28 Kxf1 Bxb5 29 cxb5 Qc4+ 30 Kf2 axb4. What is the material balance?

¹ 26 Raa1 allows 26...Bxb5 27 cxb5 Qc5, with pressure on d5 and e3. ² Black has the better position after 27 Nd3 Bxb5 28 cxb5 Qf5 29 Qd1.

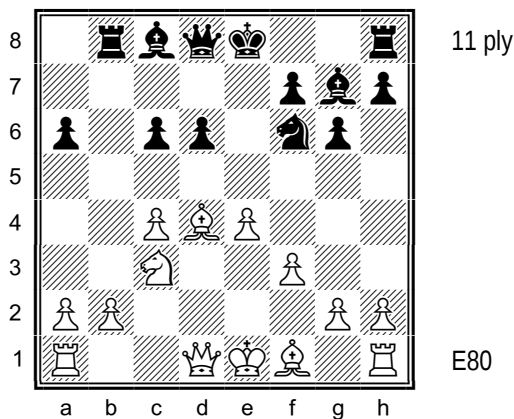


11 ply

D85

723. Black's Knight on b6 is under attack, but White's Knight on c3 is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 14...c5 15 axb6 cxd4 16 Bb5 dxe3 17 Bxe8 Bxc3 18 fxe3¹ Qxe8² 19 Rxa7 Rb8. What is the material balance?

¹ The actual game continued 18 Qxd8 Rxd8 19 bxa7 (19 Bf7+) Bxa1 20 Rxa1 e2 (0-1), when 21 a8=Q allows 21...Rd1+, mating and 21 Re1 can be met by 21...Rd1. ² White is up the exchange after 18...Qxd1 19 Bf7+ Kg7 20 Raxd1.



11 ply

E80

724. Visualize the position after the moves 13...Rxb2 14 Nb5 Nxe4 15 Bxb2¹ Qa5+² 16 Nc3³ Bxc3+ 17 Bxc3 Qxc3+ 18 Ke2 Be6. What is the material balance?

¹ Black is up a piece and two pawns after 15 Bxg7 Qa5+ 16 Nc3 Nxc3 17 Qc1 Nxa2+ 18 Bc3 Qxc3+ 19 Qxc3 Nxc3. ² Black can also play 15...Bxb2. ³ Relatively best is 16 Ke2 Bxb2 17 Qe1, challenging Black's Queen, although Black has compensation for the exchange.

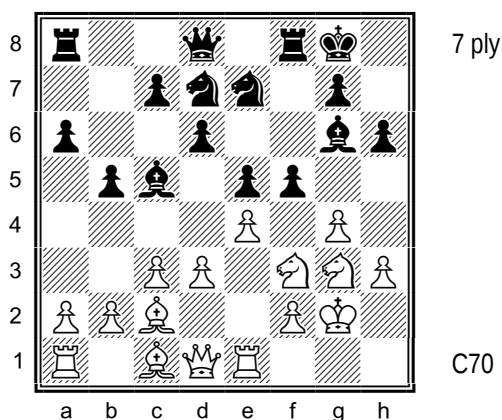
CHAPTER 25. SEEING FARTHER

This chapter contains exercises in which both players see the same variation up to a certain point, but White sees deeper into the position. The following are the solutions to these exercises:

- ✧ Find a way to win material – see exercises 725, 728, 731, 732, 736, 738, 743, and 753;
- ✧ Find the winning move or sequence – see exercises 729, 730, 733, 740, 741, 748, 749, 754, and 755;
- ✧ Find the mate in two – see exercises 727 and 742;
- ✧ Find the mate in three – see exercises 734, 735, 750, and 756;
- ✧ Find an improvement in the line given – see exercises 739 and 746; and
- ✧ Find a winning defense – see exercises 726, 737, 747, and 751.

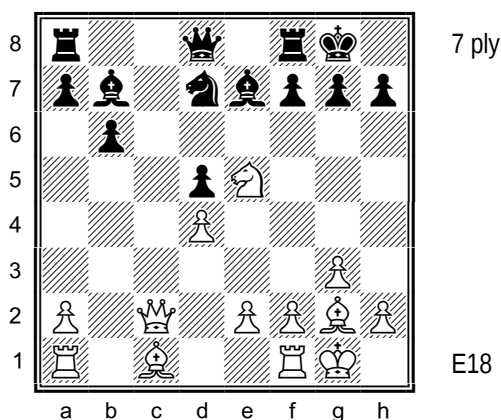
This chapter contains thirty-two exercises ranging in depth from seven to nineteen half-moves, as seen in the following table:

Ply:	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13⁺	TOTAL
Exercises:	-	-	1	2	-	6	1	10	-	12	



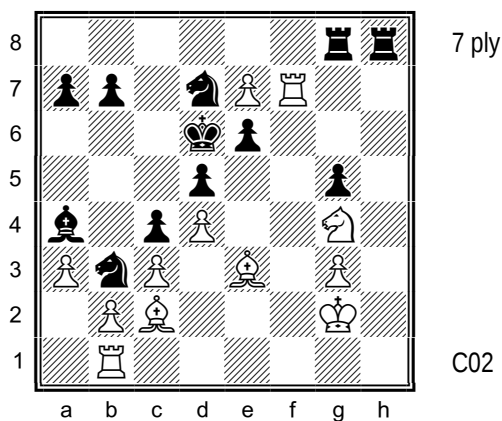
725. After the moves 17 exf5 Nxf5¹ 18 gxf5 Bxf5 White is up a piece for a pawn, but Black seems to have well-placed pieces. How does White win more material in this position? A hint is in the footnotes.²

¹ Black should just accept the loss of the pawn and play 17...Bf7. ² Hint: White can create a situation in which he is attacking two pieces at once.



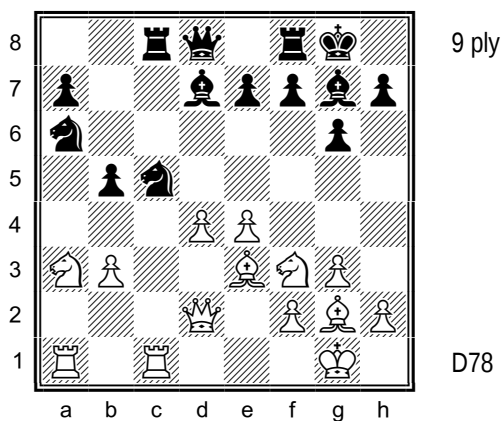
726. After the moves 14 Nc6 Rc8¹ 15 Nxd8 Rxc2 16 Nxb7² Nf6³, White's Knight is trapped on b7 and Black intends to win it with 17...Rb8. How can White defend his Knight?

¹ Relatively best is 14...Bxc6 15 Qxc6 Nf6. ² Black resigned here. ³ Forced, since 16...Rb8 or 16...Rc7 can be met by 17 Bxd5.



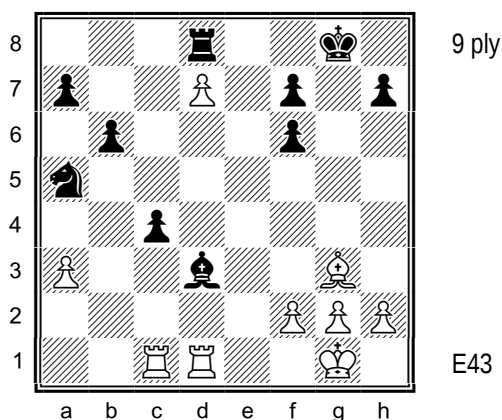
727. How does White mate in two after the moves 32 Kf2 Nd2¹ 33 Bxa4² Nxb1?

¹ Black is attacking two pieces at once. ² 33 Bxd2 Bxc2 34 Re1 keeps material even, but gives Black control of the light squares. With 33 Bxa4, White gives up the exchange in order to gain control of the light squares around Black's King.

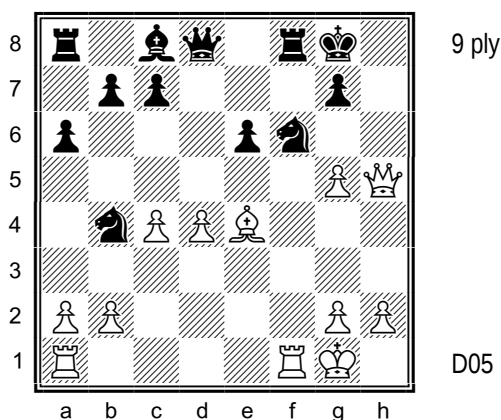


728. Black has just played Na4-c5, intending to win a Rook and pawn for two pieces after 20 dxc5 Bxa1 21 Rxa1 Nxc5, when Black is threatening both 22...Nxb3 and 22...Nxe4. Yet White can win a piece after 21...Nxc5. How?¹

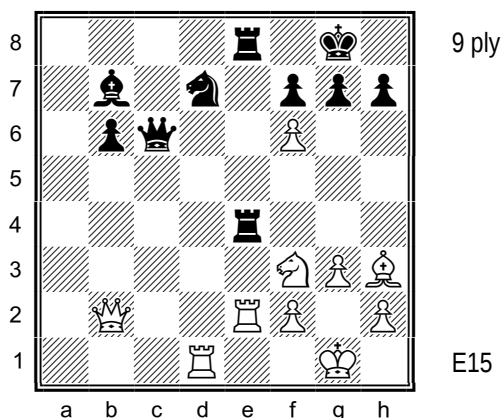
¹ Hint: Black's Bishop on d7 is weak.



729. White is up a Rook for a pawn after 34 Rxd3 cxd3 35 Rc8 d2 36 Rxd8+ Kg7, but Black's pawn is about to queen. How does White win in this position?

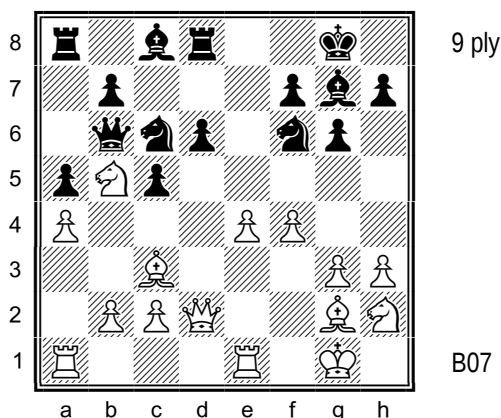


730. Black is up two pieces for a pawn after the moves 18 gxf6 Qxd4+ 19 Kh1 Qxe4. How does White win in this position?



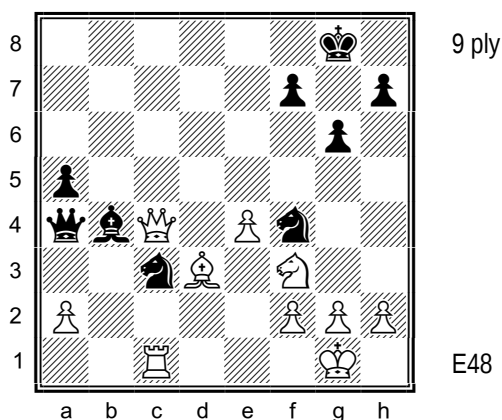
731. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Bxd7 Rxe2 26 Qxe2¹ Rxe2 27 Bxc6 Bxc6 28 Nd4 Ba4. How does White win a piece here?

¹ This Queen desperado wins material. The alternative, 26 Bxc6 Rxb2 27 Bxb7 gxf6, gives White two pieces for a Rook and pawn.



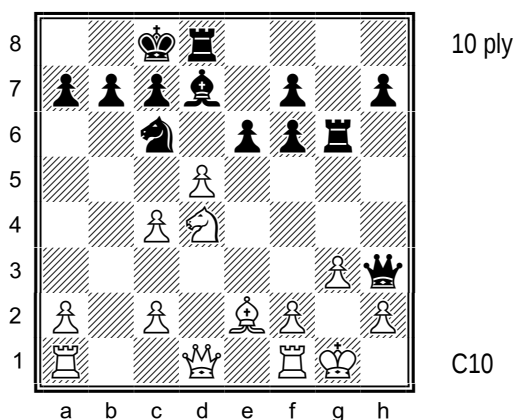
732. Black is down a Rook after the moves 18 Nxd6 Bxh3¹ 19 Bxh3 Rxd6 20 Qxd6 Rd8, but White's Queen is trapped. How does White win material in this position?²

¹ Black has compensation for the pawn after 18...Ne8 19 Nxc8 Raxc8 20 Qf2 Bxc3. ² Hint: On what square does White have a 2-1 advantage?



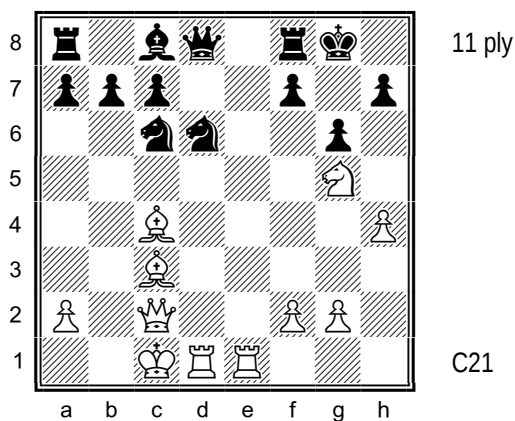
733. White is up a pawn after the moves 28 Rxc3 Qd1+ 29 Bf1 Bxc3. How can White win a piece in this position?¹

¹ Hint: Two moves that don't work are 30 Qxc3 Ne2+ 31 Kh1 Qxf1+ 32 Ng1 Qxg1, mate and 30 g3 Qxf3 31 gxf4 Qg4+, when the only way that White can avoid the draw is with 32 Bg2 Qd1+ 33 Qf1, when Black can gain the advantage with 33...Qd2.



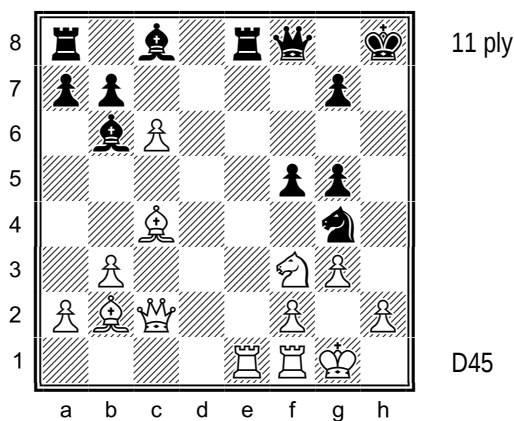
734. Visualize the position after the moves 15 dxc6 Bxc6¹ 16 Nxc6² Rxd1 17 Rfxd1 bxc6. How does White mate in three?

¹ Black is attacking White's Queen and threatening mate on g2. ² The only move. 16 Bf3 allows 16...Rh6, while 16 f3 allows 16...Rxc3+ 17 hxc3 (17 Kf2 loses to 17...Qxh2+ 18 Ke1 Qh4) 17...Qxc3 18 Kh1 Qh4+ 19 Kg1 Rg8, mate.



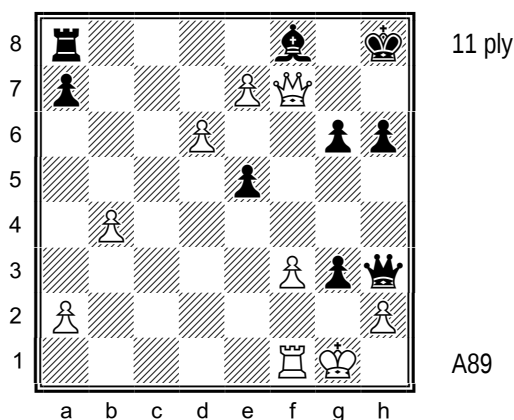
735. White is down a piece and two pawns after 16 Qb2 Nxc4 17 Rxd8 Nxb2¹ 18 Rxf8+ Kxf8, but can now mate in three. How?

¹ 17...Rxd8 gives Black a Rook, Knight and two pawns for the Queen, but after 18 Qb3 Nd6 19 Bb2, White threatens 20 Qc3, with an attack along the a1-h8 diagonal.



736. White is up a pawn and can win a piece after the moves 21 Ba3¹ Bxf2+ 22 Qxf2² Nxf2 23 Bxf8 Nh3+ 24 Kg2 Rxf8. How?³

¹ Black's Queen is tied to the defense of the Re8 and can't move. ² 22 Rxf2 allows 22...Rxe1+ 23 Nxe1 Qxa3, but 22 Kh1 is playable. ³ Hint: 25 Kxh3 doesn't win a piece because of 25...g4+.

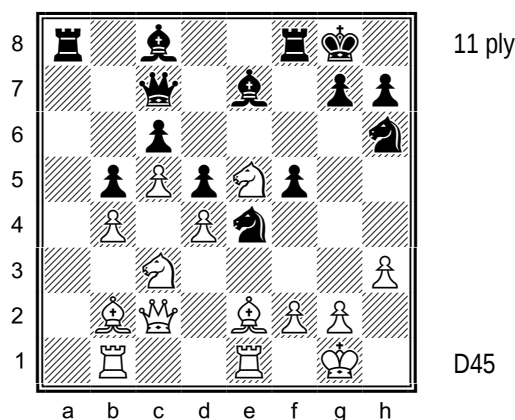


11 ply

A89

737. Black threatens mate on h2, but White to play can draw with either 28 hxc3¹ or 28 exf8=Q+ Rxf8 29 Qxf8+ Kh7 30 Qf7+ Kh8 31 Qf8+. Yet White doesn't have to be content with a draw. How can White win after the moves 28 exf8=Q+ Rxf8 29 Qxf8+ Kh7?²

¹ 28 hxc3 allows 28...Qxc3+ 29 Kh1 Qh3+, with a perpetual check. ² Hint: All White has to do is defend his pawn on h2.

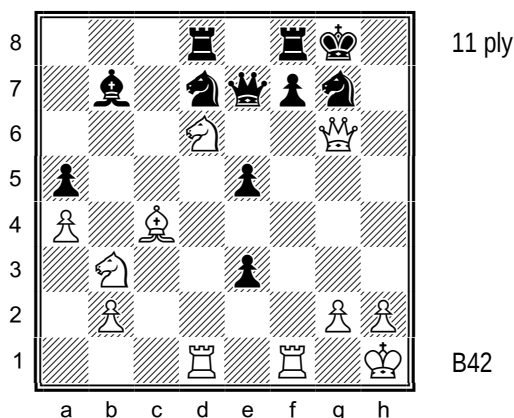


11 ply

D45

738. White has three pawns for the piece after 20 Bxb5 Nxc3¹ 21 Bxc6 Nxb1 22 Bxd5+ Kh8 23 Bxa8 Qa7 24 Bf3 Na3. White's Queen is under attack in this position, but White can win material here. How?²

¹ 20...cxb5 21 Nxd5 gives White two connected passed pawns for the piece. ² Hint: Black's Knight can become trapped.



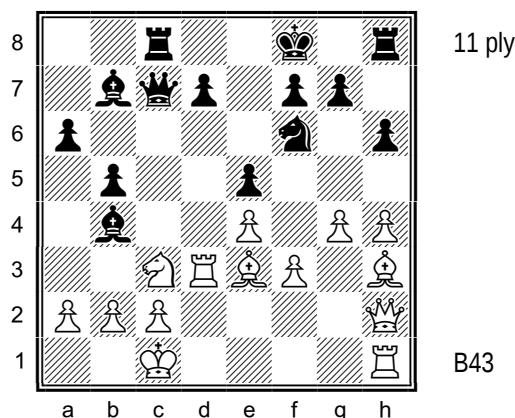
11 ply

B42

739. Black is down a Queen after the moves 27 Bxf7+ Rxf7 28 Rxf7 Qxf7¹ 29 Qxf7+ Kh8 30 Nxb7 e2 31 Re1 Rf8², but is attacking White's Queen and threatens to play 32...Rf1+. White is up a Rook and two pawns after 32 Qxf8+ Nxf8 33 Rxe2, but has a better move. What is it?

¹ Black's idea is to play Rf8, e2, and Rf1, with mate.

² Black has achieved the position she wanted.



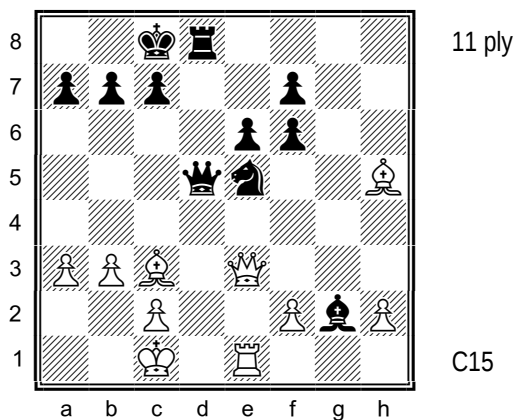
11 ply

B43

740. White is up a piece for a pawn after the moves 17 g5 hxg5 18 hxg5 Ng4¹ 19 fxg4 Bxe4² 20 Nxe4 Rxh3³, but his Queen is under attack. How does White win in this position?

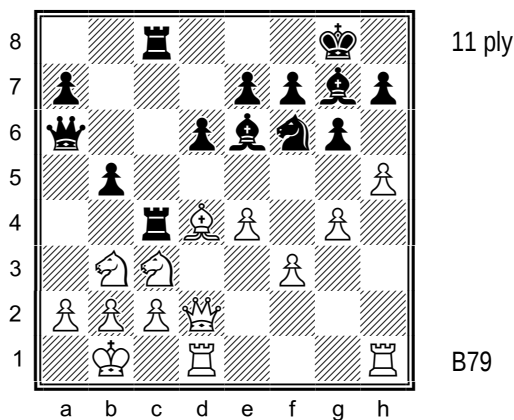
¹ 18...Ne8 or 18...Ng8 are safer. ² Black doesn't mind 20 Nxe4, as this opens up the c-file for his pieces.

³ White's Queen is tied to the defense of his pawn on c2; 21 Qxh3 loses to 21...Qxc2, mate and 21 Qg2 loses a Rook to 21...Rxh1+.



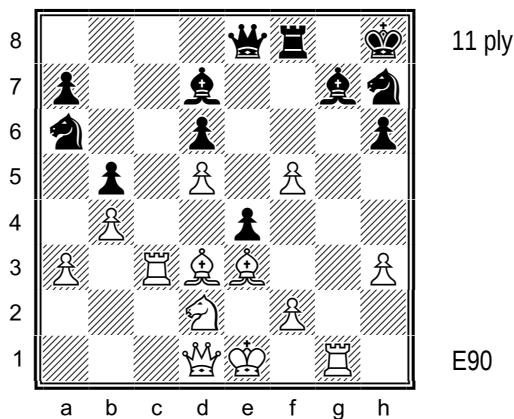
741. Material is even after the move 25 Rd1 Nd3+¹ 26 Qxd3 Qg5+ 27 f4² Rxd3 28 fxg5 Rxc3, but how can White win a pawn and the game?

¹ This attacks White's Bishop on h5. Moving the Queen drops the f- pawn, e.g., 25...Qb5 26 Rxd8+ Kxd8 27 Bxe5 Qxe5 (27...gxe5 28 Qg5+ wins a piece) 28 Qxe5 fxe5 29 Bxf7. ² 27...Qxf4+ allows 28 Bd2, when White is up a piece for two pawns.



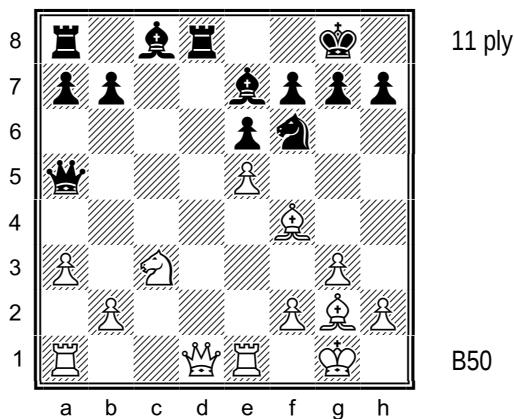
742. How does White mate in two after the moves 19 g5 b4¹ 20 gxf6 bxc3 21 hxg6² cxd2³ 22 gxh7+ Kf8⁴?

¹ 19...Nxh5 seems okay for Black. ² Black has compensation for the exchange after 21 Bxc3 Rxc3 22 bxc3 Bxf6. ³ The actual game continued 21...fxg6 22 Qh2 exf6 23 Qxh7+ Kf8 24 Bxf6 Bxf6 25 Qxg6, with a winning attack (1-0, 30). ⁴ 22...Kh8 23 fxg7 is mate.



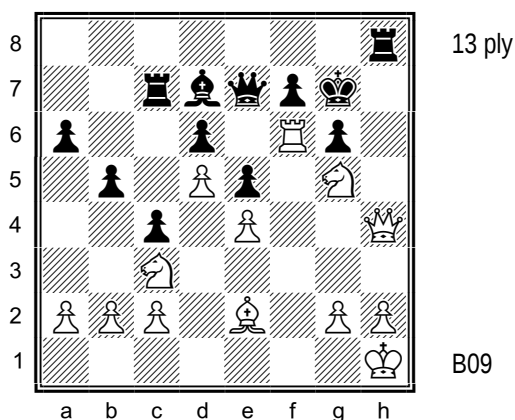
743. White is up two pawns after the moves 21 Rxc7¹ Kxc7² 22 Nxe4 Bxf5 23 Nxd6³ Qe5 24 Nxf5+ Rxf5. How can White win a piece in this position?

¹ 21 Nxe4 Bxc3+ 22 Nxc3 leaves White up two pawns, but they're doubled on the f-file. ² White is up the exchange and a pawn after 21...exd3 22 Qg4. ³ Black resigned here.

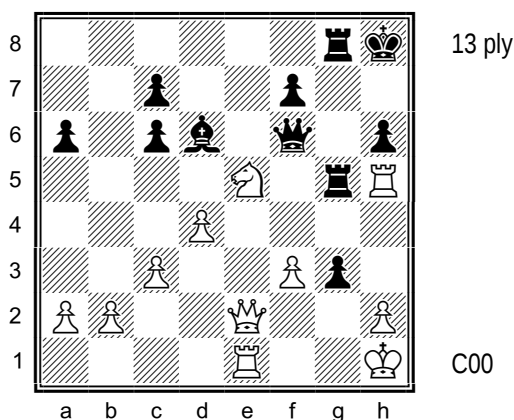


744. What is the material balance after the moves 17 exf6¹ Rxd1 18 fxe7 Rxe1+ 19 Rxe1 Bd7 20 Rd1 Be8² and how does White gain compensation for the Queen?

¹ White is better after 17 Qc2 Nd5 18 Nxd5 exd5. ² In the game Black tried 20...e5 21 Rxd7 exf4 22 b4, when his Queen has to give up control of d8, e.g., 22...Qg5 loses to 23 Ne4 (1-0) or 22...Qb6 23 Nd5 Qb5 24 Rd8+ Qe8 25 Rxa8 Qxa8 26 Nc7 and the pawn queens.

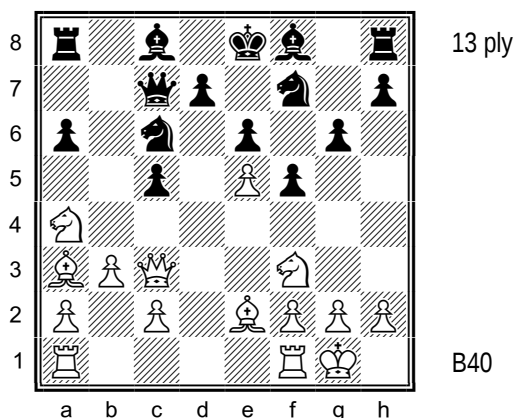


745. White has two Knights and two pawns for a Rook after the moves 23 Rxf7+ Qxf7 24 Qxh8+ Kxh8 25 Nxf7+ Kg7 26 Nxd6 Kf6, when Black is threatening to win White's Knight on d6 with 27...Ke7. How can White get the most for his Knight?



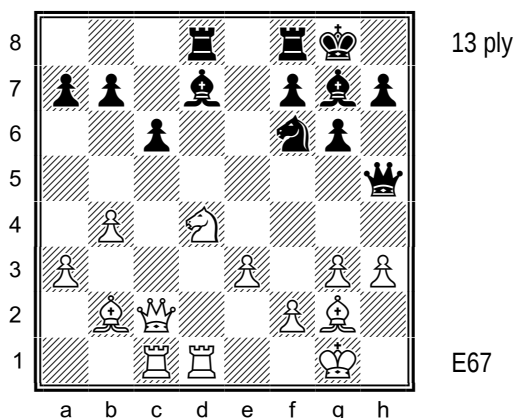
746. White is down a piece after the moves 30 Ng4 g2+ 31 Qxg2 Rxh5 32 Nxf6 Rg2 33 Nxh5¹ Rxh2+ 34 Kg1 Rxh5. How can White improve at move 33 to win the game?

¹ Black has the better ending after 33 Kxg2 Rxh2+ and 34...Rxb2.



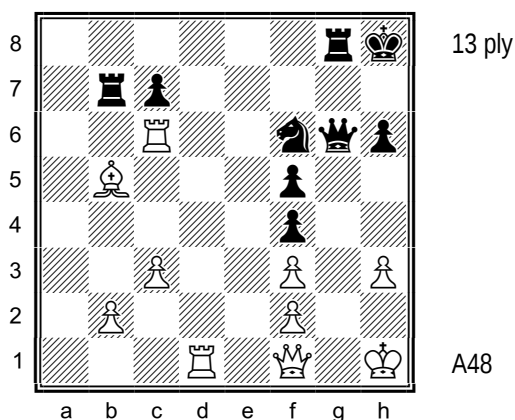
747. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Rfe1 Nfxe5 15 Nxe5 Nxe5 16 Bc4¹ Nxc4² 17 Qxh8 Nxa3 18 Qxh7. Why can't Black play 18...Nxc2, forking both of White's Rooks?

¹ 16 Bxc5 is also good. ² White has two pieces for a Rook after 16...Bg7 f4 Nf3+ 18 Qxf3 Bb7 19 Qd1 Bxa1 20 Qxa1 0-0 21 Nxc5.



748. White has three pawns for a piece after 20 g4 Nxg4¹ 21 hxg4 Bxg4 22 f3 Bxd4 23 Rxd4 Rxd4² 24 Bxd4 Bxf3³. How does White win in this position?⁴

¹ Black's Queen can't move, e.g., 20...Qg5 is met by 21 f4, while 20...Qh6 drops a pawn to 21 Qc5 (threatening 22 g5) b6 22 Qc2, intending 23 Nxc6. ² 23...Bxf3 24 Rxd8 Rxd8 loses to 25 Qc3. ³ Black is down a piece for two pawns after 24...Be6. ⁴ Hint: Black's Bishop on f3 is weak, while White's Bishop on d4 dominates the dark squares around Black's King.

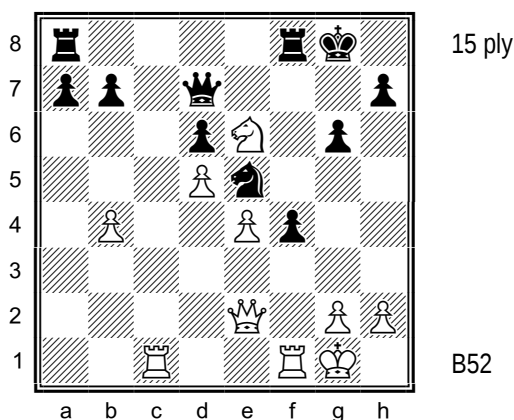


13 ply

A48

749. Visualize the position after the moves 33 Bc4 Qh5 34 Rxf6¹ Qxf3+ 35 Kh2 Rg3 36 Rd8+² Kg7 37 Rf7+ Kg6 38 Rg8+³ Kh5. How does White win in this position?

¹ 34 Bxg8 can be met by 34...Qxf3+ and 35...Qxc6, with an equal position. ² 36 fxg3 loses to 36... Rxb2+ 37 Kg1 Qxg3+ 38 Kh1 Rh2, mate. ³ Black resigned here.

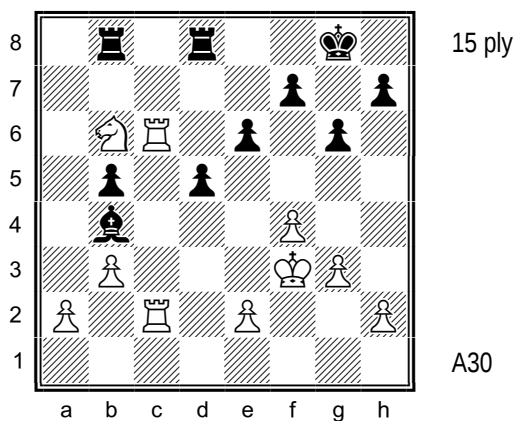


15 ply

B52

750. Black is up a pawn after 20 Rc7 Qa4 21 Qf2 Qxb4 22 Rg7+ Kh8 23 Qh4 h5 24 Qg5 Ng4¹ and threatens a smothered mate, but how can White mate in three here?²

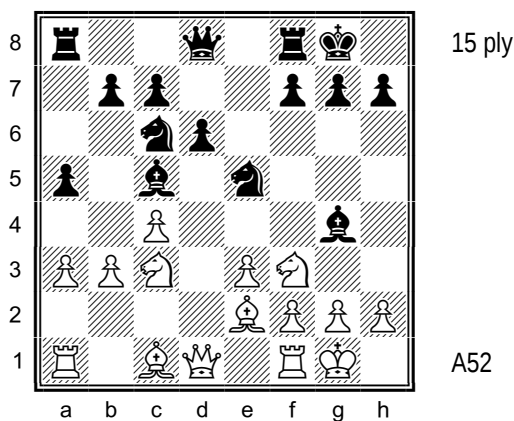
¹ This covers h6 and threatens a smothered mate with 25 Qxg6 Qb6+ 26 Kh1 Nf2+ 27 Kg1 (27 Rxf2 Qb1+) Nh3+ 28 Kh1 Qg1+ 29 Rxd1 Nf2. ² Hint: White can mate by getting his Queen to g7.



15 ply

A30

751. Visualize the position after the moves 27 Rc8 Rdxc8 28 Rxc8+ Rxc8 29 Nxc8 Bc5. Black's Bishop dominates White's Knight and is threatening to win it with his King, yet White has a resource that will not only save the Knight, but win the game. What is it?

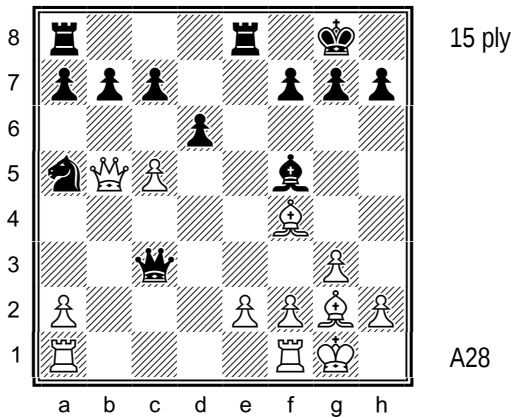


15 ply

A52

752. White is up a piece for a pawn after the moves 11 Nxe5 Bxe2 12 Nxc6 Bxd1 13 Nxd8 Bxb3 14 Nxb7 Bxc4 15 Re1 Bb6¹, but his Knight is trapped. How can White save his Knight?²

¹ 15...Ba7 16 Nxa5 lets the Knight out. ² Hint: Black's pawn on c7 is overworked.

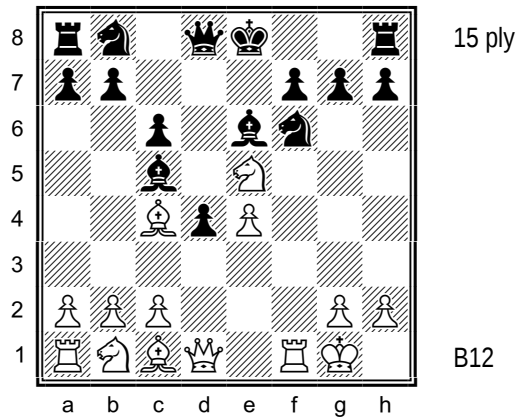


15 ply

A28

753. Material is even after the moves 16 cxd6 Be6 17 dxc7 Bc4 18 Rac1 Bxb5 19 Rxc3 Bxe2¹ 20 Rb1² Ba6³. How does White win a piece in this position?

¹ After 19...Nc6 White still has his passed pawn and can soften up the back rank with 20 Re3 Rxe3 21 fxe3, intending 22 Rd1 or 22 Bh3. ² Material is even, but Black's pinned b-pawn is under attack. ³ 20...Rac8 is met by 21 Bh3.

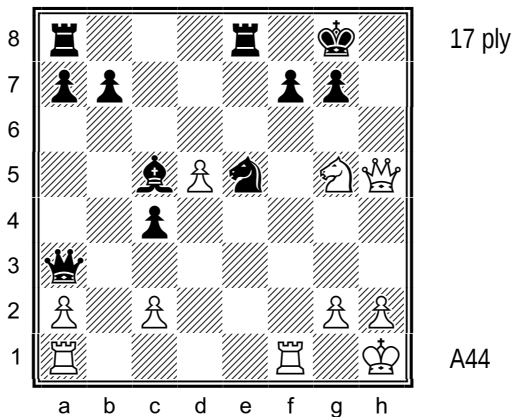


15 ply

B12

754. White is down a pawn after the moves 9 Nxf7 Bxf7 10 Bxf7+ Kxf7¹ 11 Qh5+ Kg8 12 Qxc5² Nxe4³ 13 Qf5 Nf6, but can win the game. How?

¹ 10...Kf8 and 10...Ke7 avoid the coming danger. ² White's threat is 13 Qc4+ Kf8 14 e5, winning Black's pinned Knight. ³ 13...b5 or 13...Nbd7 are better.

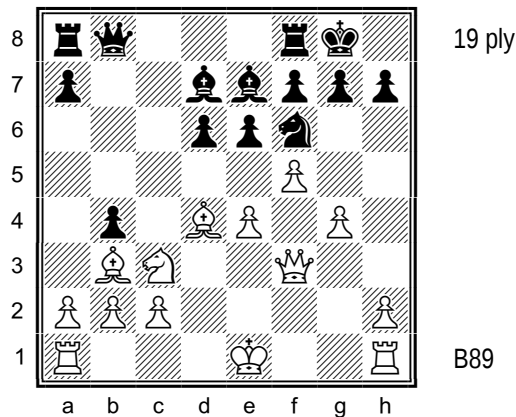


17 ply

A44

755. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxf7 Nxf7 22 Qxf7+ Kh8 23 Qh5+ Kg8 24 Rf1¹ Bf2 25 Qf7+² Kh8 26 Qxf2³ Qa6⁴. White is down the exchange for a pawn, but how does he win in this position?

¹ White's threat is 25 Qh7, mate. ² 25 Rxf2 loses to 25...Re1+ or 25...Qc1+. ³ White threatens 27 Qh4+ Kg8 28 Qh7, mate. ⁴ Black intends to meet 27 Qh4+ with 27...Qh6.



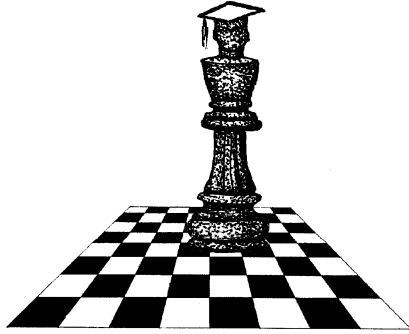
19 ply

B89

756. Black is up the exchange after the moves 14 g5 bxc3 15 gxf6 cxb2 16 fxe7 bxa1=Q+ 17 Bxa1 Rc8¹ 18 fxe6² Bxe6 19 Rg1 Qb4+³ 20 Kd1⁴ a5⁵, but White has a forced mate in three. How?

¹ White is down the exchange, but has the better position. ² 18 Rg1 is also good. ³ Black can't defend against 20 Rxc7 and 21 Rg5, mating, for example, 19...g6 loses to 20 Qf6. ⁴ Black resigned here. ⁵ 20...f6 21 Qxf6 doesn't help.

**CHESS VISUALIZATION
COURSE**



CHAPTER 26. LONGER VARIATIONS

This chapter features exercises that are twelve to nineteen half-moves deep covering the following themes presented previously, as follows:

- ✧ Before and After – see exercises 770, 771, 772, 774, 775, 785, 786, 787, 793, 794, 797, 798, 799, and 800;
- ✧ Two Sectors of the Board – see exercises 757, 761, 773, 783, and 784;
- ✧ Queens Under Attack – see exercises 758, 765, 766, 767, 768, 781, and 795;
- ✧ Rabid Pieces and Pawns – see exercises 768, 769, 776, 778, 779, 780, and 788; and
- ✧ Three Sectors of the Board – see exercises 759, 764, 790, 791, 792, and 796.

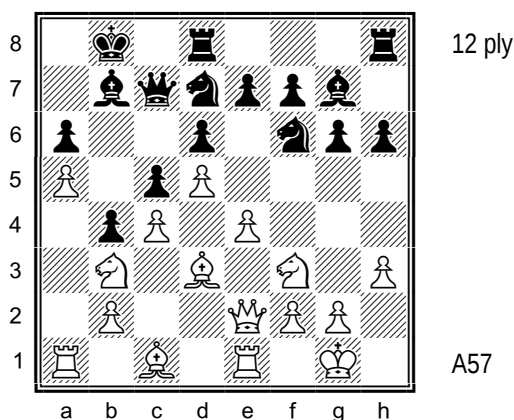
Most of these exercises ask you to visualize the resulting position and determine the material balance, but the following exercises prompt you to find a mate or perform some other task:

- ✧ Find a mate in two or three moves – see exercises 772, 783, 784, and 792;
- ✧ Win Black’s Queen – see exercises 782 and 788; and
- ✧ Stop Black’s passed pawn – see exercise 770.

In addition, some exercises are of the “two-way street” variety – see exercises 760, 762, and 777.

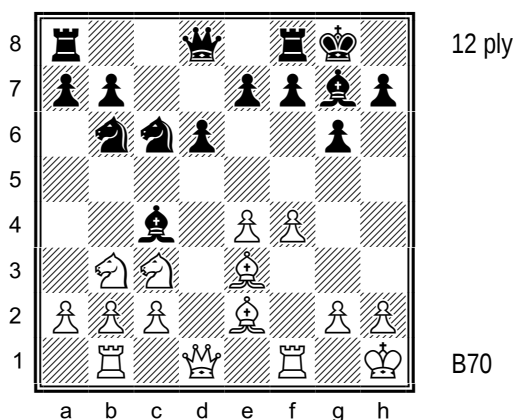
This chapter contains forty-four exercises ranging in depth from twelve to nineteen half-moves, as seen in the following table:

Ply:	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	TOTAL
Exercises:	4	12	4	8	-	8	3	5	44



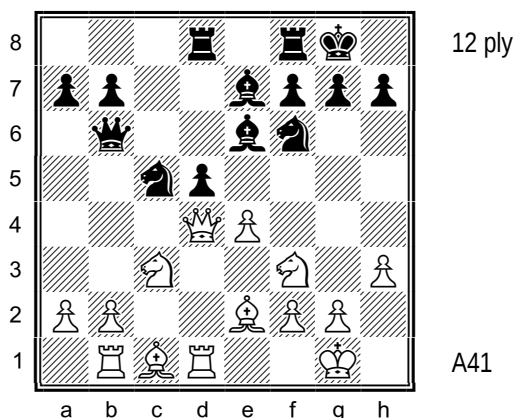
757. Visualize the position after the moves 15 e5 dxe5 16 Nxe5 Qxe5 17 Qxe5+ Nxe5 18 Rxe5 Nxd5 19 Rxd5¹ Bxd5 20 cxd5 Rxd5. What is the material balance?

¹ Material is even after 19 Re1 and 20 Nxc5.



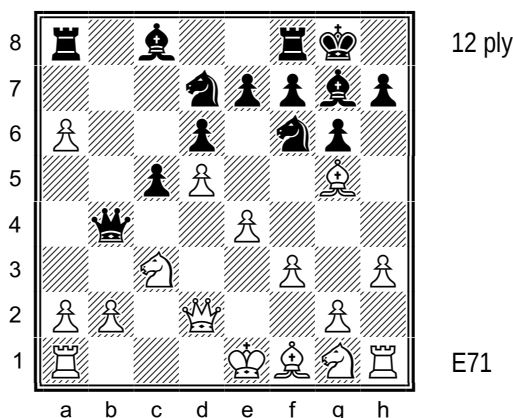
758. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxb6 Bxe2 14 Bxd8 Bxd1 15 Bxe7 Bxc2 16 Bxf8 Bxb1 17 Bxg7 Bxa2¹ 18 Nxa2 Kxg7. What is the material balance?

¹ This wins a pawn over 17...Kxg7. Black resigned here.



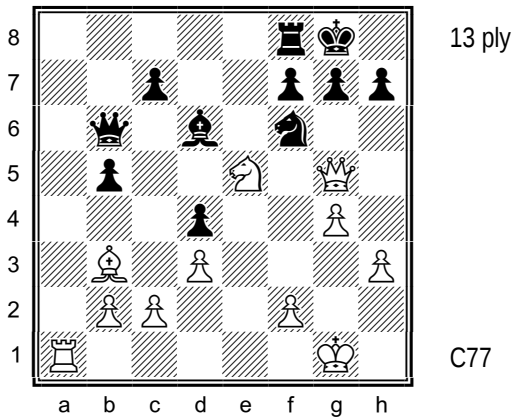
759. Visualize the position after the moves 15 e5 Bf5¹ 16 Bg5 Bxb1 17 Rxb1² Ncd7 18 Qxb6 Nxb6³ 19 exf6 Bxf6 20 Bxf6 gxf6. What is the material balance?

¹ 15...Nfe4 is fine for Black. ² 17 exf6 allows 17...gxf6, when White is down a pawn without full compensation after 18 Bh6 Be4 19 Bxf8 Kxf8. ³ 18...axb6 gives Black doubled pawns on the b-file, while 18...Nxb6 gives Black doubled pawns on the f-file.



760. White is up two pawns, but his a-pawn is about to fall. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Nb5 Bxa6¹ 13 Qxb4 cxb4 14 Nc7 Bxf1 15 Nxa8 Bxg2² 16 Rh2 Bxf3 17 Nxf3 Rxa8. What is the material balance?

¹ 12...Qxd2+ 13 Bxd2 Bxa6 14 Nc7 is similar to the game, except that Black's c-pawn is on c5. ² The actual game continued 15...Bc4 16 Rc1 Ne5 17 Nb6 (1-0, 64), when Black could have won back the exchange with 17...Nd3.

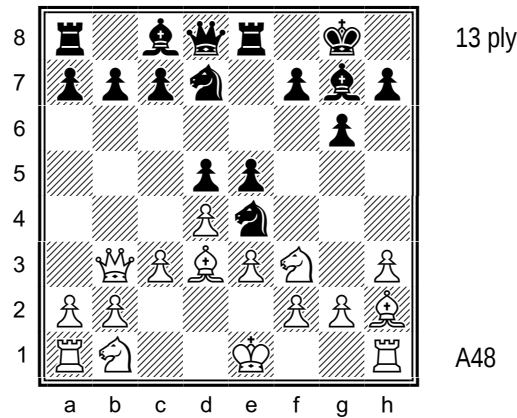


13 ply

C77

761. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Nxf7 Rxf7 24 Qf5 g6 25 Qe6 Kg7 26 Qxf7+ Kh6 27 Be6¹ Be5 28 f4 Bxf4 29 Qxf6. What is the material balance?

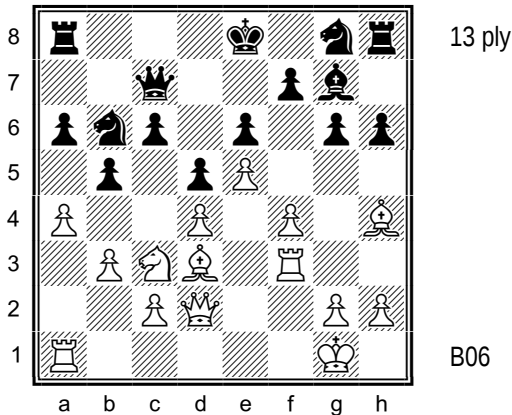
¹ 27 Qxf6 loses the Queen to 27...Bh2+.



13 ply

A48

762. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Qxd5 Nef6 11 Qb3 e4 12 Ng5 exd3 13 Nxf7 Qe7 14 Nd6+ Kh8 15 Nxe8 Qxe8 16 Bxc7. What is the material balance?

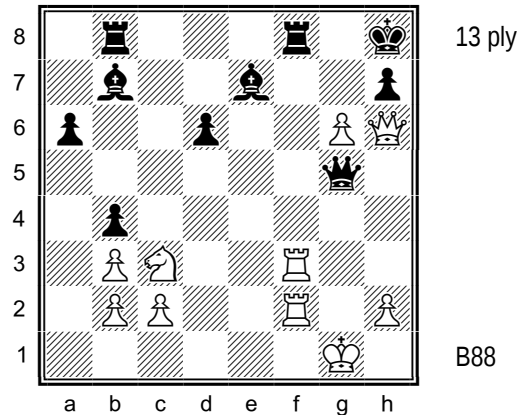


13 ply

B06

763. Visualize the position after the moves 15 axb5 axb5 16 Rxa8+ Nxa8 17 Nxb5¹ cxb5 18 Bxb5+ Kf8 19 Qb4+ Ne7 20 Rc3 Qb8² 21 Qxe7+. What is the material balance?

¹ This clears b4 for the Queen; White's next move clears the 3rd rank for the Rook. ² 20...Qb7 21 Qxe7+ Qxe7 loses to 22 Rc8+.

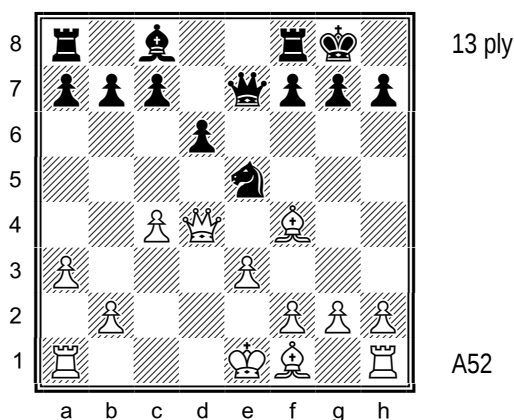


13 ply

B88

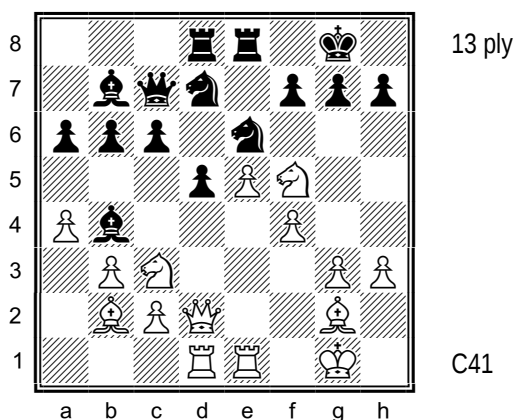
764. White is down a piece for a pawn, he's in check, and his Nc3 is under attack. What is the material balance after the moves 28 Qxg5 Bxg5 29 Rxf8+ Rxf8 30 Rxf8+ Kg7 31 gxh7¹ Kxh7² 32 Rf7+ Kg6 33 Rxb7 bxc3 34 bxc3?

¹ This wins an extra pawn compared to the line 31 Rf7+ Kxg6 32 Rxb7 bxc3 33 bxc3. Black resigned here. ² The zwischenzug 31...Be3 doesn't change anything.



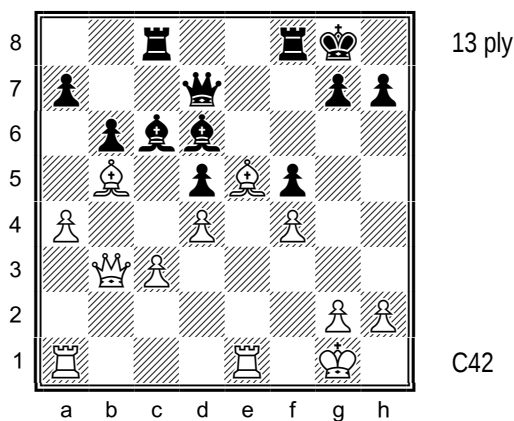
765. Visualize the position after the moves 12 c5 Nc6¹ 13 cxd6 Nxd4 14 dxe7 Nc2+ 15 Kd2 Nxa1 16 exf8=Q+ Kxf8 17 Bc4 c6 18 Rxa1². What is the material balance?

¹ 12...Bf5 or 12...Rd8 are better. ² Black resigned here.



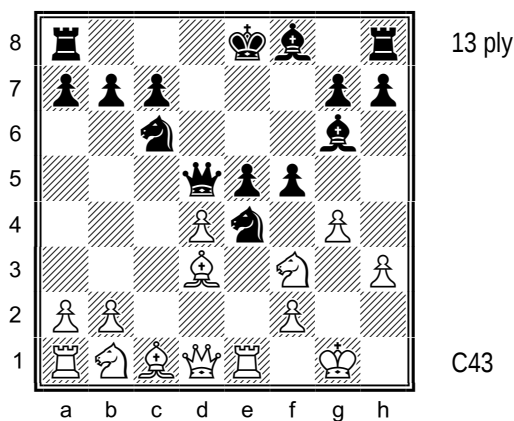
766. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Nxd5 Bxd2 22 Nxc7 Bxe1 23 Nxe8 Bb4¹ 24 Nexg7 Nxg7 25 Nxg7 Kxg7 26 e6+ Kf8 27 Rxd7. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a after pawn 23...Rxe8 24 Rxe1.

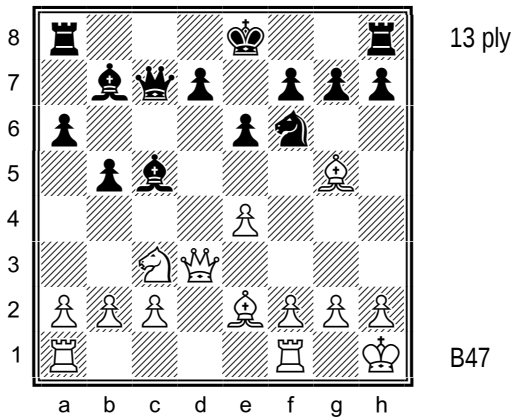


767. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Qxd5+ Bxd5 23 Bxd7 Bxe5 24 Rxe5¹ Rc7² 25 Rxd5 Rd8 26 Be6+ Kf8 27 Rxd8+ Ke7 28 Rc8. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here, as two of his pieces are under attack. ² Black will be down a Rook after 24...Rcd8 25 Rxd5 Rf7 Be6.



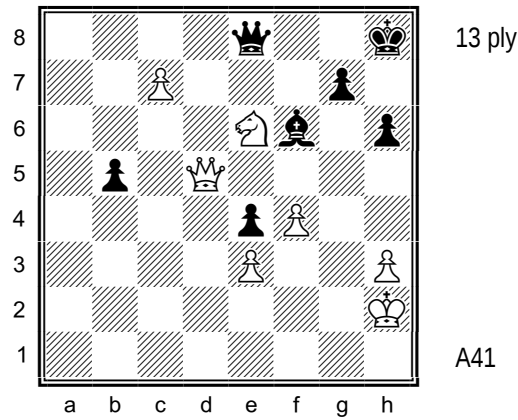
768. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 11 gxf5 Bxf5 12 Bxe4 Bxe4 13 Nc3 Bxf3 14 Nxd5 Bxd1 15 Nxc7+ Kd7 16 Nxa8 Bf3 17 dxe5. What is the material balance?



13 ply

B47

769. Visualize the position after the moves 12 f4 b4 13 e5 bxc3 14 exf6 cxb2 15 fxg7 bxa1=Q 16 Rxa1 Rg8 17 Qxh7 Rxg7 18 Qxg7. What is the material balance?

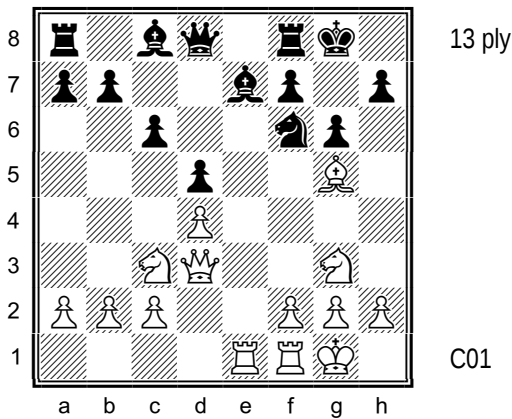


13 ply

A41

770. Visualize the position after the moves 51 Qd8¹ Bxd8 52 cxd8=Q Qxd8 53 Nxd8 b4. What is the best way for White to stop Black's b-pawn?

¹ 51 Nd8 with 52 c8=Q also wins.

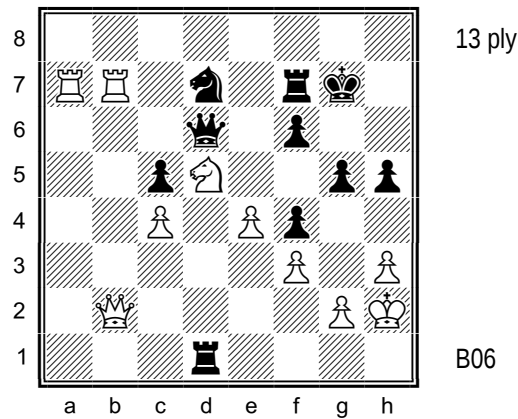


13 ply

C01

771. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Rxe7 Qxe7 13 Qf3 Kg7 14 Nce4 dxe4 15 Nxe4 Qe6 16 Bxf6+ Kg8¹ 17 Qf4² Qxf6 18 Nxf6+. What is the material balance?

¹ 16...Qxf6 17 Qxf6+ is similar to the game.² Black resigned here. The threat of 18 Qh6 and 19 Qg7, mate, forces Black to give up his Queen.

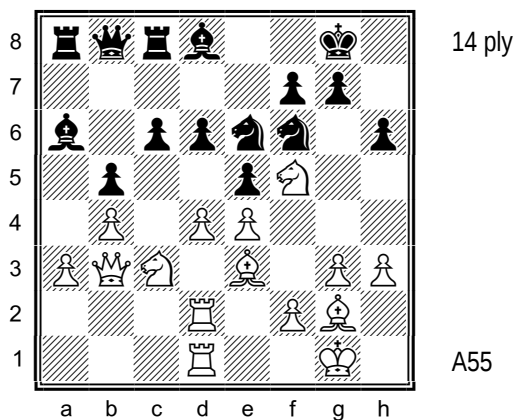


13 ply

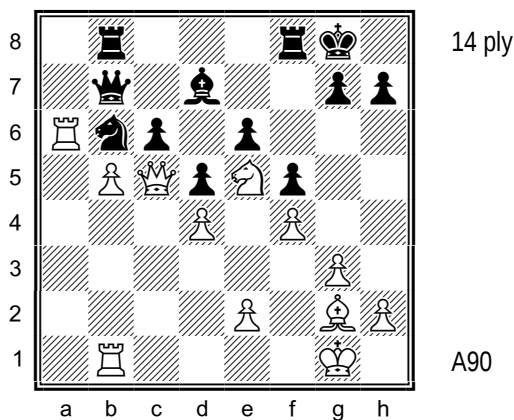
B06

772. Visualize the position after the moves 45 Rxd7 Rxd7 46 Rxd7+ Qxd7 47 Qxf6+¹ Kh7 48 Qxg5² Qf7³. How does White mate in three?

¹ Black resigned here. ² White's threat is 49 Nf6+ Kh8 40 Qg8, mate. ³ Best is to give back the exchange with 48...Rxd5 49 exd5, although this gives White a won ending.

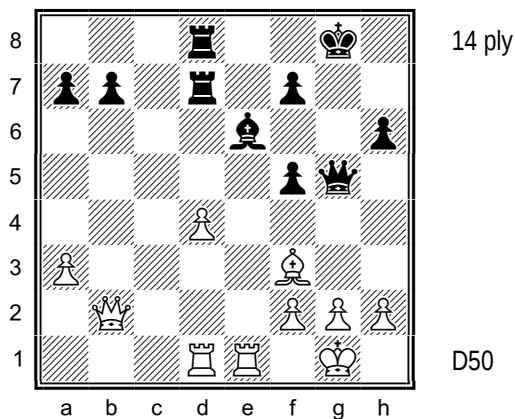


773. Visualize the position after the moves 21 dxe5 dxe5 22 Nd6 Rc7 23 Nxf7 Kxf7 24 Rxd8 Qxd8 25 Rxd8 Rxd8 26 Bb6 Rcd7 27 Bxd8 Rxd8. What is the material balance?



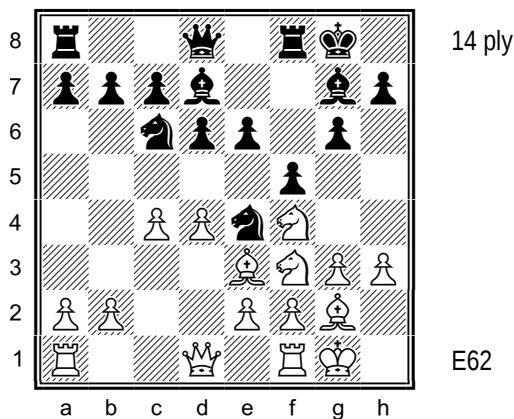
774. Visualize the position after the moves 36 Nxc6¹ Bxc6 37 Qxc6 Qxc6 38 bxc6² Nc4 39 Rxb8 Rxb8 40 c7 Rc8 41 Rxe6 Rxc7 42 Bxd5 Kf8. What is the material balance?

¹ 36 bxc6 drops the Ra6. ² Black resigned here.



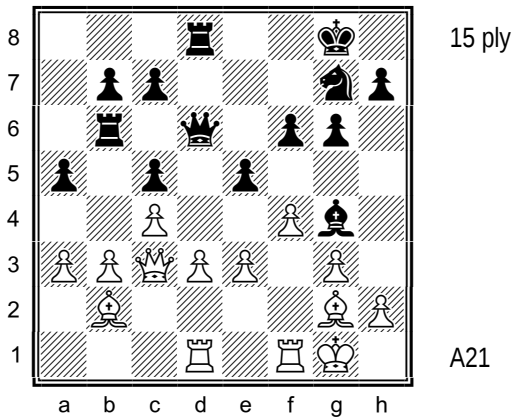
775. Visualize the position after the moves 22 d5 Bxd5 23 Rxd5 Rxd5 24 Bxd5 Rxd5¹ 25 Re8+ Kh7 26 Qh8+ Kg6 27 Rg8+ Kh5 28 Rxc5+ Kxc5. What is the material balance?

¹ In the game Black played 24...f4, but then resigned after 25 Bxb7, when White is up a piece (1-0).



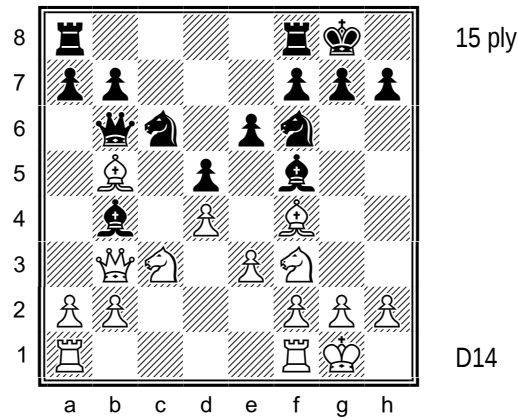
776. Visualize the position after the moves 12 d5 e5¹ 13 dxc6 exf4 14 cxb7² fxe3³ 15 Qd5+ Kh8 16 bxa8=Q exf2+ 17 Kh2 Qxa8 18 Qxa8 Rxa8. What is the material balance?

¹ 12...exd5 13 cxd5 Ne5 14 Nd4 gives White a Knight on e6. ² This is better than 14 cxd7 fxe3, when White's g-pawn is weak, for example, 15 fxe3 Nxc3. ³ 14...Rb8 16 Bxa7 Rxb7 loses the Rook to 16 Qd5+.



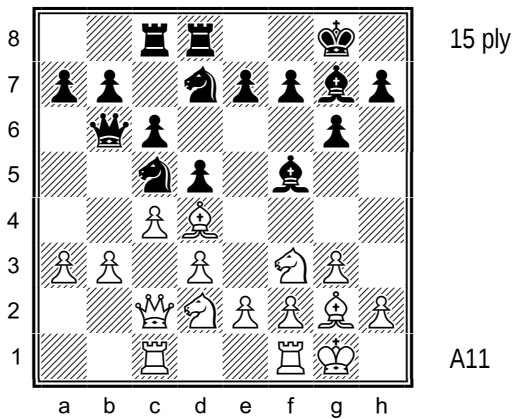
777. White's Rook is under attack, but most of Black's pieces are on dark squares. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Bd5+ Kh8 24 fxe5 fxe5 25 Qxe5 Qxe5 26 Bxe5 Bxd1 27 Bxc7 Be2 28 Bxd8 Bxf1 29 Bxb6 Bxd3 30 Bxc5¹. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here.



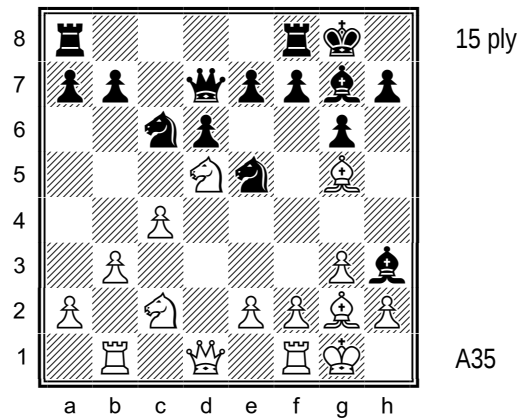
778. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxc6 Bxc3 12 Bxb7 Bxb2 13 Bxa8 Bxa1 14 Bxd5 Bxd4 15 Nxd4 Nxd5 16 Nxf5 Nxf4¹ 17 Ne7+ Kh8 18 exf4. What is the material balance?

¹ Better is 16...Qxb3 17 axb3 exf5.



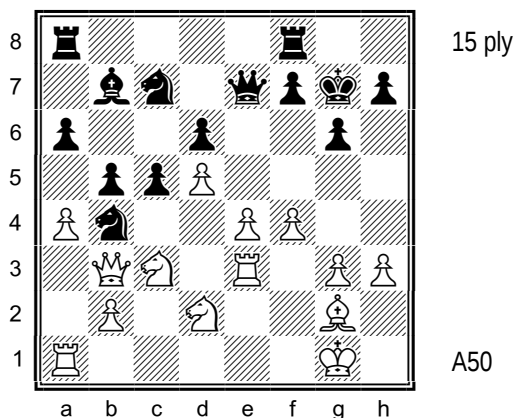
779. Visualize the position after the moves 14 b4 Bxd4 15 Nxd4 Nxd3¹ 16 Nxf5 Nxc1 17 Nxe7+ Kf8 18 Nxc8 Nxe2+ 19 Kh1 Rxc8 20 cxd5 Nf6 21 dxc6. What is the material balance?

¹ Two of White's pieces are under attack.



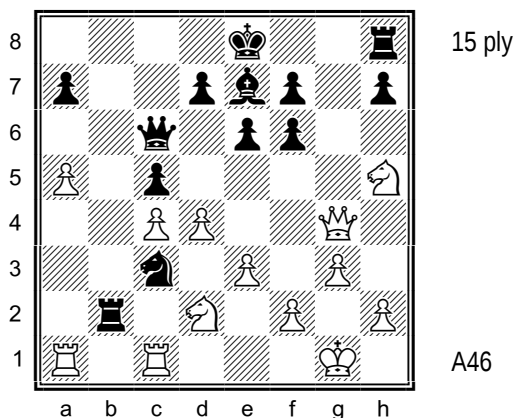
780. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bxe7 Bxg2¹ 15 Bxf8 Bxf1 16 Bxg7 Bxe2 17 Bxe5 Bxd1 18 Nf6+ Kg7 19 Nxd7+ Nxe5 20 Rxd1 Nxd7 21 Rxd6. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up a pawn after 14...Nxe7, when White can play either 15 Bxh3 or 15 Nxe7.



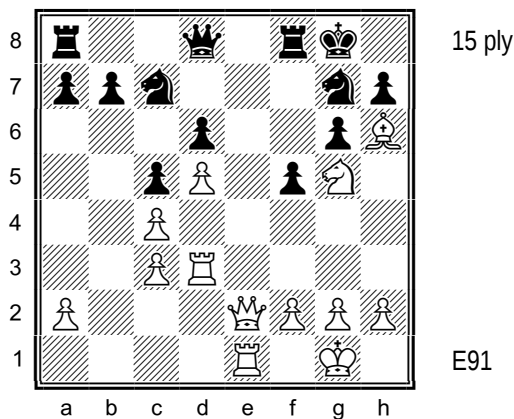
781. Black's Bishop on b7 is undefended, so White clears the h1-a8 diagonal. What is the material balance after the moves 23 e5 dxe5 24 d6¹ Qxd6 25 Bxb7 Qxd2 26 Ne4 c4 27 Nxd2 cxb3 28 Bxa8 Nc2 29 Rxe5 Nxa1 30 Bc6?

¹ Two of Black's pieces are under attack.



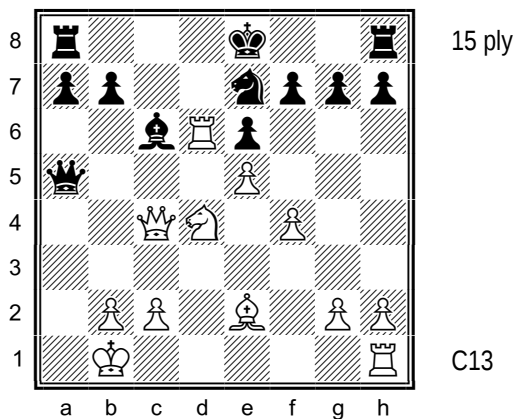
782. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxc3 Rxd2 22 Rb3 Qc7 23 Rab1¹ Bd8 24 Qg7² Rf8 25 Nxf6+ Ke7³ 26 Rb7⁴ Qc8. How does White win Black's Queen?

¹ Black resigned here. ² 24 Rb8 Ke7 25 Qg7 Rf8 26 Qxf6+ is also good, e.g., 26...Ke8 is met by 27 Ng7, mate. ³ 25...Bxf6 26 Qxf6 threatens 27 Rb8+. ⁴ This wins Black's Queen.



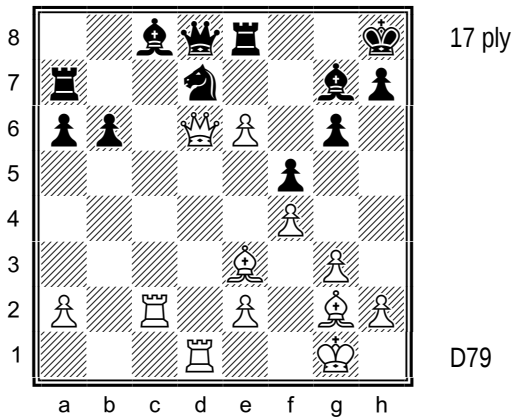
783. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Qe7 Qxe7 21 Rxe7 Nce8 22 Rh3 f4¹ 23 Bxg7 Nxc6 24 Rxc6 bxc6² 25 Qxc6+ Ke7 26 Qb7³ Ke8 27 Qxa8⁴ Qd8 28 Qb7⁵ Qe7. How does White mate in two?

¹ 22...b6 doesn't change anything. ² Black decides to keep White's Rook out of h6. 24...Ne8 (24...Nh5) keeps White's Rook out of f6, but then White can continue 25 Rh6 Rf6 26 Reh7.



784. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Nxc6 Nxc6¹ 22 Rxc6 bxc6² 23 Qxc6+ Ke7 24 Qb7³ Ke8 25 Qxa8⁴ Qd8 26 Qb7⁵ Qe7. How does White mate in three?

¹ 21...bxc6 22 Rxc6 wins a pawn. ² Castling leaves White up a piece after 23 Rd6. ³ Black resigned here. ⁴ White is currently up a piece and a pawn. ⁵ White threatens 27 Rd1, e.g., 27...Qe7 28 Qb8+ or 27...Qa5 28 Qc8+ Ke7 29 Rd7, mate.

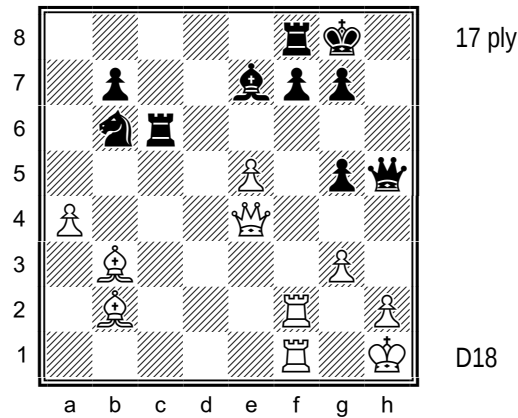


17 ply

D79

785. White is down a piece for a pawn, but Black's Knight on d7 is pinned. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxc8 Qxc8 22 exd7 Rxd7 23 Qxd7 Qxd7 24 Rxd7 Rxe3 25 Rd8+ Bf8 26 Rxf8+ Kg7 27 Ra8¹ Ra3 28 Ra7+ Kh8 29 Bd5. What is the material balance?

¹ Black resigned here.

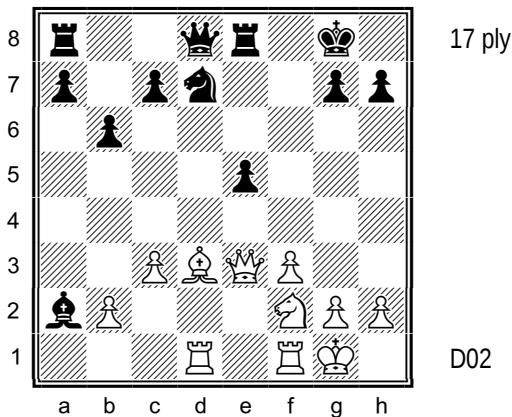


17 ply

D18

786. Visualize the position after the moves 31 Rxf7¹ Rxf7 32 Bxf7+ Qxf7 33 Rxf7 Kxf7 34 a5 Nc4 35 e6+ Kg8 36 a6² Nxb2 37 Qxc6 bxc6 38 a7³ Kh7 39 a8=Q. What is the material balance?

¹ 31 Bxf7 is also good. ² White is threatening both 37 a7 and 37 axb7. ³ Black resigned here.



17 ply

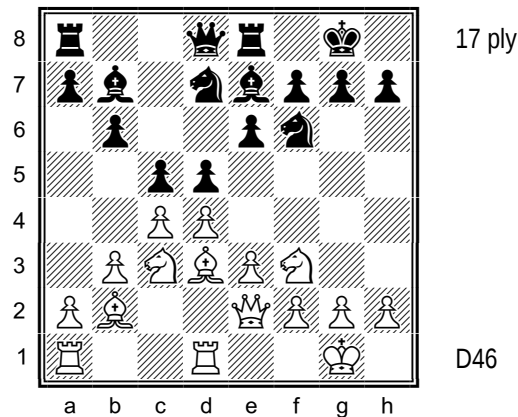
D02

787. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Qe4 g6 21 Bb5 Be6 22 Qa4 Re7 23 Ng4¹ Kf8² 24 Nxe5 Ke8³ 25 Nxd7 Rxd7 26 Bxd7+ Bxd7 27 Rfe1+ Kf8 28 Rxd7. What is the material balance?

¹ 23 Ne4 is also good, for example, 23...Rf7 24 Bc6 Rb8 25 Bxd7 Bxd7 26 Rxd7 Rxd7 27 Qxd7 Qxd7 28 Nf6+ Kf7 29 Nxd7, as played in the game (1-0, 33).

² 23...Rf7 isn't possible due to 24 Nh6+.

³ 24...Nxe5 loses the Queen for Rook and Knight.



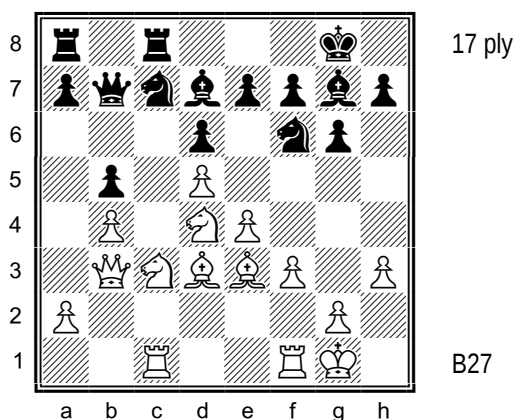
17 ply

D46

788. Visualize the position after the moves 12 cxd5 cxd4¹ 13 dxe6 dxc3 14 exf7+² Kxf7 15 Ng5+ Kg8³ 16 Bc4+ Nd5⁴ 17 Rxd5 Bxd5. How does White win Black's Queen?

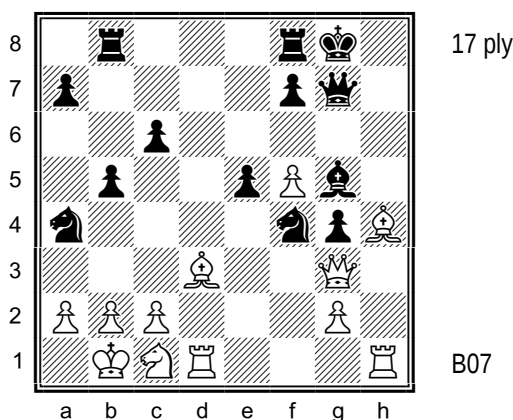
¹ Taking on d5 avoids the danger. ² This is better than 14 exd7 Qxd7 15 Bxc3, which only wins a pawn.

³ 15...Kf8 loses the Queen to 16 Ne6+. ⁴ 16...Kh8 loses the Queen to 17 Nf7+.



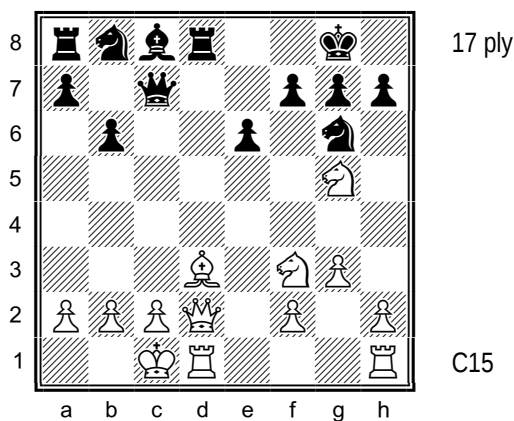
789. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nc6 Bxc6¹ 20 dxc6 Qxc6 21 Nd5 Qd7 22 Rxc7 Rxc7 23 Bxb5 Qc8² 24 Nxc7 Qxc7 25 Rc1 Qd8 26 Bc6 Rc8 27 Bxa7. What is the material balance?

¹ Black can also defend his e-pawn with his Bishop, Rook, or King. ² White is up the exchange after 23...Qxb5 24 Nxc7 Qb7 25 Nxa8 Qxa8.



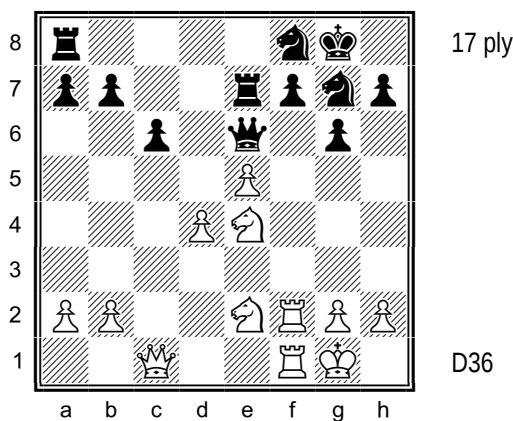
790. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 28 Bxg5 Qxg5 29 Rh4 Qg7 30 Rxb4 Ng6 31 f6 Qh7¹ 32 Bxg6 fxg6 33 Rxb6+ Kh8 34 f7² Rxf7 35 Qxe5+ Rg7 36 Qxb8+. What is the material balance?

¹ 31...Qh8, as played in the game, loses to 32 Rxb6+ (1-0) 32...Kh7 33 Rh1, mate. ² The threat is 35 Qe5, mating.



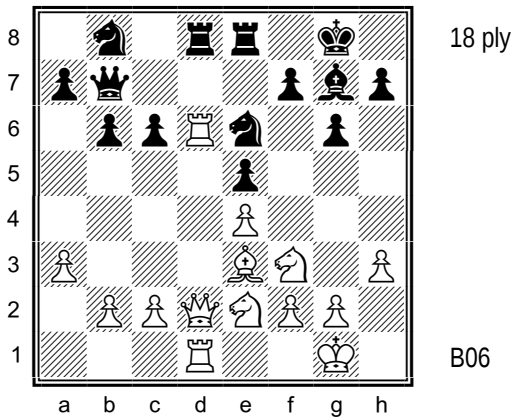
791. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nxf7 Rd7¹ 16 N7g5 Ba6 17 Nxe6 Qc6 18 Nfd4 Qa4² 19 Kb1 Rxd4 20 Nxd4 Qxd4 21 Bxa6 Qxd2 22 Bc4+³ Kf8 23 Rxd2. What is the material balance?

¹ White is up the exchange and a pawn after 15... Qxf7 16 Bxg6 Rxd2 17 Bxf7+ Kxf7 18 Rxd2. 15... Rxd3 can be met by 16 Nh6+ gxh6 17 Qxd3. ² This hits both a2 and d4. ³ Black resigned here.



792. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Ng5 Qd5 23 Nxf7 Nf5¹ 24 Nh6+ Nxh6 25 Qxh6 Ne6 26 Nf4² Qxd4³ 27 Nxe6 Rxe6 28 Kh1 Qc5⁴. How does White mate in two?

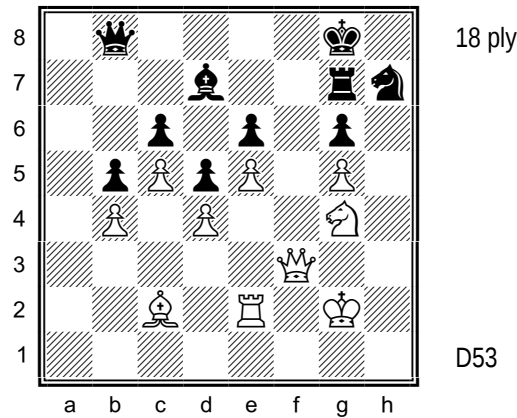
¹ 23...Rxf7 24 Rxf7 Qxf7 (White is up the exchange and a pawn after 24...Rb8) 25 Rxf7 Kxf7 leaves White with a Queen and pawn for Rook and Knight. ² Getting rid of Black's Knight will soften up f8. ³ 26...Nxf4 27 Rxf4 Rg7 allows Black to defend both f7 and f8. ⁴ Black has defended f8.



18 ply

B06

793. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxd8 Rxd8 22 Qxd8+ Nxd8 23 Rxd8+ Bf8 24 Bh6 Nd7 25 Nxe5 Qc7 26 Rxd7 Qxe5 27 Rd8 Qe7 28 Rxf8+ Qxf8 29 Bxf8 Kxf8. What is the material balance?

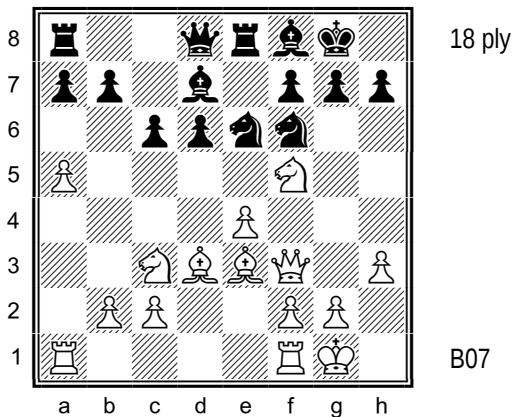


18 ply

D53

794. What is the material balance after the moves 56 Nf6+¹ Kh8² 57 Qh3 Be8³ 58 Re1⁴ Bf7 59 Rh1 Bg8 60 Bxg6⁵ Qa7 61 Bxh7 Bxh7 62 Qxh7+ Rxh7 63 Rxh7+ Qxh7 64 Nxh7 Kxh7?

¹ This pins Black's Knight on h7. ² 56...Nxf6 loses the g-pawn to 57 gxf6 Rh7 58 Bxg6. ³ Intending to defend the pinned Knight with Bf7-g8 and Qa7. ⁴ Heading for h1. 58 Qxe6 was also possible. ⁵ Attacking the Knight and creating a passed g-pawn.

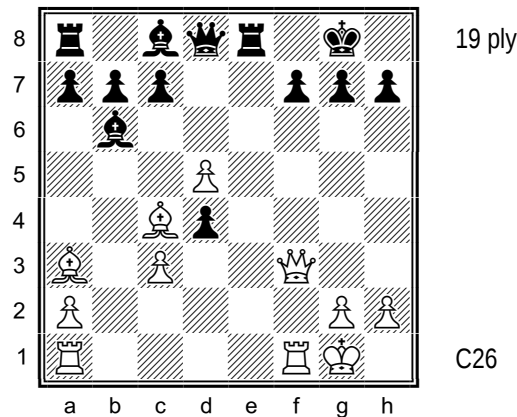


18 ply

B07

795. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Qg3¹ Nh5² 18 Nh6+ Kh8 19 Nxf7+ Kg8 20 Nxd8 Nxd8 21 Nxe6³ Nxf1 22 Nxf8 Nxe3⁴ 23 Nxd7 Nxd7 24 Kxg2 Re7⁵ 25 Nc5 dxc5. What is the material balance?

¹ White's threat is 18 Nh6+ Kh8 19 Nf7+. ² Both 17... Qc7 18 Nh6+ Kh8 19 Nxf7+ and 17...Kd8 drop a pawn. ³ 21 fxd3 Nxd8 leaves White a pawn up. ⁴ 22... Rxf8 23 Rxf1 gives White two pieces and a pawn for a Rook. ⁵ Black resigned here.

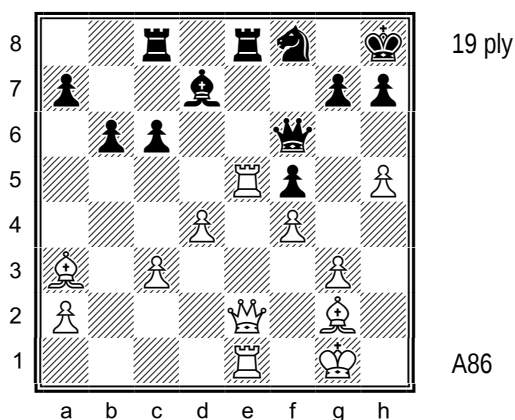


19 ply

C26

796. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Qxf7+ Kh8 17 Bf8 dxc3+ 18 Kh1 Bd4 19 d6¹ Be6 20 Bxe6 Rxf8² 21 dxc7³ Qe8 22 Qxf8+ Qxf8 23 Rxf8+ Rxf8 24 c8=Q Rxc8 25 Bxc8. What is the material balance?

¹ White's threat is 20 Qg8, mate. ² White is up a Rook for three pawns after 20...Rxe6 21 Qxe6 cxd6. ³ Black resigned here.

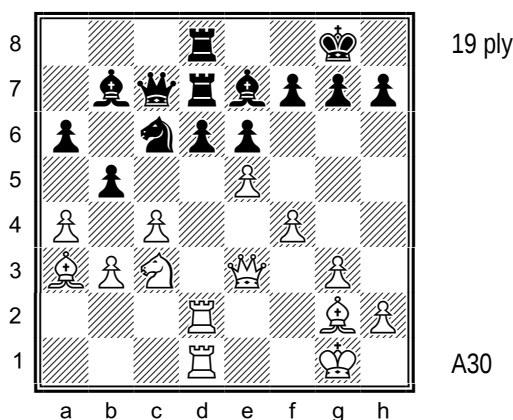


19 ply

A86

797. Visualize the position after the moves 26 Rxe8 Bxe8 27 Qxe8 Rxe8 28 Rxe8 c5 29 dxc5 Qf7 30 Ra8 Qe7 31 c6¹ Qxa3 32 c7 Qc5+ 33 Kh2² Kg8 34 c8=Q Qxc8 35 Rxc8. What is the material balance?

¹ 31 cxb6 Qxa3 32 b7 wins an extra pawn, compared to the game continuation. ² Black resigned here.

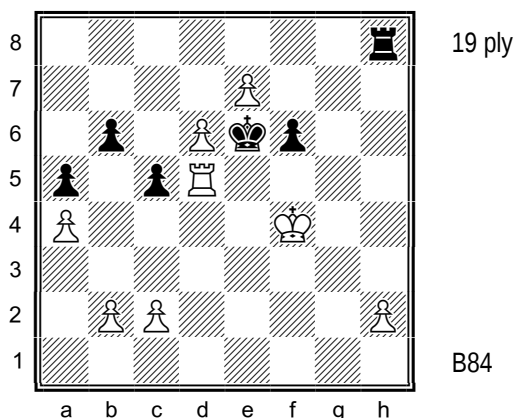


19 ply

A30

798. Visualize the position after the moves 22 exd6 Bxd6 23 Bxd6 Rxd6 24 Rxd6 Rxd6 25 Rxd6 Qxd6 26 Qb6 Qd7¹ 27 Bxc6 Bxc6² 28 Qb8+ Qe8 29 Qxe8+ Bxe8 30 axb5 axb5 31 Nxb5. What is the material balance?

¹ Relieving the pressure on b5 is better, either with 26...b4 or by taking on a4/c4. ² The game continued with 27...Qxc6 28 Qd8+, with mate next move.



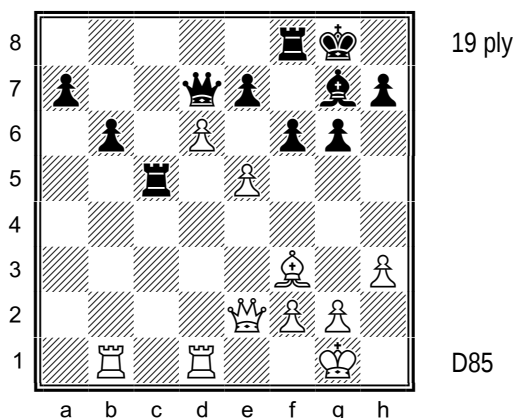
19 ply

B84

799. White is up two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 41 d7¹ Kxe7 42 d8=Q+ Rxd8 43 Rxd8 Kxd8 44 Kf5² Ke7 45 Kg6 Ke6 46 h4 f5³ 47 Kg5 Ke5 48 h5⁴ Ke6 49 h6 Kf7 50 Kxf5. What is the material balance?

¹ White's idea is to draw Black's King away from f6.

² Black resigned here. ³ Both pawns are on track to queen at the same time, but White's next move changes that. ⁴ White's pawn will queen with check.



19 ply

D85

800. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 23 e6 Qc8 24 dxe7¹ Re8 25 Rd8 Rxd8 26 exd8=Q+ Qxd8 27 e7 Qe8 28 Qe6+ Kh8² 29 Rd1 Rc8 30 Qxc8 Qxc8 31 Rd8+³ Qxd8 32 exd8=Q+. What is the material balance?

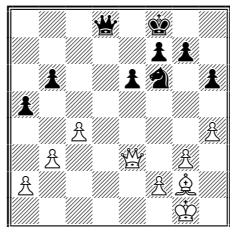
¹ After 24 d7 Qc7 White's central passed pawns are immobile, while Black's passed pawns on the queenside are ready to roll. ² 28...Qf7 29 e8=Q+. ³ Black resigned here.

ANSWER KEY

SECTION 1. SERIES OF EXCHANGES ON A SINGLE SQUARE.

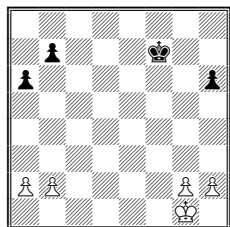
CHAPTER 1. EVEN EXCHANGES.

1. Nikolic-Seirawan, Wijk aan Zee, 1995.



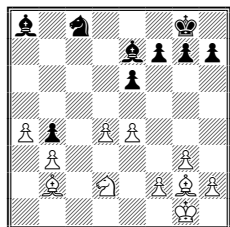
Material is even. The game continued 28 c5 bxc5 29 Qxc5+ Kg8 30 Bf3 (1-0, 61).

2. Muller-Wolfangel, French Team Championship, France, 2001.



White is still up a pawn (1-0, 39).

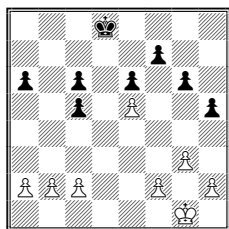
3. Keene-Orpinas, Havana Olympiad, 1966.



White is still up two

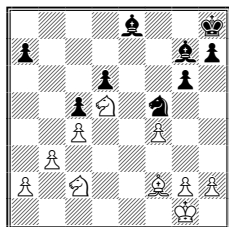
pawns and has exchanged down to a won ending. The final moves were 31 Nc4 Kf8 32 Kf1 (1-0).

4. Reutsky-Chistjakova, Chigorin Memorial Open, St. Petersburg, Russia, 2001.



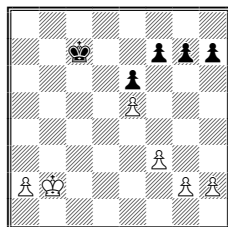
White has a won ending because of his better pawn structure. The game continued 26 Kf1 Kc7 27 Ke2 Kb6 28 Kd3 Kb5 29 Kc3, when Black's King will have to give way (1-0, 41).

5. Pachman-Smailbegovic, Sarajevo, Yugoslavia, 1961.



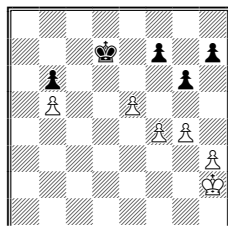
White is still up a pawn, but Black has the two Bishops (1-0, 61).

6. Garcia-Lopez, Pan American Championship, Havana, Cuba, 1963.



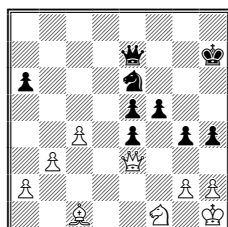
White is still up a pawn and has a won ending (1-0, 40).

7. Radjabov-Catalino Sadorra, World Youth Chess Festival (Boys 10), Cala Galdana, Spain, 1996.



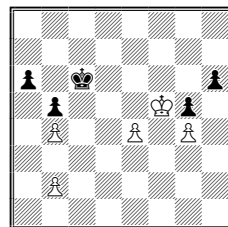
White is up a pawn and has a won ending (1-0, 46).

8. Burlai-Solomchenko, Ukrainian Team Championship, Simferopol, Ukraine, 1991.



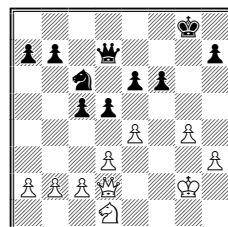
White is still up a piece (1-0, 58).

9. Capablanca-Farrugia, Panama Simul, 1933.



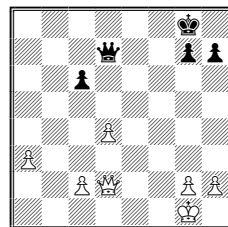
Material is even, but White has a won ending, e.g., 45 e5 Kd7 46 e6+ Ke7 47 Ke5 Ke8 48 Kf6, etc. or 45 Ke5 Kd7 46 Kf6. In the actual game Capablanca chose 45 Kg6 and won after 45...Kd6 46 Kxh6 Ke5 47 Kxg5 Kxe4 48 Kf6 (1-0).

10. Shirov-Sveshnikov, Tallinn Rapid, 2000.



Material is even (1-0, 83).

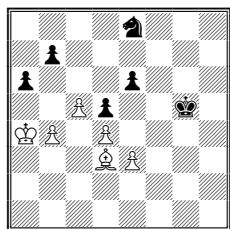
11. Gagunashvili-Azmaiparashvili, Izmir, Turkey, 2002.



White is still up two pawns (1/2-1/2, 80).

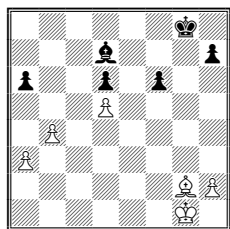
12. Dreev-Chekhov,

USSR Championship,
Moscow, 1991.



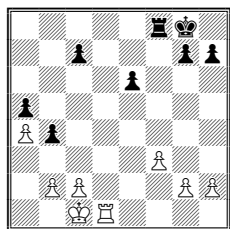
Material is even. The final moves were 41 Ka5 Kg4 42 Bxa6 bxa6 43 Kxa6 e5 44 b5 (1-0).

13. Erwic-Cornette,
EYCC, Boys 16, Hal-
kidi, Greece, 2001.



Material is even, but White has the better pawn structure (1-0, 41), e.g., White can play 30 Bf1, intending to meet 30...Bb5 with 31 a4.

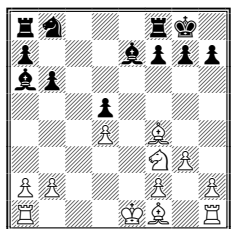
14. L'Ami-Peek, Dutch
Open, Netherlands,
2002.



Material is even, but Black's pawn structure has been weakened (1-0, 67).

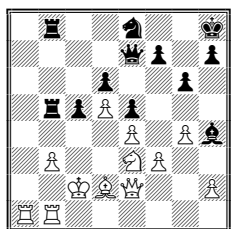
15. Goldin-Yudasin,

11th Chicago Open,
2002.



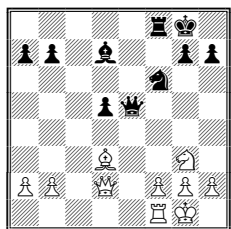
Material is even (1-0, 39).

16. Rowson-
Dunnington, London,
England, 1997.



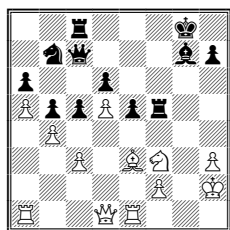
Material is even (1-0, 37).

17. Rogoff-Kent, US
Championship (Under
18), 1971.



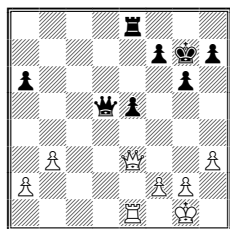
Material is even, but White has the better pawn structure (1-0, 52).

18. Keres-Van Schel-
tinga, Wijk aan Zee,
1969.



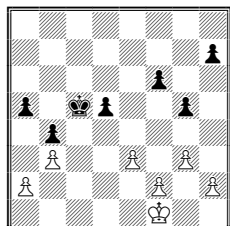
Material is even. The game continued 29 Ng5 Qe7 30 Rg1 cxb4 31 Qg4 Rcf8 32 Ne6 Rxf2+ 33 Bxf2 Rxf2+ 34 Kh1 Rf7 35 cxb4 Nd8 36 Rac1 Nxe6 37 Qxe6 Kh8 (1-0).

19. Alapin-Chajes,
Karlsbad, Czechoslo-
vakia, 1911.



Material is even (1/2-1/2, 53).

20. Renet-Ikonnikov,
EU Cup, Group 6,
Clichy, France, 1993.

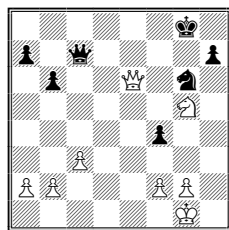


Material is even. The game ended with the moves 38 Ke2 g4 39 f4 f5 40 Kd2 h6 41 Ke2 d4 42 Kd3 (1/2-1/2, 42).

CHAPTER 2. EXCHANGES INVOLVING

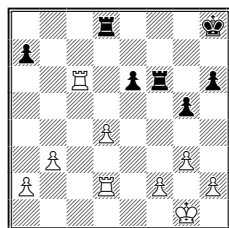
AN EXTRA ATTACKER.

21. Koskela-Sanli,
Women's Olympiad,
Elista, Russia, 1998.



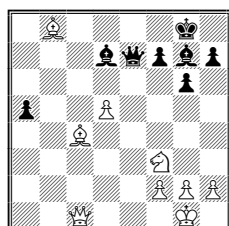
White is up a pawn (1-0, 57).

22. Trepp-Boehm,
NRW Juniors Cham-
pionship, Suedlohn,
Germany, 1981.



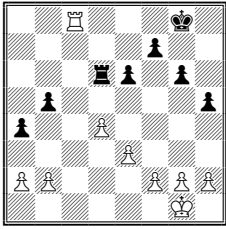
White is up two pawns (1-0, 42).

23. Parr-Webb, Sutton
Open, Sutton, England,
1997.



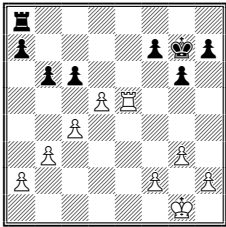
White is up a piece. The game ended with the moves 24...a4 25 d6 Qf6 26 Ng5 (1-0).

24. Gomez-Birriel,
Women Olympiad,
Dubai, United Arab
Emirates, 1986.



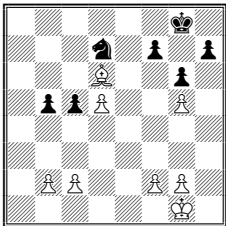
White is up a pawn
(1-0, 43).

25. Spasov-Trifunov,
Bulgarian Team
Championship, 1991.



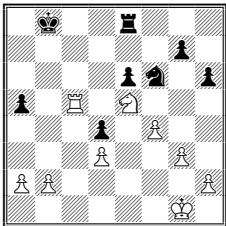
White is up a pawn
(1-0, 45).

26. Puljek Salai-
Macek, Croatian
Women's Champion-
ship, Pula, 1996.



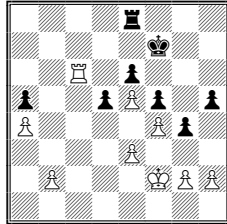
White is up a pawn
(1-0, 46),

27. Bru-Fant, Gausdal,
Norway, 2001.



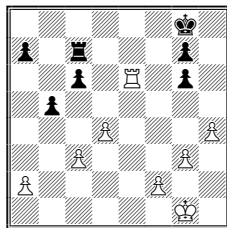
White is up a pawn
(1-0, 64).

28. Danuszewski-
Romanovsky, All-
Russian Tournament,
1909.



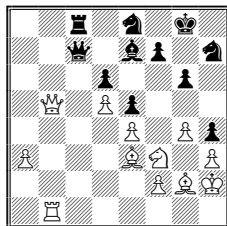
White is up a pawn
(1-0, 59).

29. Schaefer-
Wengenroth, Koblenz
Open, Koblenz, Ger-
many, 1990.



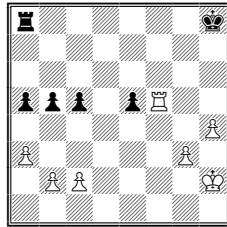
White is up a pawn
(1-0, 68).

30. O'Kelly-Green,
BCF Championship,
1970.



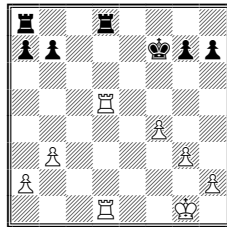
White is up a pawn and
has the two Bishops.
The final moves were
31...Qc4 32 Qd7 Qc7
33 Qxc7 Rxc7 34 Rb8
1-0).

31. Hug-Saeed. Thes-
salonica Olympiad,
Thessalonica, Greece,
1984.



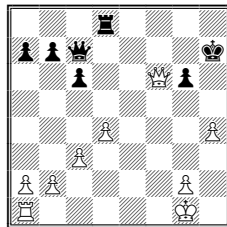
White is up a pawn
(1-0, 41).

32. Mazurkiewicz-
Rolf, Recklinghausen
Open, Recklinghausen,
Germany, 1994.



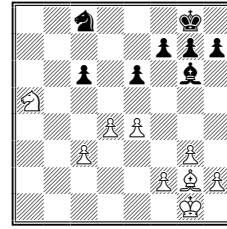
White is up a piece
(1-0, 27).

33. Gonzalez Fernan-
Riopadre Sierra, Astu-
ria (Group B), Spain,
1996.



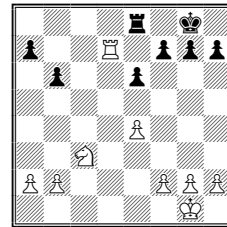
White is up two pawns
(1-0, 57).

34. Harestad-Stigar,
Norwegian Champion-
ship, Norway, 1981.



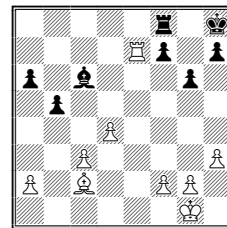
White is up a piece
(1-0, 27).

35. McKay-Kingston,
Australian Junior
Championship Hervey
Bay, Australia, 1999.



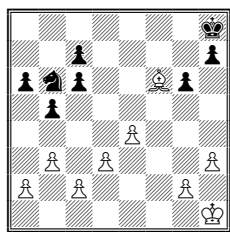
White is up a piece
(1-0, 27).

36. Plaskett-Ferguson,
Hastings Challengers,
1996.



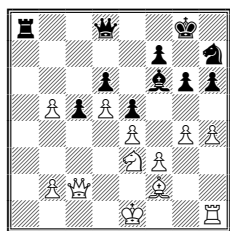
White is up a piece and
a pawn (1-0, 41).

37. Alexandria-
Jackson, Women's
Olympiad, Medellin,
Columbia, 1974.



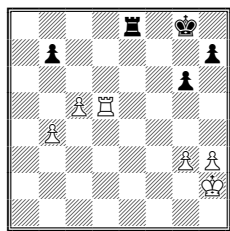
White is up a pawn and has a strategically won ending (1-0, 48).

38. Palermo-Schweber, Argentina Championship Mar del Plata, Argentina, 1968.



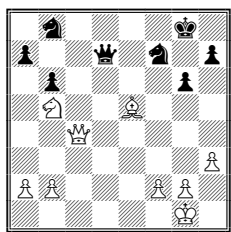
White is up a pawn (0-1, 77).

39. Ho-Hua Lefong, Canadian Junior Championship, 1996.



White is up a pawn (1-0, 59).

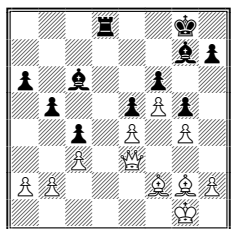
40. Potkin-Vorobiov, Chigorin Memorial, St. Petersburg, Russia, 2000.



White is up a pawn (1-0, 40).

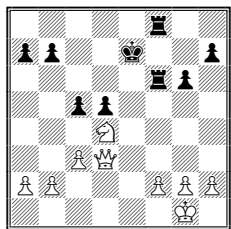
CHAPTER 3. EXCHANGES INVOLVING PIECES OF DIFFERENT VALUE.

41. Scheidt-Goergen, Seniors World Championship, Bad Liebenzell, Germany, 1996.



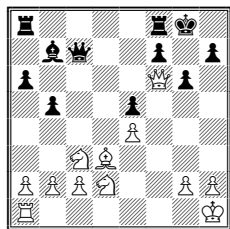
White is up a Queen for a Rook. (1-0, 29)

42. Hrivna-Hebelka, Czech Republic, 1979.



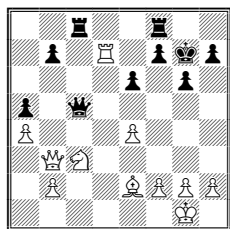
White is up a Queen and Knight for two Rooks (1-0, 40).

43. Tseshkovsky-Peev, European Team Championship, Moscow, 1977.



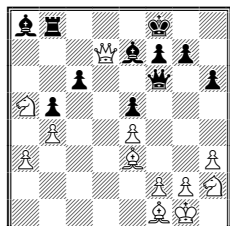
White is up two pieces for a Rook (1-0, 24).

44. Alvarez Garcia-Castano Bobes, Asturia-A, Asturia, Spain, 1996.



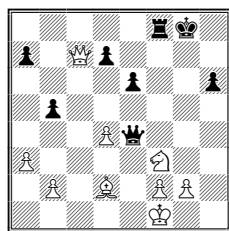
White has two pieces for a Rook (1-0, 42).

45. Bellin-Jackson, Guernsey Open, Guernsey Channel Islands, 1989.



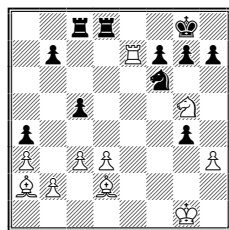
White has two pieces for a Rook (1-0, 46).

46. Jonkman-Stellwagen, Hoogovens-C Open, Wijk aan Zee, Netherlands, 1999.



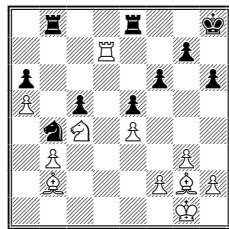
White has two pieces for a Rook (1-0, 38).

47. Ibraev-Vescovi, World Youth Championship (Under 18 Boys), Guarapuava, Brazil, 1995.



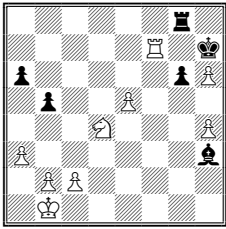
White has the two Bishops for a Rook and two pawns (1-0, 39).

48. Kaspret-Baumgartner, Austrian Championship, 1989.



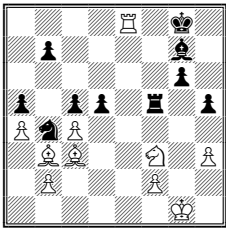
White has two Bishops for a Rook (1-0, 45).

49. McDonald-Csom, Budapest FS07 GM Budapest, Hungary, 1995.



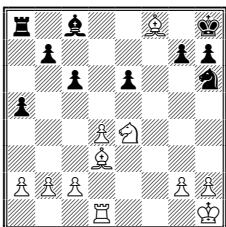
White is up three pawns, although he will lose his Pawn on h6 (1-0, 55).

50. Shirov-Agdestein, Bergen-Radisson SAS Match (Rapid), Bergen, Norway, 2001.



White is up a piece for a pawn and has the two Bishops (1-0, 56).

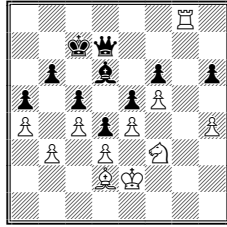
51. Meulner-Krenz, Nuremberg Open, Nuremberg, Germany, 1987.



White is up a piece and has the two Bishops (1-0, 28).

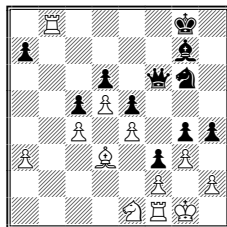
52. Gurgenzidze-Khasin, USSR Champion-

ship, Moscow, 1957.



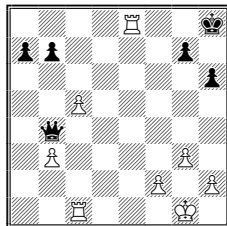
White has a Rook and Knight for his Queen, but is in no danger of losing. The game continued 52...Qf7 53 Rg6 h5 54 Nh2 Bf8 55 Nf1 Qh7 (Black was going to lose his h-pawn, so he tries to mix things up) 56 Rxf6 Be7 57 Rh6 Qg8 58 Rg6 Qh7 59 Bg5 (1-0, 80).

53. Dziubinsk-Rudnicki, Polish Boys Championship (Under 16), 2001.



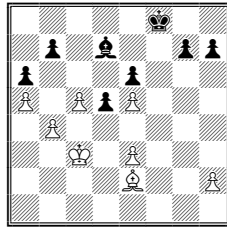
White has two Rooks for the Queen (1-0, 36).

54. Dzindzhashvili-Lombardy, New York Open, 1987.



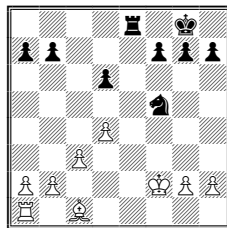
White has two Rooks and a pawn for the Queen (1-0, 56).

55. Biehler-Rosenberger, Oberliga South, Germany, 1995-96.



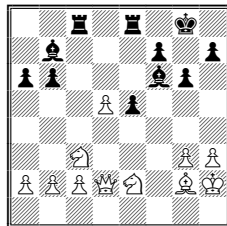
Material is even, Material is even, but White's better King gives him the better ending after 46 b5 axb5 47 Kb4 (1-0, 61).

56. Simet-Gombocz, Wattens Open, Wattens, Austria, 1994.



Material is even, but White has the better pawn structure and the better minor piece after 22 Bf4 d5 23 Re1 (1-0, 65).

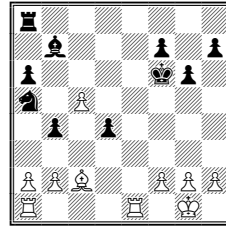
57. Gilea-Ionita, Trofeul Techirghiol, Techirghiol, Romania, 2006.



White has a Queen and Knight for two Rooks, but Black has the two

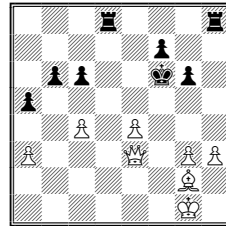
Bishops (1-0, 37).

58. Tarakanov-Terchanian, Russia Cup, Tomsk, Russia, 1998.



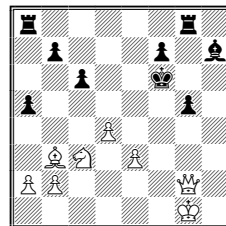
White is up the exchange (1-0, 33).

59. Casadei-Ho, Koltanowski Memorial, San Francisco, 2000.



White has a Queen and Bishop for two Rooks (1-0, 39).

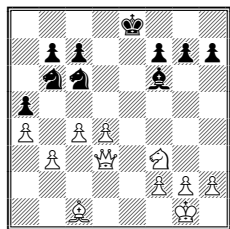
60. Kaminik-Zifroni, Rishon Le Ziyon YM-IM, Rishon Le Ziyon, Israel, 1995.



White has a Queen and Knight for two Rooks and a pawn (1-0, 41).

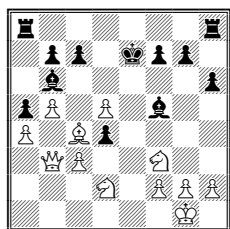
61. Hedenstroem-Naekholm, SoLett Open, Skelleftea, Swe-

den, 1999.



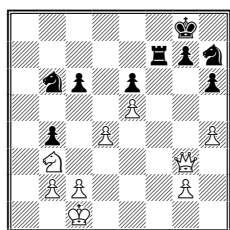
White is up a Queen and pawn for a Knight.

62. Megias Gonzalez-Sanchez, World Amateur Championship, Pamplona, Spain, 2001.



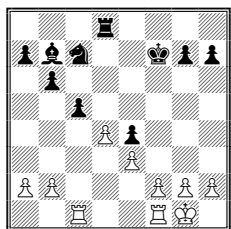
White has a Queen and Knight for two Rooks, and Black has the two Bishops (1-0, 29).

63. Soares-Borges, Paulista Championship, Americana, Brazil, 2000.



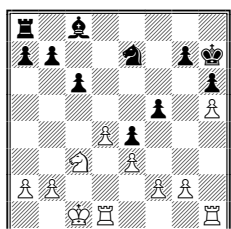
White has a Queen and pawn for Rook and Knight. The remaining moves were 30 Na5 Rc7 31 Qd3 Nf8 32 Qa6 (1-0).

64. Burn-Maroczy, Paris, France, 1900.



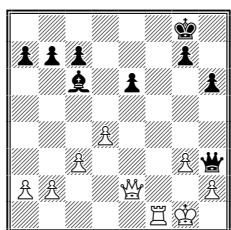
White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces (1-0, 42).

65. Alekhine-Kashdan, Pasadena, California, 1932.



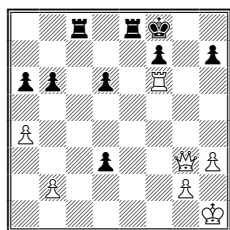
White is up the exchange (1-0, 60).

66. Sollid-Snellengen, Norway Open Championship, Gausdal, Norway, 1999.



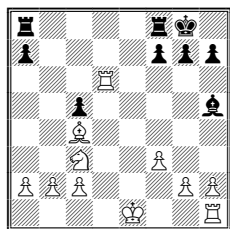
White is up the exchange (1-0, 42).

67. Todorovic-Szeberenyi, FSGM Nov, Budapest, Hungary, 2002.



White is up a Queen for a Rook and two pawns. The final moves were 29...d2 30 Qxd6+ Kg7 31 Rf1 Re1 32 Qg3+ Kh8 33 Rxe1 Rc1 34 Qe5+ (1-0).

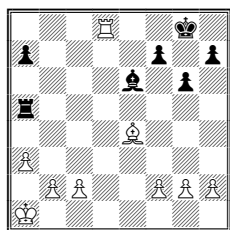
68. Paris-Auge, St. Chely d'Aubrac, France, 2001.



White is up a piece and a pawn (1-0, 22).

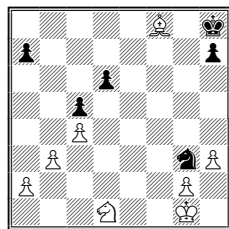
CHAPTER 4. EXCHANGES AFTER PENETRATION.

69. Sikora-Krupica, Moravian Open Championship, 1994.



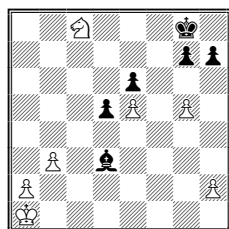
White is still up two pawns (1-0, 39).

70. Leussen-Neumann, Hilversum, Netherlands, 1903.



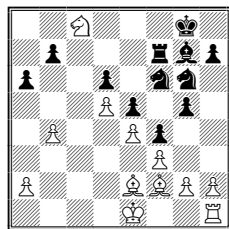
White is up a piece (1-0, 39).

71. Rodriguez Gonzales-Ortega, Panamerican, Havana, Cuba, 1966.



White is still up a pawn. The game ended with the moves 38...Kf7 39 Kb2 Kg6 40 Kc3 Bb1 41 a4 Kf5 42 Kd4 Bc2 43 a5 Bxb3 44 a6 (1-0).

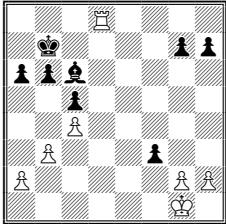
72. Lautier-Rueppel, Bad Zwesten, Germany, 1999.



Material is even, but White has the two Bishops and a target on d6. The remaining moves were 24...Bf8 25 Bb6 Ne8 26 Kf2

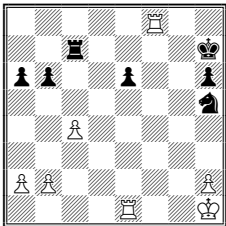
Nc7 27 Rc1 Na8 28 Ba5 Kg7 29 a4 h6 30 b5 axb5 31 axb5 Nh8 32 b6 Rd7 33 Rc7 (1-0).

73. Balogh-Pilgaard, FSGM Nov, Budapest, Hungary, 2002.



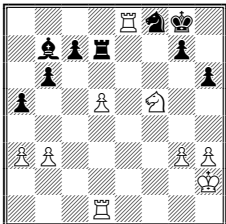
White is up the exchange for a pawn and will win one of Black's Kingside pawns: 29...fxg2 30 Rg8 Be4 31 Rxc7+ (1-0, 55).

74. Gouliev-Malakhatko, Marseille Open, Marseille, France, 2004.



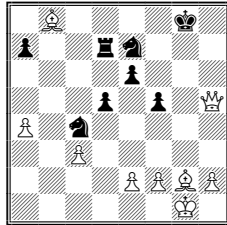
White is up the exchange (1-0, 46).

75. Shulman-Getz, World Open, Philadelphia, USA, 2002.



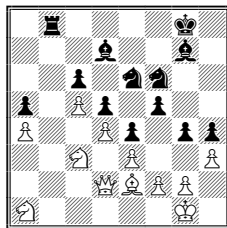
White is up the exchange (1-0, 55).

76. Kuczaj-Day, Alberta Open, Alberta, Canada, 1997.



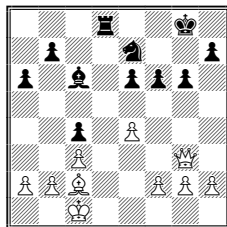
White is up a Queen and a pawn for a Rook (1-0, 35).

77. Van Wely-Dreev, European Blitz Championship, Bosnia and Herzegovina, 2000.



White is up a Queen for a Rook and a Bishop, but Black has the Bishop pair (1-0, 49).

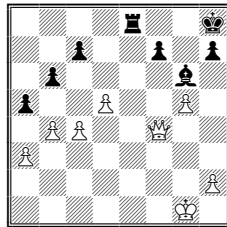
78. Krivoborodov-Barnett, WYb16, Belfort, France, 2005.



White is up a Queen for a Rook and Knight (1-0, 48).

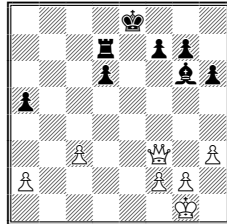
79. Spielmann-Landau.

Amsterdam Match, Netherlands, 1933.



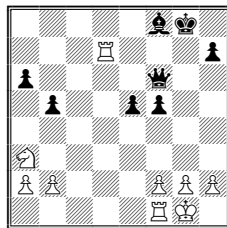
White is up a Queen and a pawn for a Rook and a Bishop. Black resigned after 37 Qxc7 axb4 38 axb4 (1-0).

80. Torre-Dus Khotimsky, Moscow, 1925.



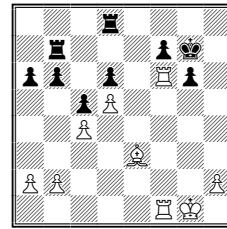
White is up a Queen for a Rook and a Bishop (1-0, 55).

81. Egger-Enhbat, Manila Olympiad, Philippines, 1992.



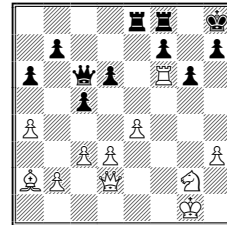
White has two Rooks for a Queen (1-0, 57).

82. Van der Zalm-De Graaf, HZ Open, Vlissingen, Netherlands, 2001.



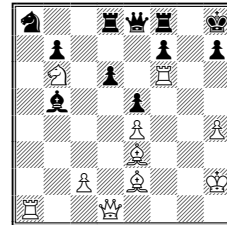
White is up a piece for a pawn (1-0, 41).

83. Skripchenko-Flear, French Team Championship, France, 2004.



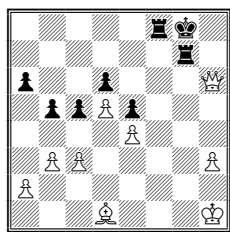
White has two pieces for a Rook and a pawn (1-0, 36).

84. Marian-Huber, Passau, Germany, 1997.



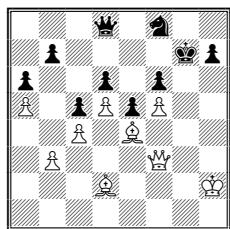
White is up a piece for two pawns and has the two Bishops (1-0, 44).

85. Colon-Benkner, Moscow Olympiad (Preliminary Round), 1956.



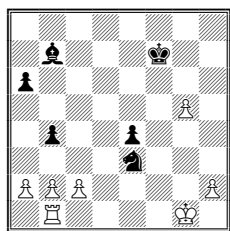
White is up a Queen, Bishop and pawn for two Rooks. Note that Black's Rooks are active on their open files (for example 40 Qxd6 loses a Bishop to 40...Rxf1+), but the weakness of Black's King becomes apparent as soon as White improves the position of his worst piece with 40 Bg4 (1-0).

86. Testa-Colombo, Imperia Open, Imperia, Italy, 1989.



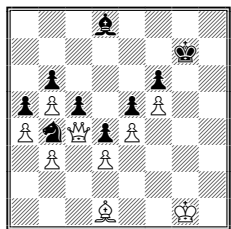
White is up a piece for two pawns and has the two Bishops (1-0, 79).

87. Frech-Rohrer, Bayern VLS, Germany, 1996.



White has a Rook and two pawns for two

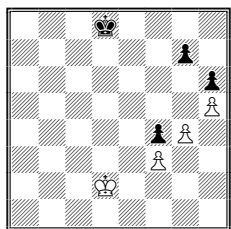
pieces (0-1, 50).
88. Norris-Rutherford, Scottish Championship, 2000.



White is up a Queen for a Knight. Black resigned after 49 Bh5.

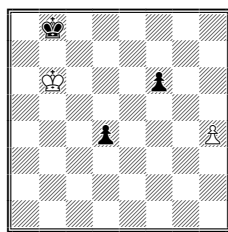
CHAPTER 5. EXCHANGES INVOLVING A PASSED PAWN.

89. Koutsin-Meduna, Seefeld Open, Seefeld, Austria, 1999.



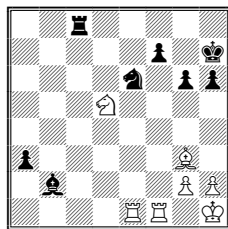
Material is even, but White has a won ending. The game continued 58 Kd3 Kd7 (58... Ke7 59 Ke4 Kf7 60 Kxf4 Kf6 61 g5+ hxg5+ 62 Kg4 wins, e.g., 62...Ke6 63 Kxg5 Kf7 64 Kf5 Ke7 65 Kg6 Kf8 66 h6) 59 Ke4 Ke7 60 Kxf4 Ke6 61 Ke4 Kf6 62 Kd5 g6 63 hxg6 Kxg6 64 f4 Kf6 65 Kd6 (1-0).

90. Bonin-Pixton, NY State Championship, NY, 1999.



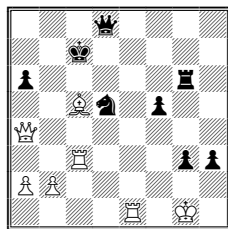
Black is up a pawn, but White wins the ending.

91. Hadlich-Van Riesen, Pinneberg, Germany, 1999.



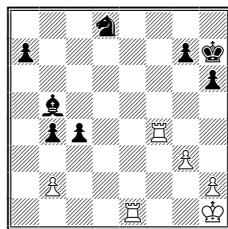
White is up a Rook for two pawns (1-0, 37).

92. Halkias-Raptis, Aegina, Greece, 1996.



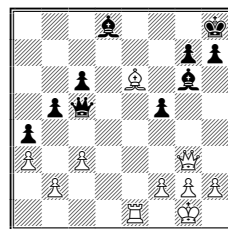
White is up a Rook for two pawns and now won Black's Queen with 41 Be7+ (1-0).

93. Wolff-Spangenberg, Argentina, 1997.



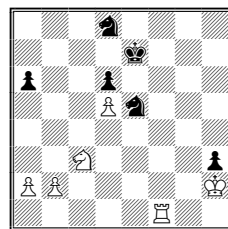
White is up two Rook for two pieces and two pawns (1-0, 55).

94. Hoang Xuan Thanh Khiat-Dang Bich Ngoc, Vietnamese Women's Championship, Hue, Vietnam, 2005.



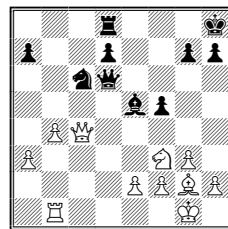
White is up the exchange, but Black has the two Bishops (1-0, 47).

95. Ward-Speelman, Redbus Knockout, Southend, England, 2000.



White is up the exchange and now wins Black's h-pawn (1-0, 40).

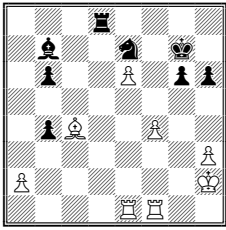
96. Avrukh-Tofan, 20th ECC, Izmir, Turkey, 2004.



White is up a pawn

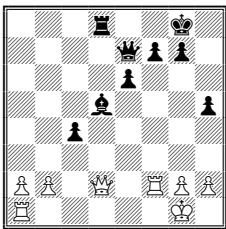
(1-0, 33).

97. Camara-Pelikan,
Mar del Plata, Argenti-
na, 1961.



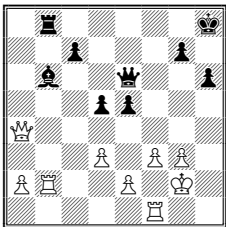
White is up the ex-
change (1-0, 76).

98. Sax-Timman, Phil-
lips & Drew, London,
England, 1980.



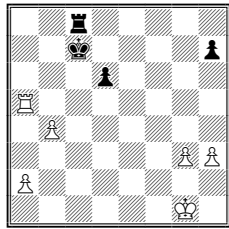
White is up the ex-
change for a pawn (1-0,
54).

99. Schunk-Knaak,
Bundesliga, Hamburg,
Germany, 2005-06.



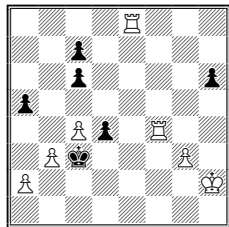
White is up the ex-
change (1-0, 52).

100. Lynge-Mortensen,
Roskilde Open,
Roskilde, Denmark,
1998.



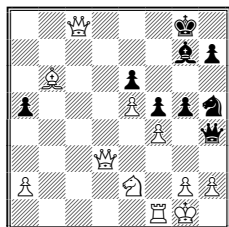
White is up two pawns
(1-0, 58).

101. Leal-Miguel, Pan
American Champion-
ship, 1997.



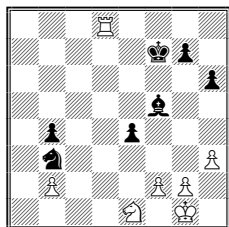
White is up two Rooks
for a pawn.

102. Puigsubira-
Gascon, Andorra
Championship, 2000.



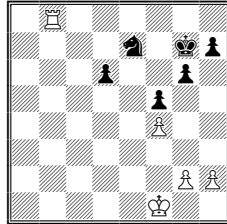
White is up a Queen
and Rook (1-0, 32).

103. Michna-Seidel,
Sebnitz, Germany,
1998.



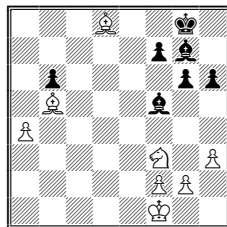
White is up the ex-
change (½-½, 71).

104. Sokolsky-Nei,
USSR Championship
(Semifinals), Vilnius,
USSR, 1955.



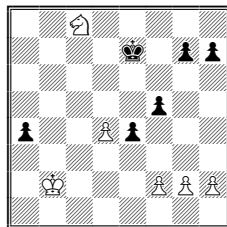
White is up the ex-
change for a pawn (1-0,
69).

105. De Boer-Hofman,
Groningen Open, Gro-
ningen, Netherlands,
1990.



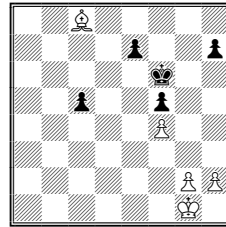
White is up a piece.
Black resigned after
36...Be4 37 Bxb6 (1-0).

106. Videki-Herndl,
Austrian Team Cham-
pionship, 1998-99.



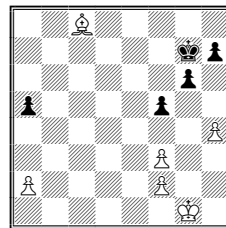
White is up a piece.
The game ended
37...Ke6 38 Nb6 f4 39
Nxa4 (1-0).

107. Galliamova-
Arakhamia Grant,
Women's Interzonal,
Azov, USSR, 1990.



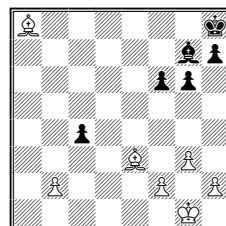
White is up a piece for
a pawn. Black played
38...e5 here, then re-
signed (1-0).

108. Maksimovic-
Bratimirova, Bulgarian
Women's Team Cham-
pionship, Sunny Beach,
Bulgaria, 2006.



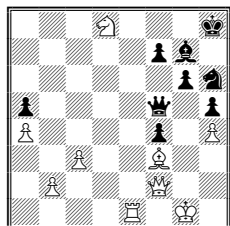
White is up a piece.
Black resigned here.

109. Miralles-Mercier,
French Championship,
1990.



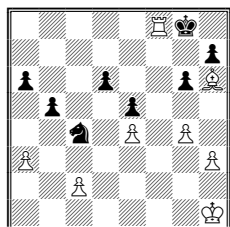
White is up a piece and
has the two Bishops.
Black resigned after
29...f5 30 Bc1 (1-0).

110. Horvath-Ozsvath,
Hungarian Team Ch,
1993-94.



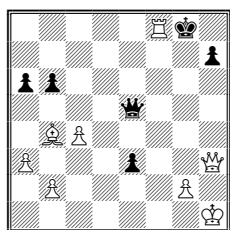
White is up a Rook for a pawn (1-0, 45).

111. Ricbour-Chiquet,
French Junior Team
Championship, 1999.



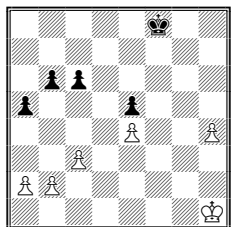
Black's only move is to resign, as he's in checkmate (1-0).

112. Stenner-Weck,
Bargteheide Open,
Bargteheide, Germany,
1989.



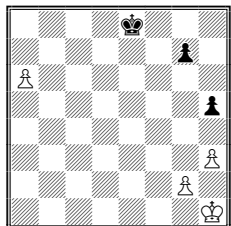
White is up a Rook and a Bishop. Black resigned after 39...Kg7 40 Bc3 (1-0).

113. Kilic-Schuler,
German Championship
(Under 20), Hamburg,
Germany, 1999.



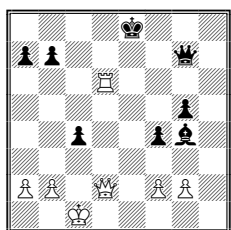
White is up a pawn (1-0, 52).

114. Sekmen-Kaya,
Turkish Championship,
Turkey, 2004.



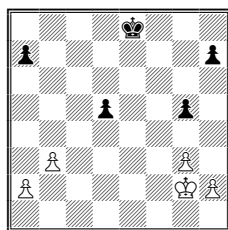
White has given up a pawn to create a won ending (1-0, 53).

115. Yrjola-Geenen,
European Team Cham-
pionship, 1999.



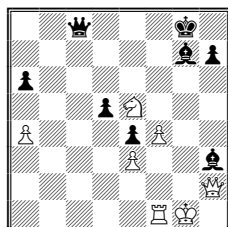
White is up the exchange for a pawn (1-0, 42).

116. Bern-Rice, Gaus-
dal, Norway, 1993.



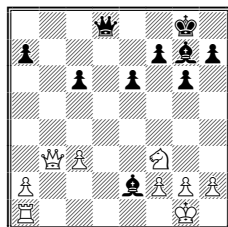
Material is even ($\frac{1}{2}$ - $\frac{1}{2}$, 41).

117. Gagunashvili-
Nakamura, Turin
Olympiad, Turin, Italy,
2006.



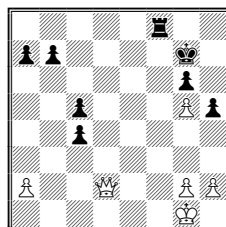
White is up the exchange for a pawn, but Black has the two Bishops (1-0, 63).

118. Rothbart-Botterill,
Islington Open, Isling-
ton, England, 1972.



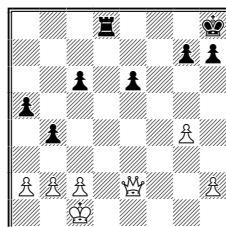
White is up the exchange for a pawn. Black's two Bishops won't be able to defend his queenside pawns (1-0, 26). The game continued 21 Rb1, intending to meet 21... Bxf3 with 22 Qb8, forcing the exchange of Queens before taking on f3.

119. Bertrand-Petitpas,
2003.



White is up a Queen for a Rook and two pawns (1-0, 40).

120. Klundt-Schueller,
Bundesliga, Germany,
1998-99.

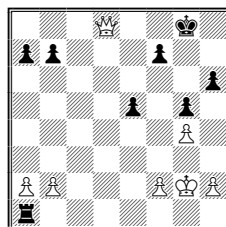


White is up a Queen for a Rook and pawn (1-0, 33).

SECTION 2. BEFORE AND AFTER.

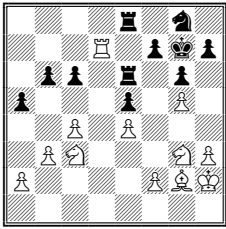
CHAPTER 6. PREPARATORY BUILD- UP.

121. Tseitlin, Mark-
Lukic, Hartberg Open,
Austria, 1991.



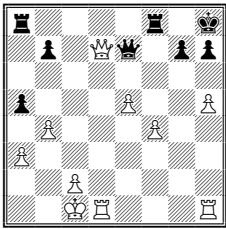
White is up a Queen for a Rook and pawn.

122. Egartner-Svacina,
Imperia Open, Imperia,
Italy, 2000.



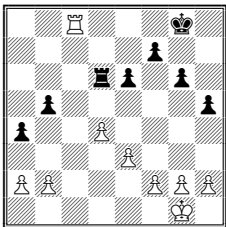
White has two pieces
for a Rook (1-0, 47).

123. Johnsen-
Ingolfssdottir, Reykja-
vik Open, Reykjavik,
Iceland, 2004.



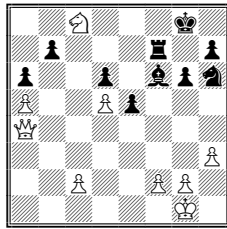
White is up two pawns
(1-0, 65).

124. Gomez-Birriel,
Women's Olympiad,
Dubai, United Arab
Emirates, 1986.



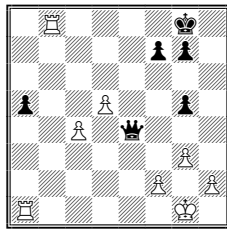
White is up a pawn
(1-0, 43).

125. Kolaro-Peshtov,
Bulgarian Champion-
ship, 1969.



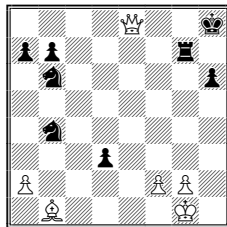
White has a Queen for
a Rook and Bishop and
threatens both 34 Qe8+
and 34 Nxd6 (1-0, 46).

126. Popche-Kolev,
Bulgarian Champion-
ship, 1985.



White has two Rooks
and a pawn for the
Queen. The game
ended with the moves
29...Kh7 30 Rbb1
Qxc4 31 d6 Qc6 32
Rd1 Qd7 33 Rxa5
(1-0).

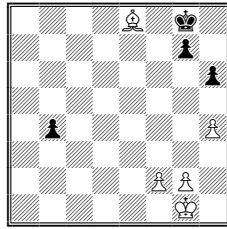
127. Katalymov-
Kaminsky, Spartakiad
Championship, Sochi,
USSR, 1969.



White is up a Queen
for a Rook, Knight, and
Pawn (1-0, 37).

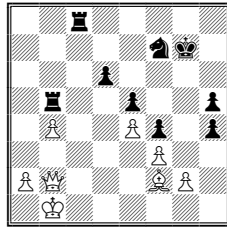
128. Nowak-Blatny,
Telnice/Usti, Czechos-

lovakia, 1963.



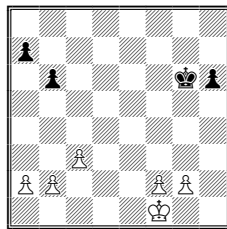
White is up a piece
(1-0, 40).

129. Postny-Van Mil,
Tel Aviv, Israel, 2001.



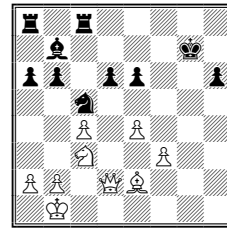
White has a Queen for
two Rooks with outside
connected passed
pawns (1-0, 64).

130. Koskela-Sanli,
Women's Olympiad,
Elista, Russia, 1998.



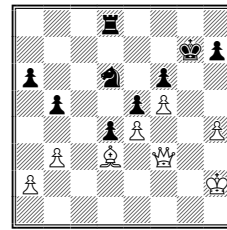
White is up two pawns
and has a won ending.
The final moves were
53 Ke2 Kf5 54 Ke3 h5
55 Kd4 h4 56 Kd5 a6
57 c4 (1-0).

131. Vukovic-
Dutreeuw, Belgian
Team Championship,
Antwerp, Belgium,
1997.



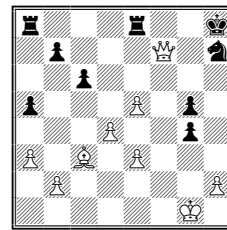
White has a Queen for
two Rooks (1-0, 30).

132. Djosic-
Nesovanovic, 18th
Belgrade Trophy, Ob-
renovac, Serbia and
Montenegro, 2005.



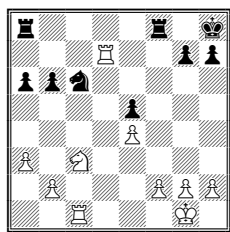
White is up a Queen
for a Rook and pawn
(1-0, 42).

133. Gyimesi-Vasilev,
XXXV World Junior
Championship, Medel-
lin, Colombia, 1996.



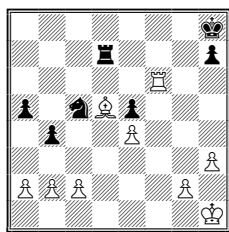
White has a Queen and
pawn for two Rooks
(1-0, 37).

134. Herbold-Balkova,
Alpress Cup, Frydek
Mistek, Czech Repub-
lic, 2005.



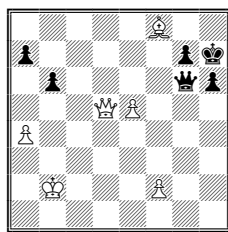
White is up a pawn (1-0, 43).

135. Lopez Malde-Calvo Cobas, Vila de Padron Open, Spain, 2000.



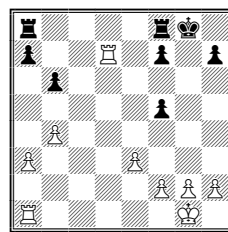
White is up two pawns (1-0, 41).

138. Laue-Hollmann, Badenweiler Open, Badenweiler, Germany, 1995.



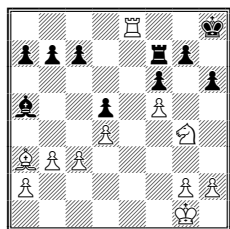
White is up a piece for a pawn (1-0, 57).

141. Hedenstroem-Naeckholm, SoLett Open, Skelleftea, Sweden, 1999.



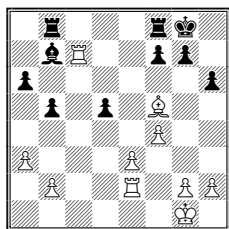
White is up a pawn and has the better development and pawn structure.

144. Vaganian-Gipslis, USSR Championship (Semi-Finals), Frunze, USSR, 1973.



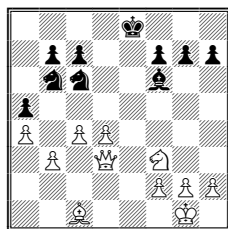
White is up a piece (1-0, 42).

136. Jarnuczak-Sausmikat, Pinneberg Open Championship, Pinneberg, Germany, 1993.



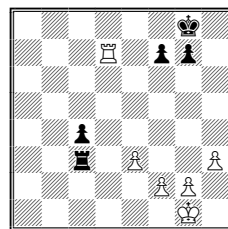
White is up back his pawn and created a strong Rook on the 7th rank (1-0, 33).

139. Van der Stric-Leenhouts, Belgium Team Championship, 2004-5.



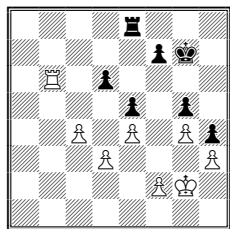
White is up a Queen and pawn for a Knight.

142. Hall-Day, Elista Olympiad, Elista, Russia, 1998.



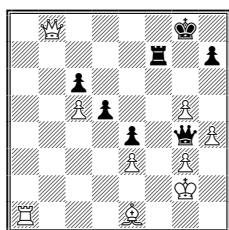
White is up a pawn and has a won ending (1-0, 46).

145. Paoli-Gereben, Arlesheim, Switzerland, 1961.



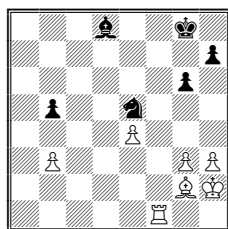
White is up a pawn and exposed Black's weakness on d6 (1-0, 46).

137. Ligterink-Lederman, Le Havre, France, 1977.



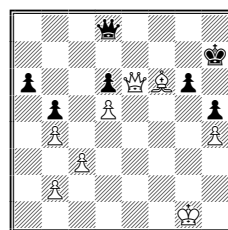
White is up a piece and a pawn (1-0, 50).

140. Cubas-Rodriguez, VI Mario Covas, Santos, Brazil, 2006.



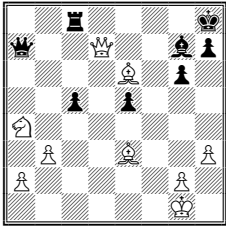
White is up the exchange and a pawn and now won Black's b-pawn after 54 Ra1 Bf6 55 Ra8+ (1-0).

143. Ogaard-Kraidman, Nice Olympiad (Finals, Group B), Nice, France, 1974.



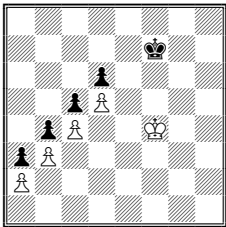
White is up a piece.

146. Alexandrov-Gusev, Tula, Russia, 2001.



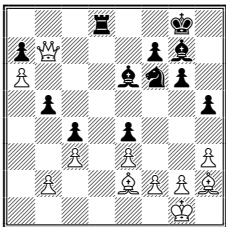
White has two pieces for a Rook and the Bishop pair. White resigned after 42...Qb8 43 Qxc8+ (1-0).

147. Valerga-Peralta, Zonal, Santiago, Chile, 1995.



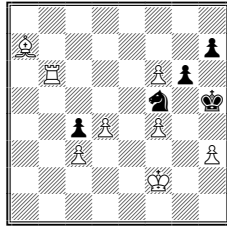
Material is even, but White has a won ending. The final moves were 57 Kf5 Ke7 58 Kg6 Ke8 59 Kf6 (1-0).

148. Bosque Ortega-Bueno, Itau Cup, Sao Paulo, Brazil, 2003.



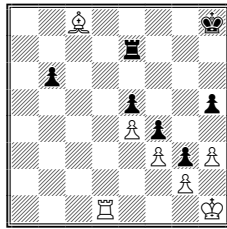
White is up a Queen for a Rook and Knight, but all of Black's queenside pawns are weak (1-0, 32).

149. Tsanas-Stoukas, Greek Team Championship, 1998.



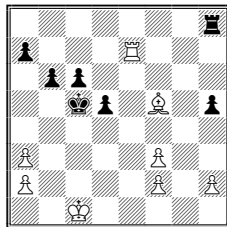
White is up a Rook and two pawns.

150. Ruban-Tuzan, Sochi, USSR, 1990.



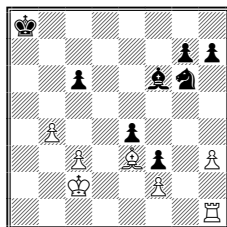
White is up a piece for a pawn (1-0, 51).

151. Hahn-Finke, Sueder Sommer Open, Recklinghausen, Germany, 2000.



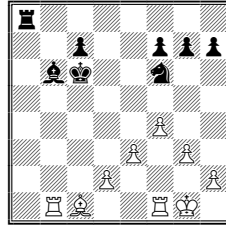
White is up a piece (1-0, 48).

152. Rusanov-Ballo, St. Petersburg, Russia, 1999.



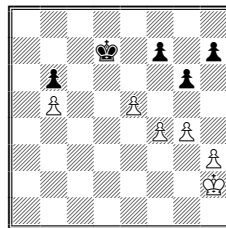
White is up the exchange for a pawn. Black resigned after the moves 27 Ra1+ Kb8 28 Re1 (1-0).

153. Allison-Stubbs, Austrian Championship (Reserve), Cooma, Austria, 1973.



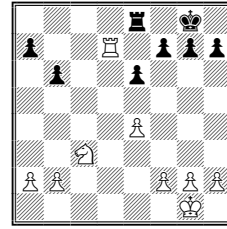
White is up the exchange and a pawn (1-0, 42).

154. Radjabov-Catalino Sadorra, World Youth Chess Festival (Boys 10), Calagaldana, Spain, 1996.



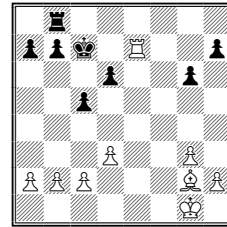
White is still up a pawn and has a won ending. The final moves were 41 f5 Ke7 42 Kg3 g5 43 Kf3 Kd7 44 Ke4 Ke7 45 Kd5 Kd7 46 e6+ (1-0).

155. McKay-Kingston, Australia Junior Championship, Hervey Bay, Australia, 1999.



White wins a piece with 19 Bxd7 (1-0, 27).

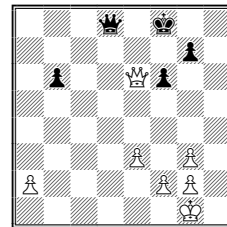
156. Tejaswini-Roy, World Youth Girls 10, Greece, 2004.



White is up a piece (1-0, 32).

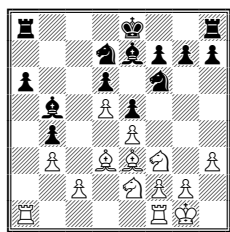
CHAPTER 7. AFTER EFFECTS.

157. Heyken-Lagumina, Lugano, Switzerland, 1989.



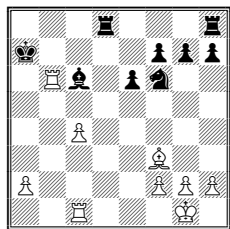
White is up two pawns (1-0, 62).

158. Brien-Trelawney, London, 1851.



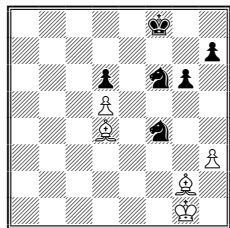
White can win a piece with 17 Bxb5 (1-0, 40).

159. Segal-Khlgtian, European Junior Championships, 1994.



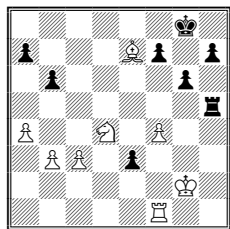
23 Rxc6 wins back the piece, leaving White up a pawn (1-0, 36).

160. Zhukhovitsky-Alatortsev, USSR (Semi-finals), 1940.



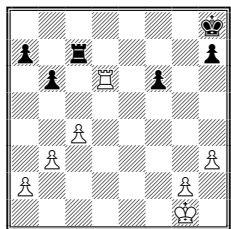
White can win a piece with 49 Bxf6 (1-0, 65).

161. Espig-Schmidt, Bundesliga, 1991-92.



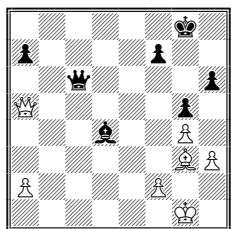
White is up two pieces for a pawn.

162. Gheorghiu-Benko, Orense, Spain, 1973.



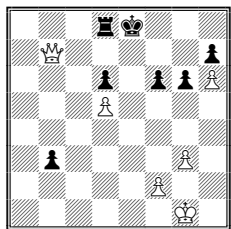
White is up a pawn (1-0, 58).

163. Kolesnik-Raudive, MK Cafe Cup-B, Koszalin, Poland, 1999.



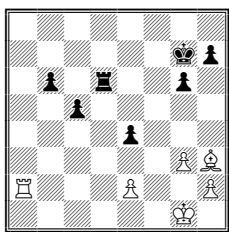
White can win Black's Bd4 with 32 Qd8+ Kh7 33 Qxd4.

164. Kengis-Sasu Ducsoara, 3rd Rohde Open, Sautron, France, 2003.



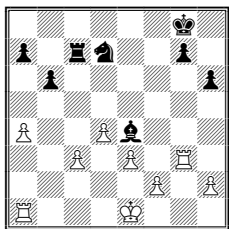
White is up a Queen for a Rook.

165. Galojan-Muzychuk, European Women's Championship, Chisinau, Moldova, 2005.



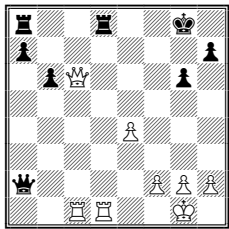
White has a Bishop for two pawns (1-0, 59).

166. Barsov-Kalesis, Patras Open, Patras, Greece, 2001.



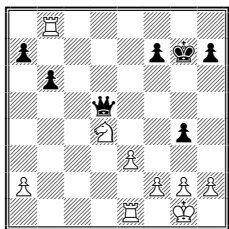
White has a Rook and two pawns for two pieces (1-0, 52).

167. Cramling-Bofill Mas, Spain, 1988.



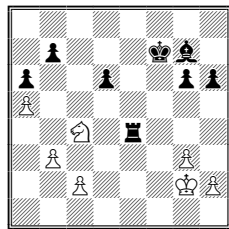
Material is even (1-0, 54).

168. Vovk-Andrzejewska, European Youth, Greece, 1999.



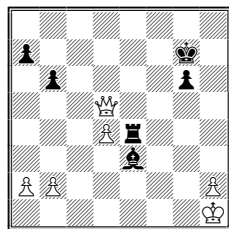
White has two Rooks and a Knight for a Queen (1-0, 43).

169. Karaklajic-Bogdanovic, Yugoslavian Championship, Yugoslavia, 1955.



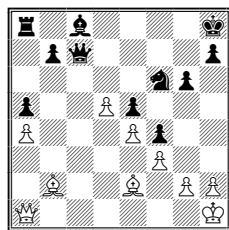
White can win material with 37 Nxd6+ Ke6 38 Nxe4, leaving him is up a pawn (1-0, 53).

170. Porat-Okkes, Es-sent Open, Hoogeveen, Netherlands, 2004.



White is up a Queen and a pawn for a Rook and a Bishop (1-0, 48).

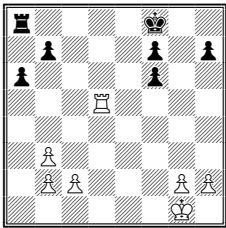
171. De Boer-Stuart, Correspondence, K/23, Netherlands, 1994.



After 31 Bxe5 Qf7 32 Bxf6, White is down the exchange for a pawn, but has con-

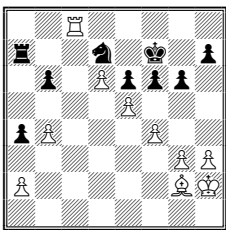
nected passed pawns supported by his two Bishops, while Black is poorly developed. The game continued 32... Kg8 33 Qd4 Bd7 34 e5 (1-0) and now: a) 34... Rc8 35 h3; b) 34...Rf8 35 Bc4 Qe8 36 e6 Bc8 37 Bh8 Qe7 38 d6, when Black's Queen can't leave the 7th rank because of mate on g7; c) 34...Qf8 35 e6 Be8 36 d6 Bc6 37 Bc4 Qe8 38 e7+ when Black is forced to give up his Queen to stop mate.

172. Arias Santana-Rodriguez, Costa Rican Championship, Costa Rica, 2004.



Material is even, but White has the better pawn structure (1-0, 43).

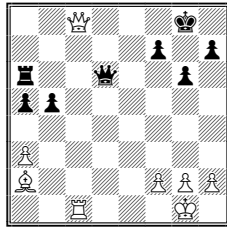
173. Mohana-Artemieva, World Youth (Girls 10), 2004.



White wins with 40 Rc7 (1-0), e.g., 40... Rxc7 41 dxc7, when the pawn queens or

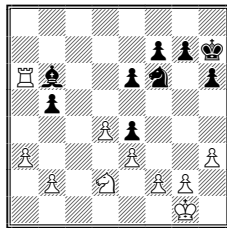
40... Ra6 41 Rxd7+.

174. Ruether-Seibel, NBG Open, Weilburg, Germany, 1995.



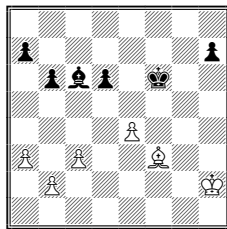
White has a Bishop for a pawn (1-0, 41).

175. Gonzalez Mateos-Bellod Thomas, Pablo Gorbea Memorial, Madrid, Spain, 2002.



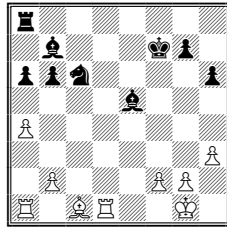
White is up the exchange and will win Black's f- and b-pawns as well (1-0, 36).

176. Jurkovic-Bakalarz, Ceske Budejovice Open, Czech Republic, 1995.



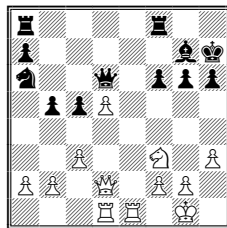
White can win Black's Bc6 with 42 e5+ (1-0) dxe5 43 Bxc6.

177. Bliek-Tiggelman, Vlissingen HZ Open, Vlissingen, Netherlands, 2001.



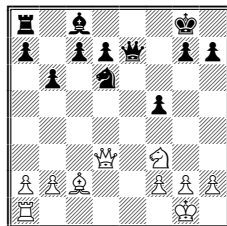
White can win a piece with 21 Rd7+ Kg8 22 Rxb7, leaving him up the exchange and a pawn (1-0, 30).

178. Smyslov-Levy, Capablanca Memorial, 1973.



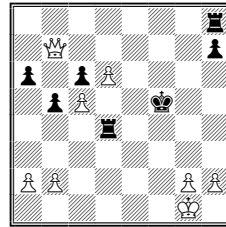
White can win Black's Na6 with 21 Re6 Qd7 22 Rxa6, after which White is up a pawn.

179. Moller-Giersing, Copenhagen, 1899.



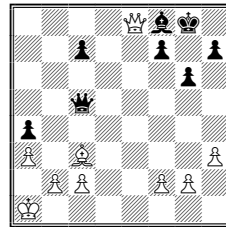
White can win Black's Ra8 with 18 Qd5+ Kh8 19 Qxa8, when he is up a Rook for two pawns.

180. Golovey-Lukina, USSR Team Championship, 1967.



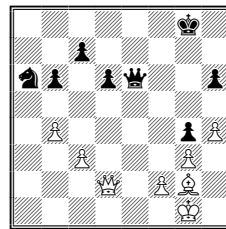
White has a Queen and two pawns for two Rooks.

181. Mousavia-Subramanian, Asian Championship (Under 20), Tehran, Iran, 2001.



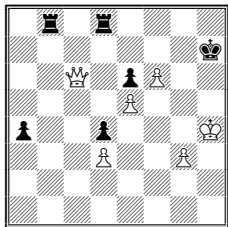
White can win with 31 Bb4 (1-0), when Black must play 31...Qxb4 32 axb4, giving White a Queen and pawn for a Bishop.

182. Schmidt-Rutkowska, Simul, Koszalin, Poland, 1997.



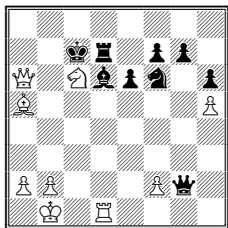
White can win Black's Queen with 28 Bd5, when White will be up a Queen for a Knight.

183. Koshy-Vijaya-lakshmi, 39th BPCL Championship of India, Nagpur, India, 2002.



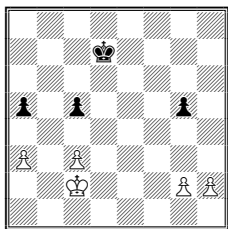
White mates in three with 44 Qc7+ Kg6 (44...Kg8 45 Qg7 is mate). 45 Qg7+ (1-0) Kf5 46 Qg5, mate.

184. Szelag-Kamieniecki, Polish Team Championship, 1999.



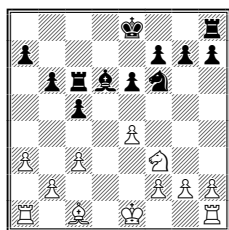
White mates with 31 Ba5 (1-0).

185. Radulski-Tsvetkov, Bulgarian Championship, 2001.



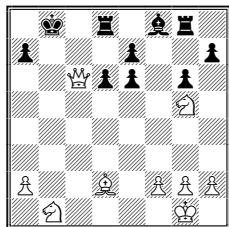
White is up a pawn (1-0, 53).

186. Stojadinovic-Stus, Baunatal Open, Baunatal, Germany, 1998.



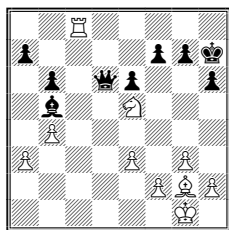
White wins a piece with 15 e5 Nd5 16 exd6 Rxd6 (1-0, 34).

187. Oehlerich-Ellenbroek, Danish Junior Championship, 1979.



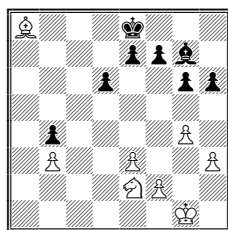
White has a Queen and two pieces for two Rooks and two pawns (1-0, 30).

188. Makarichev-Govashelishvili, USSR Junior Spartakiad, 1967.



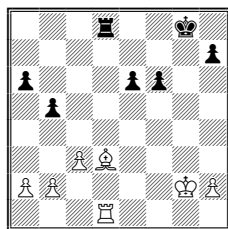
White can win material with 27 Rh8+ (1-0) Kxh8 28 Nxf7+ Kg8 29 Nxd6, when White is up a piece and a pawn.

189. Nepomniachtchi-Babijczuk, World Youth, Heraklio, Greece, 2002.



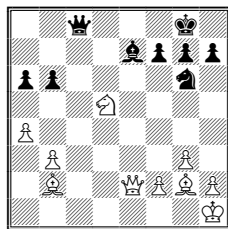
White is up a piece for a pawn.

190. Rahman-Baki, Asian Team Ch., 1987.



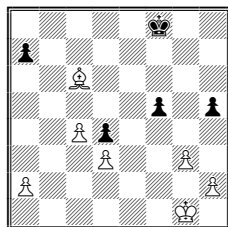
White is up a piece for a pawn (1-0, 30).

191. Allen-Leroy, FS10 IM-A, Budapest, Hungary, 1994.



White is up a piece and has the two Bishops (1-0, 35).

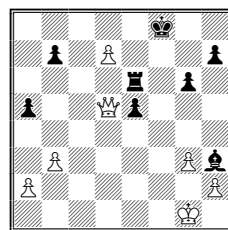
192. Kosten-Lilley, British Championship, England, 1999.



White is up a piece.

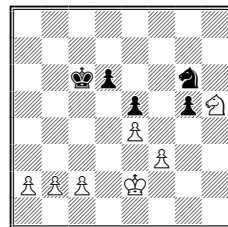
CHAPTER 8. EXCHANGING TO A WON ENDING.

193. Grigore-Senetia, Cupa Martisor Open, Bucharest, Romania, 2002.



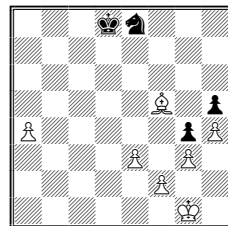
White is up a Queen for a Rook and Bishop, but Black can't stop White's passed pawn.

194. Atea-Tamer, Cairo, Egypt, 2003.



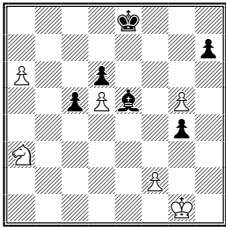
White is up two pawns (1-0, 47).

195. Kmoc-Vajda, Szolnok, Hungary, 1932.



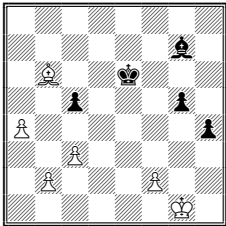
White is still up three pawns (1-0, 62).

196. Atalik-Pruess,
East Bay Chess Club
GM, Berkley, USA,
2005.



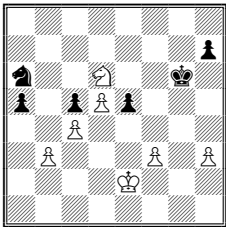
Material is even, but
White's pawn will
queen.

197. Brendel-Norberg,
32nd Rilton Cup,
Stockholm, Sweden,
2002.



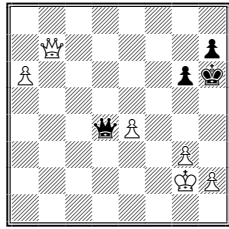
White is up a pawn and
has a won ending (1-0,
42).

198. Bjornsson-
Petermann, VISA
Grand Prix, Reykjavik,
Iceland, 1998.



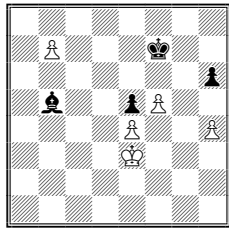
White is up a pawn.
The game ended
37...Kg5 38 Nb7 (1-0).

199. Cebalo-Atalik,
Slovakian Team
Championship, Bled,
Slovakia, 1999.



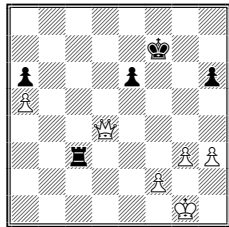
White is up two pawns
(1-0, 50).

200. Kucera-
Stripunsky, Ceske Bu-
dejovice, Czech Re-
public, 1996.



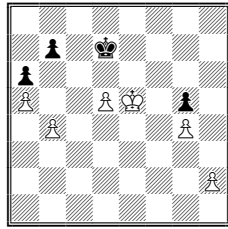
White is down a piece
for two pawns, but will
soon have a new
Queen.

201. Gillen-McKeown,
Target Recruitment
Masters, Belfast, Ire-
land, 2001.



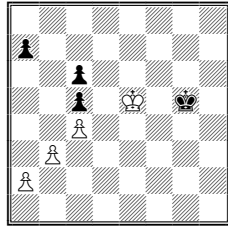
White is up a Queen
and a pawn for a Rook
(1-0, 48).

202. Kojima-
Jacobusse, Turin
Olympiad, Turin, Italy,
2006.



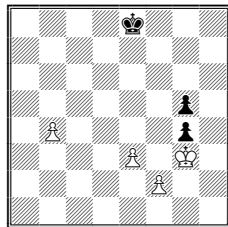
White is up two pawns.

203. Morchiladze-
Grigoryan, BCSA
Open, Batumi, Geor-
gia, 2003.



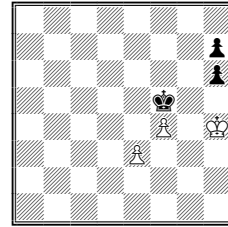
Material is even, but
White has a won end-
ing.

204. Lipnowski-Abreu
Cordero, CAN&QC
Open, Montreal, Cana-
da, 2002.



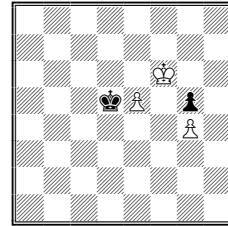
White is still up two
pawns and has a won
ending.

205. Czebe-Cerneanu,
FS 9 IM A, Budapest,
Hungary, 1995.



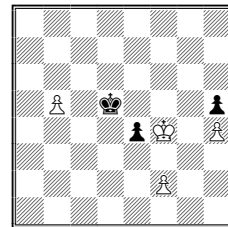
Material is even, but
White has a won game,
e.g., 54...Kg6 55 e4 h5
56 f5+ Kf6 57 Kxh5,
etc.

206. Stepanov-Lutz,
Bischwiller Open,
Bischwiller, France,
1999.



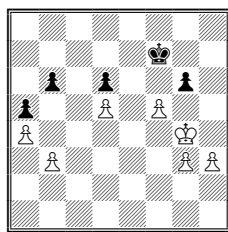
White is up a pawn;
Black can't stop
White's e-pawn.

207. Jossien-Vincent,
French Championship
Accession, Bescanon,
France, 1999.



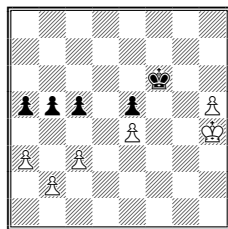
White is up a pawn.

208. Belezky-Bruned,
XXII Open, Collado
Villalba, Spain, 2005.



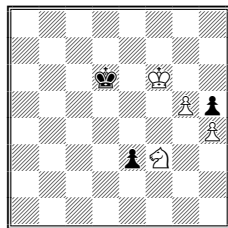
Black's King has to give way.

209. Kilic-Schuler, German Championship (Under 20), 1999.



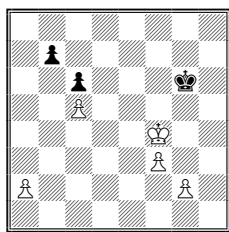
White is up a pawn and has a won ending.

210. Abu Sufian-Vinoth, 7th UI&UL GM, Dhaka, Bangladesh, 2005.



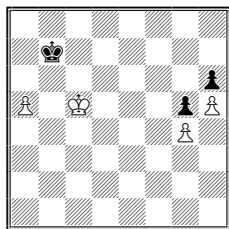
Black can't stop White's g-pawn.

211. Zhukova-Kovalevskaya, European Women's Championship, Batumi, Georgia, 2000.



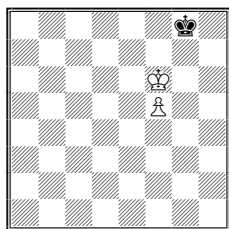
White has a won ending.

212. Berczes-Garnier, FSELOA August, Budapest, Hungary, 2000.



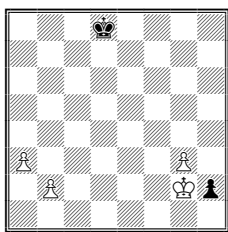
White is up a pawn and will win Black's king-side pawns (1-0, 52).

213. Vourtsa-Goutioudi, Greek Team Championship, Halkidiki, Greece, 2002.



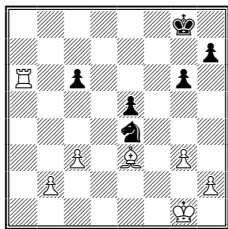
White is up a pawn and has a won ending.

214. Moen-Acs, 33rd Rilton Cup, Stockholm, Sweden, 2003.



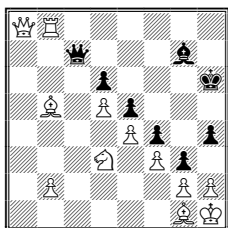
The h-pawn is dead.

215. Jansa-Micheli, Italy, 1973.



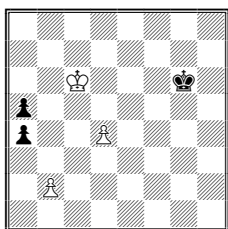
White is up a Rook.

216. Federau-Heim, Bundesliga, Germany, 1987-88.



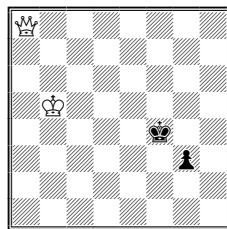
White is up a Rook, two pieces, and a pawn and has the Bishops.

217. Madsen-Kremer, Helsinki Olympiad, 1952.



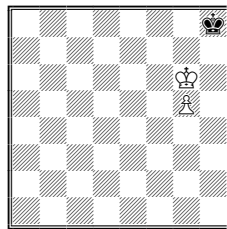
White is up a pawn and his d-pawn will queen.

218. Toledo-Camposano, Makati City, Philippines, 1995.



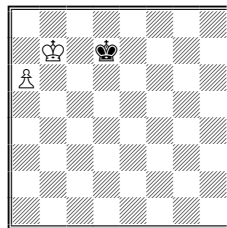
White is up a Queen for a pawn.

219. Jussupow-Boensch, Bundesliga, Germany, 2001.



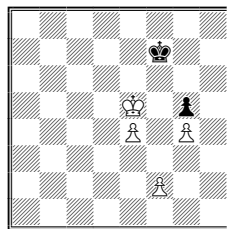
White is up a pawn.

220. Sulskis-Bologan, New York Open, 2000.



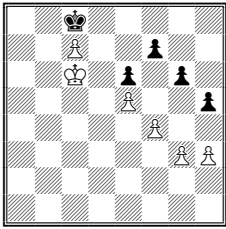
White's pawn will queen.

221. Makarov-Aliferenko, Ukraine, 2005.



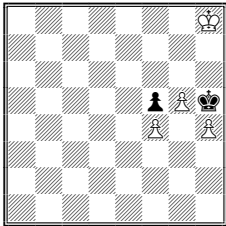
White is up two pawns.

222. Brueggler-Knobel, Zurich Open, 1991.



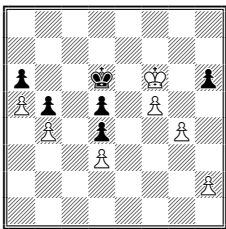
White mates in five: 56...h4 57 gxh4 g5 58 hxg5 f6 59 exf6 e5 60 f7 e4 61 f8=Q, mate.

223. Ulibin-De Jong, Leeuwarden, Netherlands, 1997.



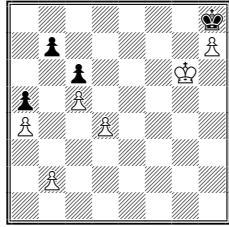
White wins with 77 Kh7 Kxh4 78 g6 Kg4 79 g7 Kxf4 80 g8=Q, etc. Also good is 77 Kg7, Kg4 78 Kf6, etc.

224. Schlechter-Schwarz, Kolisch Memorial, Vienna, Austria, 1899-1900.



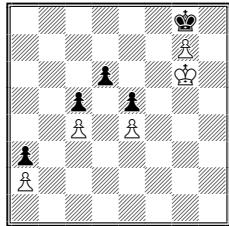
White plays 53 Kg7, when Black can't stop White's f-pawn from queening.

225. Santasiere-Levin, US Championship, New York, 1946.



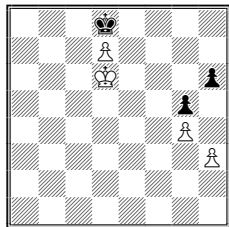
White is up two pawns and now mates in three: 39...b6 40 cxb6 c5 41 b7 cxd4 42 b8=Q, mate.

226. Karlsson-Smirin, Rilton Cup, Stockholm, Sweden, 1988.



Material is even, but White now mates in four: 53...d5 54 cxd5 c4 55 d6 c3 56 d7 c2 57 d8=Q, mate.

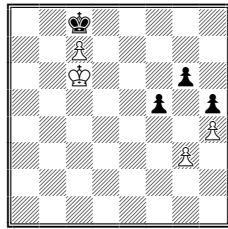
227. Dobos-Farkas, 19th Spring Fest, Budapest, Hungary, 2003.



White has a mate in four: 51...h5 52 gxh5 g4 53 h6 g3 54 h7 g2 55 h8=Q, mate.

228. Miles-Hummel,

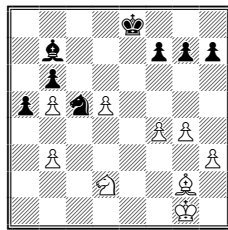
Waikiki Open, Hawaii, 1997.



White mates in five: 78...f4 79 gxf4 g5 80 hxg5 h4 81 g6 h3 82 g7 h2 83 g8=Q, mate.

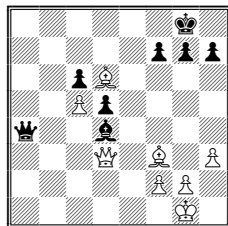
CHAPTER 9. BEFORE AND AFTER.

229. Seirawan-Polugaevsky, Mar del Plata, Argentina, 1982.



White is up a pawn (1-0, 44). 33...Kd7 (intending 34...Kd6 and 35...Bxd5) can be met by 34 Nc4, when 34...Nxb3 35 Nxb6+ Kd6 36 Nc4+ saves the pawn, since 36...Kc5 loses to 37 d6.

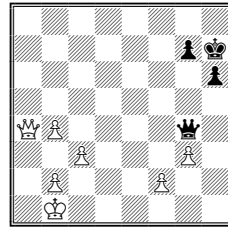
230. Dembo-Sikorova, Women's Olympiad, Bled, Slovenia, 2002.



White is up a piece for

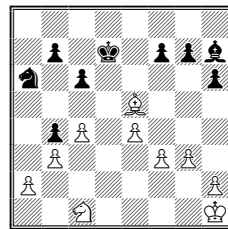
a pawn and has the two Bishops. Black resigned after 31...Qa1+ 32 Qd1 Qb2 33 Qe2 Qc1+ 34 Kh2 h6 35 Qe8+ Kh7 36 Be4+ (1-0).

231. Vinicio-Correa, Imperatriz, Brazil, 2003.



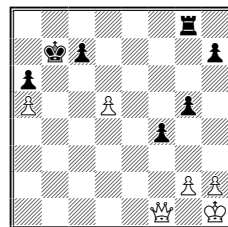
White is up three pawns (1-0, 42).

232. Bareev-Van Wely, Russian Blitz Internet Cup Superfinals, chessassistantclub.com, 2004.



White is up a pawn (1-0, 74).

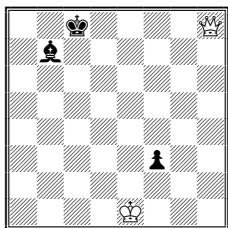
233. Afanasjev-Panchenko, Kaissa Open, Kharkov, Ukraine, 2002.



White is up a Queen

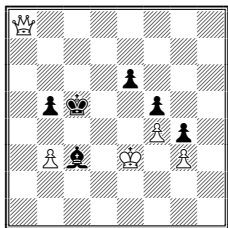
for a Rook and pawn (1-0, 34).

234. Soria-Maidanik, Buenos Aires, Argentina, 2003.



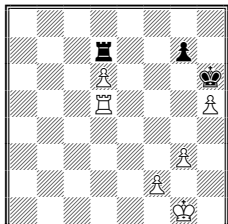
White is up a Queen for a Bishop and pawn (1-0, 66).

235. Galicek-Hasek, Pilsen-Lobzy, Czech Republic, 2003.



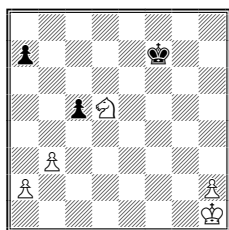
White is up a Queen for a Bishop and pawn.

236. Peek-Dogge, Dutch Open, 2002.



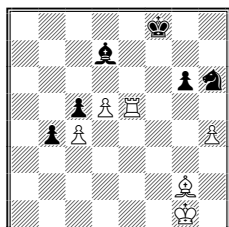
White has preserved his d-pawn and remains up three pawns (1-0, 46).

237. Mirabile-Katz, US Amateur Team East, Parsipanny, USA, 2002.



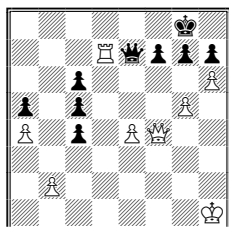
White is up a piece and a pawn.

238. Kunte-Rahman, Commonwealth Championship, Mumbai, India, 2003.



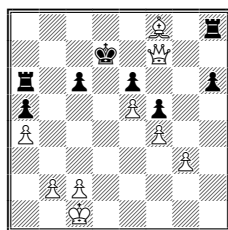
White is up the exchange (1-0, 54).

239. Blackburn-Walden Jones, Wales Championship, Cardiff, Wales, 1998.



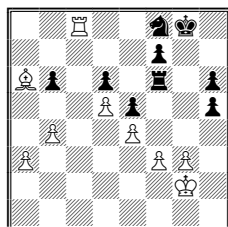
White is up a Rook for two pawns. Black resigned here, as he can't play 37...Qxd7 because of 38 Qb8+, mate.

240. Guseinov-Manescu, European Youth Championship (Boys, 14), Greece, 1999.



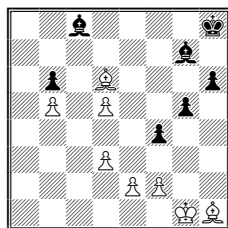
White has a Queen and Bishop for two Rooks and now has a forced mate after 45...Kc8 46 Bd6 (1-0), threatening mate on c7 or 45...Kd8 46 Bd6.

241. Marciano-Bauer, French Championship (Semi-Finals), Besancon, France, 1999.



Material is even, but Black's Rook is out of play and there's nothing left to defend his queenside pawns (1-0, 55).

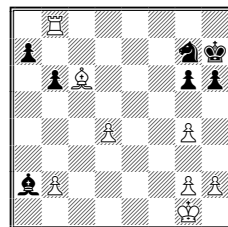
242. Schaefer-Guennewig, Schoeneck Open, Schoeneck, Germany, 1988.



White is up a pawn (1-0, 61).

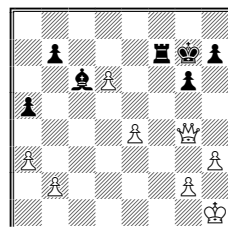
243. Polugaevsky-

Tarasov, USSR Championship (Semifinals), Sverdlovsk, USSR, 1957.



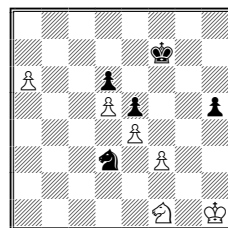
White is up the exchange and a pawn. Black resigned after 30...Be6 31 d5 (1-0).

244. Berlinsky-Dobierzin, World Blind Championship, 1986.



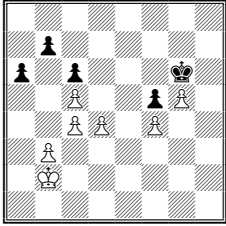
White has a Queen and two pawns to Black's Rook and Bishop. The game continued 38...Rf1+ 39 Kh2 Rf7 40 e5 (1-0).

245. Karavade-Aghabekian, World Junior Girls, Yerevan, Armenia, 2006.



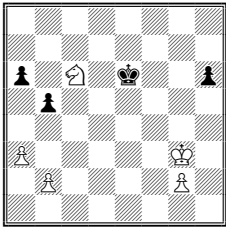
White is up a pawn and will soon gain a new Queen (1-0).

246. Srebrnic-Krumpak, 10th Ljubljana Open, Ljubljana, Slovenia, 1999.



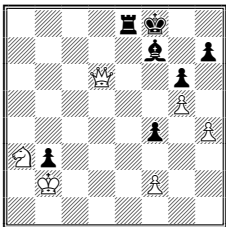
White can pick off Black's b-pawn, since Black's King has to stay near White's g-pawn.

247. Burnett-Almeida Saenz, Spring NAM GMB, Schaumburg, USA, 2006.



White is up a piece.

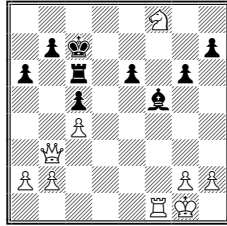
248. Dao Thien Hai-Ponomariov, FIDE World Championship Knock Out, New Delhi, India, 2006.



White is up a Queen for a Rook and pawn (1-0, 67).

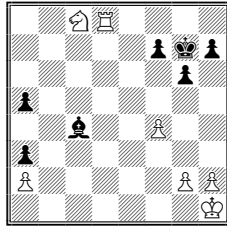
249. Pavlovicius-Abromaitis, Lithuanian

Championship, Vilnius, Lithuania, 1999.



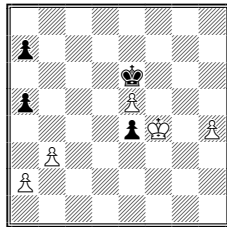
White is up a Queen for a pawn.

250. Zumsande-Reich, German Internet Blitz Candidates Championship, playchess.com, 2005.



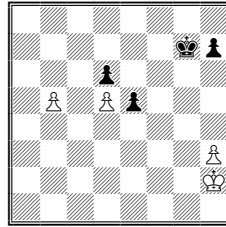
White has a Rook for a pawn. Black's play on the queenside is neutralized after 30...Bxa2 31 Rd3 (1-0, 40).

251. Gashimov-Kopczynski, 5th Amplitco AIG Life, Warsaw, Poland, 2005.



White is up a pawn (1-0, 55).

252. Mohamed-Hamed, GM B, Cairo, Egypt, 1997.

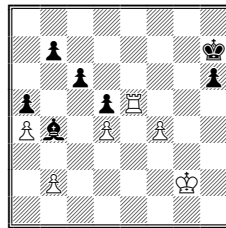


Material is even, but Black's King is outside the box, so White will gain a new Queen, e.g., 49...Kf7 50 b6, etc.

SECTION 3. TWO SECTORS OF THE BOARD.

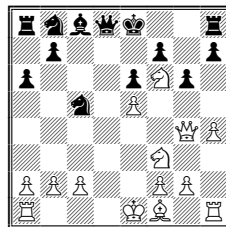
CHAPTER 10. TWO SECTORS OF THE BOARD (WHITE TO PLAY).

253. Zaja-Costantini, Reggio Emilia, Italy, 2002.



White is up the exchange and a pawn (1-0, 45).

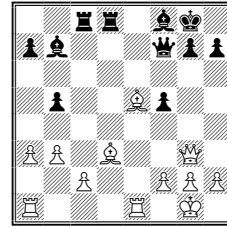
254. Marinic Kragic-Rakic, Epetium Open, Stobrec, Croatia, 2006.



White is up a pawn

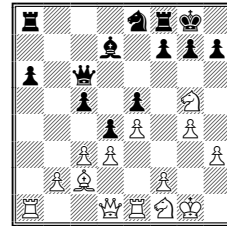
(1-0, 15).

255. Voitsekhovskiy-Chudinovskiy, Russian Team Championship, Podolsk, Russia, 1993.



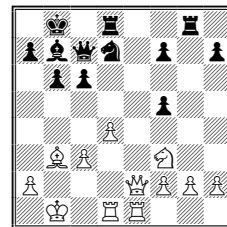
White is up a pawn (1-0, 32).

256. Rozmbersky-Koubkova, Plzen Open (Jr), 1995.



White is up a piece and consolidated the position after 19...Qh6 20 Qc1 Qh4 21 Kg2 h5 22 Nf3 Qf6 23 N1h2 (1-0).

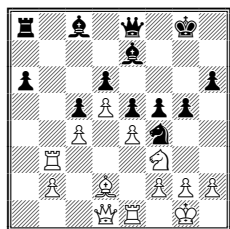
257. Leonhardt-Burn, Ostende, Belgium, 1905.



Material is even (1-0, 35).

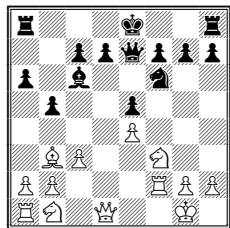
258. Milovanovic-Jakubovics, Tuzla,

1991.



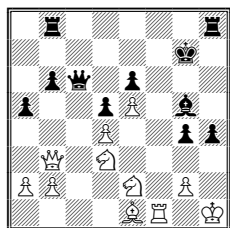
White is up the exchange and won after 27 Bxf4 gxf4 28 Nxe5 dxe5 29 d6 Bf6 30 Qd5+ Be6 31 d7 Bxd5 32 dxe8=Q+ Rxe8 33 exd5 (1-0, 44).

259. Metger-Varain, 8th DSB Kongress, Kiel, Germany, 1893.



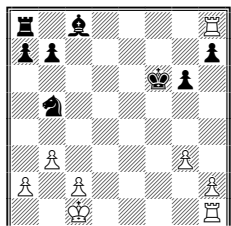
White is up a piece for two pawns (1-0, 23).

260. Cozianu-Navrotescu, Romanian Team Championship, 1994.



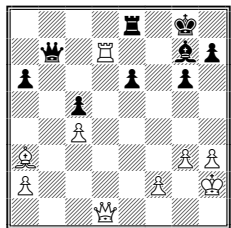
White has two pieces for a Rook and a pawn. The game ended with the moves 26 Qd1 Rh6 27 Bd2 Bxd2 28 Qxd2 Rf6 (1-0).

261. Smyslov-Adorjan, Amsterdam IBM, 1971.



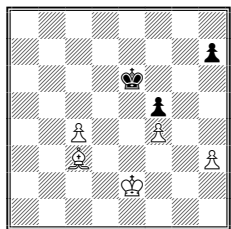
White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces. The game ended quickly: 22...Kg7 23 Rd8 Nc7 24 Re1 (1-0).

262. Janocha-Bobras, Polish Team Championship, Krynica, Poland, 1997.



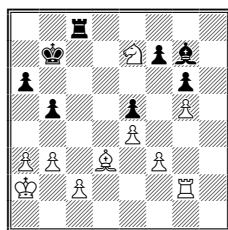
Material is even (1-0, 40).

263. Vogel-Kulovana, Znojmo Open, Czechoslovakia, 2005.



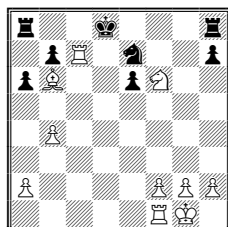
White is up a piece.

264. Mehmeti-Zakharchenko, Caissa IM April, Kecskemet, Hungary, 2005.



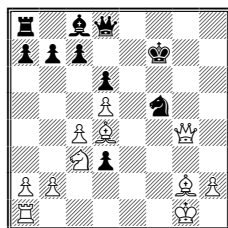
White is up a piece and pawn.

265. Marzik-Erler, Oberliga Wuert, Wuerttemberg, Germany, 1990-91, 1990.



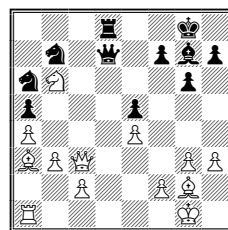
White is up a piece and pawn, and threatens 23 Rcc1, mate. If Black attacks White's Bishop with 23...Nd5, then 23 Rd1 pins the Knight and threatens 24 Rxh7+ and 25 Rxh8, mate.

266. Belmonte-Medak, World Championship (Under 20), Calicut, India, 1998.



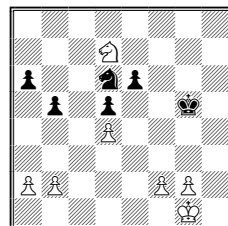
White is up a piece.

267. Franklin-Cook, BCF Championship, 1962.



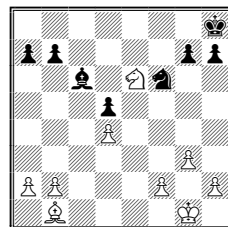
White is up two pawns and has the Bishop pair.

268. Doric-Nedimovic, Nova Gorica, 1997.



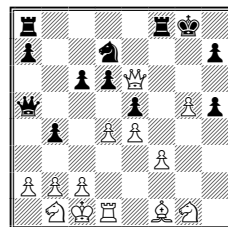
White is up a pawn, e.g., 38...Nf5 39 Nc5 Nxd4 40 Nxa6.

269. Peptan-Sedlakova, Czechoslovakia, 1992.



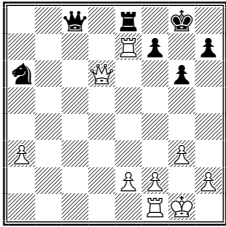
White is up a pawn (1-0, 40).

270. Voloshin-Frindt, Slovakian Team Championship, 1994.



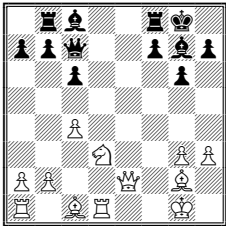
White is up two pieces for a Rook.

271. Morovic Fernandez-Ady, Lloyds Bank Open, London, 1985.



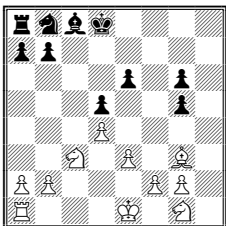
White is up the exchange and two pawns.

272. Wolfsteiner-Wolshofer, Augsburg Open, 1995.



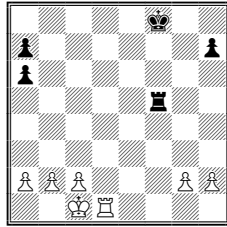
White is up a piece for a pawn, but Black has time to get out of the Bf4 skewer (1-0, 25).

273. Suter-Spielmann, 3rd Hilton Open, Basle, Switzerland, 2001.



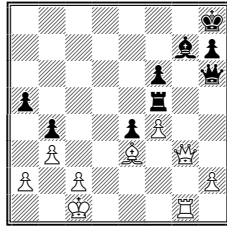
White is up a piece (1-0, 17).

274. Baklan-Bosch, Andorra Open, 2001.



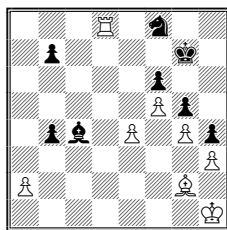
White is up two pawns.

275. Polgar-Anand, Dos Hermanas, 1999.



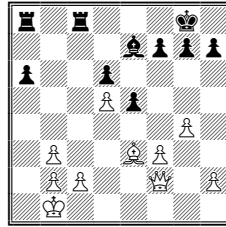
Material is even. Black resigned after 33 Rd1 Kg8 34 Qg2 (1-0). White can play either 35 Qxe4 or 35 Rd8+ Kf7 36 Qd2, with multiple threats.

276. Karlsson-Mortensen, Randers Zonal (Group B), Randers, Denmark, 1982.



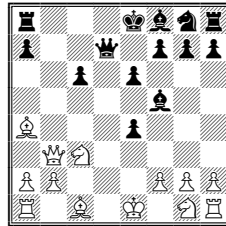
White is up the exchange (1-0, 47).

277. Lakos-Kiss, Hungarian Women's Championship, Budapest, 1995.



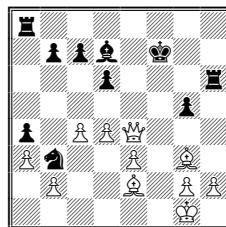
White is up a Queen and a Pawn for two Rooks. The game continued 23...f5 24 f4 exf4 25 Qxf4 Rf8 26 gxf5 Rf7 27 Bd4 Raf8 28 Qe4 Bf6 29 Bxf6 Rxf6 30 Qe2 (1-0, 54).

278. Marshall-Tennenwurzel, New York, 1911.



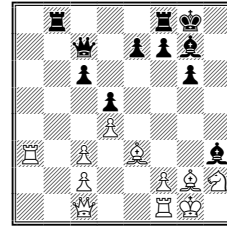
White is up a piece for two pawns (1-0, 24).

279. Kasparov-Rozentalis, European Team Championship, Debrecen, 1992.



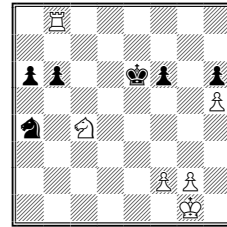
White is up a Queen and two pawns for two Rooks and has the two Bishops.

280. Engelb-Skaaning, Gausdal, Norway, 2000.



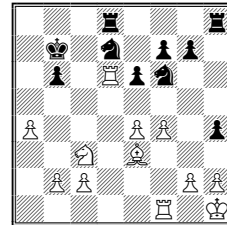
White is up a piece for a pawn.

281. Cavusoglu-Yildiz, Turkish Women's Championship, 2004.



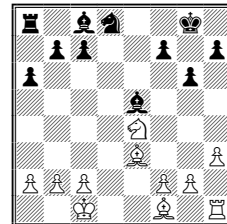
White is up a Rook for a pawn.

282. Fazulyanov-Bodnaruk, St. Petersburg, Russia, 2002.



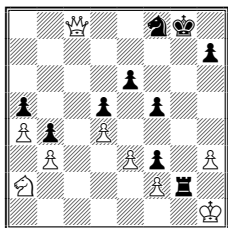
White is up two pawns (1-0, 51).

283. Tissir-Hidalgo Begines, Dos Hermanas, Spain, 2004.



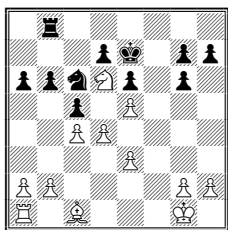
Material is even (1-0, 26).

284. Burn-Marco, 12th DSB Congress, Munich, Germany, 1900.



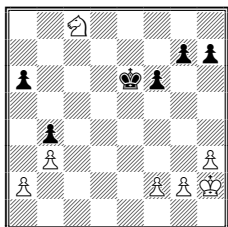
White is up a Queen for a Rook and pawn (1-0, 44).

285. Hamdouchi-Vescovi, Rapidplay (Group A), Cap D'Agde, France, 1998.



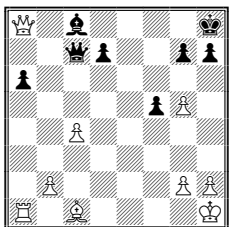
White is up a piece.

286. Abayasekera-Estrada, World Team Championship (Under 26, Finals B), Caracas, 1976.



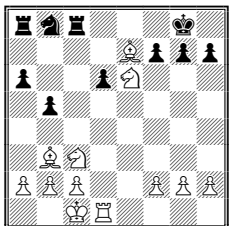
White is up a piece. Black resigned after the moves 41...Kd5 42 Nb6+ Kd4 43 Na4 g6 44 Kg3 (1-0).

287. Susnik-Simic, Slovenian Championship, Vrhnika, Slovenia, 1995.



White wins Black's Rook on a8.

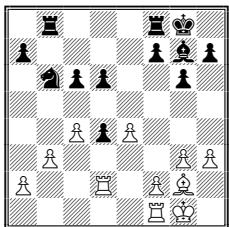
288. Cheng-Cao, US Masters, Hendersonville, USA, 2006.



White is up three pieces for a Rook and has the two Bishops.

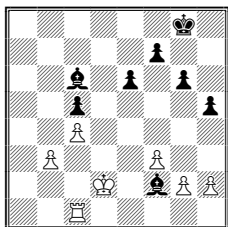
CHAPTER 11. TWO SECTORS OF THE BOARD (BLACK TO PLAY).

289. Rantanen-Johannsson, Amsterdam Olympiad (Prelim), Amsterdam, Netherlands, 1954.



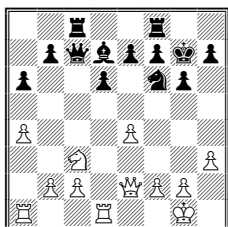
Black is up a piece (0-1, 24).

290. Gregory-Nimzovich, St. Petersburg, 1913.



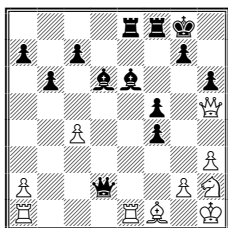
Black has two Bishops for a Rook (0-1, 70).

291. Mitric-Bojovic, Sozina Open, Bar, Serbia and Montenegro, 2006.



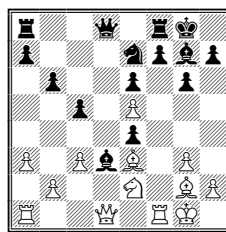
Black is up a piece.

292. Balla-Gruenfeld, Bad Pistyan, Czech Republic, 1922.



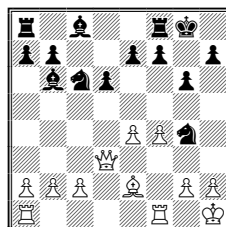
Black is up three pawns and has the two Bishops (0-1, 21).

293. Rebold-Ramirez, US Championship, Ventura, California, 1971.



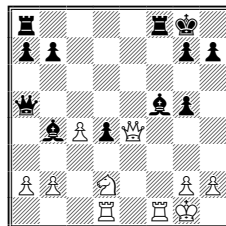
White is up two pawns (0-1, 26).

294. Donovan-Mednis, Marshall Chess Club Championship, New York, 1955-56.



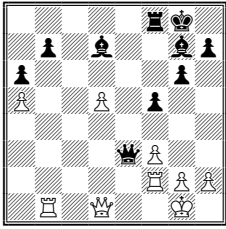
Black has three pieces for the Queen (0-1, 29).

295. Alekhine-Kalinsh, Riga Simul, Riga, Latvia, 1935.



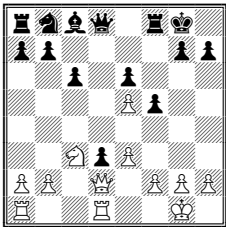
Black is up a piece and a pawn.

296. Kuligowski-Sznapiak, Warsaw Cup, 1980.



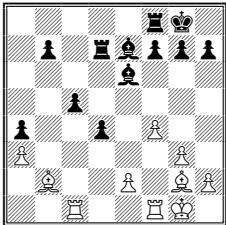
Black is up two Bishops for a Rook and threatens 25...Bd4.

297. Wolpert-Muhring, Johannesburg, South Africa, 1955.



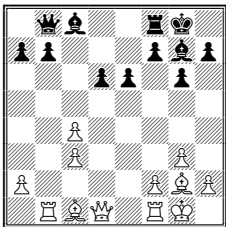
Black is up a piece and a pawn (0-1, 14)

298. O'Hanlon-Kostic, Nice, France, 1930.



Black is up two pawns.

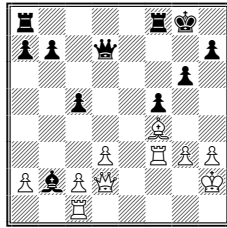
299. Fye Chan-Choong, Skopje Olympiad (Finals), 1972.



White is up a Rook for

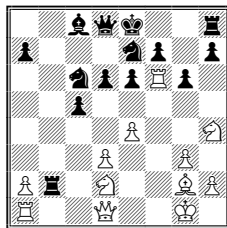
a pawn (1-0, 31).

300. Shakalkar-Parma, Tel Aviv Olympiad, Tel Aviv, Israel, 1964.



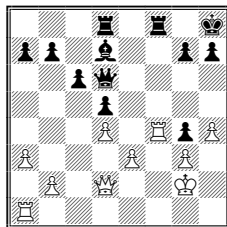
Black is up a pawn (0-1, 30).

301. Calvo Mingue-Parma, World Championship (Under 20), Finals (Group A), The Hague, Netherlands, 1961.



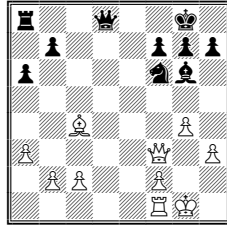
Black is up two pawns (0-1, 25).

302. Cruz Bulnes-Gudmundsson, Buenos Aires Olympiad, Buenos Aires, Argentina, 1939.



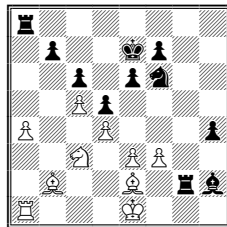
Black is up a piece and a pawn (0-1, 25).

303. Klein-Gligoric, Santa Fe, Argentina, 1960.



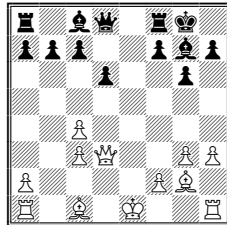
Black is up a piece for a pawn.

304. Banikas-Kasparov, Patras, 2001.



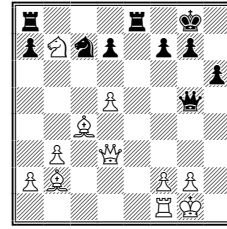
Black is up the exchange and has an advanced passed a-pawn. White's two Bishops are passive.

305. Perez Perez-Belkadi, Havana Olympiad (Prelim), La Habana, Cuba, 1966.



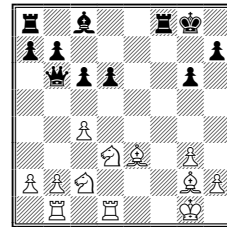
Black is up a pawn and has great pieces after 12...Bf5 13 Qd2 Re8+ 14 Kf1 Qf6 (0-1, 20).

306. Konstantinou-Shahtatinsky, Ano Liosia Open, 1997.



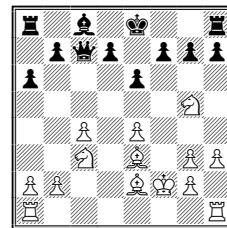
White is up two Bishops for a Rook (1-0, 31).

307. Siegel-Habibi, FS GM Feb, Budapest, Hungary, 1997.



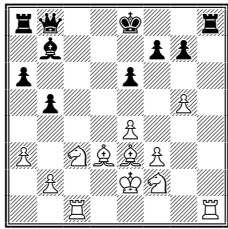
Black has a Queen for three pieces; White has the Bishop pair (1-0, 47).

308. Nogueira-De Mello Sales, Brazilian Championship, Teresina, Brazil, 2000.



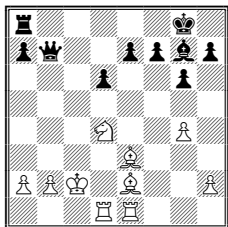
Black has a Queen for three pieces; White has the Bishop pair (1-0, 27).

309. Afanasiev-Ubiennykh, Russian Cup, Tomsk, Russia, 2001.



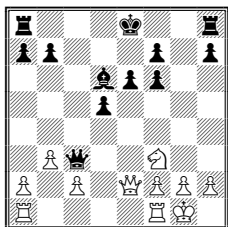
Black has a Queen for three pieces; White has the Bishop pair (1-0, 33).

310. Sakharov-Vasiukov, USSR Championship, Kiev, USSR, 1964.



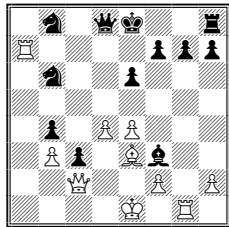
Black has a Queen and two pawns for a Rook and two pieces with the Bishop pair. The game continued 20...Rb8 21 b3 Rc8+ 22 Kb1 Rc3 23 Bf3 Qb4 24 Nc2 (Black has the better position after 24 Bd5 Rxe3 25 Rxe3 Bxd4 26 Rxe7 Qc3 27 Re2) 24...Rxc2 (0-1) 25 Kxc2 Qc3+ 26 Kb1 Qb2 is mate.

311. Fucak-Dizdar, Zadar Open, 1999.



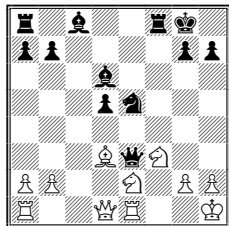
White has lost a pawn

without compensation, but eventually won the Rook ending (1-0, 67). 312. Regen-Keltz, Ventnor City, USA, 1945.



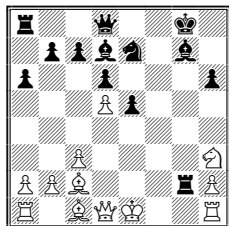
Black has two pieces and a pawn for a Rook.

313. Coast-Gray, Weymouth Open, 1965.



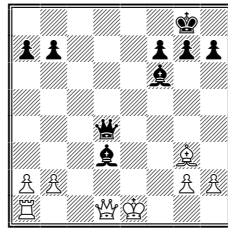
Black is up a pawn and has the Bishop pair (0-1, 24).

314. Lukic-Matanovic, Yugoslavia Championship, Sarajevo, Yugoslavia, 1958.



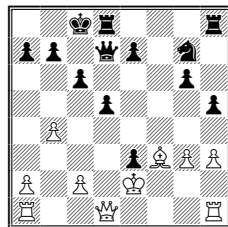
Black is up a pawn (0-1, 28).

315. Milner Barry-Haygarth, BCF Championship, York, England, 1959.



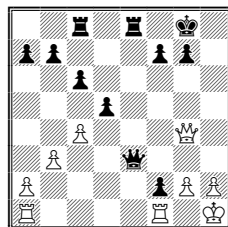
Black has a piece and a pawn and the Bishop pair for a Rook. The game continued 21 Bf4 (21 Qf3 Bg5 threatens 22...Qg1+ 23 Qf1 Qxf1, mate) Qe4+ (0-1), when White loses a Rook to 22 Kd2 Qxf4+ 23 Kxd3 Qd4+ 24 Ke2 Qxb2+ 25 Kd3 Qxa1.

316. Santasiere-Adams, USA, 1945.



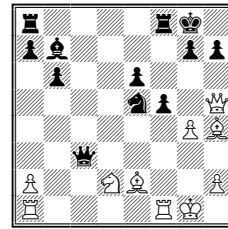
Black is up three pawns (0-1, 25).

317. Shapiro-Dashkevich, USSR Championship, 1955.



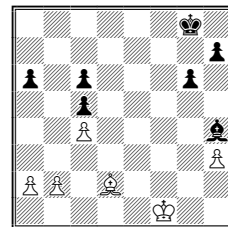
Black is up two pawns (0-1, 25).

318. Troeger-Szabo, European Team Championship, 1965.



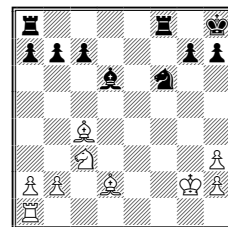
Black has three pawns for the piece (0-1, 24).

319. Huebner-Timman, Bad Lauterberg, 1977.



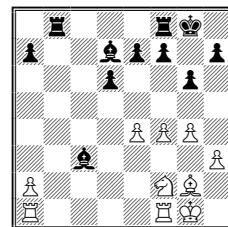
Black is up a pawn (0-1, 50).

320. Te Kolste-Spielmann, Baden-Baden, 1925.



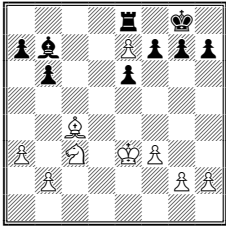
Black has the exchange and a pawn to White's Bishop pair.

321. Gumprich-Behle, West German Championship, 1957.

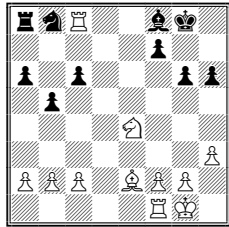


Black is up a pawn and has the two Bishops (0-1, 28).

322. Barda-Keres, Moscow Olympiad (Preliminary Round), Moscow, USSR, 1956.

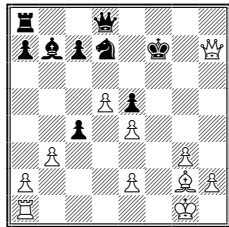


325. Wawrzaszek-Baxter, January OCF FIDE Open, Oklahoma City, USA, 2006.



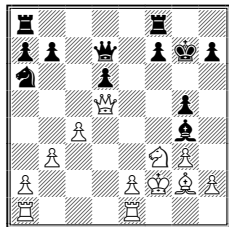
White is up a Rook.

326. Thorsteins-Vidarsson, Gardaboer, Iceland, 1996.



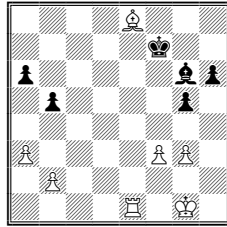
White has three pawns for a piece and will win more material with Rf1 and/or Qg6, e.g., 23...Kf8 24 Rf1+ Nf6 25 Qg6 wins, as Black can't defend his Knight a second time, or 23...Ke8 24 Qg6+ (1-0), when White mates after 24...Ke7 25 Qe6+ Kf8 26 Rf1+ Kg7 27 Rf7+ Kh8 28 Qh6+ Kg8 29 Qg7.

327. Nikolic-Todorovic, Yugoslav Championship, 1988.



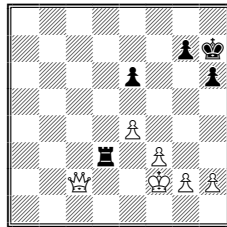
Material is even (1-0, 29).

328. Zahariou-Papasirou, 9th Open, Nikea, Greece, 2001.



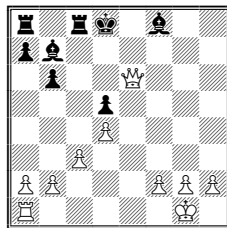
White is up a Rook. Black resigned after 45...Kg7 46 Bxg6 Kxg6 (1-0).

329. Wang Pin-Alejandro, University Women's Tournament, Leon, Spain, 1996.



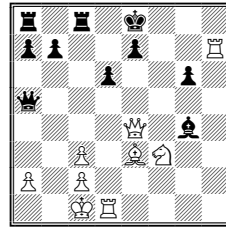
White is up a Queen and pawn for a Rook (1-0, 52).

330. Analysis of Plassmann-Helmig, Muenster Open, Muenster, Germany, 1989.



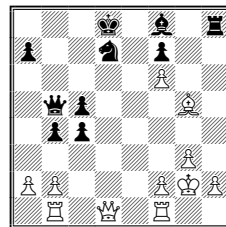
White has a Queen and four pawns for a Rook and two Bishops.

331. Stonehouse-Lynn, New Zealand Championship, Auckland, New Zealand, 1977.



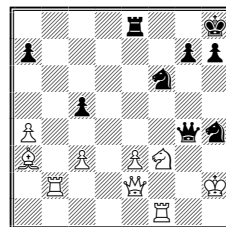
White is up a piece for two pawns (1-0, 25).

332. Fernandez-Santos, 6th Comunic CXSP, Sao Paulo, Brazil, 2004.



White is up a the exchange and a pawn (1-0, 37).

333. Panno-Rossetto, Rio de Janeiro Zonal, Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, 1957.

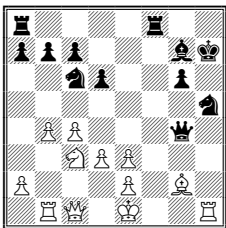


White is up a Rook for a pawn (1-0, 35).

334. Baci-Zilic, Croatian Team Championship, Porec, Croatia, 1998.

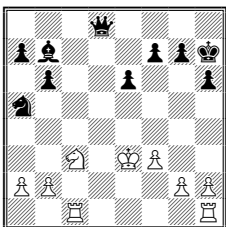
Black is up the exchange.

323. Damele-Palmiotto, Reggio Emilia, Italy, 1964-65.



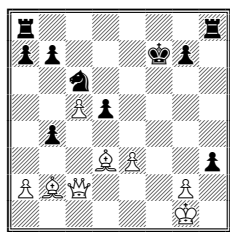
Black is up a piece for a pawn (0-1, 21).

324. Leepin-Mross, Germany, 1941.



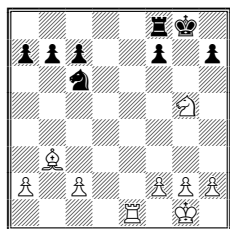
Black has a Queen, Bishop, and pawn for two Rooks.

CHAPTER 12. INITIAL BALANCE.



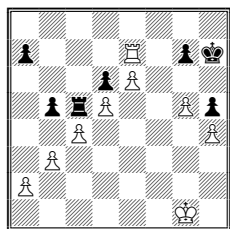
White has a Queen and Bishop with the Bishop pair for two Rooks and two pawns (1-0, 29).

335. Najjar-Aboud, Lebanese Championship, Beirut, Lebanon, 2003.



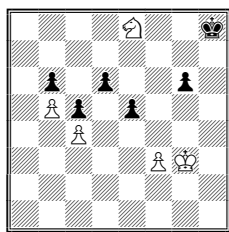
White is up a piece (1-0, 20).

336. Bidwell-Gelman, Eastern Open, 1998.



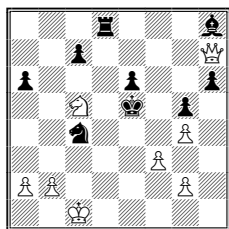
White is up two pawns and will soon win Black's d-pawn (1-0, 45).

337. Jovanic-Kos, Bled Open, Bled, Slovenia, 2000.



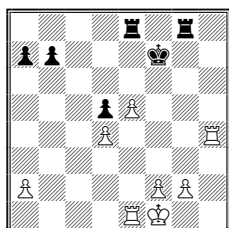
White has a piece for two pawns. Black resigned after the moves 49...d5 50 cxd5 c4 51 d6 (1-0).

338. Mohamed-Timoshenko, GM B, Cairo, Egypt, 1997.



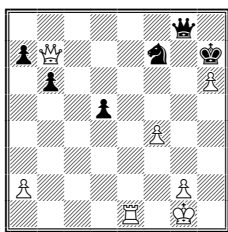
White has a Queen for a Rook and Bishop. The final moves were 44...Kd5 45 Nb7 Bxb2+ 46 Kc2 (1-0).

339. Kamsky-Shirov, Dortmund, Germany, 1992.



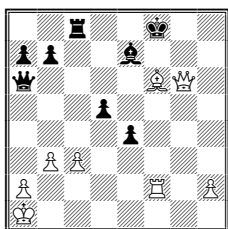
White is up two pawns.

340. Flesch-Kovacs, Hungarian Championship, Budapest, Hungary, 1969.



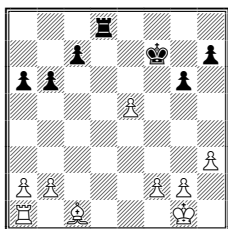
White is up the exchange and a pawn (1-0, 37).

341. Kersten-Schaffarczyk, Bad Zwesten Open, Germany, 1999.



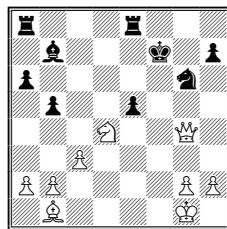
Material is even, but the threat of 31 Qxg7+ and 32 Qxe7, mate, wins Black's Queen, for example, a) 30...Rc7 (1-0) 31 Bxe7+ Kxe7 32 Rf7+ Ke8 33 Qg8, mate, or b) 30...Bc5 31 Be7+ Kxe7 32 Rf7+, etc.

342. Batelkova-Dvorakova, Czech Women's Championship, Ostrava, Czech Republic, 1997.



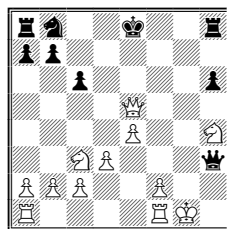
White is up a piece and a pawn.

343. Becerra Rivero-Bischoff, Capablanca Memorial (Elite), Havana, Cuba, 1998.



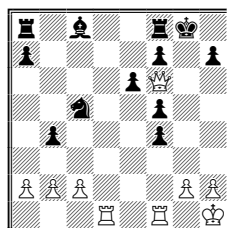
White has a Queen and pawn for two Rooks (1-0, 30).

344. Johansen-Andreasen, Denmark Open, 1993.



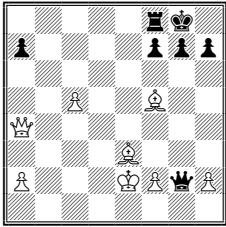
White is up a piece and two pawns (1-0, 20).

345. Fischer-Benko, Candidates Tournament, Bled, Yugoslavia, 1959.



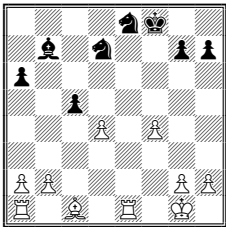
White is up a Queen for two pieces and two pawns (1-0, 27).

346. Giemsa-Schmidt, Bundesliga, Germany, 2000-01.



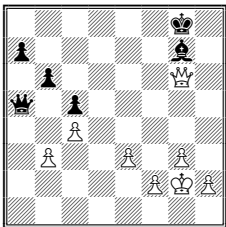
White has two Bishops for a Rook (1-0, 38).

347. Lamb-Hansen, US Open, 1967.



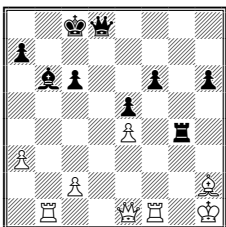
White is up two Rooks and two pawns for two Knights.

348. Tal-Kupreichik, USSR Championship, Moscow, USSR, 1969.



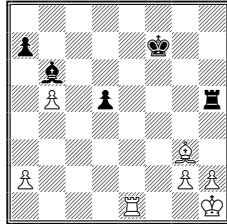
White has three pawns for the piece (1-0, 41).

349. Badea-Diulger, Winter Cup, Bucharest, Romania, 2006.



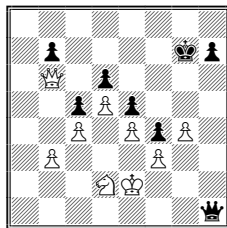
White is up a Rook for two pawns.

350. Kasparov-Polgar, Ju, Eurotel Trophy, Prague, Czech Republic, 2002.



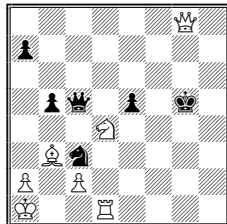
White is up two pawns (1-0, 51).

351. Guindy-Larsen, Lyngby Team Match, Lyngby, Denmark, 1996.



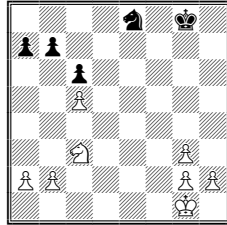
White is up a piece.

352. Vouldis-Tiviakov, European Team Championship, Plovdiv, Bulgaria, 2003.



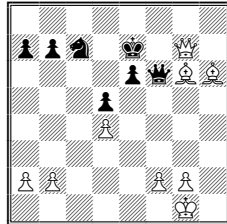
White is up a Rook and Bishop for a pawn and soon mates.

353. Kumaran-Hennigan, BCF Championship, 1992.



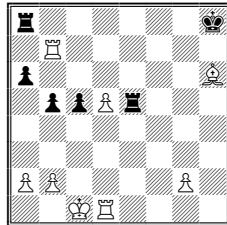
White is up three pawns.

354. Volkmann-Schlösser, Austrian Team Championship, 1997-98.



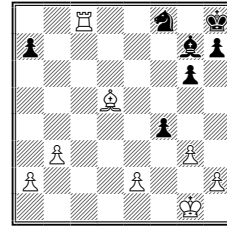
White is up a piece and a pawn and has the two Bishops.

355. Kochetkov-Shushpanov, inAU-TOMarket Open, Minsk, Belarus, 2005.



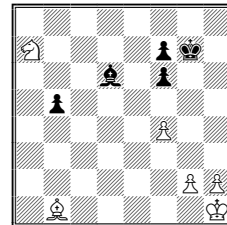
White is up a piece and a pawn.

356. Quinteros-Rollansky, Mar del Plata Open, Mar del Plata, Argentina, 1967.



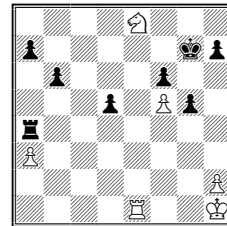
White is up the exchange and a pawn.

357. Alonso-Ortiz, Cuban Championship, Group B, Santa Clara, Cuba, 2005.



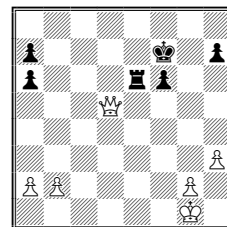
White is up a piece (1-0, 46).

358. Raceanu-Vasiesiu, Romanian Team Championship, 2001.



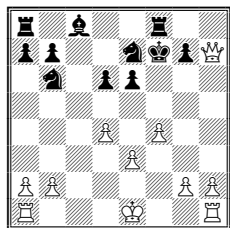
White has a piece for three pawns (1-0, 52).

359. Savon-Alburt, Odessa, USSR, 1976.



White is up a Queen for a Rook.

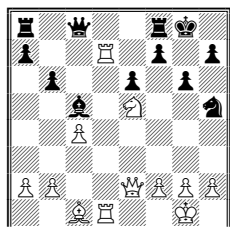
360. Sepp-Jambor, Augsburg Open, Augsburg, Germany, 1995.



White has a Queen and two pawns for three pieces (1-0, 33).

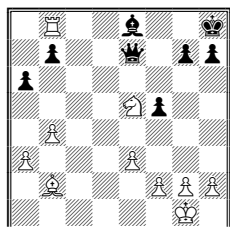
CHAPTER 13. EXPANDING THE POSITION.

361. Engels-Koch, German Championship, 1938.



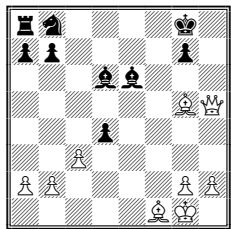
Material is even, but White has absolute control of the d-file (1-0, 70).

362. Grigoryan-Jessel, World Junior Championship, Yerevan, Armenia, 2006.



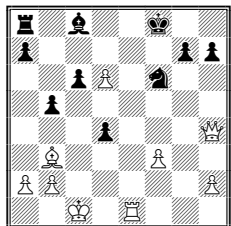
White has a Rook, Knight, and pawn for his Queen. White was able to further expand his position after 27...Kg8 28 Bd4 h6 (28...Qc7 29 Rxe8, mate) 29 f4 Kh7 30 Bc5 Qh4 31 h3 Bb5 32 Rh8+ (1-0).

363. Tartakower-Schlechter, St. Petersburg, Russia, 1909.



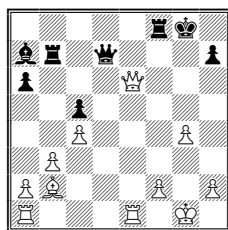
White has a Queen and pawn for a Rook and Knight (1-0, 32).

364. Alekhine-Ilija, Exhibition, Buenos Aires, Argentina, 1926.



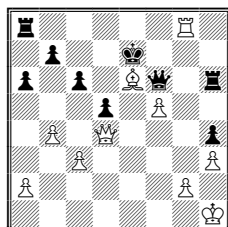
White can win Black's Queen by playing 28 Bd6+, when the threat of mate forces Black to play 28...Qxd6 29 cxd6.

365. Alekhine-Steiner, Pasadena, USA, 1932.



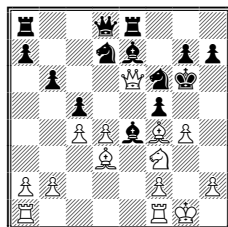
White is up three pawns.

366. Fedorov-Fyllingen, Aars get2net Cup GM Tournament, Aars, Denmark, 1999.



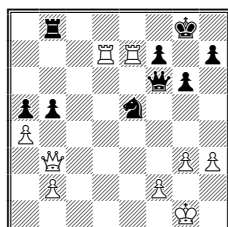
32 Qc5 is mate.

367. Alekhine-Feldt, Simul, Odessa, Russia, 1916.



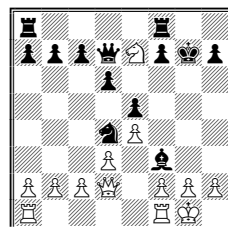
18 Nh4 is mate.

368. Savon-Zaitsev, Furman Memorial, St. Petersburg, Russia, 1995.



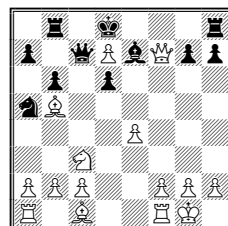
White will be up a Rook after 33 Rxe5 (1-0), since taking back with 33...Qxe5 loses to 34 Qxf7+, with mate next move.

369. Capablanca-NN, New York, 1918.



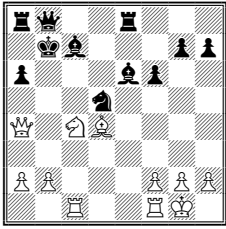
White mates in two with 15 Qg5+ Kh8 16 Qf6, mate.

370. Analysis of Paramasivam-Tariq, 1st WinTV Open, Chennai, India, 2004.



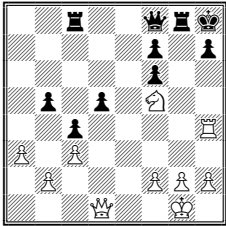
White mates in two with 14 Qe8+ Rxe8 15 dxe8=Q, mate. In the actual game, with Black's Queen on d8 and Knight on c5, White played 11 c7+, winning Black's Queen (1-0, 15).

371. Kasparov-Peterson, Chess@iceland-A Iceland, 2000.



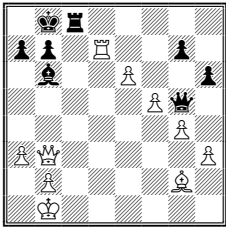
White mates in two with 24 Nd6+ Bxd6 25 Qc6, mate. Also possible is 24 Na5+ with either 24...Kc8 25 Qxe8, mate or 24...Bxa5 25 Qc6, mate.

372. Capablanca-Morris, NY, 1911.



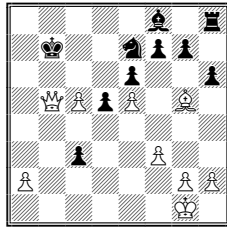
White mates in three: 28 Rxh7+ Kxh7 29 Qh5+ Qh6 30 Qxh6, mate.

373. Sriram-Gogte, Commonwealth Championship, India, 2004.



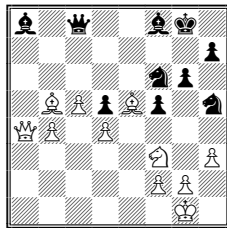
White mates in three: 42 Rxb7+ Ka8 43 Rxb6+ Rc6 44 Bxc6, mate.

374. Tischbierek-Moussa, North American Open, Las Vegas, USA, 2003.



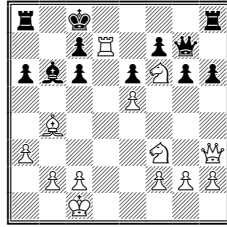
White has a Queen for a Rook and Bishop and has a dominant position. The game ended with the moves 22...Kc7 23 Qb6+ Kd7 24 Qb7+ (White can mate in three with 24 c6+ Nxc6 25 Qb7+ Ke8 26 Qxc6, mate) 24...Ke8 25 Qa8+ Kd7 26 c6+ (1-0) Kc7 (26...Nxc6 27 Qb7+ Ke8 28 Qxc6, mate) 27 Qb7+ Kd8 28 Qd7, mate.

375. Galyas-Lukasovics, Spring Festival, Budapest, Hungary, 2001.



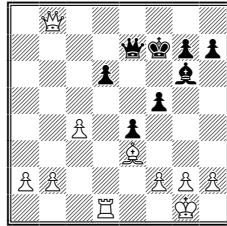
White two connected passed pawns for his piece and a dominant position. In the game Black played 23...Ne4, when White wins after 24 Bd7 Nc3 25 Bxc8 (1-0) 25...Nxa4 26 Be6.

376. Al Hadarani-Abu Nasi, 16th Asian Cities, Beirut, Lebanon, 2000.



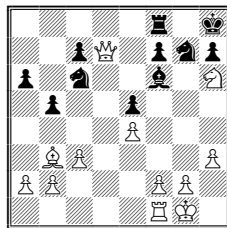
White has given up a Rook for two pieces (1-0, 29).

377. Fischer-Shipman, Manhattan Blitz, New York, 1971.



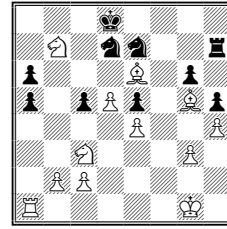
White is up a Rook and a pawn.

378. Szymczak-Cornelisse, 3rd ACT, Amsterdam, Netherlands, 2006.



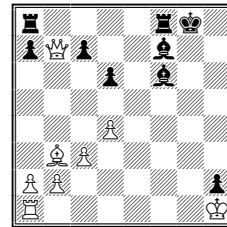
White is up a Queen and a pawn for a piece.

379. Soln-Kock, Faakersee Open, Lat-schach, Austria, 2001.



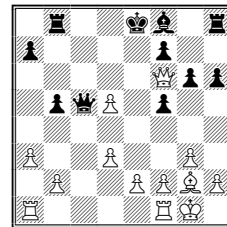
White is up two pieces with the Bishop pair.

380. Alekhine-Mikulka, USSR, 1928.



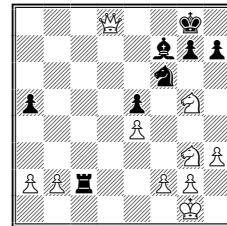
White has a Queen for a Rook and Bishop with the Bishop pair.

381. Fischer-Lapiken, US Open, 1956.



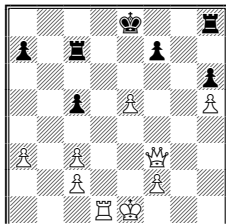
White is up two pawns and will win one of Black's Rooks.

382. Fischer-Sharp, Canadian Open, Montreal, Canada, 1956.



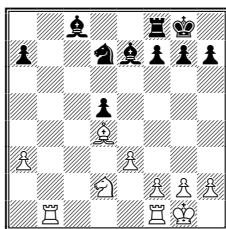
White is up a Queen and two pawns for a Rook.

383. Fischer-Hook, Siegen Olympiad, 1970.



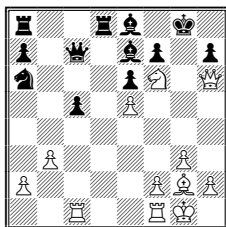
White is up a Queen and two pawns for a Rook and now wins another Rook with 30 Qf6 (threatening 31 Rd8/Qd8, mate) Rd7 31 Rxd7 Kxd7 32 Qxh8.

384. Kasparov-Short, Brussels Blitz, Brussels, Belgium, 1987.



White is up the exchange, but Black has the Bishop pair.

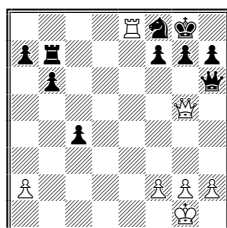
385. Stoltz-Reilly, Consultation Game, Nice, France, 1931.



White mates with 22

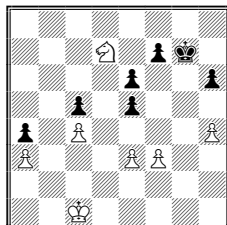
Nf6+ Bxf6 23 exf6 with 24 Qg7, mate.

386. Alekhine-Freeman, New York, 1924.



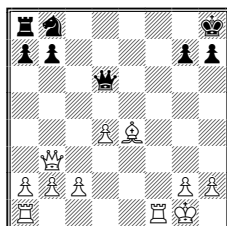
White mates in two: 25 Rxf8+ Kxf8 26 Qd8, mate.

387. Thorfinnsson-Ulfarsson, Reykjavik, Iceland, 2001.



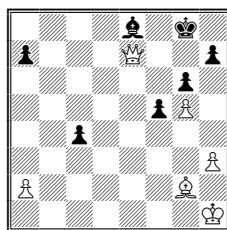
White is up a piece for a pawn.

388. Herskovic-Posta, Czech Open Junior Championship, Svetla, Czech Republic, 1994.



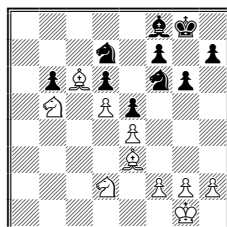
White is up a Rook and two pawns.

389. Jakovljevic-Devic, Zagreb Open, Zagreb, Croatia, 2006.



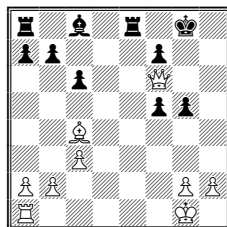
White is up a Queen for two pawns.

390. Lima-Arias, Cali, Colombia, 2001.



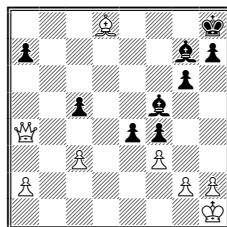
White is up a piece. Black resigned after 25...Nc5 26 f3 (1-0).

391. Suchane-Volf, Czech Army Championship, Prague, 1965.



White is up a Queen for a Rook and pawn.

392. Al Zendani-Al Subaihi, 1st Yemen Open, Sanaa, 2002.

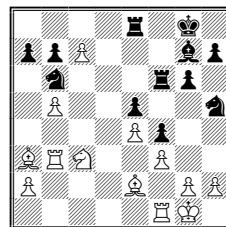


White is up a Queen for piece and pawn and threatens mate.

SECTION 4. QUEENS UNDER ATTACK.

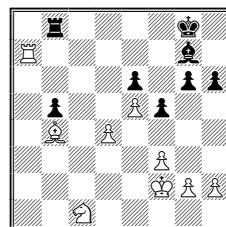
CHAPTER 14. FIRST PLAYER TO ATTACK THE QUEEN.

393. Becelic-Kostic, Winter Open, Belgrade, Serbia and Montenegro, 2006.



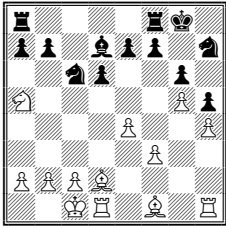
White is up a pawn and has the Bishop pair (1-0, 49).

394. Perk-Scholze, EU Team Championship (Seniors), Dresden, Germany, 2006.



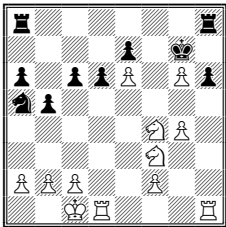
White is up a piece (1-0, 41).

395. Luther-Reschke, 10th Open, Bad Zwesten, Germany, 2006.



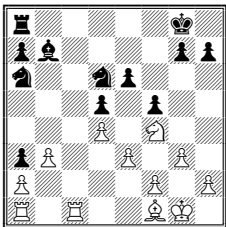
Material is even, but White has the Bishop pair (1-0, 60).

396. Polgar, Judit-Busche, Frankfurt Simul, 1999.



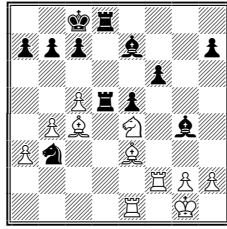
White is up a piece and pawn (1-0, 26).

397. Kasparov-Gueye, Cannes Simul, 1988.



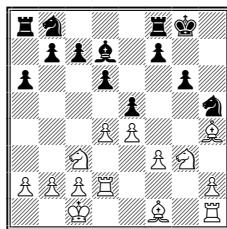
White is up the exchange and now wins another piece with 23 Bxa6 Bxa6 24 Rc6, leaving White up a Rook.

398. Treybal-Becker, The Hague Olympiad, 1928.



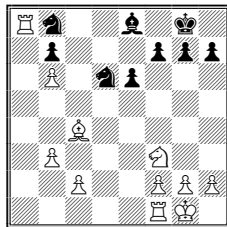
White will be up a piece for a pawn after Bxb3 (1-0, 41).

399. Gnatyshin-Pavlova, Ilyichevsk Open (Under 17), 2000.



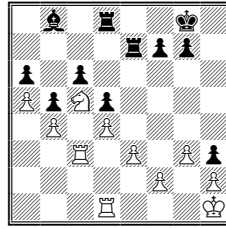
White is up a piece and has the Bishop pair. The game ended with the moves 14...exd4 15 Nd5 Nxd3 16 hxd3 (1-0).

400. Fuchs-Orosi, Vienna Chess Festival, 1996.



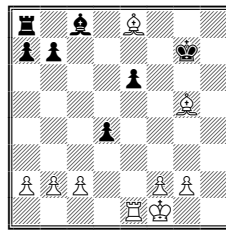
White is up two Rooks and a pawn for a single Knight.

401. Gligoric-Liberzon, Baden, 1980.



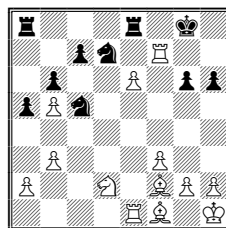
Material is even. White threatens to take Black's a-pawn with Nxa6, which Black can save with 39...Ra7, but then his c-pawn is weak after 40 Rdc1 Rd6 41 Nd3 Rc7 42 Ne5 (1-0, 50).

402. Trygstad-Simonsen, Politiken Cup, Copenhagen, Denmark, 1999.



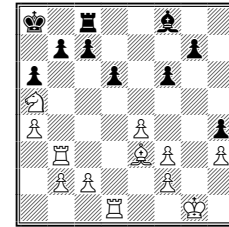
White is up a piece and a pawn and has the Bishop pair.

403. Alexandria-Levitina, Women's Candidates (Semi-Finals), Dubna, USSR, 1983.



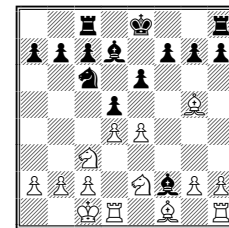
White is up a piece and two pawns and has the Bishop pair.

404. Rinder-Stoffel, World Championship (Women), 1939.



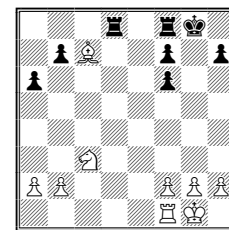
White is up a Rook and a Knight.

405. Friedl-Schmid, Oberliga Wuert, Wuerttemberg, Germany, 1997-98.



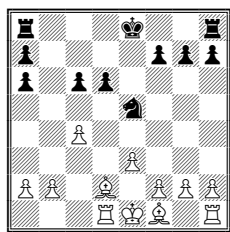
White is up a piece for a pawn (1-0, 15).

406. Sedina-Zanetti, 8th Hilton Schachfestival, Basel, Switzerland, 2006.



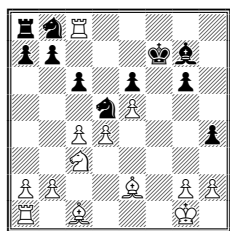
White has two pieces for the Rook (1-0, 26).

407. Singleton-Kverndal, EU Team Championship (Seniors), Dresden, Germany, 2006.



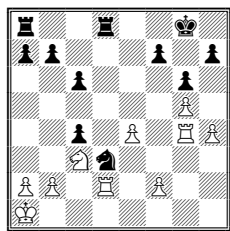
White is up a piece and has the Bishop pair. Black resigned after 14...0-0 15 Bc3 (1-0).

408. Batchelder-Mirsky, US Open, 1969.



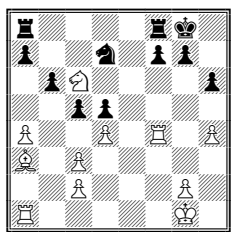
White is up a Rook and pawn and has the two Bishops (1-0).

409. Adams-Kasparov, Dortmund, 1992.



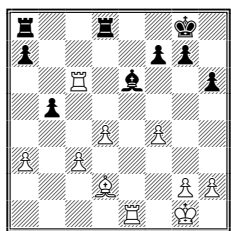
The pieces are even, but Black remains a pawn up and can get a won ending after 26...Ne5 27 Rxd8+ Rxd8 28 Rg1 Rd2 29 f4 Nd3, etc.

410. Bjerke-Egilsson, Troll Masters, Gausdal, Norway, 1999.



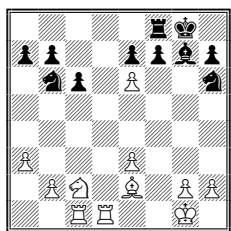
White is up a piece for a pawn (1-0, 22).

411. Kostic-Walter, Trencianske Teplice, 1928.



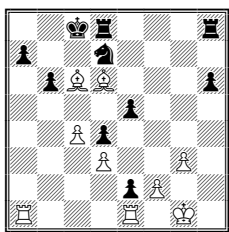
White is up a pawn (1-0, 46).

412. Kjartansson-Olafsson, XXII Open, Reykjavik, Iceland, 2006.



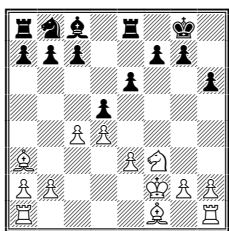
White is up the exchange. White resigned after the moves 22 exf7+ Rxf7 23 Rd8+ Rf8 24 Rxf8+ Kxf8 25 Rf1+ (1-0).

413. Glek-De Haan, Dutch Team Championship, Netherlands, 2000.



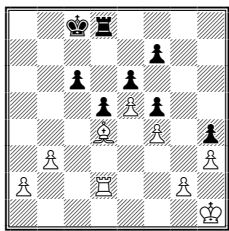
White is up a piece for two pawns and has the Bishop pair (1-0, 26).

414. Kaeferboeck-Bachmann, Waehring Open, Vienna, Australia, 1998.



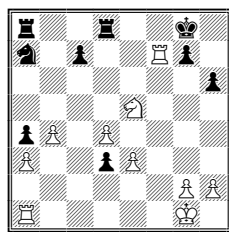
White is up a piece for a pawn and has the Bishop pair.

415. Pahkla-Nykanen, Heinola We HeinSK, Heinola, Finland, 1996.



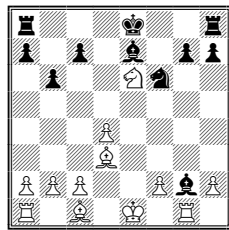
White is up a piece.

416. Capablanca-Mikenas, Buenos Aires Olympiad (Finals-A), 1939.



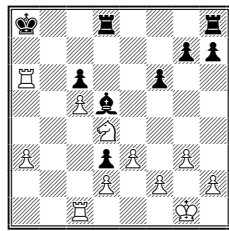
White is up a pawn and will soon win Black's d-pawn as well. The game ended 23...Nb5 24 Rf2 Rd5 25 Nxd3 Re8 26 Rf3 (1-0).

417. Kotronias-Peric, Anibal Open, Linares, Spain, 2002.



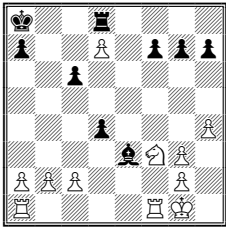
White is up a pawn and has the Bishop pair (1-0) and will win a second pawn after 14...Kd7 15 Rxe6 16 Rxe7.

418. Olafsson-Dueckstein, Wageningen Zonal, 1957.



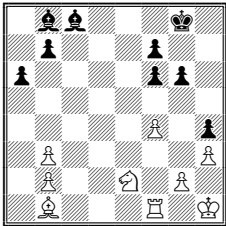
White is up a pawn.

419. Guenther-Rost, EU Team Championship (Seniors), Dresden, Germany, 2006.



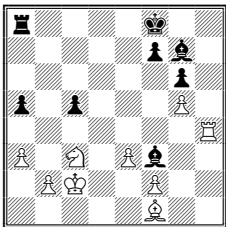
White will be up a Rook after ...Rxd7 (1-0, 30).

420. Gala-Markopoulos, Acropolis IM Open, Athens, Greece, 2004.



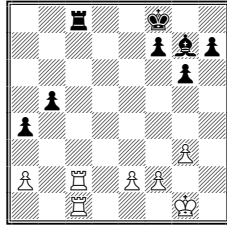
White is up a Rook for a pawn.

421. Polgar, Z-Ivkov, Women Veterans, Aruba, 1992.



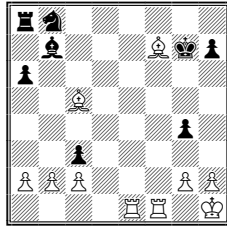
White is up a pawn, but Black has the Bishop pair (1-0, 38).

422. Froehlich-Guo Yuthok, Queenstown, New Zealand, 2006.



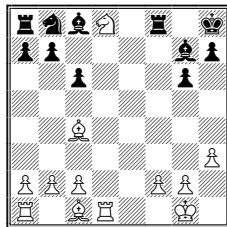
White is up the exchange for a pawn (1-0, 49).

423. Borm-Ermenkov, OHRA-B, Amsterdam, 1985.



White is up a Rook and a pawn and has the Bishop pair.

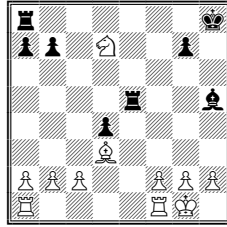
424. Tkachiev-Gouret, French Team Championship, Clichy, France, 1996-97.



White is up a pawn (1-0, 19).

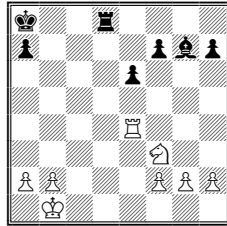
CHAPTER 15. SECOND PLAYER TO ATTACK THE QUEEN.

425. Foltys-Opocensky, Prague, Czechoslovakia, 1937.



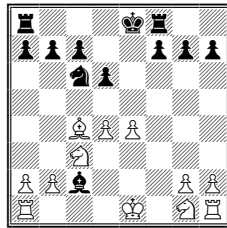
White is up a piece and two pawns (1-0, 30).

426. Korchnoi-Lahno, III GM Day, Pulvermuehle, Germany, 2006.



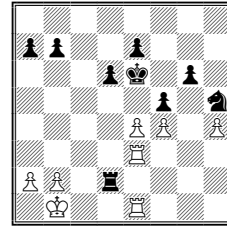
White is up a pawn (1-0, 49).

427. Keres-Tuul, Estonia Championship (Under 18), 1932.



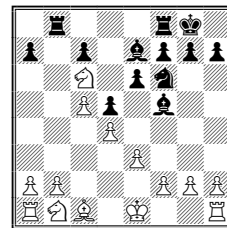
White is up a piece for a pawn (1-0, 33).

428. Potthammel-Thum, EU Team Championship (Seniors), Dresden, Germany, 2006.



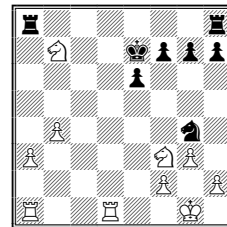
White is up the exchange for a pawn and now swapped pawns with 26 exf5+ Kxf5 27 Rxe7 Nxf4. The final moves were 28 Rf1 Kg4 29 Re4 Kxh4 30 Rexf4+ Kg5 31 Rf7 (1-0).

429. Rubinstein-Blumenfeld, St. Petersburg Championship, 1906.



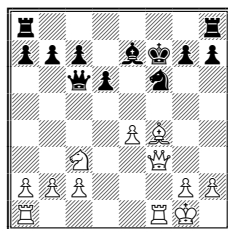
White is up a pawn; Black has the Bishop pair but the Be7 is passive (1-0, 22).

430. Rachels-Inman, Chicago Open, 1989.



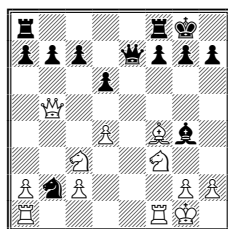
White is up a piece.

431. Lutes-Jackan, Columbus, 1962.



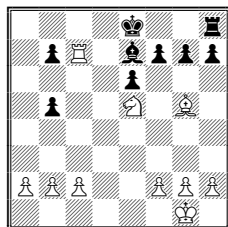
Material is even (1-0, 19).

432. Lohou-Isaksen, Midnight Sun, Tromsø, Norway, 2006.



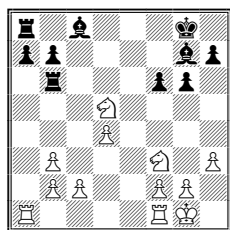
White has a piece for two pawns and Black's Nb2 is trapped.

433. Mahdi-Todor, Donau Open, Vienna, Austria, 1998.



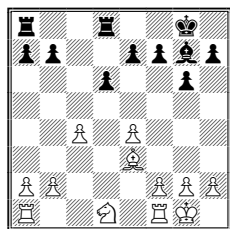
White is up a piece. 19...Bxg5 20 Nxf7 (1-0). White is up the exchange after 20 Nxf7 Bf4 21 Rc8+ Kxf7 22 Rxh8.

434. Doggers-Friesen, Netherlands Championship (Under 20), 1995.



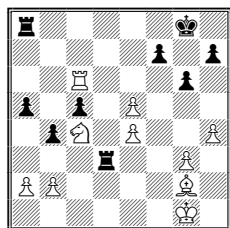
White is up two pawns; Black has the Bishop pair. Note that White's Knight dominates Black's Rooks, e.g., 18...Rc6 19 Ne7+ or 18...Rd6 19 Ne7+ Kf7 20 Rxa7 Rxa7 21 Nxc8 forks both of Black's Rooks.

435. Akesson-Heidenfeld, European Team Championship, Pula, Croatia, 1997.



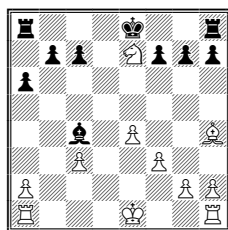
White is up a piece.

436. Predojevi-Roiz, Aeroflot Open, Moscow, Russia, 2006.



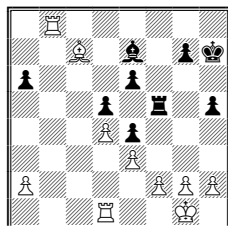
White has two pieces for a Rook (1-0, 47).

437. Odriozola-Pisa, Cajas Open, Cajas, Spain, 1989.



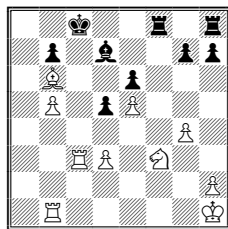
White is up the exchange and a pawn.

438. Ortega-Bertani, Verona Open, Verona, Italy, 2007.



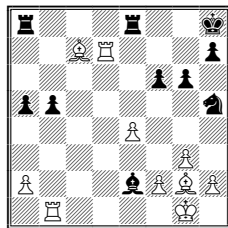
White is up a Rook.

439. Buchal-Schmidt, West German Championship, 1974.



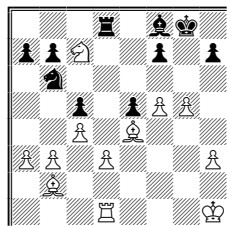
White is up a piece.

440. Marangunic-Stubljar, Zagreb Open, Zagreb, Croatia, 2006.



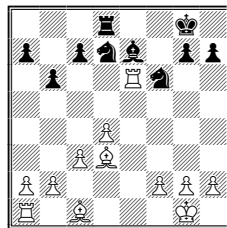
Material is even.

441. D'Israel-Savian, Sao Paulo State Championship, 1998.



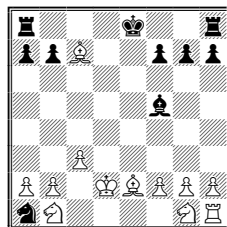
White is up a piece and a pawn and has the Bishop pair. Black resigned after 29...Nd7 30 Nd5 (1-0).

442. Kristol-Dyachenko, USSR Team Championship Moscow, 1963.



White is up the exchange and two pawns and has the Bishop pair (1-0, 23).

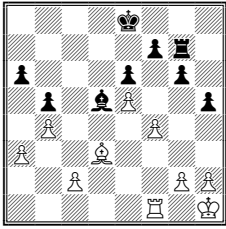
443. Augustin-Leisebein, Correspondence, 1990.



White has two pieces and a pawn for a Rook and has the two Bishops. Play continued 14...0-0 (14...Bxb1 15 Nf3 Bxa2 16 Rxa1 Bd5).

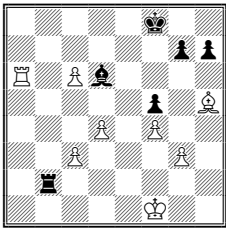
leaves White up two pieces for a Rook) 15 Na3 Rac8 16 Be5 Rfd8+ 17 Bd4 Nc2 18 Nxc2 Bxc2 19 Kxc2 Rxd4 20 Nf3 Rd6 21 Rd1 Rxd1 22 Kxd1 f6 23 c4 Kf7 24 Kd2 (1-0).

444. Saric-Cherin, 11th HIT Open (Group A), Nova Gorica, Slovenia, 2006.



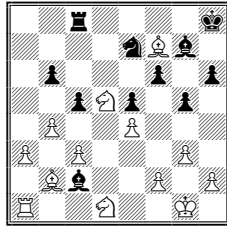
White is up a pawn (1-0, 47).

445. Gurevich-Greszkowiak, Correspondence, 1970.



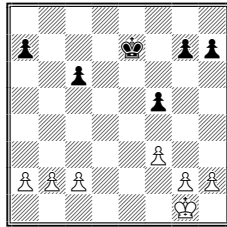
White has lost a pawn, but remains up two pawns and has broken Black's attack. The remaining moves were 29...g6 30 Be2 Bb8 31 Ra5 h5 32 Rd5 h4 33 Rd8+ Ke7 34 Rd7+ Ke8 35 gxh4 Bxf4 36 Rg7 (1-0).

446. Berchenko-Markovits, Kings Island, USA, 2006.



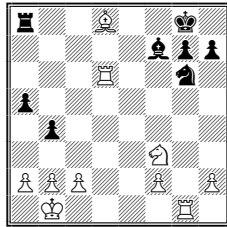
White is up a piece and a pawn and has the two Bishops (1-0, 40).

447. Aleksandrov-Danojlic, Serbia, 2006.



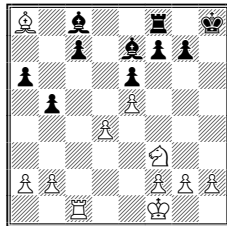
White is up a pawn (1-0, 44).

448. Langenber-Friesen, Soest Open, Netherlands, 1996.



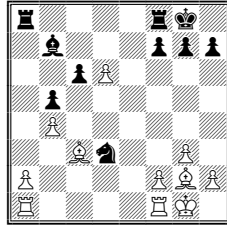
White is up a Rook and a pawn.

449. Alekhine-Gladstone, London Simul, 1938.



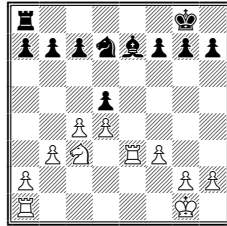
Black has the Bishop pair, but White is up a pawn and is about to win Black's c-pawn as well. The remaining moves were 18...c5 19 dxc5 a5 20 c6 Ba6 21 Bb7 (1-0).

450. Atalik-Erturan, 3rd Mediterranean Championship, Antalya, Turkey, 2006.



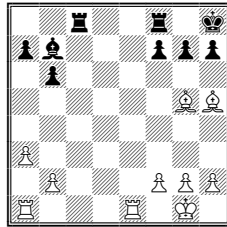
White is up a pawn and has the two Bishops (1-0, 27).

451. Rosen-Budrich, East German Championship (Under 20) Leipzig, 1951.



White is up the exchange (1-0, 20).

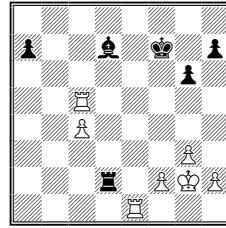
452. Keres-Ojanen, Finland-Estonia Match, Helsinki, 1966.



White is up a piece and has the two Bishops (1-0).

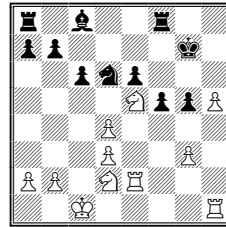
CHAPTER 16. DESPERADO QUEENS.

453. Smolich-Zhigalko, Belarus Championship (Under 20), Minsk, Belarus, 2006.



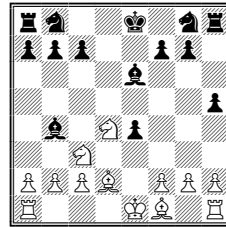
White is up the exchange and a pawn (1-0, 62).

454. Kislink-Zhizmer, Kiev Championship, Ukraine, 2006.



Material is even (1-0, 42).

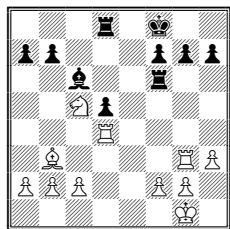
455. Read-Nelson, British Correspondence Championship, 1985.



White is down a pawn, but has compensation

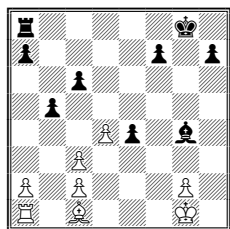
(1-0, 18).

456. Mwali-Kabera,
37th Olympiad, Turin,
Italy, 2006.



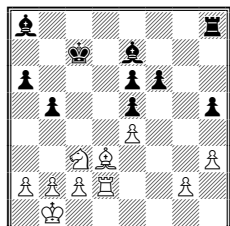
White is up a piece
(1-0, 54).

457. Delgado Crespo-
Stock, 37th Olympiad
(Women), Italy, 2006.



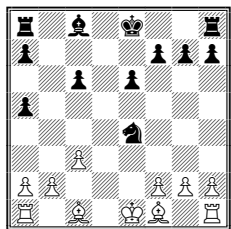
White is still down a
pawn (1/2-1/2, 76).

458. Brinck Claussen-
Gonda, FSGM May,
Budapest, Hungary,
2006.



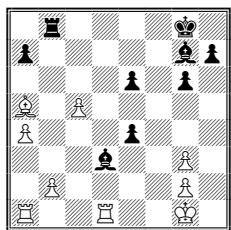
Material is even, but
Black has the two Bi-
shops (1/2-1/2, 40).

459. Gajsin-Zapolskis,
17th Pobeskydi Ha-
mont Cup, Frydek Mis-
tek, Czech Republic,
2006.



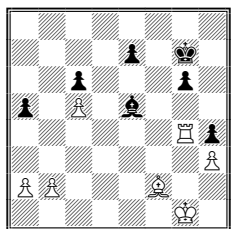
Black is up a pawn, but
his pawn structure is
broken up and White
has the Bishop pair
(1-0, 52).

460. Tscharotschki-
Edouard, VIII Open,
Salou, Spain, 2006.



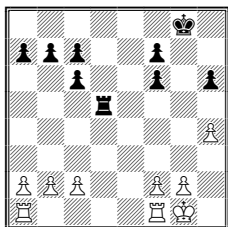
White is up the ex-
change, but Black has
an active pair of Bi-
shops.

461. Dragicevic-Lane,
Queenstown, New
Zealand, 2006.



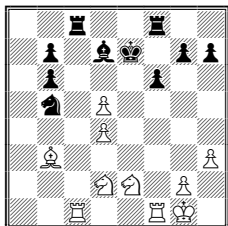
White is up a Rook for
a pawn. (1-0).

462. Fischer-Fuller,
Western Open Cham-
pionship, Bay City,
1963.



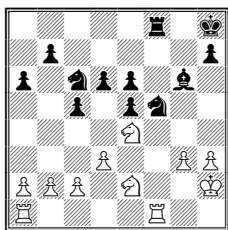
White is up a Rook for
a pawn.

463. Gunsberg-Steinitz,
World Championship,
New York, 1890.



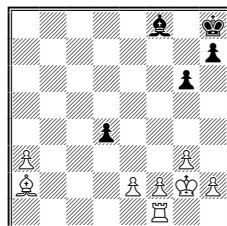
White is up a piece for
a pawn (1-0, 57).

464. Bogdanov-
Edwardsen, Chigorin
Memorial (B), St. Pe-
tersburg, Russia, 2006.



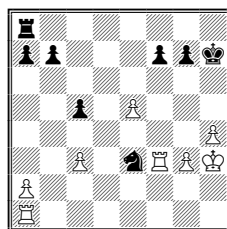
White is up the ex-
change for a pawn (1-0,
57).

465. Aagaard-Rewitz,
Denmark Champion-
ship, Group B, 1999.



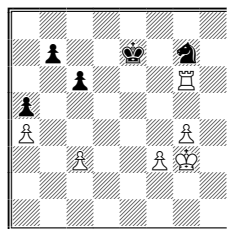
White is up a Rook.

466. Abbasov-Monir,
8th Dubai Open, UAE,
2006.



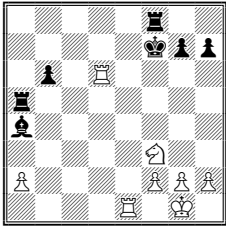
White is up the ex-
change.

467. Speelman-Hague,
4NCL, Birmingham,
England, 2005-06.



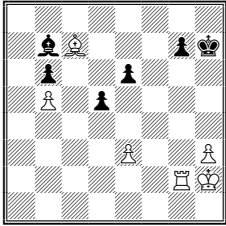
White is up the ex-
change and a pawn.
(1-0).

468. Hangweyrer-
Mayr, 2nd Bundesliga
Ost, Austria, 2005-06.



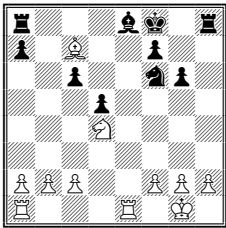
White is up a pawn (1-0, 47).

469. Kenney-Zubac, Canadian Zonal, 2006.



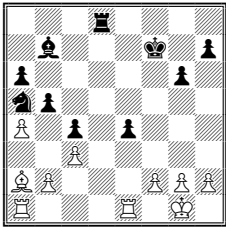
White is up a Rook for a pawn (1-0, 52).

470. Turner-White, England, 1997.



White is up a pawn (1-0, 27).

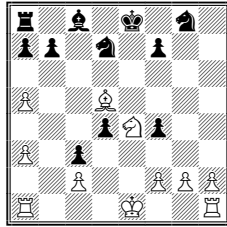
471. Farago-Ciornei, Budapest, 1997.



White is up the exchange. Black resigned

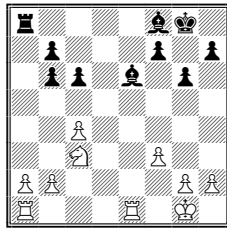
after 26 axb5 axb5 27 Bb1 (1-0).

472. Gilg-Gaar, Rosenheim Stadtmeist, 1961.



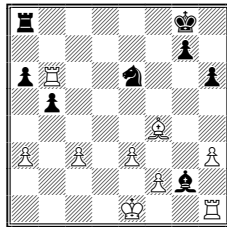
White is up the exchange. Black resigned after 20 0-0-0 (1-0).

473. Raoof-Prince, Hampstead, England, 1998.



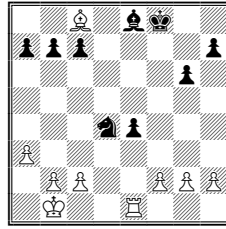
White is up the exchange.

474. Lputian-Kharitonov, USSR Championship (Semi-Finals), 1983.



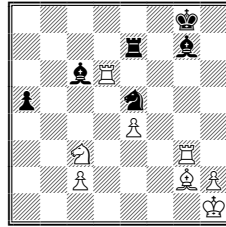
White is up the exchange and a pawn (1-0, 31).

475. Gallagher-Ali, Lewisham, England, 1982.



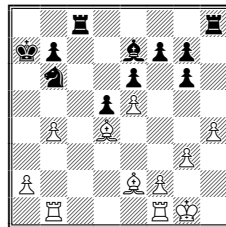
White is up the exchange. The game continued 22...Bc6 23 Rd1 e3 24 fxe3 (1-0).

476. Guseinov-Cvitan, 7th European Championship, Kusadasi, Turkey, 2006.



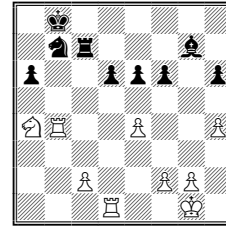
White is up the exchange and two pawns, while Black has the Bishop pair (1-0, 48).

477. Areshchenko-Ernst, 22nd ECU Club Cup, Feugen, Austria, 2006.



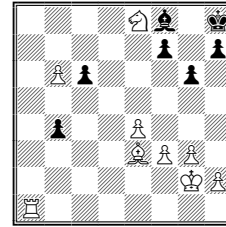
Material is even, but White has the two Bishops and a queenside pawn majority (1-0, 37).

481. Polgar, I-Filep, Hungarian Championship, 1969.



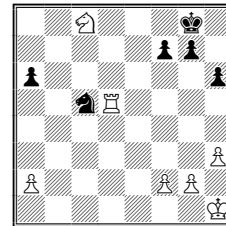
White is up the exchange (1-0, 39).

479. Khmiadashvili-Blagonadezhnaya, XVI Senior Women, Arvier, Italy, 2006.



White is up a Rook and a Knight.

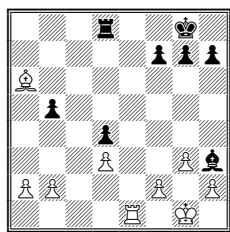
480. Yildiz-Han, 5th Open, Izmir, Turkey, 2006.



White is up a Rook.

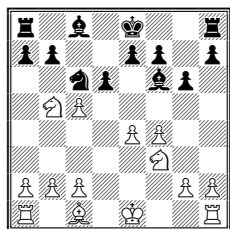
CHAPTER 17. DOUBLE DESPERADOS.

481. Wojciechowska-Zych. Polish Championship (Girls Under 16), 2001.



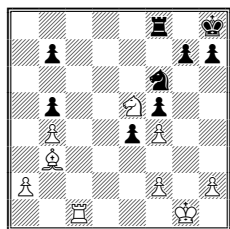
White is up a pawn (1-0, 35).

482. Milov-Henderikse, Nova Open, Haarlem, Netherlands, 2004.



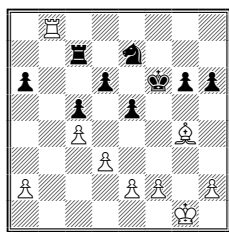
White is up a pawn; Black has the Bishop pair (1-0, 29).

483. Rogers-Dunne, Philadelphia Open, 1986.



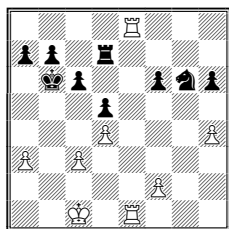
White remains up a piece for a pawn. The game ended 28...Nh5 29 Nf7+ Kg8 30 Ng5+ Kh8 31 Ne6 (1-0).

484. Malich-Ciocaltea, DSV-Turnier, Halle, East Germany, 1974.



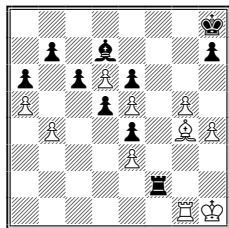
Material is even, but Black resigned after 33...Nc6 34 Rb6 (1-0).

485. Yakovich-Arlandi, Valle d'Aosta Open, Saint Vincent, 2000.



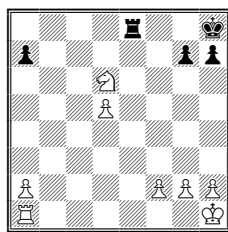
White is up a Rook for a Knight and a pawn (1-0, 41).

486. Rubinstein-Cohn, Karlsbad, 1911.



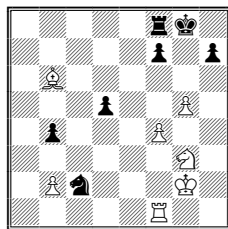
Material is even. Black resigned after the moves 36 Rd1 Kg7 37 Kg1 (1-0).

487. Morphy-Mongredien, Match, Paris, 1859.



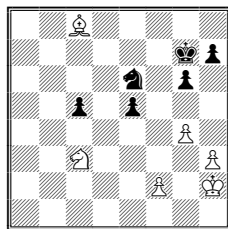
White is up a piece and two pawns.

488. Haznedaroglu-Ataman, Antalya Open, Turkey, 2002.



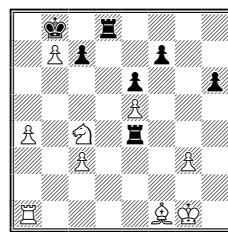
White is up a piece for a pawn. The remaining moves were 32...d4 33 Nf5 d3 34 Rd1 Re8 35 Kg3 Ne1 36 Be3 (1-0).

489. Schmidt-Wittmann, Bundesliga, Germany, 1983-84.



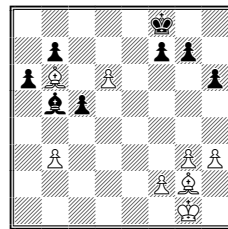
White is up a piece.

490. Asylguzhi-Adnan, Abudhabi Masters, United Arab Emirates, 1999.



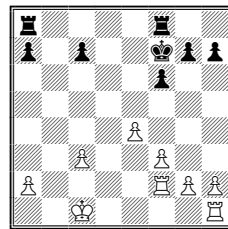
White has two pieces and a pawn for a Rook, with connected passed pawns on the queen-side. Black resigned after 32...Rg8 33 Kf2 (1-0) 33...Reg4 (33...Kxb7 34 Bg2) 34 Rb1 Rxc3 35 a5 Rxc3 36 a6 gives White a strong position.

491. Johannessen-Dive, Troll Masters, Gausdal, Norway, 1989.



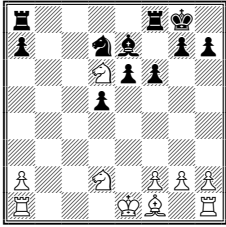
White is up a piece for a pawn and has the Bishop pair (1-0, 41).

492. Teske-Schneider, Bundesliga Kreuzberg, Germany, 2005-06.



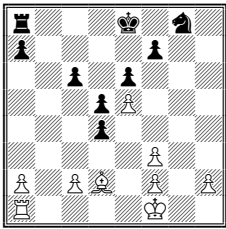
White is up a pawn (1-0, 41).

493. Stoeber-Gudath,
NRW-Liga II, Germany,
1988.



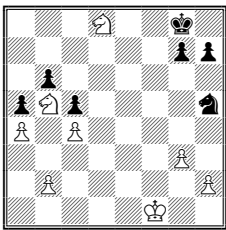
White remains up a
piece for two pawns
(1-0, 37).

494. Mantovani-Zaja,
European Team Cham-
pionship, Pula, Croatia,
1997.



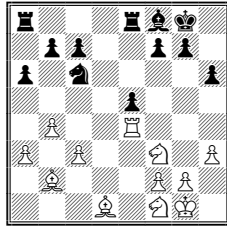
Material is even (1-0,
25).

495. Sarkilahti-Sorvari,
Tampere Open, Fin-
land, 1990.



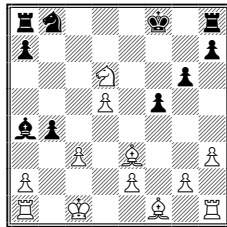
White is up a piece.

496. Fernandes-Zhu
Chen, Portugal-China,
Macau, 1996.



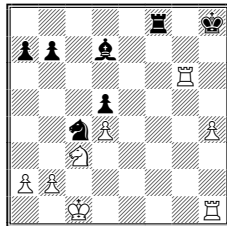
White has two pieces
(with the Bishop pair)
for a Rook and pawn
(1-0, 40).

497. Krijgelmans-
Laurent, Interteam
Championship, Ant-
werp Belgium, 1998.



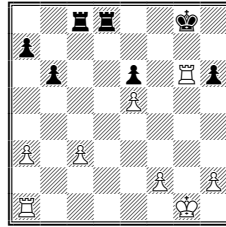
White is up a piece and
a pawn and has the Bi-
shop pair (1-0, 30).

498. Sagalchik-Ready,
US Open, 2001.



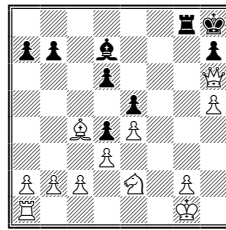
White is up the ex-
change and a pawn.
The game ended with
the moves 28...Rf2 29
Rhg1 Bf5 30 R6g2
(1-0).

499. Fedorov-Gusev,
White Nights, St. Pe-
tersburg, Russia, 2001.



White is up one pawn
and will soon win
another one (1-0, 37).

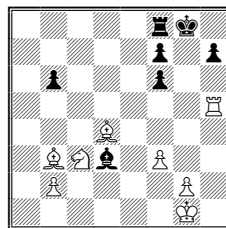
500. Madan-Bores,
Prague Open (Group
A), Prague, Czech Re-
public, 2006.



White is up a Queen,
Knight, and pawn and
now mates in three.

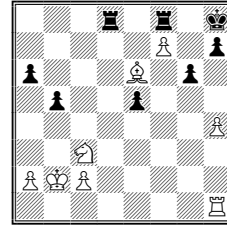
CHAPTER 18. PINS TO THE QUEEN.

501. Kononenko-
Ikononopoulou, Acro-
polis Women's Open,
Athens, Greece, 2006.



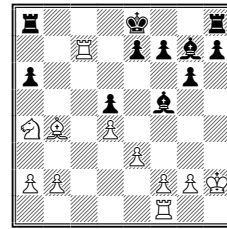
White is up two pieces
for a pawn and has the
Bishop pair (1-0, 36).

502. Ricardi-Bonade,
2nd Lodi Festival, Lo-
di, Italy, 2006.



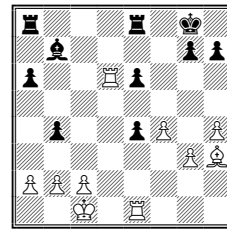
White has two pieces
for a Rook and pawn
(1-0, 33).

503. Sirotkin-Dordzhi-
eva, Russian Womens
Championship, Elista,
Russia, 1997.



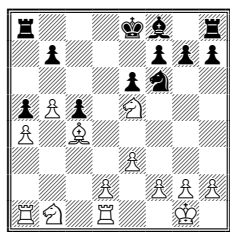
Material is even. Black
has the Bishop pair, but
White has the better
position (1-0, 27).

504. Ioselian-Vezzosi,
Montecatini Terme
Open, Italy, 1994.



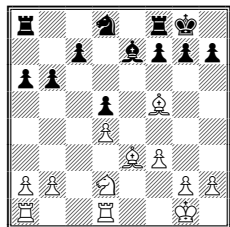
Material is even (1-0,
26).

505. Guliyev-
Stephenson, Baku Cup,
Baku, Azerbaijan,
1999.



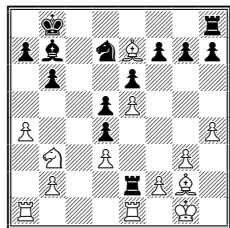
White is up a piece.

506. Hyldtoft-Rendlev,
Denmark Open, 1993.



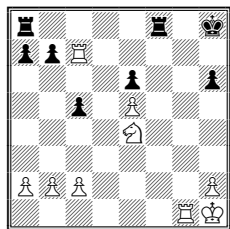
White is up a piece for
a pawn and has the Bi-
shop pair (1-0, 29).

507. Forgacs-Terreux,
Switzerland, 1988.



White is up a piece for
a pawn and has the Bi-
shop pair (1-0).

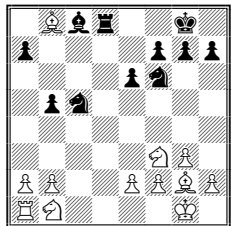
508. Alekhine-Bisno,
Blindfold Simul, Chi-
cago, 1933.



White is up a piece and

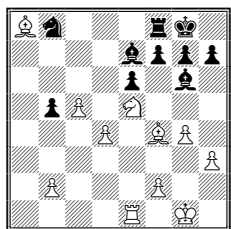
will win the exchange
after 34 Nf6, threaten-
ing 35 Rh7, mate.

509. Anand-Weis-
chedel, Bad Mergen-
theim Simul, 1993.



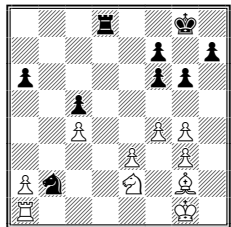
White is up a piece.
The game continued
14...Rd1+ 15 Bf1 e5 16
Bxe5 Bh3 17 Nfd2
Nce4 18 b4 Bxf1 19
Nxf1 Nxf2 20 Nbd2
Rxa1 21 Bxa1 N2e4 22
Bxf6 (1-0).

510. Cioara-Petrovic,
Nova Gorica, Slovenia,
2000.



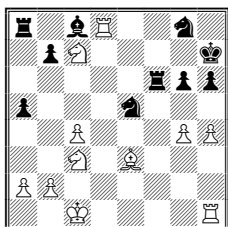
White is up a pawn and
has a passed c-pawn.
The final moves were
22...Rd8 23 c6 Na6 24
Bb7 (1-0).

511. Larsen-Casafus,
San Martin, 1994.



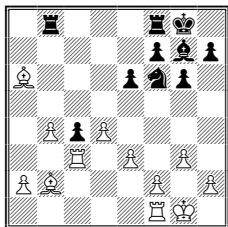
White is up a piece.
Black wins White's
c-pawn after 22...Rd2
23 Nc3 Nxc4, but re-
signed after 24 Ne4.

512. Polgar,Z-Almasi,
Donau Cup, Budapest,
1992.



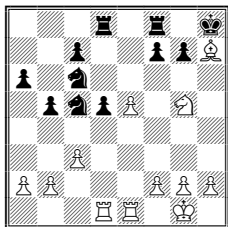
White is now up a
pawn (1-0, 37).

513. Varnusz-Marosi,
Hungarian Team
Championship, 1991.



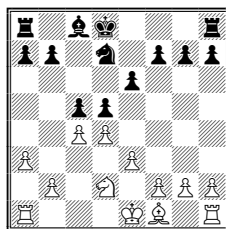
White is up two outside
connected passed
pawns (1-0, 40).

514. Nikolenk-Naum-
kin, Moscow Open,
Moscow, Russia, 2006.



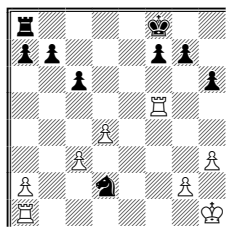
White is up a pawn
(1-0, 39).

515. Capablanca-
Vajda, Hungary, 1929.



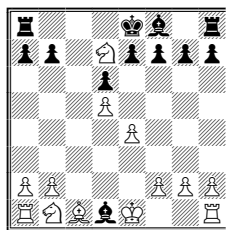
Material is even (1-0,
33).

516. Fomina-
Tsiganova, Keres Me-
morial (Women), Tal-
lin, Estonia, 2006.



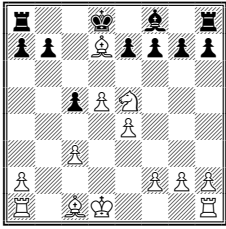
White is up the ex-
change for a pawn (1-0,
37).

517. Van Linde-
Rajlich, Groningen
Open, Netherlands,
1997.



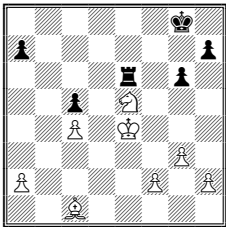
White is up a piece.
Black resigned after
11...Bg4 12 Nxf8.

518. Marek-Halaszi,
Slovakian Team
Championship, Slova-
kia, 1997-98.



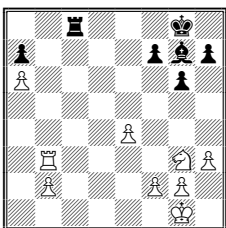
White is up two pieces and has the Bishop pair. White remains up a Rook and Knight after 12...f6 13 Nf7+ Kxd7 14 Nxh8, as White can save his Knight, e.g., 14...Ke8 15 Be3 b6 16 h4 g6 17 h5 Bg7 18 hxg6 Bxh8 19 Rxh7.

519. Vukic-Martic, 13th Metalis Open, Bizovac, Croatia, 2006.



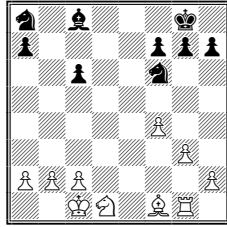
White is up two pieces and a pawn for the Rook (1-0).

520. Marcelin-Hopman, Corus (Group C), Wijk aan Zee, Netherlands, 2006.



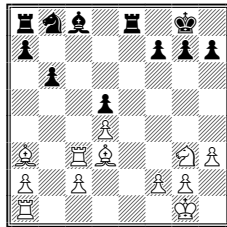
White is up two pawns (1-0, 47).

521. Polgar, J-Khalifman, Sevilla Open, 1993.



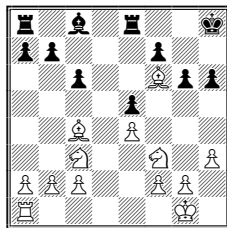
White is up the exchange and kept his extra pawn. Black resigned in this position.

522. Schmid-Soccoja, Lenk Open, Switzerland, 1989.



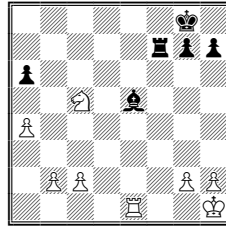
White is up a piece and has the Bishop pair.

523. Heintl-Gabriel, Schwaebisch Gmuend, Germany, 1997.



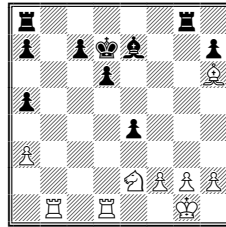
White is up three pieces for a Rook and has the Bishop pair.

524. Zimmermann-Hoecker, Sueder Sommer Open, Recklinghausen, Germany, 2000.



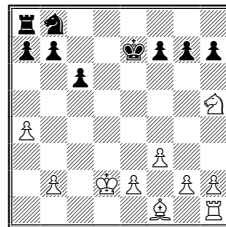
White is up two pawns (1-0, 39).

525. Garcia Fernandez-Quintana, St. Cebria Open, 1997.



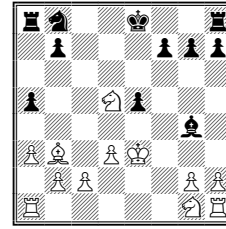
White is up a piece for two pawns. Black has connected passed pawns in the center, but after 24 Nc3 Rg6 25 Be3 Re6 26 Rb7 Bf6 27 Nd5 Bd8 White has a nice clamp on the position (1-0, 49).

526. Van der Sterren-Hartoch, OHRA-B, Amsterdam, 1985.



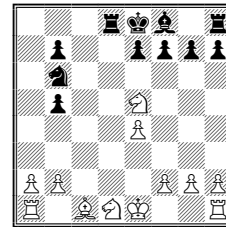
White is up a piece.

527. Lo Presti-Lucero Ramirez, Argentina Championship (Semi-Finals), Buenos Aires, Argentina, 2006.



White is up a piece (1-0, 27).

528. Wilder-Barouty, New York Open, 1985.

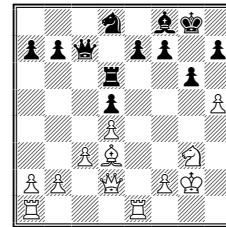


White is up a piece.

SECTION 5. RABID PIECES AND PAWNS.

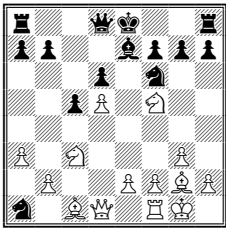
CHAPTER 19. RABID KNIGHTS.

529. Franzoni-Garcia Gonzales, Thessalonica Olympiad, 1988.



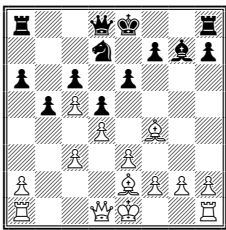
White is up a Rook.

530. Chapman-Pemberton, Coventry Open, England, 2005.



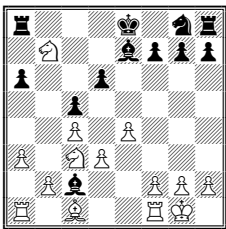
White will be up two Bishops for a Rook after taking Black's Knight on a1. The game continued 12... 0-0 13 Bf4 Nh5 14 Nxe7+ Qxe7 15 Bd2 b5 16 Bf3 Nf6 17 Qxa1 (1-0, 29).

531. Shneider-Foerster, Bad Zwesten Open, Bad Zwesten, Germany, 2006.



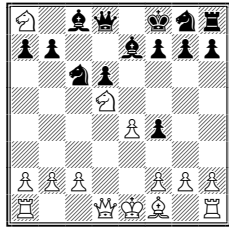
White is up a pawn and has the two Bishops (1-0, 25).

532. Meszaros-Nemeth, FSIMB April, Budapest, Hungary, 2002.



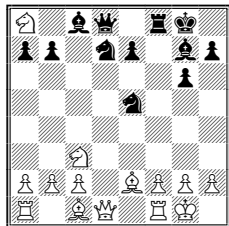
White is up two pawns (1-0, 53), but only one after 12...Bxd3 13 Rd1 Bxc4 14 Nxd6+ Bxd6 Rxd6.

533. Wagner Miche-Beltz, 12th Halle Open (Women), Halle, East Germany, 1978.



White is up the exchange (1-0, 34).

534. Kovalevskaya-Reizniece, Keres Memorial Rapidplay (Women), Tallinn, Estonia, 1999.



White is up a Rook and a pawn (1-0). Let's see if Black can win White's Knight. The most direct way to move his Bc8, either by playing Nf6 and Be6 or by playing b6 and Bb7.

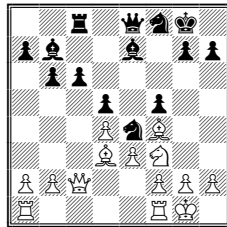
a) 13...Nf6 doesn't work because of 14 Qxd8 Rxd8 15 Nc7;

b) 13...b6 allows 14 Qd5+ Kh8 15 Nb5 with 16 Nac7, and if 16...a6, then 17 Ne6;

c) 13...e6 (to prevent Qd5+ and prepare ... b6) is met by 14 Nb5 a6 15 Nac7 axb5 16 Nxe6 Qb6 17 Nxf8

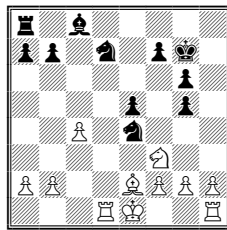
Nxf8, when White is up two Rooks and two pawns for two Knights.

535. Jovanic-Plenkovic, XVIII Pula Open, Pula, Croatia, 2004.



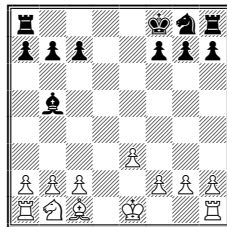
White is up the exchange (1-0, 36).

536. Schulz-Jackson, Winnipeg, Canada, 1997.



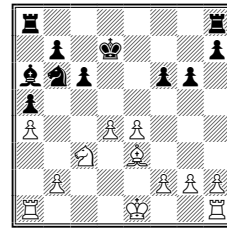
White is up the exchange (1-0, 21).

537. Kahar-Heppell, Guernsey Open, 2003.



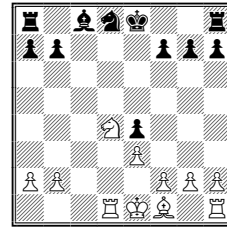
White is up a pawn (1-0, 31).

538. Kraai-Tsai, US Championship, 2002.



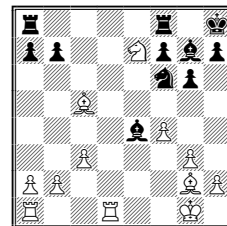
White is up a pawn (1-0, 40).

539. Spielmann-Creevey, Warsaw Olympiad, 1935.



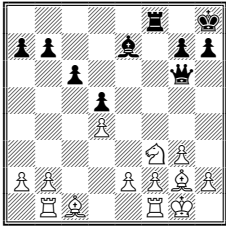
Material is even. The game ended with the moves 14 Nb5 0-0 15 Nd6 f5 16 g4 f4 17 Bc4+ Kh8 18 h3 Be6 19 Bxe6 Nxe6 20 Nxe4 fxe3 21 fxe3 Rf3 22 Ke2 Raf8 23 Rd6, 1-0.

540. Zielinska-Khudaverdieva, 7th European Women's Championship, Kusadasi, Turkey, 2006.



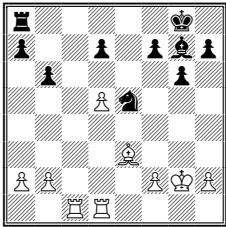
White is up a pawn (1-0, 50).

541. Medic-Somerlik, World Championship (Handicaped), Czech Republic, 1995.



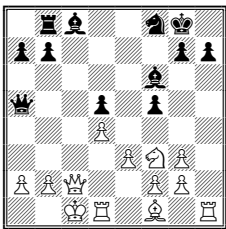
White has a Rook, two pieces, and a pawn for the Queen (1-0, 35).

542. Panzalovic-David, Baden, Germany, 1996.



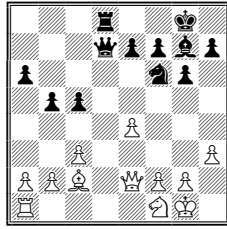
White is up the exchange for a pawn (1-0, 38).

543. Gromovs-Hocevar, 9th Genova Open, Genova, Italy, 2005.



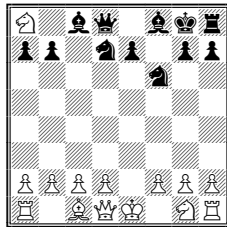
White is up the exchange and a pawn; Black has the Bishop pair.

544. Zhu Chen-Tan Zhongyi, Women's Zonal, HeiBei, China, 2001.



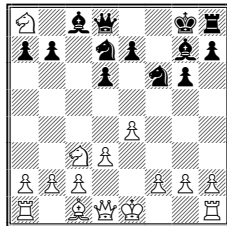
Material is even (1-0, 34).

545. Vlietstra-Bennett, Australian Open, Tuggeranong, Australia, 2006.



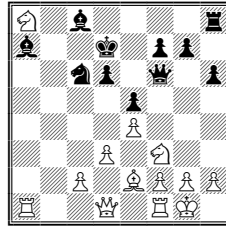
White is up the exchange and two pawns (1-0, 34).

546. Kops-Jacobsen, 21st North Sea Cup, Esbjerg, Denmark, 2006.



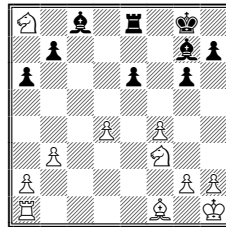
White is up a Rook and two pawns for a Bishop (1-0, 36).

547. Fredborg-Rupsyte, Marijampole Open, Marijampole, Lithuania, 1996.



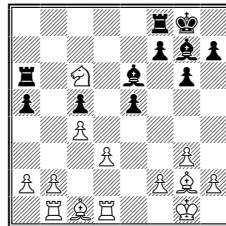
White is up a Rook and a pawn (1-0, 34).

548. Orlov-Seguljev, Vojvodina Team Championship, Sombor, Serbia, 2004.



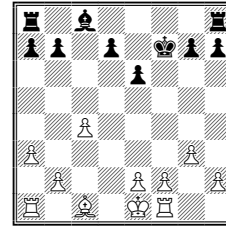
White is up a piece and a pawn (1-0, 28).

549. Williams-Dabrowski, Cappelle la Grande Open, Cappelle la Grande, France, 1995.



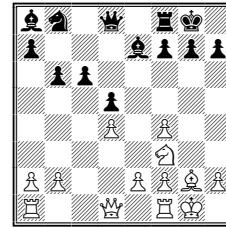
White is up a piece and a pawn (1-0, 30).

550. Ksieski-Bauer, 2nd Tierpark Open, Ueckermuende, Germany, 1998.



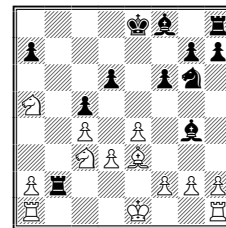
White is up a pawn (1-0, 35).

551. Ionescu-Bochkarev, Winter Cup, Romania, 2001.



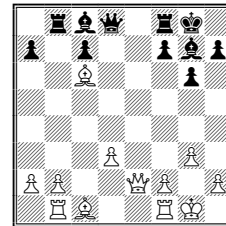
White is up the exchange (1-0, 28).

552. Negrini-Dinser, Porto San Giorgio Open, Porto San Giorgio, Italy, 1997.



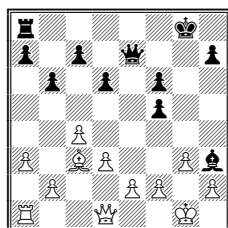
White is up a pawn (1-0, 27).

553. Serafim-Bartar, Sao Paulo Open, 1995.



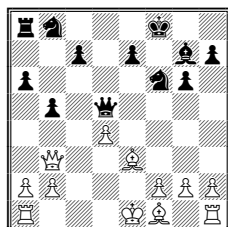
White is up a pawn (1-0, 21).

554. Orlinski-Diaz, Hessenliga, Germany, 1995.



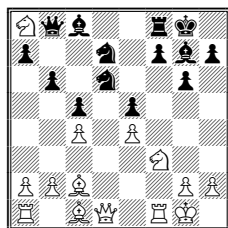
White is up a pawn (1-0, 36).

555. Moes-Hoedemaekers, Gran Canaria Open, Gran Canaria, Spain, 1996.



White is up the exchange and has the Bishop pair (1-0, 27).

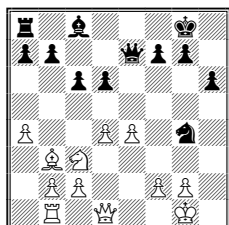
556. Shmeliov-Petrushin, Kharkov, Ukraine, 2004.



White will be up an exchange after Nxb6 axb6. The game continued 16 Ba4 Rd8 17 Bc6 Nxc4 18 Bg5 Nxb2 19 Qb3 Nf6 20 Qxb2 Rd6 21 Qxe5

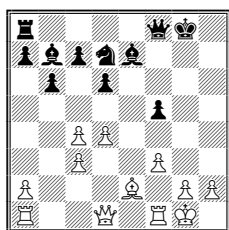
Nd7 22 Qe8+ Nf8 23 Bd5 Rd7 24 Nh4 Qe5 25 Bxf7+ Kh8 26 Be6 Rd2 27 Qxf8+ (1-0).

557. Haznedaroglu-Darban, 8th WUCC, Istanbul, Turkey, 2004.



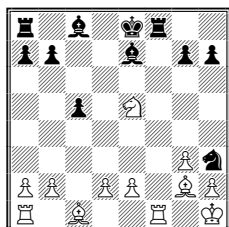
Material is even.

558. Borovnica-Peulic, Banja Luka, Bosnia-Herzegovina, 2004.



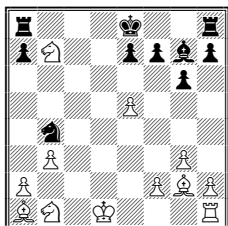
White is up a Rook and two pawns for two pieces. Black has the Bishop pair.

559. Guaglianone-Mayers. World Championship (Seniors), Lignano Sabbiadoro, Italy, 2005.



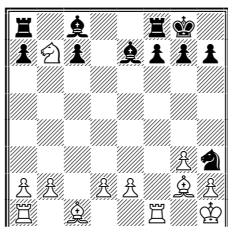
White is up a pawn (1-0, 54).

560. Lau-Marciano, US Amateur Team East, 2005.



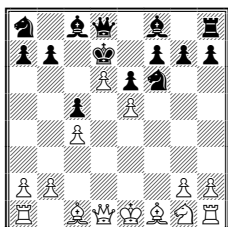
White is up two pieces and a pawn for the Rook and has the Bishop pair (1-0, 33).

561. Kohlweyer-Kartmann, Essen Team Tournament, 1996.



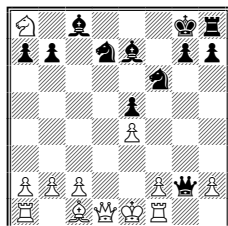
White is up a pawn. The remaining moves were 12...Rb8 (12...Bxb7 13 Bxb7 Rab8 14 Bg2) 13 Na5 Bf6 14 Nc6 Rb6 15 Rxf6 gxf6 16 Ne7+ Kg7 17 Nxc8 (1-0).

562. Papenin-Skorlupkin, Ukrainian Team Championship, Alushta, 2005.



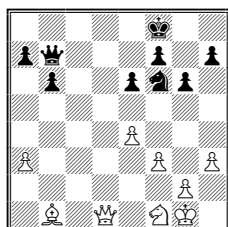
White is up the exchange (1-0, 21).

563. Bozinovic-Dzunic, Spring Open, Belgrade, Serbia, 2007.



White is up the exchange and a pawn (1-0, 30).

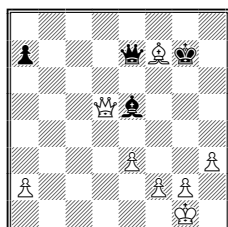
564. Bjelobrk-Van der Wal, Australian Open, 2004.



White is up a piece for a pawn (1-0, 59).

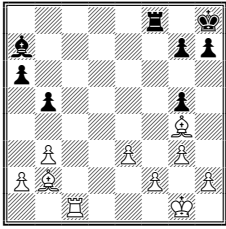
CHAPTER 20. RABID BISHOPS.

565. Mayer-Fearnly, US Open, Philadelphia, 1993.



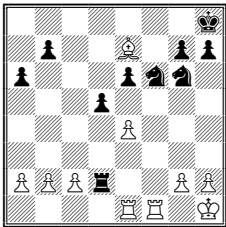
White is up four pawns.

566. Tomann-Stephan, German Army Championship, Montabaur, Germany, 1994.



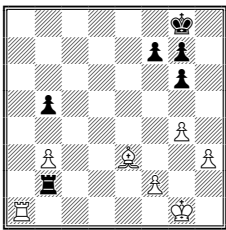
White is up a piece and a pawn and has the Bishop pair. Black resigned after 24...h6 25 Rc7 (1-0).

567. Ateka-Faulks, Bled Olympiad, Bled, Slovenia, 2002.



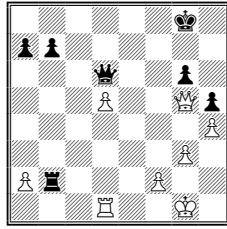
White is up the exchange. The game continued 25 Bxf6 gxf6 26 exd5 exd5 27 Rxf6 Rxc2 28 Rf7 (1-0).

568. Yates-Cancelliere, Trieste, Italy, 1923.



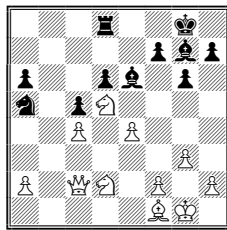
White is up a piece (1-0, 41).

569. Meurrens-Watson, Aalborg Open, Aalborg, Denmark, 1987.



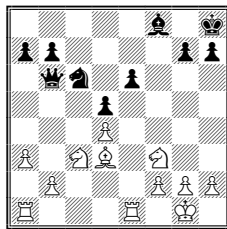
White is up a pawn. Now instead of passively defending his a-pawn, White went after Black's weak g-pawn with 28 Re1, when Black resigned after 28...Rb5 29 Re6 Qxd5 30 Qxg6+ (1-0).

570. Pyke-Guthrie, Xstrata Australian Championship, Brisbane, Australia, 2005.



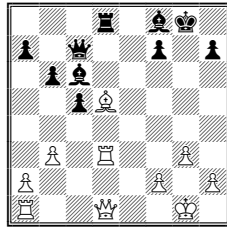
White is up a Queen for a Rook vs Black's Bishop pair (1-0, 29).

571. Darban-Natarajan, Commonwealth Championship, Mumbai, India, 2003.



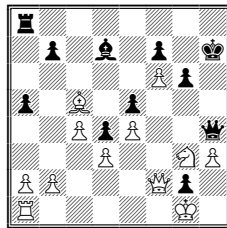
White is up two Rooks and a Knight for the Queen (1-0, 29).

572. Gyimesi-Shariyazdanov, 16th EUCup, Neum, Bosnia and Herzegovina, 2000.



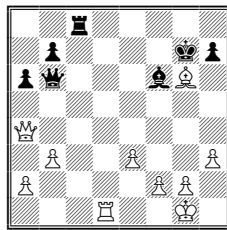
White is up the exchange (1-0, 28).

573. Calvo-Baltazar, Santiago Esucomex Open, Santiago, Chile, 1998.



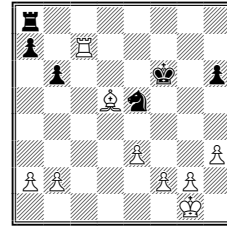
White is up a piece.

574. Loftsson-Koploy, Lone Pine, USA, 1972.



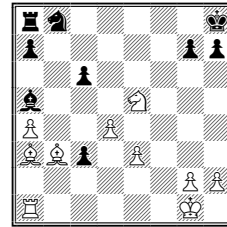
White is up three pawns. Note that 26...Kxg6 drops the Rook to 27 Qg4+.

575. Bolico-Da Luz, Manila Olympiad (Women), Manila, Philippines, 1992.



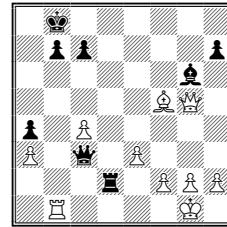
White is up three pawns (1-0, 35).

576. Khurtsidze-Skembris, Athens, Greece, 1999.



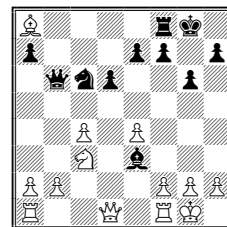
White is up a piece and has the Bishop pair.

577. Burkart-Guffart, Verbandsliga, S9495, Baden, Germany, 1995.



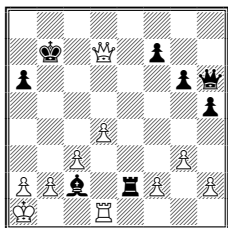
White is up two pawns (1-0, 35).

578. Kipker-Schuele, Muenster, Germany, 1987.



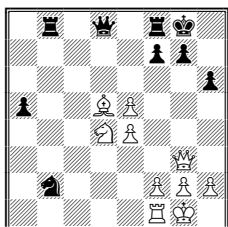
White is up a Rook and a pawn.

579. Godena-Eid, Moscow Olympiad, Moscow, Russia, 1994.



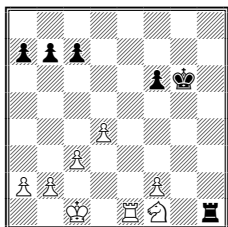
White has three pawns for the piece, although after 26...Kb8 27 Rf1 Qd2, Black's threat of 28...Re1+ forces White to take the draw by perpetual check.

580. Vaganian-Rogozenko, Dutch Team Championship, 2001.



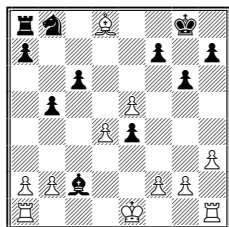
White has a Bishop and pawn for the Rook (1-0, 26).

581. Beckmann-Becker, Vienna Open, Vienna, Austria, 2003.



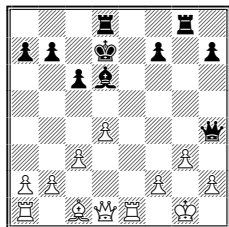
White is up a piece and a pawn (1-0, 30).

582. Ranker-Rosinus, Westpfalz Open, Mehlingen, Germany, 1998.



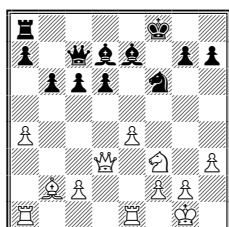
White is up the exchange.

583. Ivanov-Metrick, NY Open, 1997.



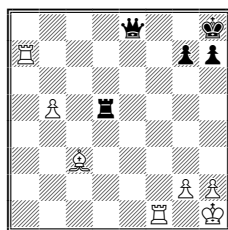
White is up two pawns (1-0, 29).

584. Horvath-Nemeth, Hungarian Team Championship, 1998-99.



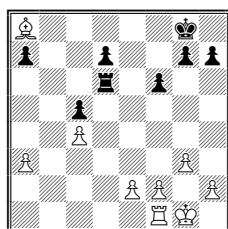
White is up the exchange (1-0, 21).

585. Reshevsky-Vanden Berg, Amsterdam, Netherlands, 1950.



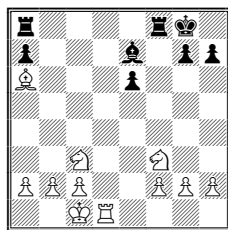
White has a Rook, Bishop, and Pawn for his Queen and threatens 28 Rxd7. Black resigned after 27...Qc8 28 Rc7 (1-0).

586. Palo-Richards, Chess Summer IM, Aarhus, Denmark, 2002.



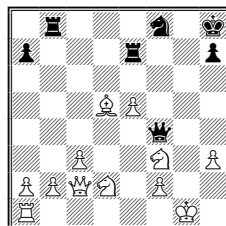
White is up a piece (1-0, 30).

587. Piber-Huber, Finkensteiner Open, Finkensteiner, Austria, 2000.



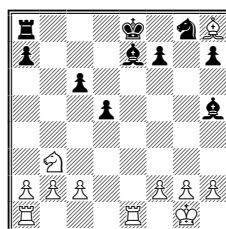
White has two pieces and two pawns for the Rook (1-0, 26).

588. Hess-Taruffi, Reggio Emilia, Italy, 1978.



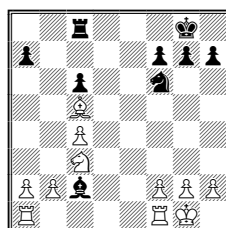
White is up two pieces and four pawns for the Rook.

589. Chaves-Franceschi, Women's Olympiad, Elista, Russia, 1998.



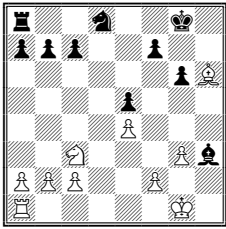
White is up the exchange and a pawn; Black has the Bishop pair (1-0, 29).

590. Gonzales-Galeb, Lugano Olympiad, Lugano, Switzerland, 1968.



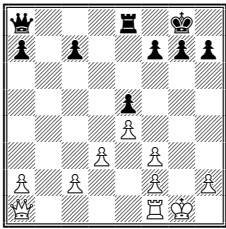
White is up a Rook and a pawn (1-0, 25).

591. Prandstetter-Tibensky, Czech Championship, Trnava, Czechoslovakia, 1980.



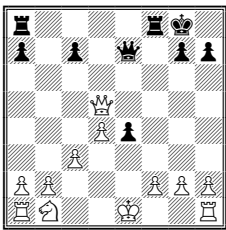
Material is even, but White has the better position (1-0, 22).

592. Traxler-Samanek, Osyky, Czechoslovakia, 1900.



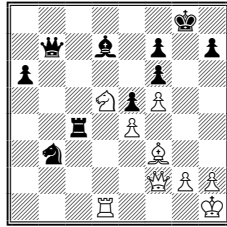
White is up a pawn.

593. Giaidzi-Eglezos, Akropolis Open, Athens, Greece, 1992.



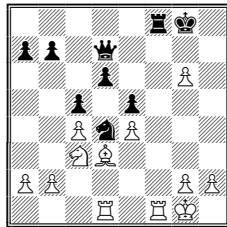
White is up a piece and two pawns (1-0, 29).

594. Reshevsky-Ree, IBM, Amsterdam, Netherlands, 1977.



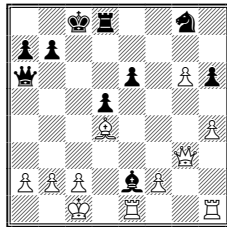
Black is up a pawn (1-0, 30).

595. Toporov-Chehlov, Chigorin Memorial, St. Petersburg, Russia, 1998.



White has a Rook, Bishop and two pawns for the Queen (1-0, 30).

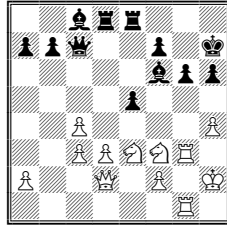
596. Sax-Zelcic, 12th Ljubljana Open, Ljubljana, Slovenia, 2001.



White is up the exchange and a pawn (1-0, 26).

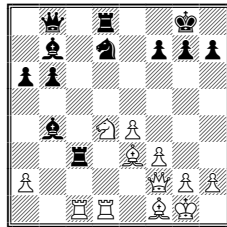
CHAPTER 21. RABID PAWNS.

597. Alma-Zsinka, Hungarian Open Championship, 1990.



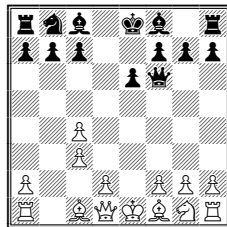
Material is even, although Black has the two Bishops. The game continued 26 Nd5 Rxd5 (26...Qd6 is fine for Black) 27 cxd5 Qd6 28 c4, etc (1-0, 41).

598. Muzychuk-Kalinina, Ukrainian Championship, Lvov, Ukraine, 2006.



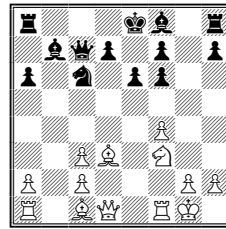
Material is even (1-0, 34).

599. Paehtz-Mueller, East German Championship, 1976.



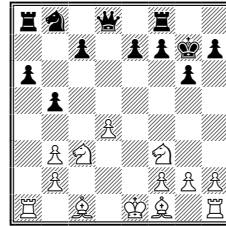
Material is even (1-0, 25).

600. Adams-Rajkovic, London, 1989.



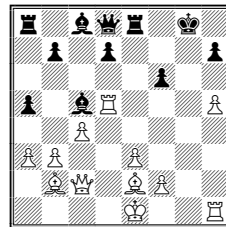
Material is even (1-0, 23).

601. Psakhis-Khmelniker, 22nd Cappelle la Grande Open, Cappelle la Grande, France, 2006.



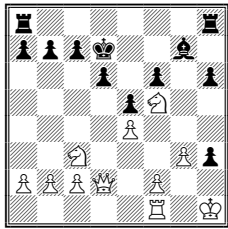
White has three pieces for a Queen and pawn and has the Bishop pair (1-0, 29).

602. Afanasiev-Konev, Russia Cup, Tomsk, 2001.



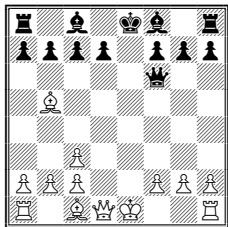
White is up a pawn. Note that Black has five pawn islands.

603. Bassis-Asperti, Moretti Memorial Open, Bergamo, 1999.



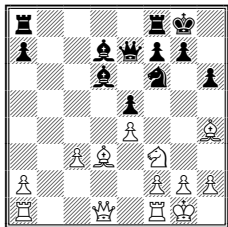
White is up Black's Queen and Knight for a Rook and two pawns.

604. Shagalovich-Levin, Minsk, 1950.



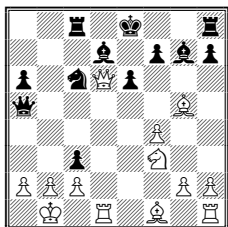
Material is even (1-0, 25).

605. Gurevich-Haznedaroglu, Turkish Championship, 2006.



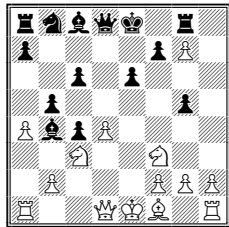
White is up a pawn (1-0, 63).

606. Camilleri-Minev, Halle, 1967.



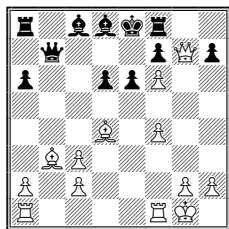
White is up a pawn.

607. Huzman-Oll, USSR, 1987.



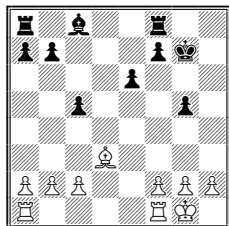
Black will be up a pawn (1-0, 23).

608. Hartman-Schussler, Goteborg Open, 1992.



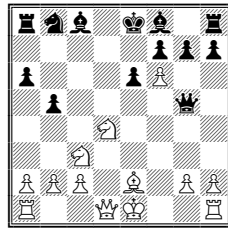
White is up two pawns (1-0, 21).

609. Pelikian-Rego, Itau Cup, Brazil, 2001.



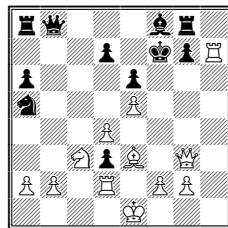
Material is even (1-0, 41).

610. Zimmerman-Huebner, Germany-Sweden Team Championship, 1975-76.



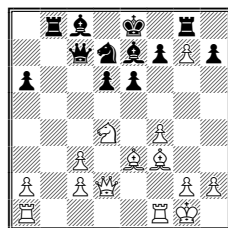
Material is even, but Black has the Bishop pair. The game continued 12 Qd3 Qxf6 13 0-0-0 Ra7 14 Qg3 Nd7 15 Nc6 Rb7 16 Ne4 Qh6+ 17 Kb1 e5 18 Qxe5+ Qe6 19 Nf6+ (1-0).

611. Kobs-Vrabac, Hessenliga Germany, 1994.



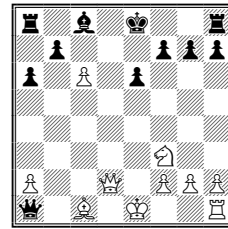
White is up one pawn (1-0, 24).

612. Swathi-Caramé Gonzalez, Gibtelecom Masters, Gibraltar, England, 2006.



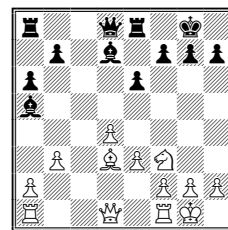
White will be up a pawn after ...Rxc7 (1-0, 26).

613. Frois-Houari, Algarve, 1995.



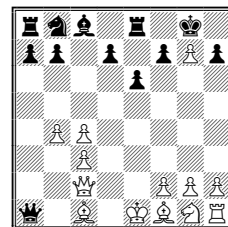
Black has a Rook and pawn for a Knight. The game continued 16 00 (intending 17 Qd6 and 18 Bg5) Qf6 17 Rd1 (intending 18 cxb7 Bxb7 19 Qd7+ Kf8 20 Ba3+ Kg8 21 Be7) 00 18 c7 (threatening 19 Ba3 Re8 20 Qd8) e5 19 Qd8 Bf6 20 Bg5 Qc6 21 Nxe5 Qb5 22 Be7 Re8 23 Qxa8 Rxa8 24 Rd8+ Qe8 25 Nc4 (1-0).

614. Bodiroga-Radlovacki, Serbia and Montenegro Team Championship, 2006.



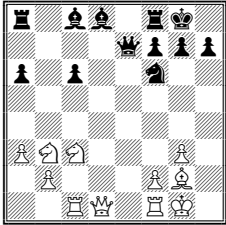
White is up a pawn, although Black has the Bishop pair (1-0, 40).

615. Rogers-Garbett, Classic, Queenstown, New Zealand, 2006.



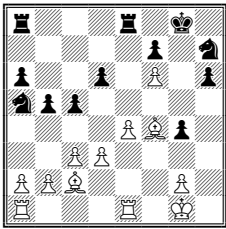
White is down the exchange for a pawn, but has the two Bishops and has weakened Black's kingside (1-0, 35).

616. Abdulla-Reefat, Bangladesh Championship, 2006.



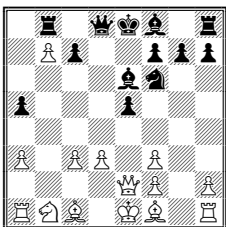
Black is up a pawn and has the Bishop pair (1-0, 59).

617. Teichmann-Leonhardt, San Sebastian, 1911.



Material is even, although White has the Bishop pair (1-0, 33).

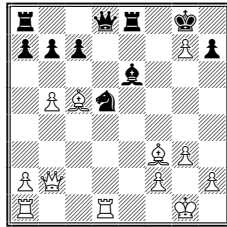
618. Totsky-Rudolf, 22nd Cappelle la Grande Open, Cappelle la Grande, France, 2006.



Material will be even

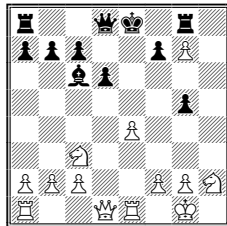
after ...Rxb7 (1-0, 63).

619. Zahn-Poellner, Munich Open, 1985.



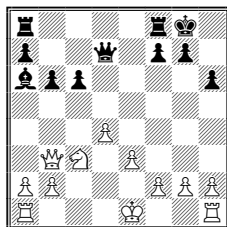
White is up two pawns and has the Bishop pair (1-0, 34).

620. Gibso-Ndure, Dubai Olympiad, 1986.



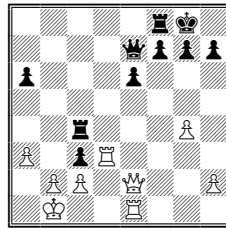
White is up a piece and pawn and has a target in Black's King (1-0, 22).

621. Kanko-Oud, EU Team Championship (Seniors), Dresden, Germany, 2006.



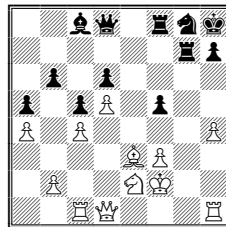
White is up a pawn (1-0, 47).

622. Janetschek-Hoelzl, Baden, 1980.



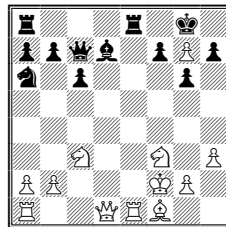
Black is up a pawn and has opened up the b-file to White's King, but blundered after 25 Rh3 Rb8? 26 Qxc4. Black's counterplay ran out after 26...Rxb2+ 27 Kc1 Qg5+ 28 Rhe3, when White threatens mate and Black's c-pawn (1-0, 53).

623. Jacimovic-Murey, EuroCup, Kranevo, 1996.



Material is even (1-0, 48).

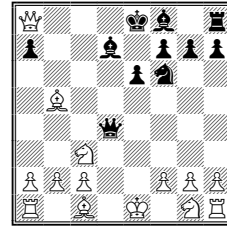
624. Karpov-Ehlvest, Mazatlan Rapid, 1988.



White is up a piece for a pawn, and will soon drop a second pawn (1-0, 27).

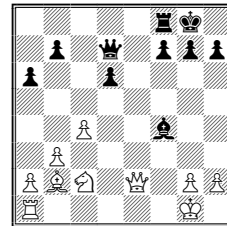
CHAPTER 22. RABID PASSED PAWNS.

625. Chow-Valyaev, Australian Championship (Reserve), Melbourne, Australia, 1991.



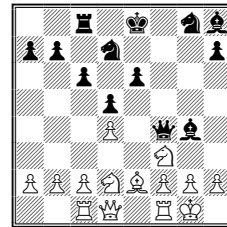
White is up a Rook, Knight, and pawn. The game ended with the moves 9...Ke7 10 Be3 Qb4 11 a3 Qxb2 12 Bc5, mate.

626. Loetscher-Zanetti, Swiss Championship, 2001.



White is up a piece for a pawn.

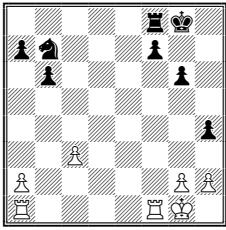
627. Baeke-Vercruyce, Brugge Open, Brugge, Belgium, 1997.



White is up the exchange and a pawn,

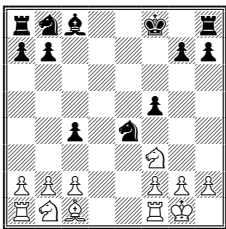
although Black has the Bishop pair (1-0, 19).

628. Tal-Pohla, USSR, 1972.



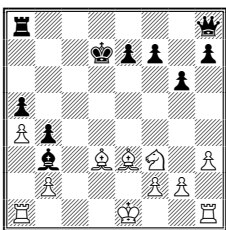
White is up the exchange for a pawn (1-0, 33).

629. Rellstab-Surmann, Lueneburg, 1947.



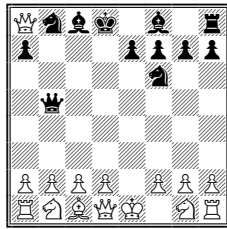
Material is even (1-0, 40).

630. Michna-Wiethaup, Wichern Open, Hamburg, 1993.



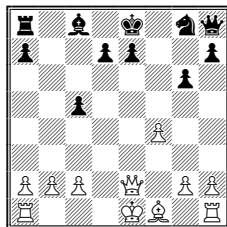
White has a Rook and two pieces (including the Bishop pair) for a Queen and pawn.

631. Laporte-Duc, 10th Creon Open, Creon, France, 2005.



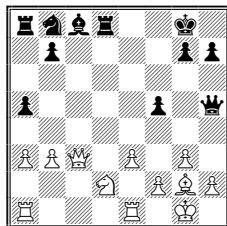
White is up a Queen, Rook and two pawns for a Bishop.

632. Karges-Gerland, Oberliga Nord, Germany, 1995-96.



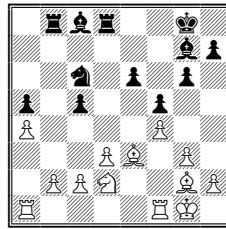
White is up the exchange (1-0, 22).

633. Driamin-Bondarenko, Moscow, 1997.



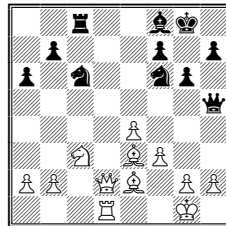
White is up a pawn. The game continued 19...Nc6 20 Bf3 Qe8 21 Nc4 b5 22 Nxa5 Rxa5 23 Bxc6 b4 24 Qc4+ Qe6 25 axb4 Rxa1 26 Rxa1 Kf8 27 Bf3 Qf6 28 Ra8 (1-0).

634. Bastian-Lagunow, Championship of Germany, 1996.



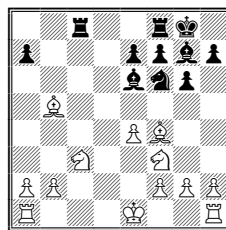
White is up a pawn. The game continued 17...Nd4 18 Ra2 Nxc2 19 Bxc5 Ba6 20 Nc4 Nb4 21 Raa1 Nxd3 (0-1).

635. Fang-Dwult, US Amateur Team East, Parsippany, NY, 2001.



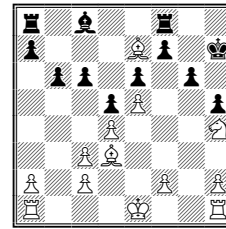
White is up a pawn and has the two Bishops (1-0, 22).

636. Vasquez-Couttet, Challes Open, 1990.



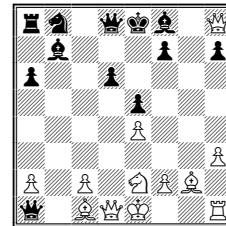
White is up a piece and a pawn.

637. Breyer-Opppenheimer, Kosice Simul, 1921.



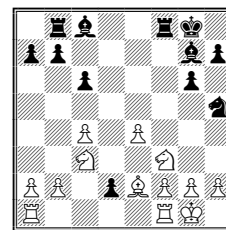
White is up two pieces for a pawn and has the two Bishops. Black resigned after the moves 16...Re8 17 Bf6 Bd7 18 Nf3 (1-0).

638. Bolzoni-Bezemer, Belgian Team Championship, 2005-6.



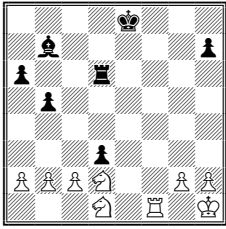
Material is even (1-0, 37).

639. Martinez-Olivera, Uruguay Championship, 1997.



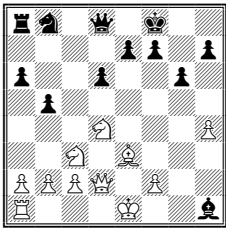
White will be up two pawns after winning Black's d-pawn (1-0, 38).

640. Tseshkovsky-Peev, European Team Championship, Moscow, 1977.



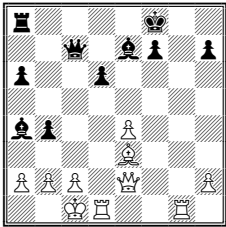
White is up a piece.

641. Dominguez-Rapacini, Balcarse, Argentina, 1961.



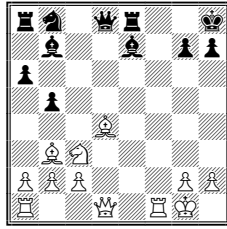
White is up a piece for two pawns (1-0, 19).

642. Nemeth-Cheung, Australian Junior Championship, Hervey Bay, 1999.



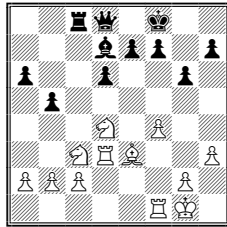
White is up the exchange and now wins Black's Ra8 with 22 Bh6+ Ke8 23 Rg8+ Kd7 24 Rxa8 (1-0).

643. Adorjan-Brinck Claussen, Wijk aan Zee, 1971.



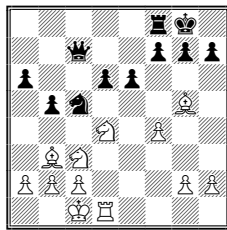
White is up a pawn (0-1, 22).

644. Trescher-Heinl, Bad Laasphe, Germany, 1994.



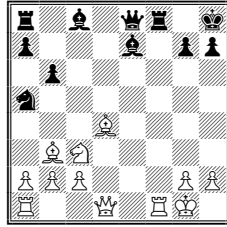
White has a Rook and two Knights for Queen and pawn. The final moves were 18...b4 19 Nd5 Rb8 20 f5 Kg7 21 Nxe7 Bb5 22 f6+ Kf8 23 Ndc6 (1-0).

645. Williams-Van der Stricht, 36th Olympiad, Spain, 2004.



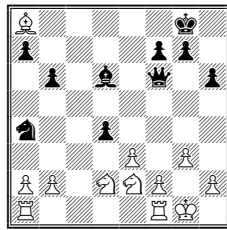
White is up three minor pieces for a Queen and a pawn, but his minor pieces aren't strong and his Kingside attack is gone, while Black can still attack on the queenside (0-1, 52).

646. Renet-Relange, Championship of France, 1995.



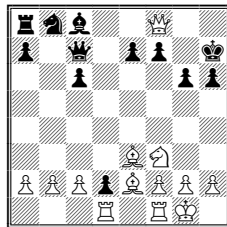
White is up a pawn (0-1, 28).

647. Minin-Rogan, Chicago Masters, 1992.



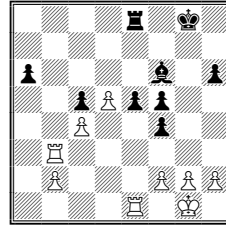
White has two Rooks and a Knight for his Queen. The game continued 18...dxe3 19 fxe3 Qxb2 20 Nc4 Qxe2 21 Nxd6 Qxe3+ 22 Kh1 f6 23 Bd5+ Kh7 24 Be4+ Kg8 25 Rae1 (1-0).

648. Vagner-Dvorak, Moravia Open Championship, 1996.



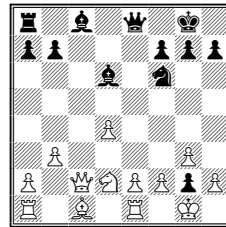
White is up a Rook and a Bishop and has the Bishop pair.

649. Milovanovic-Jakubovics, Tuzla, 1991.



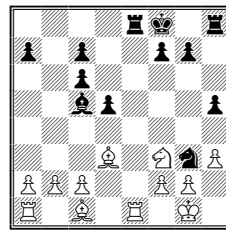
White is up a piece for a pawn, and is now up the exchange (1-0, 44).

650. Shipman-Gelman, US Open, 1995.



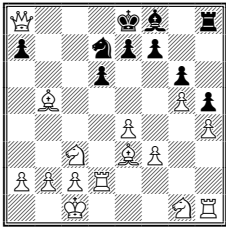
White is up the exchange and a pawn (1-0, 25).

651. Fiorito-Feige, Villa Ballester Open, Villa Ballester, Argentina, 1997.



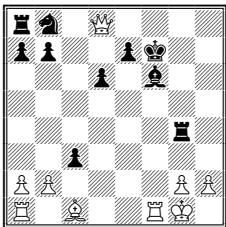
White is up a piece for a pawn and has the two Bishops. Black resigned after 18...Rxe1+ 19 Nxe1 (1-0).

652. Tokmachev-Neff, 19th Faaker-See Open, Faaker-See, Austria, 2003.



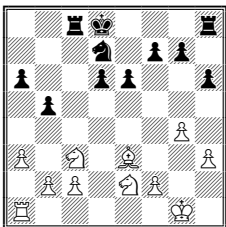
White has a Rook, two pieces, and a pawn for the Queen, including the two Bishops. Black resigned after 16...Bg7 17 Bd4 Bxd4 18 Rxd4 Qb7 19 Nd5 (1-0).

653. Wegener-Goldschmidt, Bundesliga, Germany, 1993-94.



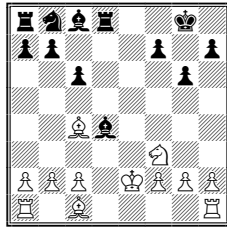
White is up a Queen for a Knight and a pawn.

654. Zulfugaryi-Najer, Swidnica Open, 1999.



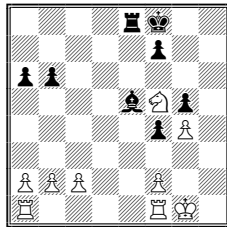
White is up two pieces for a Rook and a pawn (1-0, 41).

655. Garagulya-Ruffenach, USIC Championship, Dresden, 2000.



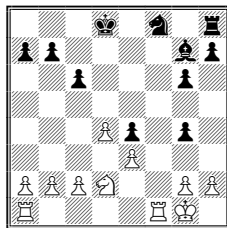
Material is even (1-0, 35).

656. Euwe-Kramer, Match, Game 5, 1940.



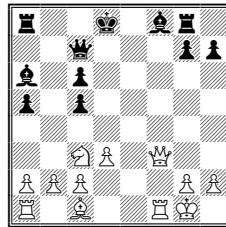
White wins a Rook.

657. Farrand-Nicolson, 1st Women's Senior Team Championship, Port Erin, Isle of Man, 2004.



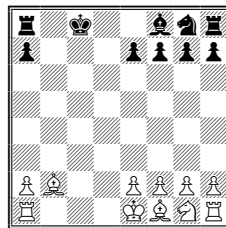
White is up the exchange. Black resigned after 21 Rf7 (1-0).

658. Mork-Thorsten-sen, Norwegian Team Championship, 1997.



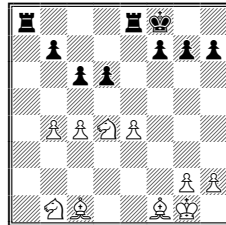
White is up a pawn to Blacks Bishop pair. The game continued 14 Bg5+ Be7 (14...Kc8 is met by 15 Nd5, e.g., 15...Qb7 16 Qh3+ Kb8 17 Qxh7 wins Black's Rook or 15...Qd6 16 Qh3+ Kb7 17 Rf7+ Kb8 18 Bf4 wins Black's Queen) 15 Nd5 (1-0), e.g., 15...Qe5 16 Nxe7 Qxg5 17 Qxc6 Kxe7 allows 18 Qc7+ Ke6 19 Rae1+ Kd5 20 Qd7, mate.

659. Fowkes-Lobo, Coventry, England, 2004.



White is up a piece and has the two Bishops (1-0, 18).

660. Timoschenko-Grillitsch, Vienna Open, 1991.

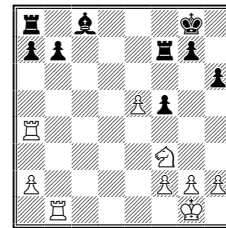


White has four pieces for two Rooks. The game ended with the moves 21...Ra1 22 Bd3 d5 23 cxd5 cxd5 24 Nb3 dxe4 25 Nxa1 exd3 26 Bd2 (1-0).

SECTION 6. THREE SECTORS OF THE BOARD.

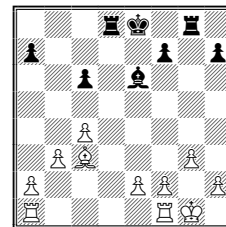
CHAPTER 23. THREE SECTORS OF THE BOARD (WHITE TO PLAY).

661. Smerdon-Clemens, 10th Essent Open, Hoogeveen, Netherlands, 2006.



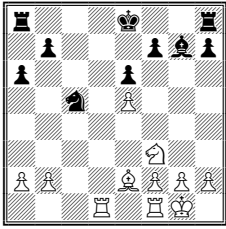
Material is even (1-0, 38).

662. Ribli-Van der Wiel, OHRA, Amsterdam, Netherlands, 1986.



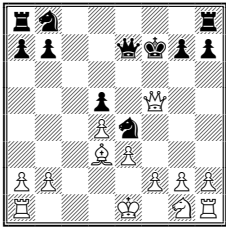
White is up three pawns (1-0, 21).

663. Keskisarja-Raud, Tallinn-Helsinki Match, Tallinn, 2000.



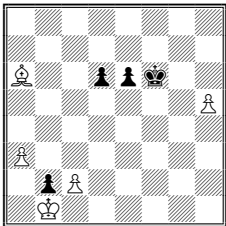
White is up a pawn (1-0, 27).

664. Bogdanov-Borchardt, Bydgoszcz, Poland, 2000.



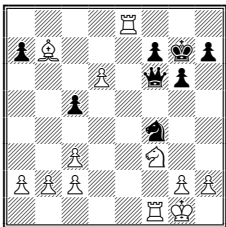
White is up two pawns (1-0, 25).

665. Solovjov-Chernyshov, Pardubice Open, Pardubice, Czechoslovakia, 2001.



White is up a piece.

666. Fischer-Sandrin, Chicago Simul, 1964.

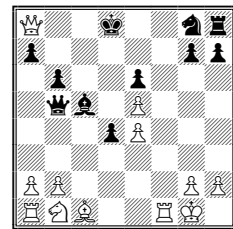


White has two Rooks

and a Bishop for the Queen. In the actual game White kept his passed pawn and played 21 d7! instead of 21 Bxb7. There followed 21...Ne2+¹ 22 Rxe2 Bxc6 23 Ne5 (1-0) Qe7 24 Rxf7+ Qxf7 25 d8=Q.

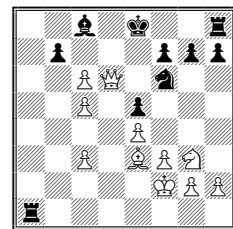
¹ Two alternatives: a) After 21...Bxc6 22 d8=Q Bxe8 23 Qxe8 White is up a Rook and pawn; b) 21...Ne6 and now: b1) 22 Rxe6 fxe6 23 Nd4 with a discovered attack on Black's Qf6. If now 23...Qd8, for example, then 24 Nxe6+ wins; b2) 22 Bxb7 Nd8 23 Ne5, with pressure on both f6 and f7.

667. Kainz-Takacs, 2nd Summer Open, Savaria, Hungary, 2002.



White is up a Rook (1-0, 21).

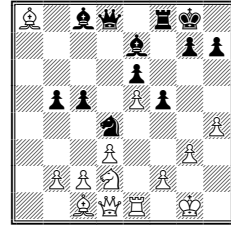
668. Malaniuk-Springer, Linz Open, 1997.



White is up a Queen and two pawns for two

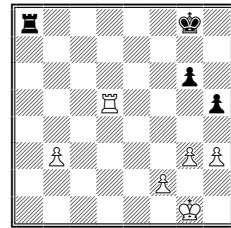
Rooks, and will soon win a third pawn (1-0, 25).

669. Sanges Montfort-Linan Serra, 2nd Salou Open, Spain, 2000.



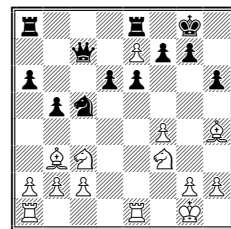
White is up a pawn (1-0, 37).

670. Taimanov-Antoshin, USSR Championship, 1956.



White is up two pawns.

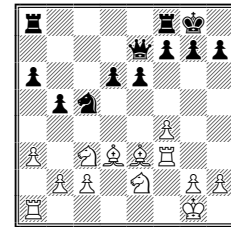
671. Westerveld-Mawira, Netherlands Team Championship, 1992.



White has three pieces for the Queen, including the two Bishops. The game continued 17...d5 18 f5 b4 19 fxe6 fxe6 (Black can get the advantage with 19...Nxb3 20 exf7+

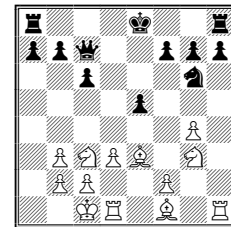
Kxf7 21 cxb3 bxc3 22 bxc3 Qxc3 when White has only two pieces and a pawn for the Queen. Not so good is 19...bxc3? 20 exf7+ Kxf7 21 Bxd5+ when White wins Black's Ra8) 20 Nxd5! Qa7 21 Bf2 Rac8 22 Rxe6 Qb7 23 Bxc5 Kh8 24 Bd4 a5 25 Rxh6+ (1-0).

672. Pilnik-Pinzon Solis, Lima, Peru, 1959.



White has three pieces for a Queen and pawn. The game continued 16...Nxd3 17 cxd3 Rfc8 18 f5 Qd7 19 Rg3 Kh8 20 Rf1 f6 21 fxe6 Qxe6 22 Nd4 Qe5 23 Nf5 Rc7 24 Bd4 Qe6 25 Nxg7 (1-0).

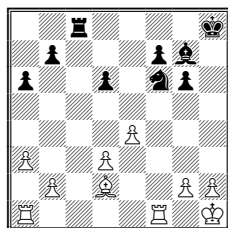
673. Hector-Karolyi, Kecskemet, 1987.



White has three pieces for a Queen and pawn, including the Bishop pair. The game continued 18 Nf5 0-0 19 Ne4 a5 20 Bh6 (1-0), when 20...gxh6 loses to 21 Nf6+ Kh8 22 Rxh6 and

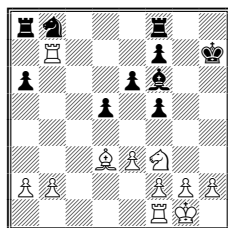
23 Rxh7, while after 20...Ne7 21 Nxc7 White threatens mate on h7, and if 21...Nd5 then 22 Nh5 not only attacks Black's Rh8 but also threatening mate with 23 Nef6+ Nxf6 24 Nxf6+ Kh8 25 Bf8 and 26 Rxh7, mate.

674. Stets-Melich, Decin Open (Group A), 1998.



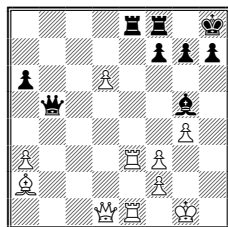
White is up the exchange and a pawn.

675. Diaz-Giardelli, Argentina Team Championship, 2005.



White is up a pawn (1-0, 38).

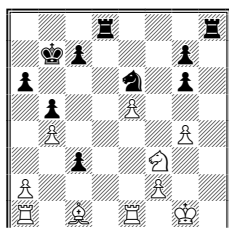
676. Geller-Spassky, USSR Championship, 1958.



White is up a pawn

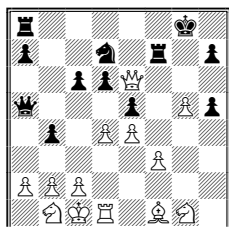
(1-0, 39).

677. Savanovic-Kurcubic, Men's Team Championship, Serbia and Montenegro, 2004.



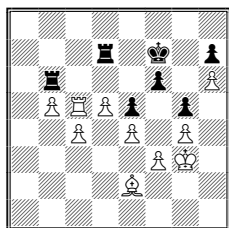
White is up a Bishop for a pawn (1-0, 44).

678. Voloshin-Frindt, Slovakian Team Championship, 1994.



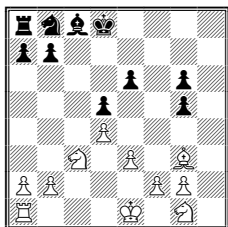
White is up two pieces for a Rook and can continue with either 18 Qxd6 or 18 Bc4.

679. Kan-Soloviev, Moscow Championship, 1950.



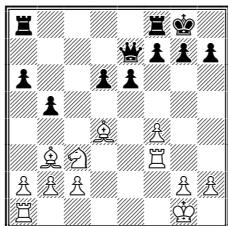
Black has given up the exchange for two connected passed pawns, and will also win Black's c-pawn. Black resigned after 62...Kf7 63 Rc8.

680. Suter-Spielmann, Basel Hilton Open, Basel, Switzerland, 2001.



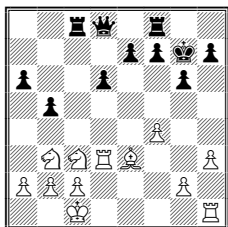
White is up a piece (1-0, 17).

681. Kulaots-Koch, Neckar Open, Deizisau, 1997.



White has three pieces for a Queen, including the two Bishops. The game continued 16... Kh8 17 Re1 Qc7 18 Rg3 Rg8 19 Ne4 d5 20 Ng5 Rae8, with mate in five: 21 Rh3 Rgf8 22 Rxh7+ (1-0) Kg8 23 Rxg7+ Kh8 24 Rh7+ Kg8 25 Rh8, mate.

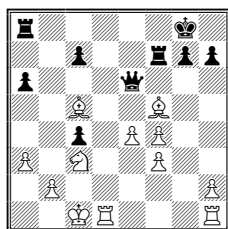
682. Jung-Nezirovic, Canadian Championship, 2004.



White has three pieces for a Queen and pawn

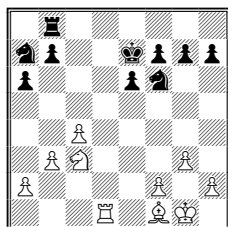
(1-0, 101).

683. Smyslov-Castro, Sao Paulo, Brazil, 1978.



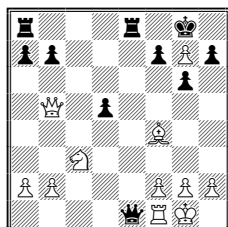
White is up three pieces and a pawn for the Queen and has the two Bishops. The game continued 23...Rxf5 24 exf5 Qxf5 25 Be3 Re8 26 Bd2 Qh3 27 Rhf1 Rd8 28 Ne4 (1-0).

684. Streitberg-Marcinkowski, Warszawa Cup, Warsaw, Poland, 1987.



Material is even (1-0, 34).

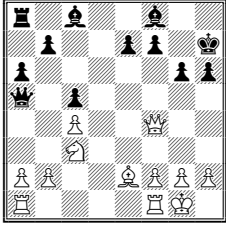
685. Reddin-Candon Moet, Lloyds Bank, London, 1978.



White has two pieces for a Rook and targets on d5 and b7. The

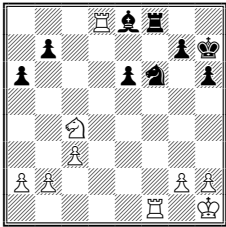
game continued 18...d4
19 Nd5 Re2 20 Bh6
Re6 21 Nf6+ (1-0).

686. Lang-Wolfsteiner,
Regionalliga SW,
Germany, 1994-95.



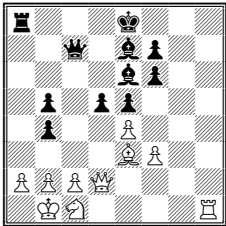
White is up a Rook for
a pawn; Black has the
two Bishops.

687. Stefansson-
Haritakis, Komotini,
Greece, 1993.



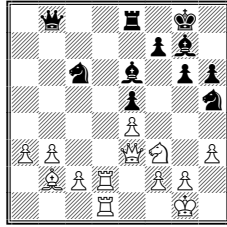
White is up the ex-
change. The game
ended 26...Rg8 27 Ne5
Bh5 28 Rxg8 Kxg8 29
Rf4 (1-0).

688. Hunt-Batceceg,
Women's Olympiad,
Yerevan, Armenia,
1996.



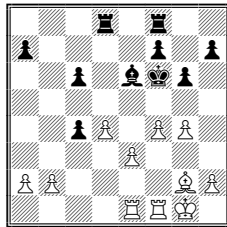
Black is up a pawn and
has the two Bishops.

689. Smyslov-
Speelman, Hastings,
1981-82.



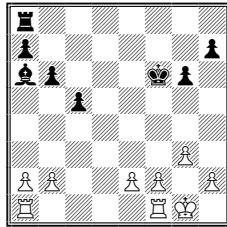
White is up a Rook and
three pawns for Bishop
and Knight (1-0, 58).

690. Mozetic-Ivanovic,
2nd League Team
Championship, Serbia
and Montenegro, 2003.



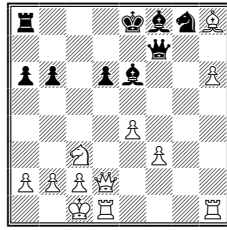
White is up a pawn
(1-0, 34).

691. Duppel-Marian,
3rd Neckar Open, Dei-
zisau, Germany, 1999.



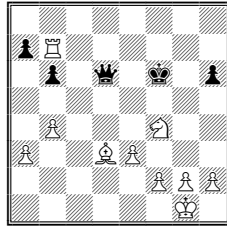
White is up the ex-
change and a pawn.

692. Stoinev-Dikov,
4th Kesarovski-
Georgiev Memorial,
Sunny Beach, Bulgaria,
2005.



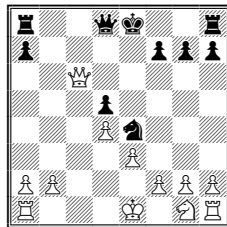
White is up a Rook and
three pawns for a Bi-
shop (1-0, 22).

693. Stysiak-Carlstedt,
17th Jozef Kochan
Memorial, Koszalin,
Poland, 2006.



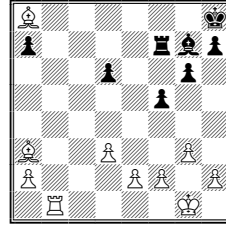
White has a Rook, two
pieces, and three pawns
for the Queen. Black
resigned after the
moves 30...Qc6 31
Rxa7 (1-0).

694. Drasko-Prijovic,
1st Montenegro Team
Championship, Herceg
Novi, Montenegro,
2006.



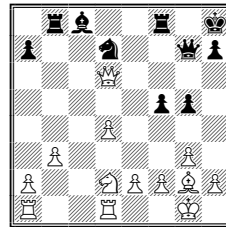
White is up two pawns
(1-0, 20).

695. Tiggelman-
Waterschoot, Belgian
Team Championship,
Antwerp, 1999-2000.



White is up a piece and
a pawn and has the two
Bishops.

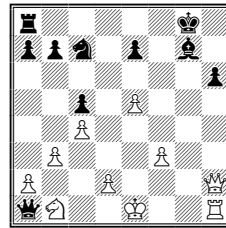
696. Levin-Straeter,
Bundesliga, Germany,
1996.



White is up three
pawns.

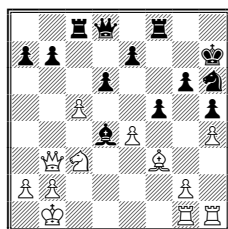
CHAPTER 24. THREE SECTORS OF THE BOARD (BLACK TO PLAY).

697. Stenzel-De Aze-
vedo, Brazil Cham-
pionship, 1960.



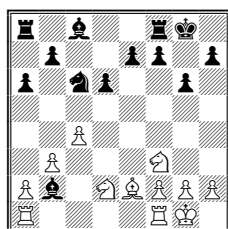
Black is up a piece for
a pawn (0-1, 25).

698. Boeckman-Smltiner, Munich Olympiad (Prelim), Munich, Germany, 1958.



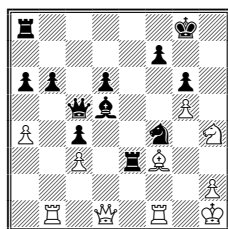
Black is up a pawn.

699. Kjartansson-Gaponenko, Reykjavik Open, Reykjavik, Iceland, 2006.



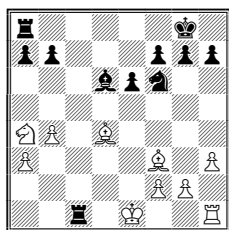
Black is up a pawn and has the two Bishops. White resigned after 14 Rad1 Bf5 (0-1).

700. Alekhine-Capablanca, New York, 1927.



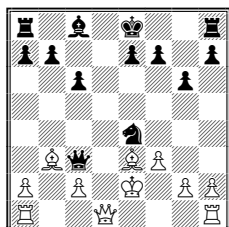
Black is up a pawn.

701. Burehall-Lundin, Swedish Championship, Gothenburg, Sweden, 1964.



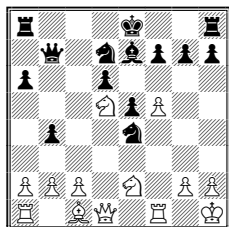
Black is up the exchange and a pawn (0-1, 19).

702. Contedini-Grassi, Italian Championship, Milan, Italy, 1968.



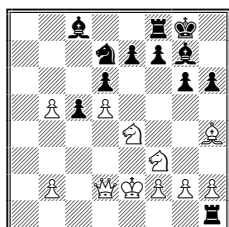
Black is up two pawns (0-1, 29).

703. Vernacki-Palac, Bizovac, Croatia, 2006.



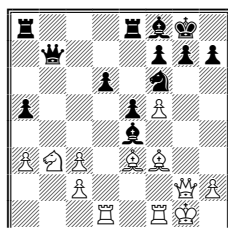
Black is up a pawn (0-1, 30).

704. Kristinsson-Olafsson, Reykjavik, Iceland, 1966.



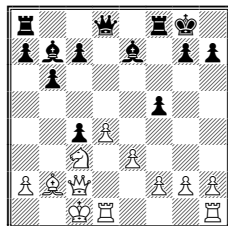
Black has two Rooks for a Queen (0-1, 24).

705. Damele-Bertok, Reggio Emilia, Italy, 1964-65.



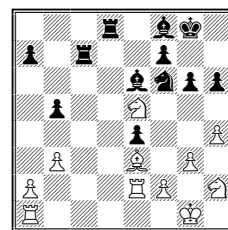
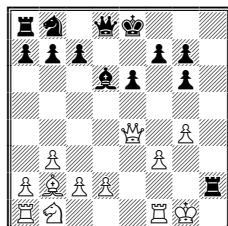
Black is up a pawn.

706. Weenink-Davidson, Amsterdam, 1925.



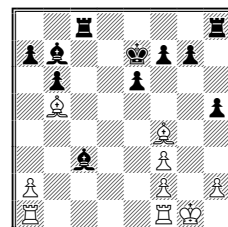
Black is up a pawn and has the Bishop pair (0-1, 24).

707. Motoc-Gvetadze, European Women's Championship, Kusadasi, Turkey, 2006.



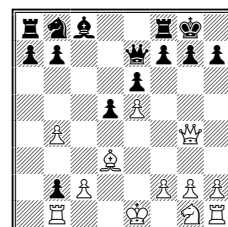
Black is up a pawn and has the two Bishops (0-1, 29).

709. Maristany-Grob, Barcelona, Spain, 1935.



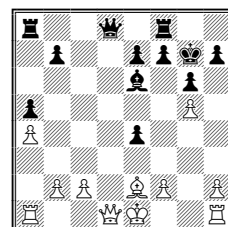
Black is up two pawns (0-1, 24).

710. Chariton-Rosenberg, Moscow, USSR, 1957.



Black is up two pawns (0-1, 27).

711. Shories-Richter, German Ch., 1933.

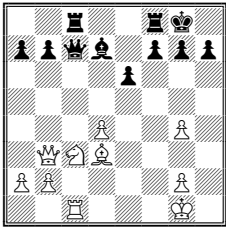


Black is up a pawn (0-1, 25).

708. Araiza Castr-Schweber, Mar del Plata, Argentina, 1962.

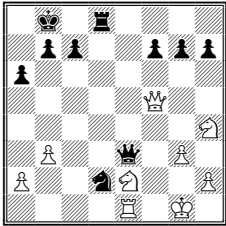
Black is up a pawn (0-1, 30).

712. Von Stamm-Lowcki, Russia, 1903.



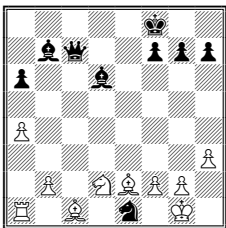
Black is up the exchange and a pawn.

713. Nimzovich-Alekhine, NY, 1927.



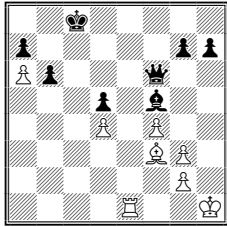
White is up a Knight for two pawns (1-0, 57).

714. Ruth-Fischer, US Open, 1956.



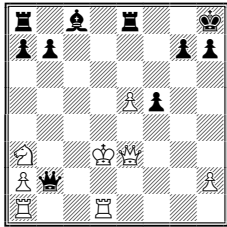
Black is up a Queen for a Rook. The game continued 23 Rb1 Nd4 24 Bd3 Bb4 (0-1).

715. Sokolsky-Zagorovsky, Correspondence, 1968.



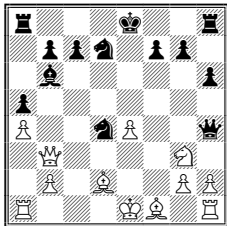
Black is up a Queen for a Rook.

716. Napier-Teichmann, Match, Glasgow, England, 1905.



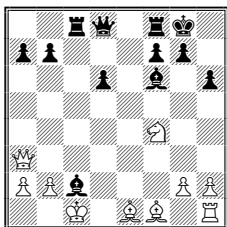
Black is up two pawns (0-1, 23).

717. De Lange-Can, European Women's Championship, Kusadasi, Turkey, 2006.



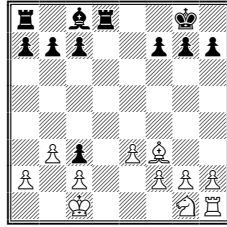
Black is up a pawn.

718. Bernstein-Sherwin, US Championship, 1954.



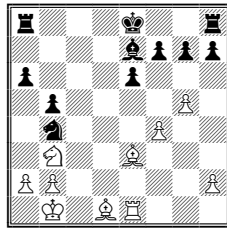
Black has a Rook and two and two pawns for a Knight (0-1, 24).

719. Bellon Lopez-Benko, Palma de Mallorca, Spain, 1971.



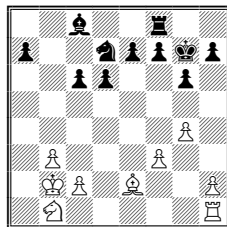
Black is up the exchange (0-1, 21).

720. Huguet-Matulovic, Reggio Emilia, Italy, 1967-68.



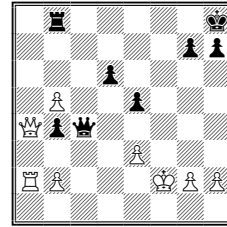
Black is up the exchange and a pawn; White has the two Bishops.

721. Heuer-Luik, USSR Team Championship, Moscow, USSR, 1966.



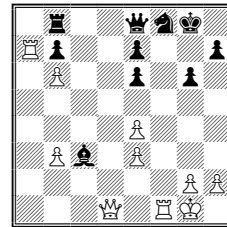
Black is up two pawns.

722. Matulovic-Sax, Belgrade, 1977.



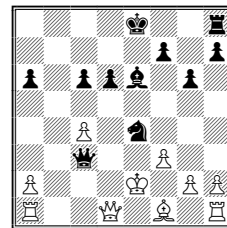
Material is even. The game continued 30...Qh4+ (instead of 30...axb4) 31 Ke2 Qg4+ 32 Ke1 Qxg2, with the threat of 33...Rf8 and 34...Rf1, mate, or 34...Rf2 and 35...Qg1, mate. Black won after 33 Nc6? Rf8 34 Qf4 exf4 35 b3 Qxa2 36 exf4 Rxf4 37 Nd4 Rf2 (0-1).

723. Simpson-Bain, US Open, Baltimore, USA, 1948.



Black has two pieces for a Rook and pawn.

724. Platonov-Shamkovich, USSR Championship, 1971.

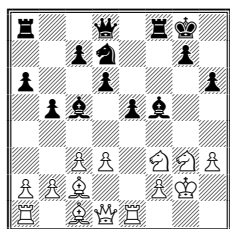


Black is down the exchange for a pawn, but threatens 19...Bxc4 and can answer 19 fxe4

with 19...Bg4+, winning White's Queen (1-0).

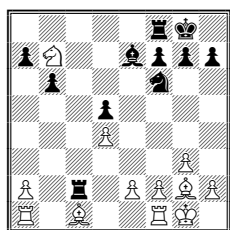
CHAPTER 25. SEEING FARTHER.

725. Van Otten-Van Hemert, Hengelo (Under 20), Netherlands, 1996.



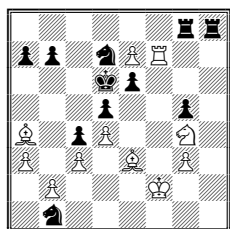
White wins more material with 19 Nxf5 Rxf5 20 d4, attacking two of Black's pieces at once (1-0, 23).

726. Horvath-Kaiser, Eger, Hungary, 1994.



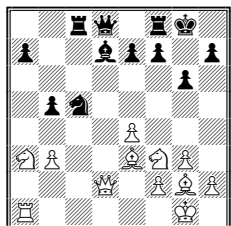
White can save his Kb7 with 17 Bg5, e.g., 17...Rb8 18 Bxf6 Bxf6 19 Bxd5 (1-0, 23).

727. Gonzalez Freixas-Alvarez, Correspondence, 1989.



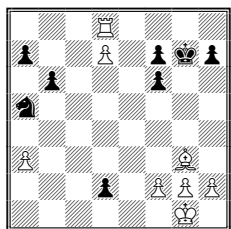
White mates in two with 34 e8=N+ (1-0) Rxe8 35 Rxd7, mate.

728. Backwinkel-Bastian, West German Championship, 1982.



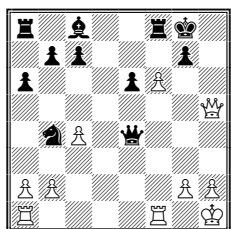
White can take advantage of the pin on Black's Bd7 with 22 Bxc5 (now Black's Bd7 becomes pinned; 22 Rd1 can be met by 22...Bg4) Rxc5 23 Rd1 Rc7 24 Ne5 (1-0).

729. Reshevsky-Hanauer, US Championship, NY, USA, 1940.



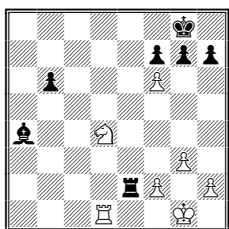
White wins by clearing d8 with check: 37 Rg8+ (1-0) Kxg8 38 d8=Q+ Kg7 39 Qxd2.

730. Colle-Aguilera, Barcelona, Spain, 1929.



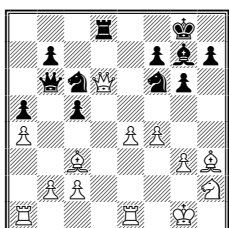
White wins with 20 f7+ Rxf7 21 Qxf7+ Kh8 22 Rf4 (1-0). White is up a Queen for two pieces after 22...Qxf4 23 Qxf4.

731. Magerramov-Lerner, Palma de Mallorca (GMA), 1989.



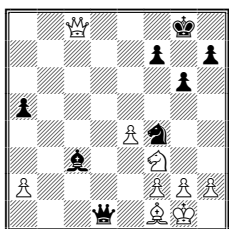
White wins a piece with 29 Ra1 (1-0), when two of Black's pieces are under attack.

732. Landa-Kravtsov, Toms, Russia, 1997.



White wins with 21 Qxf6 Bxf6 22 Bxf6, when White has a Rook and two Bishops for his Queen (1-0, 28).

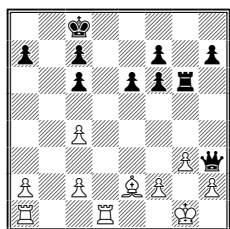
733. Lund-Norgaard, Snekkersten, Denmark, 1981.



White is up a piece and

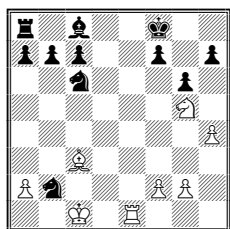
a pawn after 30 Qc8+ (1-0) Kg7 31 Qxc3+ when 31...Kg8 32 Qe3 stops the threat of ...Ne2 and drives Black's Knight away.

734. Nimzovich-Fleuss, Zurich, Switzerland, 1906.



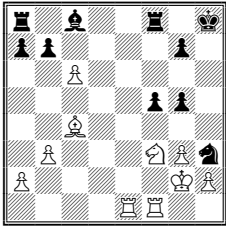
Black is up a Queen and pawn for Rook and Bishop, but White now mates with 18 c5, for example, a) 18... Kb8 19 Rb1+ Ka8 20 Rd8, mate or b) 18... Rg8 19 Rab1 (1-0) with 20 Ba6, mate.

735. Bier-Rocamora, Hamburg, Germany, 1876.



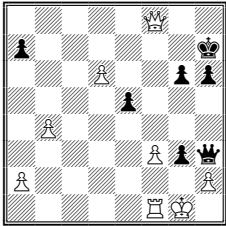
White mates in three: 19 Nxh7+ Kg8 20 Re8+ Kxh7 21 Rh8, mate.

736. Portisch-Miolo, Indonesia, 1983.



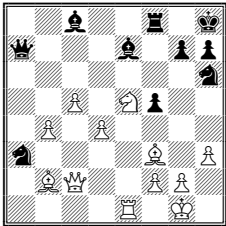
25 Ne5, threatening both 26 Ng6+ and 26 Kxh3, wins a piece after 25...Rf6 26 Kxh3 (1-0).

737. Ingerslev-Milner Barry, Moscow Olympiad (Finals, Group A), Moscow, USSR, 1956.



White wins by protecting h2, which he can do with 30 Qe7+ Kg8 31 Qd8+ Kh7 (31...Kf7 doesn't change anything) 32 Qc7+ Kg8 33 Qc2. White has parried Black's threats and is up a Rook.

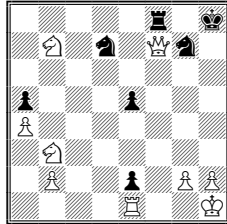
738. Fedder-Seret, Ostende Team Championship (EWG), Ostende, Belgium, 1975.



White has three connected passed pawns for a piece, but can win

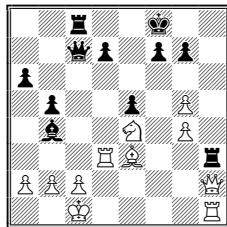
more with 25 Qd3, when Black's Knight is trapped (1-0).

739. Swathi-Khurtsidze, FIDE Women's World Cup, Group B, Hyderabad, India, 2002.



White can stop the threat with 32 Qc4 (1-0).

740. Motylev-Zakharov, Russia Cup, Tula, Russia, 1999.

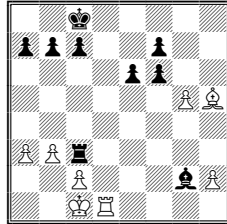


White can win material with 21 Bc5+ (1-0), temporarily blocking the c-file. White is up a Rook for a pawn after 21...Bxc5 22 Rxh3 and threatens 23 Rh8+ and 24 Rxc8, relieving all pressure on his position.

Note that 22 Qxh3 loses to 22...Be3+, for example, a) 23 Kb1 Qxc2+ 24 Ka1 Qc1+ or b) 23 Kd1 Qxc2+ 24 Ke1 Qxd3 25 Qh8+ Ke7 26 Qxc8 Qxe4, when Black already has

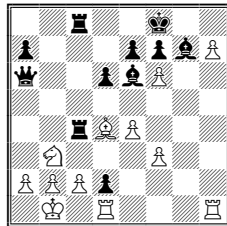
two pawns for the exchange and a dominant position.

741. Pasma-Avni, Israeli Championship, 1984.



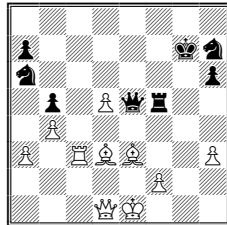
29 Bxf7 (1-0) threatens 30 Bxe6 Kb8 31 Rd8, mate. Black can prevent the mate with 29...Bh3 or 29...Bd5, but then 30 g6 gives White's an unstoppable passed pawn.

742. Gerigk-Lindemann, Badenweiler Open, Badenweiler, Germany, 1988.



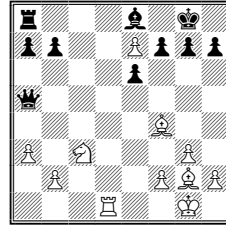
White mates in two with 23 h8=Q+ Bxh8 24 Rxh8, mate.

743. Lukov-Beckmann, Muenster Open, Muenster, Germany, 1990.



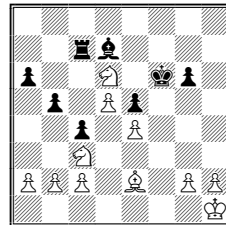
25 Qc2 defends the Rook on c3 and attacks Black's Rf5, when White is up a piece and two pawns after 25...Rf6 26 Bxh7.

744. Safin-Ribeiro, Elista Olympiad, Elista, Russia, 1998.



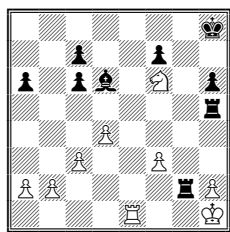
After 21 Bxb7, White will win Black's trapped Rook, then play 22 Rd8.

745. Koinen-Guthrie, Webb Open, Webb, USA, 1989.



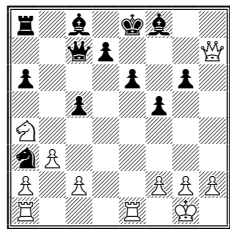
White has two ways to save his Knight: a) 27 Bg4 Ke7 (27...Bxg4 loses to 28 Ne8+) 28 Bxd7 Rxd7 29 Ndx5 axb5 30 Nxb5 or b) 27 a4 Ke7 28 Ndx5 axb5 29 axb5 (1-0, 40), in both cases White has four pawns for the exchange.

746. Pedersen-Fant, Copenhagen Open, Copenhagen, Denmark, 1995.



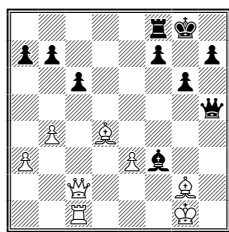
White can improve with 33 Re8+ Kg7 34 Nxh5+ Kg6 35 Kxg2 Kxh5 36 Ra8 and 37 Rxa6, when White is up the exchange and two pawns. The actual game continued 33...Bf8 34 Rxf8+ Kg7 35 Nxh5+ (1-0) Kxf8 36 Kxg2, when White is up a piece and a pawn.

747. Steinitz-Barnes, London, England, 1862.



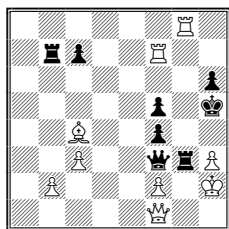
18...Nxc2 loses to 19 Rxe6+, when White either wins Black's Queen with 19...dxe6 20 Qxc7 or mates after 19...Kd8 20 Qh4+. The actual game continued 18...Qc6 (1-0, 33).

748. Szabados-Ceccato, Italian Championship, Ferrara, Italy, 1952.



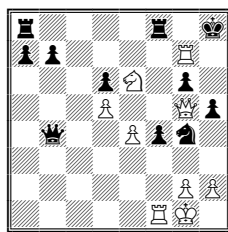
White wins a piece with 25 Qf2, when Black can't move the Bishop because of 26 Qf6, mating (1-0).

749. Andreikin-Inarkiev, 6th EICC, Warsaw, Poland, 2005.



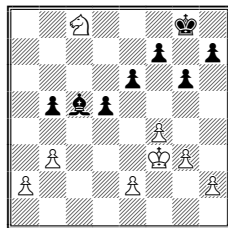
White can either win with Black's Queen with 39 Be2 or drive Black's King to h4 and play fxc3+ (e.g., 39 Rxf5+ Kh4 40 Rxf4+ Qxf4 41 fxc3+). Also possible is 39 Rxc3 fxc3 40 Kg1 Rxb2, when White can nullify Black's counterplay with 41 Rxf5+ e.g., 41...Qxf5 42 Qd1+ Kg5 43 Qc1+ Kf6 44 Qxb2.

750. Larsen-Soboticanec, Zagreb (Group B), Zagreb, Yugoslavia, 1955.



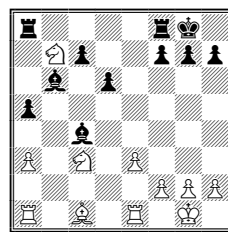
White mates in three: 25 Rh7+ (1-0) Kxh7 26 Qe7+ Kh6 27 Qg7, mate.

751. Skembris-Tsivelekidis, Greek Team Championship, Aghia Pelagia, Greece, 2004.



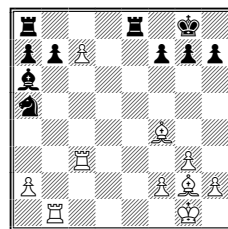
White can create a passed a-pawn and push it to a7, where it is defended by White's Nc8, which all of a sudden is fulfilling a useful function on c8: 30 a4 Kf8 (30...bxa4 31 bxa4 Bb4 stops the pawn, but lets White's Knight out with 32 Na7-c6) 31 a5 (1-0) Ke8 32 a6, when White is up a piece after 32...Kd8 33 a7 Bxa7 34 Nxa7.

752. Steiner-Fajans, Pittsburgh Open, USA, 1946.



White can save his Knight by taking advantage of Black's overworked c-pawn: 16 Na4 (1-0) Rab8 17 Nxb6 cxb6 18 Nxd6, when White is up a piece.

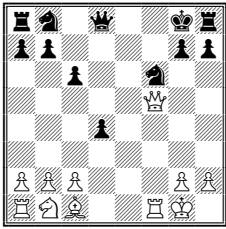
753. Reti-Schulz, Bratislava, Czechoslovakia, 1925.



White can win a piece with 21 Ra3, for example, 21...Nc6 22 Rxa6 bxa6 23 Bxc6 (attacking two pieces at once) 23...Rac8 24 Bxe8 Rxe8 25 Rb8, when White's pawn queens.

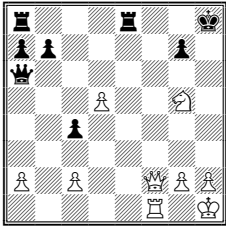
The actual game continued 21...Nc4 22 Rxa6 (1-0) bxa6 23 Bxa8 Rxa8 24 Rb8+, with mate next move. 23...Nb6 is met by 24 Bb7, when White is up a piece and will win Black's Rook after 25 Be3, 26 Bxb6, and c8=Q.

754. Richardson-Charles, NATO Team Championship, Viborg, Denmark, 1996.



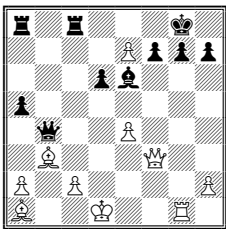
14 Qe6+ Kf8 15 Bf4 (1-0) threatens 16 Bd6+.

755. Gurevich-Short, Hastings, 1982.



White wins with 27 d6 (1-0), when 27...Qxd6 loses the Queen to 28 Nf7+ Kg8 29 Nxd6, when White is up a Queen and Knight for a Rook

756. Pacl-Fiser, Czech Army Championship, Prague, Czechoslovakia, 1966.

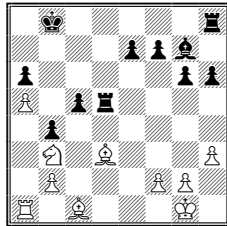


White has a mate in three with 21 Rxg7+ Kh8 22 Rg5+ (or anywhere else along the g-file) f6 23 Qxf6, mate

(or 23 Bxf6, mate).

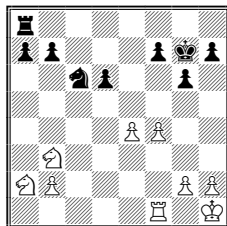
CHAPTER 26. LONGER VARIATIONS.

757. Piceu-Massink, HZ Open, Vlissingen, Netherlands, 2005.



White has two pieces for a Rook and two pawns and has the two Bishops. White's pieces are very strong. The game ended 21 Bf4+ Ka7 (21...Be5 loses material to 22 Be4) 22 Be4 Rdd8 23 Nxc5 Bxb2 24 Rb1 Bc3 25 Be3 Bd4 26 Rxb4 Bxe3 27 Rb7+ Ka8 28 Rxe7+ (1-0) when Black can't stop 28...Kb8 29 Nxa6+ Kc8 30 Rc7, mate.

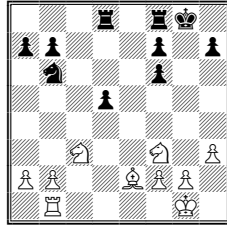
758. Fage-Polonski, European Youth (Boys Under 14), Tallinn, Estonia, 1997.



White is up a piece for a pawn.

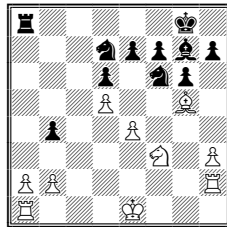
759. Kempinski-Czerwonski, Polish Championship, Brzeg

Dolny, Poland, 1996.



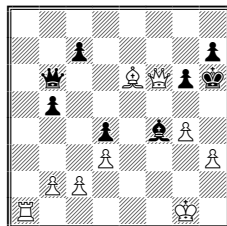
White has two pieces for a Rook (1-0, 26).

760. Skembris-Martorelli, Rome, Italy, 1983.



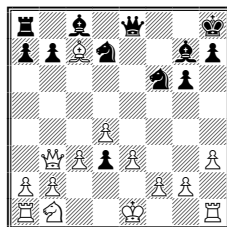
White is up the exchange for a pawn.

761. Alekhine-Duras, St. Petersburg, Russia, 1914.



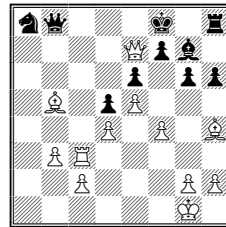
White is up a Rook.

762. Galego-Santos, Boavista Masters, Porto, Portugal, 1999.



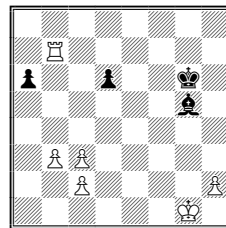
White has a Rook and three pawns for two pieces (1-0, 38).

763. Magem Badals-Aleksieva, Lisbon Open, Lisbon, Portugal, 2001.



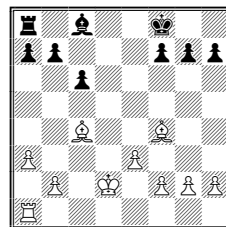
White is up two pawns and the two Bishops and will win a third pawn after 21...Kg8 22 Be8 Kh7 23 Bxf7 (1-0), when White threatens 24 Bxg6+ Kxg6 25 Rg3+, etc.

764. Fischer-Cardoso, New York (Match), 1957.



White is up the exchange and two pawns.

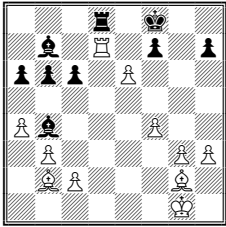
765. Zavodny-Dokladal, Brno, Czech Republic, 1965.



White is up a piece and

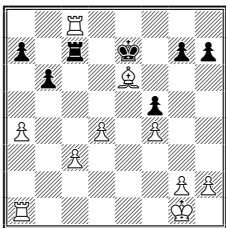
has the two Bishops.

766. Sveshnikov-Zapolskis, Liepajas Rokade, Liepaya, Latvia, 2004.



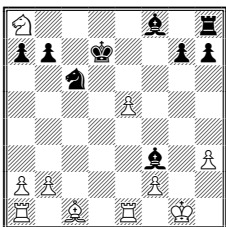
White is up two pawns. White will lose his d-pawn after 27...Rxd7 28 exd7 Ke7 but then will win Black's h-pawn with 29 Be4 Kxd7 (29...h5 30 Bf5) 30 Bxh7 Be1 31 Kh2 (1-0).

767. Tabunshikov-Dus Chotimirsky, Russian Championship, Moscow, Russia, 1901.



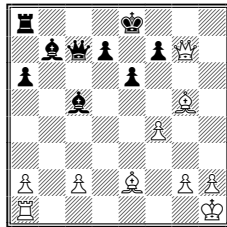
White is up a Rook, Bishop and Pawn.

768. Ciuksyte-Bighiu, Porto San Giorgio, Italy, 2003.



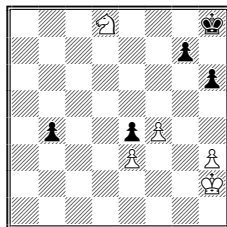
White is up the exchange and a pawn; Black has the two Bishops (1-0, 41).

769. Van der Vorm-Henriksen, Kiekrz Open, 1995.



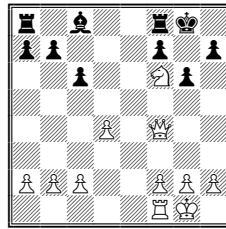
White is up a pawn. The game continued 18...Bf8 19 Qh7 Qc3 20 Rd1 Bd5 21 Bh5 Qg7 22 Qd3 Ra7 23 Qe3 (1-0).

770. Zaja-Conquest, 4th IECC, Istanbul, Turkey, 2003.

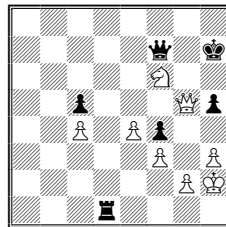


The best way to stop Black's b-pawn runs through e4, e.g., 54 Nf7+ Kg8 55 Nd6 (1-0) b3 56 Nxe4 b2 57 Nc3. White has not only stopped Black's PP, but has also created one of his own.

771. Spielmann-Wahle, Vienna, Austria, 1926.

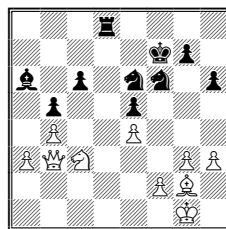


White is up a Queen and pawn for a Rook. 772. Moreno Carnero-Nijboer, 2nd IECC, Ohrid, Macedonia, 2001.



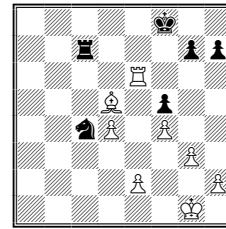
White mates in three: 49 Nf6+ Kh8 50 Qh6+ Qh7 51 Qxh7, mate.

773. Krivonogov-Afinogenova, Kstovo Open, Kstovo, Russia, 1994.

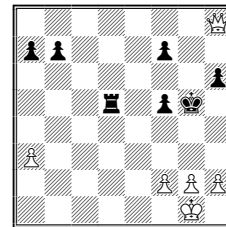


White has a Queen and pawn for Rook and Knight (1-0, 38).

774. Roos-Koeniger, German Championship (Under 20) Qualifier, Pinneberg, Germany, 1996.

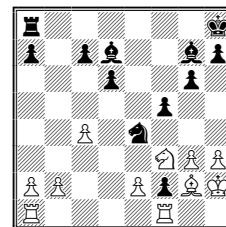


White is up two pawns. 775. Dannevig-Skogen, Norwegian Team Championship (East), 1992.



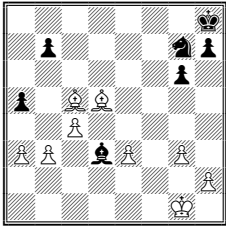
White is up a Queen for a Rook and pawn. 776. Tukmakov-Piket, OHRA-B, Amsterdam, 1990.

776. Tukmakov-Piket, OHRA-B, Amsterdam, 1990.



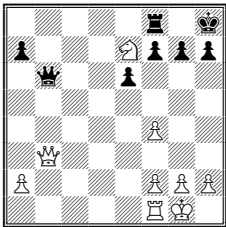
White is up the exchange for a pawn; Black has the two Bishops (1-0, 42).

777. Onischuk-Adianto, Beijing, China, 2000.



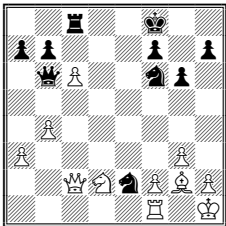
White is up two pawns and has the Bishop pair.

778. Rossi-Jandourek, Imperia Open, Imperia, Italy, 1996.



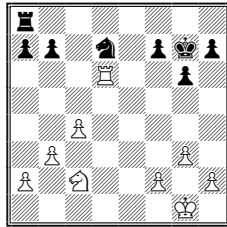
White is up a piece (1-0, 20).

779. Michalet-Caminade, Val Maubuee Open, 1989.



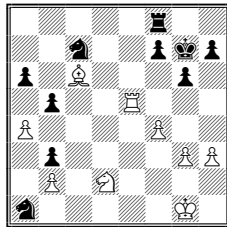
White is up a pawn. Note that Black can't take on c6 with 21...bxc6 because two of Black's pieces are under attack after 22 Nc4 (1-0, 31).

780. Urban-Wiersma, Groningen Open, Groningen, Netherlands, 1998.



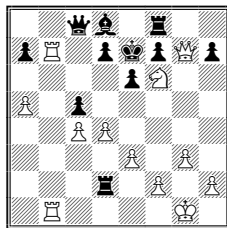
White is up a pawn (1-0, 26).

781. Ogaard-Sahovic, Stockholm, 1976.



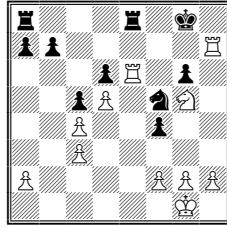
Black is up a pawn (0-1, 42).

782. Kasparov-Hjartarson, PCA/Intel Grand Prix, Paris, France, 1994.



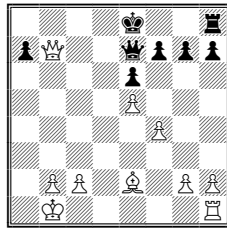
White can win Black's Queen by playing 27 Rxd7+ Qxd7 28 Nxd7. Black can't play 28...Kxd7 because of 29 Qxf8.

783. Capablanca-Mieses, Exhibition, Berlin, Germany, 1913.



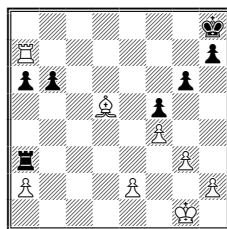
White mates in two: 26 Rxg6+ and now: a) 26...Kf8 27 Rf7, mate (1-0) or 26...Ng7 27 Rhxg7+ Kf8 28 Rf7, mate.

784. Milos-Ciucă, Timisoara Open, Timisoara, Romania, 1995.



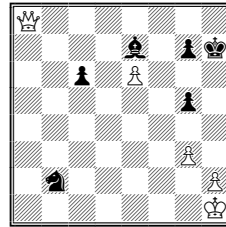
White now mates in three: 27 Bb5+ Kf8 28 Qc8+ with mate next move.

785. Gokhale-Saptarshi, Goodricke Open, Calcutta, India, 2000.



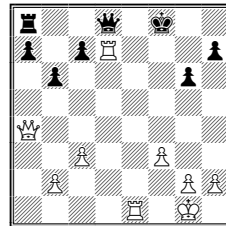
White is up a piece.

786. Klingelhoefer-Kuech, Oberliga Ost, Group B, Germany, 1992-93.



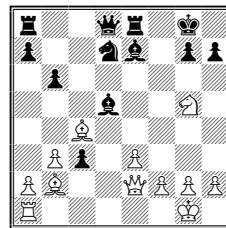
White has a Queen for two pieces.

787. Michaud-Trottier, COQ Open, Quebec, Canada, 2001.



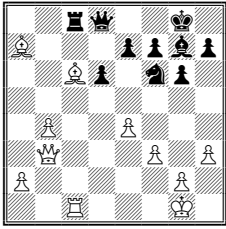
White is up a Rook.

788. Nabavi-Zanetti, Hilton Chess Festival, Basel, Switzerland, 2006.



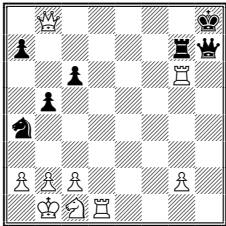
White can win Black's Queen with 18 Bxd5+ Kh8 19 Nf7+ (1-0) Kg8 20 Nxd8+.

789. Paoli-Klein, Reggio Emilia, Italy, 1968.



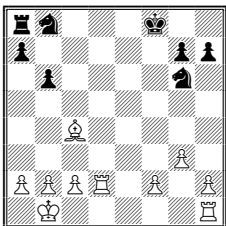
White is up a pawn and has connected passed pawns on the queenside supported by his two Bishops. The game continued 27...Nd7 28 Be3 Ne5 29 b5 e6 30 f4 (1-0).

790. Fischer-Ault, US Championship, New York, 1959.



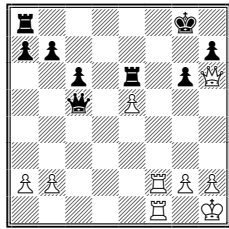
White is up a Rook and a pawn and now mates with 36...Rg8 37 Qe5+ Rg7 38 Rd8+ Qg8 39 Qxg7, mate.

791. Kupper-Quiaios, Leon, Spain, 1996.



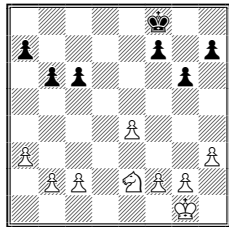
White is up the exchange and two pawns.

792. Almeida-Santos, Lisbon, Portugal, 2001.



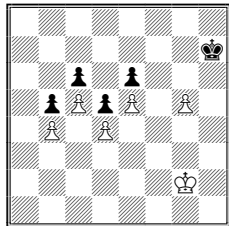
White mates with 29 Rf7 and 30 Qxh7, mate.

793. Henkel-Schneider, Bad Laasphe, Germany, 1994.

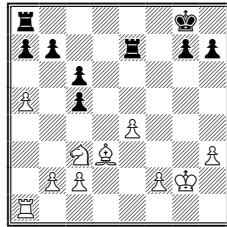


White is up a piece and a pawn (1-0, 38).

794. Rabar-Opsahl, Dubrovnik Olympiad, Yugoslavia, 1950.

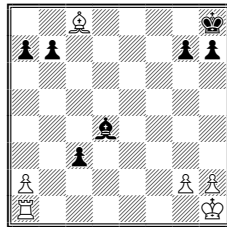


795. Oltra Caurin-Anguix Garrido, Spanish Championship, 1989.



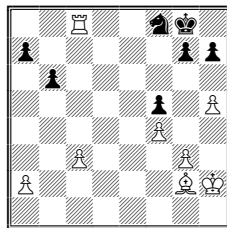
White is up two pieces for a Rook.

796. Alekhine-Bogolyubov, Blind Match, Rastatt, Germany, 1914.



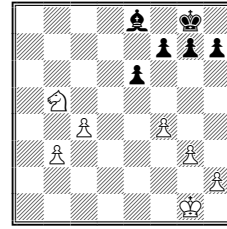
White is up a Rook for two pawns..

797. Huc-Breval, Paris Championship, Paris, France, 1990.



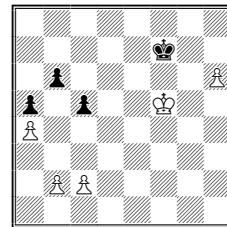
White is up a Rook.

798. Froeling-Hartlaub, Women's World Seniors Championship, Bad Woerishofen, Germany, 1992.



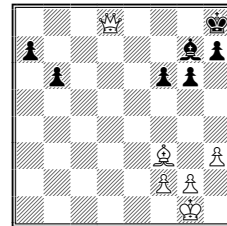
White is up a pawn and has connected passed pawns on the queenside.

799. Botvinnik-Kan, Sverdlovsk, USSR, 1943.



White is up a pawn and will win Black's queen-side pawns.

800. Johannessen-Nakamura, GMA, Bermuda, 2002.



White is up a Queen and now mates after 32...Bf8 33 Qxf8, mate.

APPENDIX 1. INDEX OF ECO CODES

A00: 104, 153, 186, 349, 412, 440, 505, 647, 715	A48: 148, 228, 544, 749, 762	B10: 374, 673	B72: 641, 644, 711
A01: 707, 719	A49: 7, 154, 327	B12: 202, 477, 529, 548, 596, 627, 663, 754	B73: 19, 70, 291, 294
A02: 697	A50: 324, 781	B13: 121	B75: 310, 395
A03: 135, 540	A51: 577, 693	B14: 58, 468, 493, 628, 685	B76: 428
A04: 191, 261, 300, 301, 337	A52: 75, 407, 602, 752, 765	B15: 40, 197, 637	B78: 352
A05: 559, 713	A53: 211	B16: 583	B79: 331, 742
A06: 132	A54: 243	B17: 231, 347, 391, 454	B80: 234, 282, 476, 488, 692
A07: 113, 209, 263, 267, 381	A55: 122, 218, 252, 660, 773	B19: 184	B81: 275, 654
A08: 52, 93, 183, 708	A56: 679	B20: 255, 295	B82: 87
A09: 334	A57: 90, 306, 757	B21: 134	B84: 423, 612, 705, 799
A10: 633, 695	A60: 556, 562	B22: 46, 152, 187, 460, 517, 661, 701	B85: 190, 222, 524, 594
A11: 88, 779	A61: 497, 691	B23: 156, 481, 500, 658	B86: 172, 341, 642, 645, 671, 681
A12: 59, 232	A63: 160	B24: 41	B87: 288, 478, 608, 643, 703
A13: 3, 27, 48, 55, 279, 551, 554	A65: 91, 296	B25: 31, 293, 634	B88: 98, 145, 646, 764
A15: 560	A70: 196	B26: 176, 321, 464	B89: 756
A16: 323, 479, 538, 601	A80: 101, 438	B27: 789	B90: 277, 622, 638
A17: 188, 326	A81: 182, 508	B28: 112, 303, 532	B92: 111, 567, 714
A18: 599	A84: 165, 541	B30: 10, 83, 406, 613	B93: 137, 169
A21: 777	A85: 28, 284, 558, 706	B32: 13, 287, 626	B96: 610
A22: 32	A86: 797	B33: 81, 436, 722	B99: 502
A24: 226, 276	A89: 465, 737	B34: 185, 240, 632	
A25: 99	A90: 139, 397, 469, 774	B35: 244, 702	C00: 21, 130, 158, 355, 376, 413, 507, 618, 669, 717, 746
A26: 192, 242, 553	A97: 100	B37: 698	C01: 123, 181, 203, 451, 506, 771
A28: 753	B00: 285, 396, 483, 611	B38: 107, 162, 435, 578, 635	C02: 140, 260, 265, 415, 727
A29: 418, 561, 619	B01: 14, 120, 230, 246, 342, 392, 441, 461, 490, 510, 545, 587, 631	B39: 542	C03: 417, 651
A30: 229, 751, 798	B02: 47, 66, 94, 419, 525, 546	B40: 308, 372, 459, 598, 747	C06: 2, 17, 22, 237, 268, 269, 313, 571
A31: 164	B03: 61, 141, 398	B41: 4, 672	C07: 159, 400, 425, 430, 470
A32: 54, 616	B04: 50, 434	B42: 74, 78, 146, 180, 343, 739	C09: 448, 589
A34: 241, 491, 549	B05: 163, 336, 359	B43: 67, 740	C10: 25, 361, 433, 442, 609, 625, 734
A35: 495, 518, 590, 780	B06: 57, 119, 210, 220, 251, 264, 354, 424, 467, 581, 603, 630, 763, 772, 793	B45: 6, 533	C11: 106, 257, 274, 367, 402, 504, 687
A36: 299, 511, 573	B07: 11, 16, 110, 249, 270, 325, 399, 520, 521, 557, 591, 652, 678, 721, 732, 790, 795	B47: 200, 600, 769	C13: 254, 784
A37: 484	B08: 161, 178, 280, 283, 523, 534, 582, 648, 655	B48: 444, 720	C15: 69, 405, 455, 475, 522, 741, 791
A38: 136	B09: 33, 43, 215, 250, 482, 640, 653, 674, 682, 745	B50: 207, 446, 552, 744	C16: 710
A39: 189, 193, 389		B51: 350, 371	C17: 439, 472, 494
A40: 96, 370		B52: 8, 750	C18: 383
A41: 266, 307, 537, 759, 770		B53: 699	C19: 410
A42: 95, 97, 129, 227, 353		B56: 212	C20: 443
A43: 26, 76, 125, 131, 351		B57: 345, 665	
A44: 53, 379, 755		B58: 84, 689	
A45: 86, 194		B65: 718	
A46: 80, 195, 290, 328, 662, 782		B66: 49, 688	
		B67: 458, 606	
		B70: 758	

<u>C21</u> : 386, 735	<u>D00</u> : 420	<u>D79</u> : 356, 785	<u>E94</u> : 206, 390, 403, 473,
<u>C23</u> : 344	<u>D01</u> : 51, 63, 516, 657	<u>D80</u> : 118	624
<u>C26</u> : 527, 796	<u>D02</u> : 175, 201, 297, 316,	<u>D85</u> : 23, 394, 723, 800	<u>E95</u> : 5
<u>C28</u> : 9	318, 519, 787	<u>D87</u> : 167	<u>E96</u> : 39
<u>C30</u> : 223, 363, 366	<u>D03</u> : 575	<u>D91</u> : 105, 565	<u>E97</u> : 150, 171, 393
<u>C32</u> : 716	<u>D04</u> : 311, 429	<u>D93</u> : 12	<u>E98</u> : 623
<u>C33</u> : 427, 432, 666	<u>D05</u> : 330, 709, 712, 730	<u>D94</u> : 116, 168	<u>E99</u> : 216
<u>C34</u> : 114, 315, 388	<u>D06</u> : 44, 92, 138, 449,	<u>D97</u> : 555, 636	
<u>C35</u> : 233, 431	659		
<u>C36</u> : 225	<u>D07</u> : 151, 213, 239, 492,	<u>E00</u> : 224, 309, 550, 684	
<u>C37</u> : 380	528, 683	<u>E02</u> : 509	
<u>C40</u> : 320	<u>D08</u> : 298	<u>E04</u> : 219, 236	
<u>C41</u> : 456, 563, 584, 629,	<u>D10</u> : 204, 273, 278, 503,	<u>E05</u> : 253	
766	614, 680	<u>E06</u> : 569	
<u>C42</u> : 335, 579, 588, 767	<u>D11</u> : 170, 304, 346	<u>E10</u> : 530	
<u>C43</u> : 768	<u>D13</u> : 89	<u>E11</u> : 696	
<u>C44</u> : 62, 68, 292, 496	<u>D14</u> : 778	<u>E12</u> : 205	
<u>C45</u> : 447	<u>D15</u> : 77, 117, 531, 576,	<u>E14</u> : 208, 384, 667	
<u>C46</u> : 56, 142, 547	580	<u>E15</u> : 1, 15, 20, 453, 572,	
<u>C48</u> : 457, 604	<u>D16</u> : 126, 526	700, 731	
<u>C49</u> : 369, 592	<u>D17</u> : 199	<u>E16</u> : 586	
<u>C50</u> : 463	<u>D18</u> : 786	<u>E17</u> : 79, 385, 450	
<u>C51</u> : 487	<u>D20</u> : 102, 437	<u>E18</u> : 726	
<u>C55</u> : 127, 597	<u>D24</u> : 34, 115	<u>E25</u> : 358, 668	
<u>C60</u> : 42, 377	<u>D26</u> : 281	<u>E32</u> : 214, 338, 387, 615	
<u>C61</u> : 149	<u>D27</u> : 177	<u>E33</u> : 416	
<u>C62</u> : 404	<u>D30</u> : 108, 362, 364, 486,	<u>E34</u> : 312	
<u>C63</u> : 593	501, 515, 564, 650	<u>E38</u> : 221, 411, 675	
<u>C64</u> : 217	<u>D31</u> : 60, 302, 485	<u>E43</u> : 322, 729	
<u>C65</u> : 329	<u>D32</u> : 574	<u>E46</u> : 585	
<u>C66</u> : 620	<u>D34</u> : 566, 690	<u>E48</u> : 733	
<u>C67</u> : 179, 462	<u>D35</u> : 535, 664	<u>E56</u> : 143	
<u>C69</u> : 73	<u>D36</u> : 29, 65, 71, 133,	<u>E57</u> : 452	
<u>C70</u> : 259, 725	339, 498, 694, 792	<u>E59</u> : 333	
<u>C71</u> : 128	<u>D37</u> : 375, 543	<u>E60</u> : 173, 422	
<u>C76</u> : 314	<u>D38</u> : 166, 499	<u>E62</u> : 368, 670, 776	
<u>C77</u> : 37, 378, 761	<u>D40</u> : 144, 539	<u>E63</u> : 271	
<u>C78</u> : 365, 480	<u>D41</u> : 174, 340	<u>E64</u> : 489	
<u>C82</u> : 514, 677	<u>D43</u> : 247, 357, 426	<u>E66</u> : 238, 570	
<u>C84</u> : 382	<u>D44</u> : 332, 607	<u>E67</u> : 109, 272, 348, 748	
<u>C85</u> : 656	<u>D45</u> : 157, 235, 373, 409,	<u>E69</u> : 30, 262	
<u>C86</u> : 36	736, 738	<u>E71</u> : 512, 760	
<u>C88</u> : 471	<u>D46</u> : 317, 788	<u>E72</u> : 305	
<u>C89</u> : 445	<u>D47</u> : 605	<u>E74</u> : 686, 704	
<u>C90</u> : 103, 258, 617, 649	<u>D50</u> : 24, 124, 775	<u>E76</u> : 82, 595	
<u>C91</u> : 568	<u>D52</u> : 466	<u>E77</u> : 408	
<u>C93</u> : 45	<u>D53</u> : 35, 155, 360, 794	<u>E80</u> : 724	
<u>C95</u> : 676	<u>D55</u> : 64	<u>E81</u> : 319	
<u>C96</u> : 256	<u>D56</u> : 414	<u>E90</u> : 38, 198, 248, 289,	
<u>C97</u> : 85	<u>D58</u> : 401, 421, 621	639, 743	
<u>C98</u> : 18	<u>D61</u> : 474	<u>E91</u> : 147, 783	
<u>C99</u> : 286	<u>D78</u> : 513, 728	<u>E92</u> : 72, 245, 536	

ORDER FORM

TO ORDER THIS BOOK VIA THE INTERNET or to view our other products, please visit our website at www.chessvisualization.com.

TO ORDER THIS BOOK BY REGULAR MAIL, please send a cashier's check or US Postal Money Order (preferred), along with this form, to Gelvert Publishing LLC at the location given on our website (www.chessvisualization.com). Do not send cash.

Make checks payable to "**Gelvert Publishing LLC**".

<u>Item</u>	<u>Price x Qty</u> =	<u>Total</u>
Chess Visualization Course, Book 1: General Tactics	\$24.95 x ____ =	\$ ____.
	Postage*	\$ ____.
	GA Sales Tax**	\$ ____.
	<u>TOTAL</u>	\$ ____.

* Please see the purchase page of our website at www.chessvisualization.com for the current postage rates. ** Georgia residents please add 7% sales tax to the cost of the book and the postage.

YOUR MAILING ADDRESS

(Address that the book will be mailed to)

Name: _____

Address 1: _____

Address 2: _____

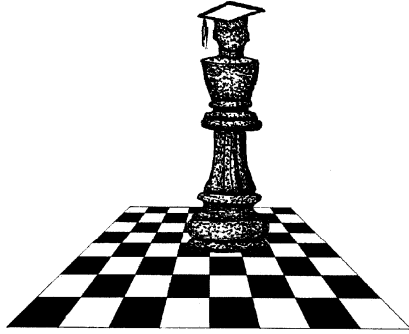
City: _____ State: _____ Zip: _____

CONTACT INFORMATION

(optional)

Phone: (____) _____ Email: _____.

CHESS VISUALIZATION
COURSE



ORDER FORM

TO ORDER THIS BOOK VIA THE INTERNET or to view our other products, please visit our website at www.chessvisualization.com.

TO ORDER THIS BOOK BY REGULAR MAIL, please send a cashier's check or US Postal Money Order (preferred), along with this form, to Gelvert Publishing LLC at the location given on our website (www.chessvisualization.com). Do not send cash.

Make checks payable to "**Gelvert Publishing LLC**".

<u>Item</u>	<u>Price x Qty</u> =	<u>Total</u>
Chess Visualization Course, Book 1: General Tactics	\$24.95 x ____ =	\$____.____
	Postage*	\$____.____
	GA Sales Tax**	\$____.____
	<u>TOTAL</u>	\$____.____

* Please see the purchase page of our website at www.chessvisualization.com for the current postage rates. ** Georgia residents please add 7% sales tax to the cost of the book and the postage.

YOUR MAILING ADDRESS

(Address that the book will be mailed to)

Name: _____

Address 1: _____

Address 2: _____

City: _____ State: _____ Zip: _____

CONTACT INFORMATION

(optional)

Phone: (____) _____ Email: _____.

CHESS VISUALIZATION
COURSE

